牛津实用英语语法

目录

牛津实用英语语法				1
第一章 冠词和	one, a little / a few,	this, that?.		10
1 a / an (7	不定冠词)			10
2 a / an 的)	用法			10
3 a / an 的	省略	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		11
4 a / an 和	one	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		12
5 a little /	a few和 little / few			13
6 the(定剂	过词)	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		14
	冠词)的省略			
8 the(定剂	冠词)在 home 等之前的	的省略		18
9 this / the	ese,that / those(指示	形容词和指示	代词)	20
第二章 名词				21
10 名词的	类别与用途			21
11 名词的	生			21
12 名词的复	复数形式	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		23
13 不可数约	名词			27
14 名词的原	所有格形式			29
15 所有格力	及 of+名词结构的用法.	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	30
16 复合名记	词	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	31
第三章 形容词.		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	34
17 形容词的	勺类别	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		34
18 形容词句	作定语和表语时的位置	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		35
19 质量形容	字词的次序			37
20 形容词的	的比较等级	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		38
21 各种表示	示比较的句子结构			40
22 than / a	s+代词+助动词			42
23 the+形容	字词	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		42
24 形容词+	one / ones 和形容词作	代词		43
25 many 和	l much 的用法(作形容	词和代词)		44
26 形容词+	动词不定式			45
27 形容词+	·动词不定式/that 从句。	/介词结构		49
第四章 副词				52
28 副词的	类别			52
29 由 ly 构	成的副词			52
30 词形相[司的副词与形容词	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		53
31 比较级	与最高级	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		55
	ther/farthest 和 furthe			

33 ו	much,more,most	56
34	使用各比较等级的句子结构	57
35	方式副词	58
36	地点副词	60
37	时间副词	62
38	频度副词	64
39	各种副词及副词短语在同一句中的位置	65
40	句子副词	66
41	程度副词	67
42 1	fairly 和 rather	68
43 (quite	70
45	某些副词之后的倒装	71
第五章 8	all,each,every,both,neither,either,some,any,no 和 none?	72
46 8	all, each, every, everyone, everybody, everything	72
	both	
	all/both/each+of 和其他可以替代的结构	
49 ı	neither, either	75
	some,any,no 和 none(形容词和代词)	
51 :	someone, somebody, something, anyone,	77
52 (else 位于 someone/anybody/nothing 等之后	78
	another,other,others 与 one 和 some 连用	
	赴问词 wh-?和 how?	
	疑问形容词及疑问代词	
	who,whose 等用做主语时后接肯定动词	
	who,whom,whose,winch 和 what 的用法举例	
	who,whom,which 和 what 作介词宾语	
	what 的用法	
59 v	which 与 who 和 what 的比较	83
	疑问副词 why,when,where 和 how	
61 (ever 位于 who,what,where,why,when,how 之后	
第七章	所有格代词、人称代词及反身代词 my, mine, I, myself 等	
	所有格形容词及所有格代词	
	所有格形容词的一致关系及用法	
	所有格代词用来代替所有格形容词+名词	
	人称代词	
	宾格代词的位置	
	it 的用法	
	you,one 和 they 作不定代词	
	neither / either,someone / everyone / no one 等	
	反身代词	
	myself,himself,herself 等词用做强调代词	
	关系代词与关系从句	
	限定性关系从句	
73	用于限定性关系从句的关系代词	94

	75 指物的限定性关系从句	95
	76 分裂句: it+be+名词 / 代词+限定性关系从句	96
	77 用不定式或分词替代关系从句的情况	96
	78 非限定性关系从句	97
	79 指人的非限定性关系从句	98
	80 all, both, few, most, several, some	99
	81 指物的非限定性关系从句	99
	82 连接性关系从句	100
	83 what(关系代词)和 which(连接关系词)	101
	84 关系从句中的逗号	102
	85 whoever, whichever, whatever, whenever,	102
第	九章介词?	104
	86 概说	
	87 介词的位置	
	88 间接宾语前 to 和 for 的省略	
	89 to 与表示沟通思想的动词连用时的省略与否]	
	90 表示时间和日期的介词: at, on, by, before, in	
	91 表示时间的介词: from, since, for, during	
	92 表示时间的介词 to, till / until,	
	93 表示移动和运动的介词: from, to, at, in,	
	94 at, in; in, into; on, onto	
	95 above, over, under, below, beneath 等	
	96 介词与形容词、分词连用	
	97 动词和介词	
	98 介词后的动名词	
	99 介词 / 副词	
第-	十章 动词概说	
	100 动词的分类	
	101 主动态动词的主要变化?	
	102 主动语态形式一览表?	
	103 各种时态的否定形式	
	104 表示疑问和请求的疑问式	
	105 否定疑问式	
	106 助动词及情态动词	
	107 助动词: 形式与句型	
	108 简略答语中的助动词	
	109 对他人说话表示同意或不同意	
	110 附加疑问	
	111 附加评论	
络		
另 一	十一章 be, have 和 do be 作助动词?	
	114 be+不定式?	136 137
	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1 1 /

	116 there is / are / was / were 等	139
	117 it is 和 there is 的比较	140
	118 构成各种时态的形式及用法	141
	119 have+宾语+过去分词	141
	120 had better+不带 to 的不定式	142
	121 have +宾语+现在分词	143
	122 have 意指 possess(拥有)	144
	123 have 意指 take (a meal) (吃<饭>),	145
	124 形式	146
	125 do 用做助动词	146
	126 do 用做普通动词	147
第十	·二章 may 和 can 表示许可和可能、许可	148
	127 may 用来表示许可	148
	128 can 用来表示许可	149
	129 may 和 can 用来表示现在或将来的许可	
	130 could 或 was / were allowed to 用来表示过去的许可	150
	131 请求许可	150
	132 may / might 表示可能	151
	133 may / might+完成式	153
	134 could 替代 may / might 的用法	
	135 can 表示可能	
第十	·三章 can 和 be able 表示能力?	
	136 can 和 be able 的各种形式	
	137 can / am able, could / was able	
	138 could+完成式	
第十	·四章 ought,should,must,have	
	139 ought 的各种形式	
	140 should 的各种形式	
	141 ought / should 与 must 和 have to 的比较	
	143 ought / should 与完成式连用	
	144 must 和 have to 的各种形式	
	145 肯定句中 must 和 have to 的区别	
	146 need not 和 must not 用于现在时和将来时	
	148 need 的各种形式	
	149 表示无义务的各种形式	
	150 need not 与其他各种形式的区别	
	151 must,have to 和 need 用于疑问句	
	152 needn't+完成式	
	153 needn't have (done) 和 didn't have / need (to do) 的比较	
	154 needn't,could 和 should+完成式	
k-k- 1	155 need 意指 require(需要)	
第十	·五章 must,have,will 和 should 表示推断和假设?	
	156 must 表示推断	
	157 must 与 may / might 的比较	169

159 can't 和 couldn't 表示否定的推断	169
160 will 和 should 表示假设	170
第十六章 助动词 dare 和 used?	171
161 dare	171
163 be / become / get used to	173
第十七章	174
164 现在进行时形式	174
165 拼写	174
166 用法	175
167 其他可能的用法	176
168 通常不用于进行时的动词	176
169 feel,look,smell 和 taste	177
172 一般现在时形式	180
173 用来表示习惯性动作	180
174 其他用法	181
第十八章 过去时态和完成时态	182
175 一般过去时形式	182
176 不规则动词	182
177 用来叙述过去发生的事件	183
过去进行时?	184
178 形式	184
179 主要用法	184
180 其他用法	185
181 过去进行时替代一般过去时的用法	185
182 形式和用法	186
183 与 just 连用表示刚完成的动作	186
184 用于表示时间尚未指明或不确定的过去发生的动作	186
185 表示一个尚未过去的时间段内发生的动作	187
186表示一个尚未完全过去的时期内延续的动作	189
187 与 for 和 since 连用	191
188 it is +一段时间 + since + 一般过去时或现在完成时	191
189 现在完成时和一般过去时	192
现在完成进行时	193
190 形式	193
191 用法	194
192 现在完成时的一般式与进行式的比较	194
193 进一步举例	195
195 时间从句中的一般过去时与过去完成时	198
196 过去完成时在间接引语中的用法	200
第十九章 将来时态	201
198 表示将来的各种形式	201
199 一般现在时用来表示将来	202
200 解释含有意图的将来	202
201 will + 动词原形表示做出决断时的音图	203

20	02 现在进行时用来表示将来	204
20	O3 be going to 形式	205
20	O4 be going to 形式表示意图	205
20	D5 表示意图的 be going to 和 will+动词原形的比较	206
20	07 一般将来时	209
20	D8 第一人称 will 和 shall	209
20	09 一般将来时的用法	210
21	10 will 同 want / wish / would like 的比较	212
21	11 将来进行时	212
21	12 将来进行时用做一般的进行时态	213
21	13 将来进行时用来表示不含意图又未发生的动作	213
21	14 将来进行时与 will +动词原形的比较	214
21	15 各种将来时态	215
21	16 将来完成时和将来完成进行时	216
第二十	章 时态的呼应	217
21	17 从句	217
21	18 时态的呼应	217
第	三十一章 条件语气、条件时态	218
21	19 条件现在时	218
22	20 条件完成时	219
22	21 条件句类型 1	219
22	22 条件句类型 2	220
22	23 条件句类型 3	222
22	24 if 从句中的 will / would 和 should	223
22	25 if + were 以及主语和助动词的倒装	225
22	26 if, even if, whether, unless, but for,	225
22	27 if 和 in case	227
22	28 if only	227
22	29 间接引语中的条件句	228
第二十	一二章 will / would,shall / should 的其他用法	229
23	30 用 will,would 表示习惯	229
23	31 should / would think+that 从句或 so / not	230
23	32 would 表示过去的意图	231
第二十	-三章 不定式	235
23	38 形式	235
第二十	-四章 动名词?	254
25	57 形式和用法	254
25	58 用做主语	254
第二十	五章 不定式结构与动名词结构?	260
26	56 既可与不定式也可与动名词连用的动词	260
26	57 可与不定式或动名词连用而不改变含义的动词	261
26	69 agree/agree to, mean, propose	263
27	70 go on, stop, try, used (to)	263
27	71 be afraid (of), be sorry (for).	264

第二十六章 分词	265
272 现在(或称主动)分词	265
273 位于表示感觉的动词之后	266
274 catch,find,leave+宾语+现在分词	267
275 go, come, spend, waste, be busy	267
276 代替主句的现在分词短语	268
277 代替从句的现在分词短语	269
278 分词的完成式(主动语态)	269
279 过去分词(被动语态)及分词的完成式(被动语态)	270
280 误连分词	271
第二十七章 命令、请求、邀请、劝告及建议	272
281 祈使句表示命令	272
282 其他表示命令的方式	273
283 can/could/may/might I/we? 表示请求	273
284 could/will/would you? 等表示请求	274
285 might 表示请求	276
286 邀请	276
287 劝告的形式	277
288 may/might as well+动词原形表示劝告	278
289 建议	
第二十八章 虚拟语气	280
290 形式	280
291 虚拟现在时的用法	280
292 as if/as though+ 虚拟过去时	281
293 it is time+ 虚拟过去时	
第二十九章 care, like, love,hate,prefer,wish	282
294 care 和 like	
295 care, like, love, hate, prefer	284
296 would like 和 want	285
297 would rather/sooner 和 prefer/would prefer	
298 表示偏爱的另一些例句	
299 wish,want 和 would like	
300 wish+ 主语+ 虚拟过去时	
301 wish(that)+主语+would	
第三十章 被动语态	
302 形式	
303 主动和被动时态对照表 A 时态 / 动词形式/主动态/被动态	
304 被动态的各种用法	
305 介词与被动态动词连用	
306 被动态动词后的不定式结构	
第三十一章 间 接 引 语	
307 直接引语和间接引语	
308 间接引语中的陈述句时态须作必要的改变	
309 过去时态有时保持不变	299

310 间接引语中的虚拟过去时	299
311 间接陈述中的 might,ought to,should,would,used to	300
312 could 用于间接引语(关于 could 的疑问形式,参见第 283 与第 284	节。)
	301
313 其中的代词与形容词	302
314 其中的时间及地点表达法	303
315 其中的不定式和动名词结构	304
316 say,tell 及其他可替代使用的引导动词	305
317 间接引语中的问句	307
318 以 shall I / we? 开头的问句变为间接引语	308
319 以 will you? / would you? / could you?	309
320 间接引语中的命令、请求、劝告	310
321 间接命令的其他表示方法	312
322 let's, let us, let him / them 用于间接引语	314
323 惊叹句及 yes 和 no 变为间接引语	315
324 混合类句式的间接引语形式	317
325 must 和 needn't	318
第三十二章 连词	320
326 并列连词	320
327 besides, however, nevertheless,	321
328 从属连词	322
329 though / although 和 in spite of	322
330 for 和 because	323
331 用于表示时间的 when,while,as	324
332 as 意为 when / while(当······时)	324
333 as,when,while 意为 although(尽管),	325
第三十三章 目的	326
334 不定式表示目的	326
335	327
336 目的从句	328
337 in case 和 lest	329
第三十四章 原因从句、结果从句、让步从句、比较从句、时间从句?	330
338 原因从句和结果/原因从句	330
339 such / sothat 引导的结果从句	331
340 让步从句	332
341 比较从句	333
342 时间从句	334
第三十五章 名词从句	335
343 作主语的名词从句	335
344 位于某些形容词 / 分词之后的 that 从句	336
345 位于某些名词之后的 that 从句	336
346 名词从句作动词宾语	337
347 so 和 not 可替代 that 从句	338
第三十六章 数词。日期和度量衡7	340

348 基数词(形容词及代词)	340
349 基数词的几点注意事项	341
350 序数词(形容词及代词)	341
351 序数词的几点注意事项	342
352 日期	343
353 度量衡	343
第三十七章 拼写规则	344
354 引语	344
355 辅音字母的双写	344
356 末尾字母 e 的省略	345
357 以 ce 和 ge 结尾的词	346
358 后缀 ful	
359 以字母 y 结尾的词	
360 ie 和 ei	
361 连字号	347
第三十八章 短语动词	348
362 引言	348
363 动词+介词 / 副词的组合	349
第三十九章 不规则动词表	389
364 不规则动词	389

第一章 冠词和 one, a little / a few, this, that?

1 a / an (不定冠词)

- a 用在以辅音字母开头,或以读做辅音的元音字母开头的单词前面: a man 一个男人
- a university 一所大学
- a hat 一顶帽子
- a European 一个欧洲人
- a one-way street 一条单行马路
- an 用在以元音字母(a, e, i, o, u)开头,或以不发音的 h 字母开头的单词前面: an apple 一个苹果
- an island 一个岛
- an uncle 一位大叔
- an onion 一个洋葱
- an egg 一个鸡蛋
- an hour 一小时
- an 还用在发音以元音开头的单个字母前面: an L-plate 一块"实习驾驶"车牌
- an MP 一个国会议员
- an SOS 一个呼救信号
- an'x'一个x字母、X形的东西或未知数
- a / an 没有性的变化: a man 一个男人
- a woman 一个女人
- an actor 一个男演员
- an actress 一个女演员
- a table 一张桌子

2 a / an 的用法

A 用在第一次提到而非特指某人或某物的单数可数名词前面: I need a visa. 我需要签证。

They live in a flat.

他们住一个套间。

He bought an ice-cream.

他买了一个冰淇淋。

B 用在代表一类东西的单数可数名词前面: A car must be insured.

汽车必须投保。相当于: All cars / Any car must be insured.

所有汽车 / 任何汽车都必须投保。

A child needs love.

孩子需要爱。相当于: All children need / Any child needs love.

所有孩子 / 任何孩子都需要爱。

C 用在作表语的名词(包括职业名称)前面: It was an earthquake.

是一次地震。

She'll be a dancer.

她将成为舞蹈演员。

He is an actor.

他是演员。

D 用在某些表示数量的词组中: a lot of 许多

- a couple 一对
- a great many 很多
- a dozen 一打(但也可以用 one dozen)
- a great deal of 大量
- E 用在某些数字前面: a hundred 一百
- a thousand 一千 (参见第 349 节。)
- 当 half 跟在一个整数后面时,a 用在 half 前面:可以说"a+ half+名词": a half—holiday 一次半天假
- a half-portion 半份(食物)
- a half-share 半份(钱)
- a third 三分之一
- a quarter 四分之一

但也可以用 one。(参见第 350 节。)

- F 用在表示价格、速度、比率等的词组中: 5p a kilo 5 便士一公斤
- € la metre 一英镑一米

sixty kilometres an hour 每小时 60 公里

10p a dozen 10 便士一打

four times a day 每天四次

(这里 a / an=per)

G 用在感叹句中单数可数名词前面: Such a long queue!

排的队真长!

What a pretty girl!

多漂亮的姑娘! 但是: Such long queues!

排的队都可真长!

What pretty girls!

多漂亮的姑娘们!

(是复数名词,所以不用冠词,参见第3节。)

- H 用在 Mr / Mrs / Miss+姓氏之前: a Mr Smith 一位史密斯先生
- a Mrs Smith 一位史密斯太太
- a Miss Smith 一位史密斯小姐
- a Mr Smith 是指一位姓史密斯的先生,表示这位史密斯先生对于说话的人是陌生的。如果 Mr Smith 前不加 a,则说明说话人认识史密斯先生或知道有这么个人。

(关于 a / an 与 one 的区别,参见第 4 节;关于 a few 和 a little 的区别,参见第 5 节。)

3 a / an 的省略

a / an 不用在以下几种情况下: A 复数名词之前: a / an 没有复数形式,所以 a dog 的复数 是 dogs,an egg 的复数是 eggs。

B 不可数名词之前 (参见第 13 节): C 三餐名称之前,但这些名称前加形容词时除外: We have breakfast at eight.

我们8点钟吃旱饭。

He gave us a good breakfast.

他请我们吃了一顿丰盛的早餐。

为了庆祝某事或特意为某人而举行的宴会之前要用冠词: I was invited to dinner (at their house, in the ordinary way).

他们邀请我吃饭(在他们家吃便饭)。

但是说: I was invited to a dinner given to welcome the new ambassador.

我被邀请参加欢迎新任大使的宴会。

4 a / an 和 one

A a / an 和 one (形容词)

1?计算时间、测量距离或重量等时, \mathbf{a} / an 或 one 可以用于单数的前面: \mathfrak{L} l= \mathbf{a} / one pound 一英镑

£ 1,000,000= a / one million pounds 100 万英镑

(参见第三十六章。)

但是,请注意: The rent is € 100 a week.

房租为每星期 100 英镑。

这个句子中 week 前面的 a 不能用 one 代替。(参见第 2 节 F。)

在其他类型的陈述句中 a / an 和 one 通常不能互换,因为 one+名词通常意为 one only / not more than one (只有一个),而 a / an 则没有这个意思: A shotgun is no good.

猎枪不行。(这种武器不合适。)

One shotgun is no good.

一枝猎枪不行。(我需要两枝或三枝。)

2 one 的特殊用法

(a) one (形容词 / 代词) 与 another / others 对照连用: One (boy) wanted to read, another / others wanted to watch TV. 一个 (男孩) 想看书,另一个 / 别的男孩们想看电视。(参见第 53 节。)

One day he wanted his lunch early, another day he wanted it late.

他一天要早点吃午饭,另一天又要晚点吃午饭。

(b) one 可以用在 day / week / month / year / summer / winter 等词之前,或者用在日期或月份的名称之前,以特指某事发生的时间: One night there was a terrible storm. 一天晚上有一场特大的风暴。

One winter the snow fell early.

有一年冬天雪下得早。

On e day a telgram arrived.

有一天来了一封电报。

(c) one day 也可用来表示 at some future date (将来有一天): One day you'll be sorry you treated him so badly. (这里也可用 someday。)

终有一天你会因为待他这么不好而后悔的。

(关于 one 和 you, 参见第 68 节。)

Ba/an和one(代词)

one 是可以用来代替 a / an 的相应的代词形式: -Did you get a ticket?

- -Yes, I managed to get one.
- -你搞到票了吗?
- -是的,我设法搞到了一张。

具有这种用法的 one 的复数形式是 some: -Did you get tickets?

- -Yes, I managed to get some.
- -你搞到票了吗?
- -是的,我设法搞了几张。

5 a little / a few 和 little / few

A a little / little (形容词) 用在不可数名词之前: a little salt / little salt 一点盐 / 没有多少盐

a few / few (形容词) 用在复数名词之前: a few people / few people 有几个人 / 没有几个人

这四种形式也都能用做代词使用,或单独使用或与 of 连用: -Sugar?

- -A little, please.
- -要糖吗?
- -请给一点儿。

Only a few of these are any good.

这其中只有几个用得着。

Balitile, a few (形容词和代词)

a little 指少量或者说话人认为少的量; a few 指小数目或者说话人认为小的数目。

把 only 放在 a little / a few 之前,是为了强调说话人认为该数量的确很小。

Only a few of our customers have accounts.

我们的顾客中只有少数人是记账的。

但是把 quite 放在 a few 之前就大大增大了这个数量: I have quite a few books on art. 我有不少关于艺术的书。(许多书)

C little 和 few (形容词和代词): little 和 few 意为很少或没有,几乎具有否定意义: There was little time for consultation.

几乎没有时间商量。

Little is known about the side—effects of this drug.

这种药物有些什么副作用, 现在还不大清楚。

Few towns have such splendid trees.

有这么好看的树木的城市不多。

little 和 few 的这种用法主要限于书面英语(可能由于在日常会话中 little 和 few 容易被误认为是 a little / a few)。因此,在日常会话中 little 和 few 通常由 hardly any 替代,也可以由动词否定式+much / many 替代: We saw little.

我们没有看到什么。相当于: We saw hadly anything. / We didn't see much. 我们几乎什么都没有看到。

Tourists come here but few stay overnight.

有游客到这里来,但很少有人过夜。相当于: Tourists come here but hadly any stay overnight.

有游客到这里来,但几乎没有人在这里过夜。

但如果 little 和 few 由 so, very, too, extremely, comparatively, relatively 等词修饰, 就可以较自由地使用。

fewer (比较级) 也可以更自由地使用。

I'm unwilling to try a drug I know so little about.

我不乐意服我知之甚少的药。

They have too many technicians, we have too few.

他们的技术员太多,而我们的又太少。

There are fewer butterflies every year.

蝴蝶的数量每年都在减少。

D a little (副词)

1 a little 可以: (a) 与动词连用: It rained a little during the night.

夜里下了一点儿雨。

They grumbled a little about having to wait.

他们为要等候抱怨了几句。

- (b) 与具有"令人不快的"意义的形容词和副词连用: a little anxious 有点儿着急
- a little annoyed 有点儿不耐烦
- a little unwillingly 有点儿不情愿地
- a little impatiently 有点儿不耐心地
- (c) 与形容词和副词的比较级连用: The paper should be a little thicker.

这纸应该再厚一点儿。

Can't you walk a little faster?

你不能走得快一点儿吗?

在(b)中可以用 rather 来代替 a little。 rather 也可以用于比较级之前(参见第 **42** 节),但 a little 更常用一些。

在英语口语中 a bit 可以在上述例子中用以替代 a little。

2 在比较正式的文体中,little 主要同 better 或 more 连用: His second suggestion was little (=not much) better than his first.

他的第二个建议比第一个好不了多少。

He was little (= not much) more than a child when his father died.

他父亲去世时,他差不多还是个孩子。

在正式的英语中,little 可用在某些动词如 expect,know,sus—pect,think 等之前:He little expected to find himself in prison.

他几乎没有料到自己会进监狱。

He little thought that one day...

他几乎从不曾想过有一天 ……

注意像 little—known 和 little—used 这样的形容词的用法:a little—known painter 一个藉藉无名画家

a little-used footpath 一条几乎没有人走的小道

6 the (定冠词)

A 形式

英语的定冠词 the 没有单、复数和性的变化: the boy 这 / 那个男孩 the boys 这 / 那些男孩

the girl 这 / 那个女孩

the girls 这 / 那些女孩

the day 这 / 那一天

the days 这 / 那些天

B 用法

定冠词的用法如下: 1 名词所表示的物体是唯一的或被认为是唯一的时,前面用 the: the earth 地球

the sea 大海

the sky 天空

the equator 赤道

the stars 星辰

2 名词所表示的事物由于第二次提到而成为特指的事物时,前面要用 the: His car struck a tree; you can still see the mark on the tree.

他的车撞了一棵树, 你还能看到那棵树被撞的痕迹。

3 名词所表示的人物由短语或从句修饰而成为特指的人物时,前面用 the:

the girl in blue 穿蓝衣服的女孩

the man with the banner 举旗的那个男人

the boy that I met 我遇见的那个男孩

the place where I met him 我遇见他的地方

4 名词所表示的事物因所处位置而只能是某一特指的事物时,前面用 the: Ann is in the garden.

安在花园里。(可指这所房子的花园)

Please pass the wine.

请把酒递给我。(可指餐桌上的酒)

5 形容词或副词的最高级以及 first, second 等词用为形容词或代词时, 前面要用 the; only 用为形容词时前面也要用 the: the first (week)第一(周)

the best day 最好的一天

the only way 唯一的办法

C the+单数名词可以代表一类动物或事物: The whale is in danger of becoming extinct. 鲸类有灭绝的危险。

The deep-freeze has made life easier for housewives.

有了冷冻柜,家庭主妇的日子好过多了。

但 man 用来表示全人类时,前面不用任何冠词: If oil supplies run out,man may have to fall back on the horse.

如果石油资源枯竭,人类可能又得靠骑马了。

定冠词 the 可以用在代表某一群体的单数名词之前: The small shopkeeper is finding life increasingly difficult.

小店主发现日子越来越不好过了。

上例中,the+单数名词后边跟动词的单数形式。其代词形式是 he,she 或 it: The first—class traveller pays more so he expects some comfort.

买头等票的旅客钱花得多, 当然想要舒服一点。

D the+形容词表示一类人: the old=old people in general 老年人(参见第 23 节。)

E 用在某些表示海洋、河流、群岛、山脉、沙漠、地区等专有名称以及本身为复数形式的国名之前: the Atlantic 大西洋

the Netherlands 荷兰

the Thames 泰晤士河

the Sahara 撒哈拉沙漠

the Azores 亚速尔群岛

the Crimea 克里米亚半岛

the Alps 阿尔卑斯山

the Riviera 里维埃拉

用在某些其他地名之前: the City 伦敦金融区

the Mall 英国伦敦圣詹姆斯公园林阴道

the Sudan 苏丹

The Hague 海牙

the Strand(伦敦)河滨路

the Yemen 也门

专有名称由名词+of+名词组成时前面也用 the: the Bay of Biscay 比斯开湾

the Cape of Good Hope 好望角

the Gulf of Mexico 墨西哥湾

the United States of America 美利坚合众国

the 可用在由形容词+名词组成的名称之前(但形容词一般应不是 east, west 等词): the Arabian Gulf 阿拉伯湾

the New Forest 新森林(位于英格兰南岸的部分森林地区)

the High Street 正街, 主街

the 用在由 east / west 等形容词+名词构成的某些特定名称之前: the East / West End 伦敦 东 / 西区

the East / West Indies 东 / 西印度群岛

the North / South Pole 北 / 南极

但在下列情况下一般不用 the: South Africa 南非

North America 北美洲

West Germany 西德

但是,当 east / west 等词用做名词时,前面要用 the: the north of Spain 西班牙北部 the Middle East 中东

the West (geographical) 西部 (地理上的)

the West (political) 西方(政治上的)

比较 Go north (north 在这里是副词,指向北的方向)和 He

lives in the north(north 在这里是名词,指北方的一个地区)。

F the 用在其他由形容词+名词或名词+of+名词构成的专有名称之前: the National Gallery 国家美术馆

the Tower of London 伦敦塔

the 也用于合唱团、管弦乐队、流行音乐团体等名称之前: the Bach Choir 巴赫合唱团

the Philadelphia Orchestra 费城管弦乐队

the Beatles 披头士乐队(或称甲壳虫乐队)

the 也用在报纸名称之前和轮船名称之前: the Times 《泰晤士报》

the Great Britain"大不列颠"号

G the 与人的姓名连用的情况极少。the+姓氏的复数形式意为"……一家": the Smiths=Mr and Mrs Smith (and children) 史密斯夫妇(及孩子们) the+姓名的单数形式+从句/短语

可用来区别具有同一姓名的人: We have two Mr Smiths. Which do you want? 我们这里有两位姓史密斯的先生。你要找哪一位?

I want the Mr Smith who signed this letter.

我要找在这封信上签名的那位史密斯先生。

the 用在带有 of 的爵位、头衔之前(如 the Duke of York 约克公爵),但不用在其他爵位或官阶之前(如 Lord Olivier 奥利维尔勋爵,Captain Cook 库克船长)。但如果我们对一个人只称呼他的爵位或头衔时,则要用 the: The earl expected...

伯爵希望 ……

The captain ordered...

船长命令 ……

在写给两位或几位未婚姐妹的同一封信中,上款可以写为 The Misses+姓氏: The Misses Smith 史密斯家的小姐们

7 the (定冠词)的省略

A 不用 the (走冠词)的情形如下: 1 除上述情况外,不用在地名或人名之前。

2 除用于特指含义外,不用在抽象名词之前: Men fear death.

人怕死。

The death of the Prime Minister left his party without a leader.

首相一死,他的党派就群龙无首了。

3 不用在所有格名词或所有格形容词之前: the boy's uncle= the uncle of the boy 这个男孩的叔叔

It is my (blue) book. 相当于: The (blue) book is mine.

这(蓝皮)书是我的。

4 不用在三餐名称之前(但参见第 3 节 C): The Scots have porridge for breakfast. 苏格兰人早餐吃麦片粥。

The wedding breakfast was held in her father's house.

婚礼早宴是在她父亲家举行的。

5 不用在体育项目的名称之前: He plays golf.

他打高尔夫球。

6 不用在表示身体各部位或服装的各部分名称之前,这里通常用其所有格形式: Raise your right hand.

举起你的右手。

He took off his coat.

他脱掉了大衣。

但应注意以下说法: She seized the child's collar.

她抓住孩子的衣领。

I patted his shoulder.

我轻轻地拍了拍他的肩膀。

The brick hit John's face.

砖头打在约翰的脸上。

这三个句子也可以换一个方法来说: She seized the child by the collar.

她抓住孩子的衣领。

I patted him on the shoulder.

我轻轻地拍了拍他的肩膀。

The brick hit John in the face.

砖头打在约翰的脸上。

用被动式表示时也与此相似: He was hit on the head.

他被击中头部。

He was cut in the hand.

他的手割破了。

B 注意在有些欧洲语言中定冠词可以用在不定的复数名词之前,而英语中绝不可以那样用: Women are expected to like babies.

妇女被当成是该喜欢小孩的。(指一般妇女)

Big hotels all over the world are very much the same.

世界各地的大饭店都很相像。

在上述第一个例子中,如果在 women 之前加上 the,就表明是特指某一部分妇女。

C nature 指自然界(动植物等的世界)的创造之灵和原动力时,之前不使用 the: If you interfere with nature you will suffer for it.

谁干扰大自然,就要承受恶果。

8 the (定冠词) 在 home 等之前的省略

A home

当 home 单独使用即前后不加修饰词或短语时,不用定冠词: He is at home.

他在家。

当 home 单独使用时,可以直接跟在具有运动意义的动词之后,或紧随在具有运动意义的动词+宾语之后。换句话说,

home 可以当副词使用: He went home.

他回家了。

I arrived home after dark.

我天黑以后到家的。

但是,当 home 之前或之后带有修饰词或修饰短语时,其用法

和其他名词相同: They went to their new home.

他们到自己的新家去了。

We arrived at the bride's home.

我们到了新娘的家。

For some years this was the home of your gueen.

曾有些年头这里是你们王后的家。

A mud hut was the only home he had ever known.

一间小土屋就是他所知道的唯一的家。

B bed,church,court,hospital,prison,school / college / university 人们去这些地方干在这些地方应该干的事时,上述词语的前面不用定冠词 the。例如,we go: to bed(to sleep or as invalids) 上床睡觉或(病人)卧床

to church (to pray) 去教堂祷告

to court (as litigants) 上法院打官司

to hospital (as patients) 去医院就医

to prison (as prisoners) 进监狱坐牢

to school / college / university (to study) 去学校 / 学院 / 大学读书

同样可以说: in bed (sleeping or resting) 在床上 (睡觉或休息)

at church (as worshippers) 在教堂做礼拜

in court (as witnesses) 在法庭作证

in hospital (as patients) 生病住院

at school (as students) 在学校读书

我们可以说: be / get back / home from school / college / university 从学校 / 大学上学回到家里

leave school 离校,放学回家

leave hospital 出院

be released from prison 出狱

如果往这些地方去是由于其他原因,则要用定冠词: I went to the church to see the stained glass.

我到教堂看染色拼花玻璃窗去了。

He goes to the prison sometimes to give lectures.

他有时去监狱给囚犯演讲。

C sea

go to sea (as sailors)(当水手)出海

be at sea= be on a voyage (as passengers or crew) (作为旅客或船员) 乘船航行

但是: go to / be at the sea=go to / be at the seaside 去 / 在海边

还可以这样说: live by / near the sea 住在海边

D work 和 office

work(工作地点)前不加定冠词 the: He's on his way to work.

他在去上班的路上。

He is at work.

他在上班。(在办公室或工作地点)

He isn't back from work yet.

他还没(从办公室)下班回来。

注意: at work 也可表示 working (工作): hard at work=working hard 在努力工作 He's hard at work on a new picture.

他正在努力地画一幅新画。

office(工作地点)前需要加定冠词 the: He is at / in the office.

他在办公室。

be in office (不加 the)则表示担任一个官/公职(通常指政界职位)。

be out of office=be no longer in power 不再担任某一职务,已去职

E town

在讲到主语或说话人自己的城镇时,town 前面的 the 可以省略: We go to town sometimes to buy clothes.

我们有时进城去买衣服。

We were in town last Monday.

上星期一我们在城里。

9 this / these, that / those (指示形容词和指示代词)

A 这几个词用做形容词时,要与所修饰的名词在数上一致。它们是唯一随名词的数的变化而变化的形容词。

This beach was quite empty last year.

去年这个海滩很空荡。

This exhibition will be open until the end of May.

这次展览会要开到5月底。

These people come from that hotel over there.

这些人是从那边那个饭店来的。

What does that notice say?

那个通知说什么?

That exhibition closed a month ago.

那个展览一个月前就闭幕了。

He was dismissed on the 13th. That night the factory went on fire.

他在13号被解雇。那天晚上工厂失火了。

Do you see those birds at the top of the tree?

你看到树梢上的那些鸟了吗?

有时为了表示强调,用 this / these / that / those+名词+of+your / hers 等或 Ann's 等这一结构,而不用 your / her 等+名词结构: This diet of mine / My diet isn't having much effect.

我节食的方法效果不大。

That car of Ann's / Ann's car is always breaking down.

安的那辆车老要坏。

由这样的短语构成的话通常具有"令人不满"的贬义,但不一定总是这样。

B this / these / ,that / those 用做代词: This is my umbrella. That's yours.

这把伞是我的。那是你的。

These are the old classrooms. Those are the new ones.

这些是旧教室。那些是新的。

- -Who's that (man over there)?
- -That's Tom Jones.
- -那(边的那个男人)是谁?
- -那是汤姆•琼斯。

播送完一个节目时说: That was the concerto in C minor by Vivaldi.

刚刚播送的是维瓦尔迪作曲的C小调协奏曲。

介绍时可用 this is: Ann (to Tom): This is my brother Hugh.

安(对汤姆): 这是我弟弟休。

Ann (to Hugh): Hugh, this is Tom Jones.

安(对休): 休,这是汤姆•琼斯。

Telephone caller: Good morning. This is/I am Tom Jones...

打电话者: 早上好, 我是汤姆•琼斯……

I am 这一说法要比 this is 稍微正式一些。如果打电话者不认识受话者,一般用 I am。打电话者的姓名+ here(如: Tom here)要比 this is+打电话者的姓名更随便一些。those 后边

可以跟限定性关系从句: Those who couldn't walk were carried on stretchers.

那些不能走的人都用担架抬着。

this / that 可指前边已经提到的名词、短语或从句: They are digging up my road. They do this every summer.

他们正在挖我那条路。他们每年夏天都这样做。

He said I wasn't a good wife. Wasn't that a horrible thing to say?

他说我不是个好妻子。那话不是很伤人么?

C this / these, that / those 与 one / ones 连用:要表达比较或选择的意思时, this / these, that / those 这些指示形容词后常跟代词 one / ones。但是,除了 this / these, that / those 后跟有形容词的情况外, one / ones 可以省略: This chair is too low. I'll sit in that (one).这把椅子太矮了。我要坐那一把。

I like this (one) best.

我最喜欢这个。

I like this blue one / these blue ones.

我喜欢这个蓝的/这些蓝的。

第二章 名词

10 名词的类别与用途

A 英语中名词可以分为四类: 普通名词: dog 狗 man 男人 table 桌子

专有名词: France 法兰西 Madrid 马德里 Mrs Smith 史密斯夫人 Tom 汤姆

抽象名词: beauty 美丽 charity 慈善 courage 勇气 fear 恐惧 joy 快乐

集合名词: crowd 人群 flock 畜群 group 组 swarm 大群 team 队

B 名词的用途有: 作动词的主语: Tom arrived.

汤姆到了。

作 be, become, seem 等系动词的表语: Tom is an actor.

汤姆是个演员。

作动词的宾语: I saw Tom.

我看到了汤姆。

作介词的宾语: I spoke to Tom.

我跟汤姆说话。

名词也可以所有格形式出现: Tom's books 汤姆的书

11 名词的性

A 阳性: 男人、男孩和雄性动物(代词为 he / they)。

阴性:女人、女孩和雌性动物(代词为 she / they)。

中性:无生命的东西,不知性别的动物,有时也指不知性别的婴儿(代词为 it / they)。例外情况:轮船是阴性。有时对汽车或其他运载工具表示喜爱或尊重时,也认为它们是阴性。国家的名称通常也认为是阴性。

The ship struck an iceberg, which tore a huge hole in her side.

船碰在一座冰山上,船帮被撞出一个大洞。

Scotland lost many of her bravest men in two great rebellions.

在两次大起义中,苏格兰失去了许多极勇敢的男子汉。

B 指人的阳性 / 阴性名词

1 阴、阳性不同的形式: (a) boy 男孩 ?girl 女孩

bachelor 单身汉 ?spinster 未婚女子

bridegroom 新郎 bride 新娘

father 父亲 mother 母亲

gentleman 先生 lady 女士

husband 丈夫?wife 妻子

man 男人 woman 女人

nephew 侄子?niece 侄女

son 儿子?daughter 女儿

uncle 伯伯, 叔叔 aunt 伯母, 婶婶

widower 鳏夫 widow 寡妇

主要的特例(即没有性的区别)有: baby 婴儿

child 孩子

cousin 堂(表)兄弟/姐妹

infant 幼儿

parent 父亲,母亲

relation 亲属

relative 亲戚

spouse 配偶

teenager 青少年

(b) duke 公爵?duchess 女公爵,公爵夫人

earl 伯爵?countess 女伯爵, 伯爵夫人

king 国王 queen 女王, 王后

lord 勋爵?lady 夫人

prince 王子 princess 公主

2 指职业的大多数名词的阴、阳性形式相同: artist 艺术家

assistant 助理 / 店员

cook 厨师

dancer 舞蹈演员

driver 司机

doctor 医生

guide 向导

主要的特例有: actor 男演员 actress 女演员

conductor(公交车辆)男售票员?conductress(公交车辆)女售票员

heir 后嗣,继承人 ?heiress 嗣女,女继承人

hero 男英雄, 男主人公?heroine 女英雄, 女主人公

host 男主人?hostess 女主人

manager 男经理?manageress 女经理

stewad 男乘务员?stewardess 女乘务员

waiter 男侍者 waitress 女侍者

也可以说 salesman (售货员), saleswoman (女售货员)等。但有时用-person来代替-man与-woman: salesperson(男/女)售货员

spokesperson(男/女)发言人

C 家禽、家畜和许多较大的野禽、野兽由不同的词来表示它们的性别: bull 公牛?cow 母牛 cock 公鸡 ?hen 母鸡

dog 公狗?bitch 母狗

duck 公鸭 ?drake 母鸭

gander 公鹅 ?goose 母鹅

lion 雄狮?lioness 母狮

ram 公羊?ewe 母羊

stag 牡鹿?doe 牝鹿

stallion 公马,种马 mare 母马

tiger 公老虎 ?tigress 母老虎

其他禽兽的名称公、母形式相同。

12 名词的复数形式

A 名词的复数形式通常是在单数名词后加 s: day, days 天, 白天

dog, dogs 狗

house, houses 房屋

在词尾 p,k 或 f 音之后加的 s 读为 / s / 。除此之外 s 读 / z / 。词尾是 ce,ge,se 或 ze 的词之后加 s 时,该词的读音要加上一个音节(/ lz /)。

其他复数形式

B 以字母 o, ch, sh, ss 或 x 结尾的单词, 在词尾加 es 构成其复数: tomato, tomatoes 西红柿

brush, brushes 刷子

church, churches 教堂

kiss, kisses 吻

box, boxes 箱, 盒

但以字母 o 结尾的外来词或缩写词的复数形式是只加 s: dynamo, dynamos 发电机

kilo, kilos 公斤

kimono,kimonos 和服

photo, photos 照片

piano, pianos 钢琴

soprano, sopranos 女高音歌手

词尾是 ch, sh, ss 或 x 的词后面加 es 时, 该词的读音要加上一个音节(/ lz/)。

C 以 y 结尾但 y 前为辅音的名词在构成复数时,先把 y 去掉再加 ies: baby, babies 婴儿 country, countries 国家

fly, flies 苍蝇

lady, ladies 女士

以 y 结尾但 y 前为元音的名词在构成复数时,直接加 s: boy, boys 男孩

day, days 天

donkey,donkeys 驴子

guy, guys 家伙

D 有 12 个以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词在构成复数时,去掉 f 或 fe 加 ves。这些词是: calf 小牛

half 半

knife 刀

leaf 叶子

life 生命

loaf(面包的)条/只

self 自身

sheaf 捆

shelf 架子

thief 贼

wife 妻子

wolf 狼

例如: loaf, loaves

wife, wives

wolf, wolves

名词 hoof (蹄), scarf (围巾)和 wharf (码头)构成复数形式时,其词尾可以加 s 或 ves:

hoofs 或 hooves

scarfs 或 scarves

wharfs 或 wharves

其他以f或fe结尾的名词在构成复数形式时,直接加s: cliff, cliffs悬崖峭壁

handkerchief, handkerchiefs 手帕

safe, safes 保险箱

E 有些名词用改变无音的方法来构成其复数形式: foot, feet, 英尺, 脚

goose, geese 鹅

louse, lice 虱子

man, men 男人

mouse, mice 老鼠

tooth, teeth 牙齿

woman, women 女人

但是,child 的复数是 children,ox 的复数是 oxen。F 某些动物名称没有复数形式:名词 fish 通常没有复数形式,虽然有 fishes 这一形式,但不常用。

鱼类的某些种类通常没有复数形式: carp 鲤鱼

cod 鳕鱼

mackerel 鲐鱼

pike 狗鱼

plaice 鲽鱼

salmon 鲑鱼

squid 鱿鱼

trout 鳟鱼

turbot 大菱鲆

但是,这些名词如果表达复数的意思,其动词要用复数形式。其他鱼虾要表达复数意思则要 在词尾加 s: crabs 蟹

eels 鳗鱼

hetrings 鲱鱼

lobsters 龙虾

sardines 沙丁鱼

sharks 鲨鱼

deer (鹿)和 sheep (羊)没有复数形式: one sheep 一只羊

two sheep 两只羊

喜欢打猎的人说 duck (野鸭),partridge (鹧鸪),pheasant (野鸡)等时,对其不分单复数都用同一形式。但是其他人通常在常见的有复数形式的鸟类名称上加 s: ducks partridges pheasants

打猎的人用 game 这个词表示所猎获的猎物时,它总是取单数形式,而且后边跟单数动词。 G 还有一些没有变化的词: aircraft 航空器,飞机

craft 船只

counsel 法庭上的辩护律师

quid 一英镑(俚语)

有些度量单位和数词没有复数形式。(参见第三十六章。)关于不可数名词,参见第 13 节。 H 集合名词如 crew,family,team 等用单数或复数动词都可以;如果认为这个词表示的是一个群体或单位,可用单数动词: Our team is the best.

我们这个队是最好的。

如果认为它表示的是这个队的所有成员,就用复数动词: Our team are wearing their new jerseys.

我们这个队的队员们都穿着新运动衫。

这些名词后面需要带所有格形容词时,复数动词+their 要比单数动词+ its 常用一些,虽然有时两者都可以用: The jury is considering its verdict.

陪审团正在考虑裁决。

The jury are considering their verdict.

陪审团成员们正在考虑裁决。

I 有些词总是复数形式,并和复数动词连用: clothes 衣服

police 警察

由两部分组成的服装用复数: breeches 马裤

pants (男用) 短衬裤

pyjamas 睡衣裤

trousers 裤子

由两部分组成的工具和仪器用复数: binoculars 双筒望远镜

glasses 眼镜

pliers 钳子

scales 天平

scissors 剪刀

shears 大剪刀

spectacles 眼镜 / 护目镜

还有其他一些词用复数: arms 武器

damages 损害 / 赔偿

earnings 收入

goods / wares 商品 / 货品

greens 蔬菜

grounds (建筑物周围的) 庭院,场地

outskirts 郊外

pains 费心,辛苦

particulars 细情

prenises / qusrters 房屋 / 住所

riches 财富

savings 储蓄

spirits 烈酒

stairs 台阶,楼梯

surroundings 环境

valuables 贵重物品

J 有一些以 ics 结尾的词从形式上看是复数,通常也要跟复数动词。这些词有: acoustics 音响效果

athletics 体育运动

ethics 道德 / 伦理学

hysterics 歇斯底里发作

mathematics 数学

physics 物理学

politics 政治

例句如: His mathematics are weak.

他的数学学得不好。

但学科的名称有时是单数: Mathematics is an exact science.

数学是一门精密的科学。

K 形式上是复数但意义上却是单数的名词包括 news: The news is good.

消息很好。

还包括某些疾病的名称: mumps 流行性腮腺炎

rickets 软骨病, 佝偻病

shingles 带状疱行疹

这一类中也包括某些游戏的名称: billiards 台球(俗称"打弹子")

bowls 滚木球 (保龄球)

darts 掷飞镖

dominoes 多米诺骨牌游戏

draughts (「美] checkers) 国际象棋

L 一些源自希腊或拉丁的外来词在构成复数时,依照各自原有的规则变化: crisis / 'kralsls

/, crises / kralsl: z / 危机

erratum, errata 印刷或书写的错误, 勘误表

memorandum, memoranda 备忘录

oasis / ' elsls / , oases / +u' elsl: z / 绿洲

phenomenon, phenomena 现象

radius, radii 半径

terminus, termini 铁路或公共汽车的终点

但是有些外来词依照英语的规则而变化: dogma, dogmas 教条

formula, formulas 公式(科学家仍用 formulae)

gymnasium,gymnasiums 体育馆

有些词的两个复数形式意思不同: appendix, appendixes / appendices (医学术语) 阑尾

appendices (书的) 附录

index, indexes(书的)索引

indices (数学术语) 指数

音乐家对意大利文音乐术语通常用意大利文中的复数形式: libretto, libretti 歌剧脚本 tempo, tempi 拍子

但在词尾直接加 s 也是可以的: librettos tempos

M 复合名词的复数形式

1 通常是把最后一个词变成复数形式: boy-friends 男朋友

break-ins 入室盗窃

travel agents 旅行社经纪人

如 man 和 woman 位于复合名词的第一部分,两部分都要变成复数: men drivers 男司机 women drivers 女司机

2 由动词+er 构成的名词+副词组成的复合名词构成复数形式时,只需把第一个词变为复数: hangers-on 食客,奉承者

lookers-on 旁观者

runner's-up(在竞选、赛跑等中)占第二位的人,亚军

另外,由名词+介词+名词构成的复合名词变为复数时,也同样只需将第一个词变为复数:

ladies-in-waiting 侍从女官

sisters-in-law 嫂子,弟媳

wards of court 法庭指定受监护者

3 首字母缩写词也可有复数形式: MPs (Members of Parliament) 英国下院议员

VIPs (very important persons) 要人

OAPs (old age pensioners) 养老金领取者

UFOs (unidentified flying objects) 不明飞行物,飞碟

13 不可数名词

A1 各种物质的统称: bread 面包 ?beer 啤酒

cloth 布 ?coffee 咖啡

cream 奶油 dust 尘土

gin 杜松子酒?glass 玻璃

gold 黄金 ice 冰

jam 果酱?oil 油

paper 纸 sand 沙

soap 肥皂 stone 石头

tea 荼 water 水

wine 葡萄酒 wood 木头

2 抽象名词: advice 忠告 / 主意?beauty 美丽,漂亮

courage 勇气 ?death 死亡

experience 经验?fear 担心

help 帮助 ?hope 希望

horror 恐惧?information 消息 / 信息

knowledge 知识?mercy 仁慈

pity 同情 ?relief 救济

suspicion 猜疑?work 工作

3 在英文中下例名词也是不可数名词: baggage 行李 ?camping 露营

damage 损害 furniture 家具

luggage 行李 ?parking 停车

shopping 购物 weather 气候

这些名词和 hair (头发)、information (信息)、knowledge (知识)、news (新闻)、rubbish (垃圾)等在其他语言中有时是可数名词。

B 不可数名词没有复数形式,不能和 a / an 一起连用: I don't want(any) advice or help. I want (some) information.

我不需要任何忠告或帮助。我想得到一些信息。

He has had no experience in this sort of work.

他干这种活没经验。

这些名词前往往加 some (一些), any (任何), no (没有), a lit—tle (少许)等词, 或加名词 bit (一点儿), piece (片), slice (一部分)等+of 结构: a bit of news 一件消息

a cake of soap 一块肥皂

a drop of oil 一滴油

a grain of sand 一粒沙子

a pane of glass 一块玻璃

a piece of advice 一条忠告

a pot of jam 一罐果酱

a sheet of paper 一页纸

C 以上几组词中的大部分在特殊情况下可用为可数名词,可在单数前加 a / an,也可变为复数形式。例如,hair 指一个人头上的全部头发时,是不可数名词;如果指每一根毛发时,就是可数的,可以说 one hair(一根头发), two hairs(两根头发等): Her hair is black. Whenever she finds a grey hair she pulls it out.

她的头发是黑的。她只要发现有一根白发就将它拔掉。

可以说喝 beer (啤酒), coffee (咖啡), gin (杜松子酒), 但要酒水的时候说 a (cup of) coffer (一杯啤酒), a gin (一杯杜松子酒), two gins (两杯杜松子酒)等。

可以说喝 wine (葡萄酒),但必须说 enjoy a good wine (品尝一种好酒),喝酒时用 a glass 或 glasses (玻璃杯),也可以 walk ina wood / woods (在小树林里散步)。

experience 指某人的经历时是可数名词: He had an exciting experience / some exciting experiences (= adventure / s) last week.

上星期他有一次 / 一些激动人心的经历。

work 指职业 / 就业 / 工作时是不可数名词: He is looking for work / for a job. 他在求职 / 找一份工作。

works (只有复数形式) 可意为"工厂"或"机器的运转部分"。

works (通常用复数形式) 指文学或音乐作品: Shakespeare's complete works 莎士比亚 全集

D 一些抽象名词具有特殊意义时可带 a / an。这些词有: a help: My children are a great help to me.

孩子们是我的得力帮手。

A good map would be a help.

一张好地图可能会有用处。

a relief: It was a relief to sit down.

坐下来感到松了口气。

a knowledge + of: He had a good knowledge of mathematics.

他深谙数学。

a dislike(讨厌) / dread(害怕) / hatred(仇恨) / horror(害怕) / love(热爱)+of 结构也可这样使用:a love of music 对音乐的爱好

a hatred of violence 对暴力的憎恨

a mercy(仁慈) / pity(怜悯) / shame(耻辱) / wonder(惊奇)可以和 it 引导的 that 从句一起使用: It's a pity you weren't here.

你当时不在场太遗憾了。

It's a shame he wasn't paid.

他没拿到酬劳真丢人。

it+be+a pity / shame+动词不定式结构也是可能的: It would be a pity to cut down these trees

如果把这些树砍掉,那太可惜了。

E a fear / fears (忧虑), a hope / hopes (希望), a suspicion / suspicions (猜疑)

这类词可与由 there 引导的 that 从句连用: There is a fear / There are fears that he has been murdered.

恐怕他已经被谋杀了。

也可以用 have a suspicion that…结构。

一件事可以 arouse a fear / fears, a hope / hopes, a suspicion / suspi—cions 等, 意思是引起恐惧 / 希望 / 怀疑等。]

14 名词的所有格形式

A's 用在单数名词以及不以 s 结尾的复数名词之后: a man's job 男人的活儿

the people's choice 人民的选择

men's work 男人的工作

the crew's quarters 船员的舱房

a woman's intuition 女子的直觉

the horse's mouth 马嘴

the butcher's (shop) 肉店

the bull's horns 公牛角

the child's voice 孩子的声音

women's clothes 妇女的服装

the children's room 孩子们的房间

Russia's exports 俄国的出口

B 省字撇(') 用于以 s 结尾的复数名词之后: a girls' school 一所女子学校

the students' hostel 学生招待所

the eagles' nest 鹰巢

the Smiths' car 史密斯家的小汽车

C 以 s 结尾的古希腊或罗马的姓名之后通常也只加省字撇('): Pythagoras' Theorem 毕达哥拉斯定理

Archimedes' Law 阿基米德原理

Sophocles' plays 索福克勒斯的戏剧

D 以 s 结尾的其他姓氏之后可以用's 或单独使用省字撇('): Mr Jones's / Mr Jones' house 琼斯先生的房子

Yeats's / Yeats' poems 叶芝的诗

E 复合名词是在最后一个词之后加's 以构成其所有格形式: my brother-in—law's guitar 我姐 / 妹夫的吉他

由几个词组成的名字可同样处理: Henry the Eighth's wives 亨利八世的妻子们 the Prince of Wales's helicopter 威尔士王储的直升机

's 也可用在首字母缩写词之后: the PM's(Prime Minister's) secretary 首相的秘书 the MP's(Member of Parliament's) briefcase 议员的公事包 the VIP's(Very Important Person's) escort 要人的护送(摩托)队注意:使用所有格形式时,"被拥有的"人或物之前的定冠词就不用了: the daughter of the politician=the politician's daughter 这位政治家的女儿

the intervention of America=America's intervention 美国的干预 the plays of Shakespeare=Shakespeare's plays 莎士比亚的戏剧

15 所有格及 of+名词结构的用法

A 如上所述,名词的所有格形式主要用于人、国家或动物,但也可用于下列场合: 1 表示船只及其部件的所属关系: the ship's bell 船上的钟

the yacht's mast 游艇的桅杆

2 表示属于飞机、火车、汽车以及其他车辆或飞行器及其部件的所属关系,虽然 of+名词结构用在这些场合较为稳妥: a glider's wings / the wings of a glider 滑翔机的机翼 the train's heating system / the heating system of the train 火车的供暖系统

3 表示时间: a week's holiday 一周的休假

today's paper 今天的报纸

tomorrow's weather 明天的天气

in two years' time 两年的时间之内

ten minutes' break 十分钟休息

two hours' delay 两小时的耽搁

也可以用 a ten—minute break,a two-hour delay: We have ten minutes' break / a ten—minute break.

我们有十分钟的休息时间。

4 用于钱+ worth 结构中: £l's worth of stamps 面值一英镑的邮票

ten dollars' worth of ice-cream 值十美元的冰淇淋

5 用于 for+名词的所有格形式+sake 结构中: for heaven's sake 看在老天爷的面上 for goodness'sake 看在上帝的份上

6 用于下列说法中: a stone's throw 投石之遥(很近)

journey's end 路程尽头

the water's edge 水边

7 可以说 a winter's day 或 a winter day(一个冬日)及 asummer's day 或 a summer day (一个夏日);但是,不可以用 spring(春季)和 autumn(秋季)当所有格形式,除非把它们人格化:Autumn's return(秋天的来到)。

8 一些特定的名词用其所有格形式时,可省去后面的名词。

a / the baker's / butcher's / chemist's / florist's 的意思是面包师 / 屠夫 / 药剂师 / 花匠的店铺。同样,a / the house agent's / travelagent's 是房产经纪公司 / 旅行社的意思,而 the dentist's / doctor's / vet's 是牙科诊所 / 医生诊所 / 兽医诊所的意思: You can buy it at the chemist's.

这个你可以在药房里买到。

He's going to the dentist's.

他去牙科诊所了。

一些商业家的名称也可以这样用: Sotheby's 索斯比拍卖行

Claridge's 克拉里奇商店

- 一些有名气的商场等的店号就用姓氏+所有格形式,但有时把
- 一撇(')都省略了: Foyles 福叶尔商店

Harrods 哈洛德百货公司

有时人名也可以这样用,以表示某某人的家: We had lunch at Bill's.

我们在比尔家吃了午饭。

We met at Ann's.

我们是在安家里遇见的。

B of+名词结构表示所属关系: 1 当表示拥有者的名词由短语或从句修饰时用 of+名词结构:

The boys ran about, obeying the directions of a man with a whistle.

男孩子们按带哨子的男人的指示四处奔跑。

I took the advice of a couple I met on the train and hired a car.

我听从了在火车上遇见的一对夫妇的建议,租了一辆小汽车。

2 除了上述 A 中所列的名词外,无生命的拥有者也要用 of+名词结构表示: the walls of the town 城市的城墙

the roof of the church 教堂的屋顶

the keys of the car 小汽车的钥匙

然而名词 1+of+名词 2 常常可以用名词 2+名词 1 来代替: the town walls 城市的城墙 the church roof 教堂的屋顶

the car keys 小汽车的钥匙

这时第一个名词变成了一种形容词,不用复数形式: the roofs of the church=the church roofs 教堂的屋顶(参见第 16 节。)但名词+of+名词结构不能都用这种方法来代替,在没有把握的情况下最好还是用 of 结构。

16 复合名词

A 这些例子有: 1 名词+名词: 'London' Transport 伦敦公交公司

- 'Fleet Street 舰队街(伦敦的报馆街)
- 'Tower' Bridge (伦敦泰晤士河上的) 塔楼桥
- ′hall door 大厅的门
- ′ traffic warden 交通管理员
- / petrol tank 汽油桶,汽油罐
- 'hitch-hiker 沿路搭便车的人,搭顺风车的人
- ′ sky-jacker 劫机者
- 'river bank 河岸,江岸
- ′kitchen′table 厨房用的桌子

- ' winter' clothes 冬季服装
- **2** 名词+动名词: 'fruit picking 摘水果
- ′lorry driving 开运货汽车
- ′ coal—mining 采煤
- ' weight-lifting 举重
- ′bird-watching观察/研究鸟类
- ′ surf-riding 冲浪运动
- 3 动名词+名词: / waiting list 等候者名单
- ′ diving—board 跳板
- ′ driving licence 驾驶执照
- / landing card 登陆卡
- ′ dining-room 餐厅, 食堂
- ′ swimming pool 游泳池
- B 这些组合可用在: 1 当第二个名词属于第一个名词或是它的一部分时: 'shop'window商店橱窗
- ' picture frame 镜框
- 'college 'library 大学图书馆
- ′ church bell 教堂的钟
- ′garden′gate 花园的大门
- ' gear lever 变速杆

但是一些表示数量的名词不能这样用,如 lump (块),part (部分),piece (块),slice (薄片) 等: a piece of cake 一块蛋糕

- a slice of bread 一片面包
- 2 第一个名词能表明第二个名词的地点时: 'city'street 城市街道
- ′ corner shop 拐角处的商店
- ′country′lane 乡间小路
- ' street ' market 街市
- 3 第一个名词能表明第二个名词的时间时: ' summer' holiday 暑假
- 'Sunday' paper 星期日报纸
- ' November' fogs 11 月的雾季
- 'spring'flowers春天的花
- ′dawn′chorus 黎明的合唱
- 4 第一个名词能够说明第二个名词是由什么物质制成的时: ' steel' door 钢门
- ' rope' ladder 绳梯
- 'gold'medal 金质奖章
- ' stone' wall 石砌的墙
- ' silk' shirt 丝绸衬衫

Wool(羊毛)和 Wood(木材)在这种组合中并不这样使用,而是用它们的形容词形式 woolen 和 wooden。gold(金子)的形容词形式是 golden,但这种形式只用于象征或比喻的意义: a golden handshake 一次性退休金 / 退役金,(大笔的)解雇金

a golden opportunity 绝好的机会,良机

golden hair 金发

第一个名词可以说明向第二个名词提供能量的燃料时: 'gas' fire 煤气暖炉

'petrol engine 汽油发动机

- ' oil' stove 煤油炉
- 5 第一个名词能表示第二个名词的目的或用途时: / coffee cup 咖啡杯
- 'escape hatch (危急时逃生用的)安全门
- ' chess board 棋盘
- ' reading lamp 台灯
- 'skating rink 滑冰场
- 'tin opener 启罐头器
- ′golf club 高尔夫球棒
- 'notice board 布告牌
- ′ football ground 足球场
- 6 可将所生产的产品名放在工作场所如工厂、农场、矿山等前面时: 'fish-farm 养鱼场
- / gold-mine 金矿
- ′oil-rig 石油钻塔

或是可以把工作模式放在前面时: 'inspection pit 检修坑

- 'assembly plant 装配厂
- ¹ decompression chamber 降压室 / 舱
- 7 常常用来表示职业、运动、业余爱好以及从事这些活动的人们时: / sheep farming 养羊
- ' sheep farmer 牧羊人
- pop singer 流行歌手
- ′ wind surfing 帆板运动
- ′ water skier 滑水者
- ′ disc jockey 听众点播歌曲节目主持人

表示竞争性的活动时也可这样使用: 'football match 足球赛

- ′ tennis tournament 网球锦标赛
- ' beauty contest 选美会
- ′ car rally 汽车拉力赛,公路赛车
- 8 第一个名词能表明第二个名词是关于什么的时也可这样使用。一本小说可以是 a'detective / murder / mystery / ghost / horror / spy story(一本侦探 / 谋杀案 / 神秘 / 鬼怪 / 恐怖 / 间谍小说)。人们可能买'bus / train / plane tickets(公共汽车 / 火车 / 飞机票)。人们可以付'fuel / laundry / milk / telephone bills(燃料 / 洗衣 / 牛奶 / 电话费),'entry fees(入场费),'income tax(所得税),'carinsurance(汽车保险费),'water rates(自来水费),'parkingfines(违章停车罚款)。
- 带 committees,departments,talks,conferences 等的复合名词也是这样: ' housing comittee 住房委员会
- ' education department 教育部
- / peace talks 和谈
- 9 这些分类在某种程度上是互相重叠的。这样分类的目的不是表示它们互相抵触,而目的在于给学生一些有关这些组合用法的概念,并帮助他们掌握好重读(有'号的音节或词在组合中重读)。
- C 从上面所标的重音符号可以看出: 1 当存在目的这一概念时,如 B5、B7 和 B8 类型的名词+动名词和动名词+名词结构中第一个词要重读。
- 2 在上面 A1、B1-3 类型的组合中,通常两个词都要重读。当然也有例外情况。
- 3 在地名的组合中,两个词通常都要重读: 'King's 'Road (伦敦) 英皇道
- ′ Waterloo ′ Bridge (伦敦泰晤士河上的) 滑铁卢大桥

'Leicester' Square(伦敦)莱切斯特广场

但有一个重要的例外,如组合中后面一个词是 street (街道) 时 street 这个词不重读: '

Bond Street(伦敦) 邦德大街

'Oxford Street(伦敦)牛津大街

第三章 形容词

17 形容词的类别

A 形容词主要有以下几类: (a) 指示形容词: this 这个 that 那个 these 这些 those 那些(参见第9节。)

- (b) 个体形容词: each 各个 every 每个(参见第 46 节。)
- either (两者之中) 任一 neither (两者)都不 (参见第 49 节。)
- (c) 数量形容词: some 一些 any 任何 no 没有(参见第50节。)

little 很少(不可数) few 很少(可数)(参见第5节。)

many 许多(可数) much 许多(不可数)(参见第 25 节。)

one 一个 twenty 二十 (参见第 349 节。)

- (d) 疑问形容词: which 哪一个 what 什么 whose 谁的(参见第54节。)
- (e) 所有格形容词: my 我的 your 你的

his 他的 her 她的 its 它的

our 我们的 your 你们的 their 他(她,它)们的

(f) 性质形容词: clever 聪明的 dry 干的

fat 胖的 golden 金色的

good 好的 heavy 重的

square 方的

B 分词当形容词用

现在分词(ing 形式)和过去分词(ed 形式)都可以当形容词用。

用这类词时要小心,切勿互相搞混。现在分词作形容词时(如 amusing 有趣的,boring 无聊的,tiring 使人疲倦的等)是主动语态,指产生某种效果或感触。过去分词作形容词时(如 amused 感到有趣,horrified 感到恐怖,tired 感到疲倦等)是被动语态,指所受影响是怎样的。

The play was boring. (The audience was bored.)

这场演出没意思。(观众感到没意思。)

The work was tiring. (The workers were soon tired.)

这是一项繁重的工作。(工人们很快就累了。)

The scene was horrifying. (The spectators were horrified.)

这场面太恐怖了。(旁观者都感到毛骨悚然。)

an infuriating woman (She made us furious.)

一位使人发怒的女人(她使我们发怒。)

an infuriated woman (Something had made her furious.)

一位被激怒了的女人(某事使她发怒。)

C 一致关系

英语中形容词只有一种形式。名词不分单复数或阴阳性,都与这种形容词连用: a good boy

一个好男孩

good boys 几个好男孩

a good girl 一个好女孩

good girls 几个好女孩

唯一的例外是指示形容词 this 和 that。它们和复数名词连用时变为 these 和 those: this cat 这只猫

these cats 这些猫

that man 那个男人

those men 那些男人

D 在许多形容词和分词后可跟介词: good at 等于

tired of 对 …… 感到疲倦 (参见第 96 节。)

18 形容词作定语和表语时的位置

A上面(a)-(e)节里形容词出现在名词之前: this book 这本书

which boy 哪个男孩

my dog 我的狗

这种形容词叫定语形容词。

B表示质量的形容词既可以位于名词之前: a rich man 富翁

a happy girl 快乐的女孩

也可以位于动词之后,如(a)中 be(是), become(成为), seem(好像)之后: Tom became rich.

汤姆变阔了。

Ann seems happy.

安看上去很高兴。

或(b)中 appear (似乎是),feel (感觉 / 摸上去),get / grow (=be-come 变成),keep (保持),look (=appear 看),make (使),smell (闻起来),sound (听来),taste (尝起来),turn (变为)等之后: Tom felt cold.

汤姆感觉很冷。

He got / grew impatient.

他不耐烦了。

He made her happy.

他使她幸福。

The idea sounds interesting.

这个想法听起来很有趣。

可有这种用法的形容词叫表语形容词,而可有这种用法的动词叫连系动词或系动词。

C 连系动词的注意事项(参见第 169 节)

在上面的 B(b) 项中存在一个问题,那就是:不把这些动词当做连系动词用时,它们可按通常方法被副词所修饰。常用副词代替形容词修饰连系动词的同学就是因为被这个问题搞混了。下面列举一些形容词和副词的说法,以便帮助区别它们的用法: He looked calm (形容词). 相当于: He had a calm expression.

他看上去很冷静。

He looked calmly (副词) at the angry crowd.

他冷静地望着激怒的人群。(looked 在这里是有意识的行动。)

She turned pale (形容词). 相当于: She became pale.

她脸色变白了。

He turned angrily (副词) to the man behind him.

他生气地转向站在他后面的那个男人。(turned 在这里是有意识的行动。)

The soup tasted horrible (形容词).

汤的味道尝起来很糟。(汤的味道很糟。)

He tasted the soup suspiciously (副词)

他怀疑地尝着汤。(tasted 是有意识的行动。)

D 有些形容词或只能当修饰语用,或只能当表语用。有些则因句中位置不同而有不同的意思: bad sailor 晕船的人

good swimmer 游泳好的人

big eater 食量大的人

small farmer 小农场主

heavy drinker 饮酒多的人,酒鬼

light sleeper 睡眠易惊醒的人

old boy / friend / soldier 校友(老同学) / 老朋友 / 老兵(老资格)等当中的 bad(坏的) / good(好的),big(大的) / small(小的),heavy(重的) / light(轻的)和 old(旧的)当表语用时,其意思必有改变:a small farmer 是指拥有一个很小的农场的农场主,但是

The farmer is small 是指这个农场主身材矮小。

在其他用法中,上面的形容词可放在名词之前,也可放在名词之后。(有关 little 小的、old 老的及 young 年轻的,参见第 19 节 B。)

chief(主要的), main(主要的), principal(首要的), sheer(真正的,全然的)及 utter(绝对的,完全的)这些词要放在名词之前。frightened(惊恐的)可放在名词之前,也可放在名词之后,但 afraid(害怕)和 upset(心绪烦乱的)必须跟在动词后面。

adrift (飘浮着), afloat (飘着), alike (相同) (参见第 21 节 G), alive (活着的), alone (单独), ashamed (感到羞耻), asleep (睡着了)等也必须放在动词后面。

early(早)和 late(晚)的意思常要取决于它们所在的位置: anearly / a late train 早班 / 晚班车,意思是火车的发车早晚是按时刻表安排所定的。The train is early / late(火车提前到了 / 来晚了)意思是火车比规定的时间到得早或晚。poor(穷)意为"没有足够的钱"时可位于名词之前,也可置于动词之后。poor 意

为"不幸的,可怜的"时必须居名词之前。poor 意为"柔弱的 / 不足的"时,位于名词 student (学生),worker (工人)等之前,但是与无生命的名词连用时既可居于名词之前也可置于 动词之后: He has poor sight.

他的视力不好。

His sight is poor.

他的视力不好。

E and 的用法

当名词前有两个或两上以上的形容词时, and 主要用于表示颜色的场合中。这时 and 应放在最后一个形容词的前面: a green and brown carpet 一块绿棕色相间的地毯

a red, white and blue flag 一面红、白、蓝三色旗

与表语形容词一起使用时 and 放在最后两个形容词之间: The day was cold, wet and windy. 天气寒冷、潮湿而且有风。

19 质量形容词的次序

A 两个或两个以上质量形容词连用时,其次序有几种变化,不过通常按照下面的先后次序排列:(a)形体大小(除 little,但参见下面 C)

- (b) 一般描述(不包括表示人物性格和感情等的形容词)
- (c) 年龄和形容词 little (参见 B)
- (d) 形状
- (e) 颜色
- (f) 材料
- (g) 来源
- (h) 目的(这些实际上是用于组成复合名词的动名词,如 walk—ing stick 散步用的手杖,riding boots 马靴)

例子如: a long sharp knife 一把长的快刀

a small round bath 一个圆形小澡盆

new hexagonal coins 新的六边形硬币

blue velvet curtains 蓝丝绒窗帘

an old plastic bucket 一只旧塑料桶

an elegant French clock 一台雅致的法国座钟

表示人物性格 / 感情的形容词应放在表示身体形状的形容词如 dark (肤色黝黑的), fair (白肤金发的), pale (肤色苍白的)之后, 但是应放在表示肤色的形容词之前: a small suspicious official 一位身材矮小、怀疑心重的官员

a long patient queue 排着长队、耐心等待的人们

a pale anxious girl 一位面色苍白、急躁不安的女孩

a kindly black doctor 一位好心的黑人医生

an inquisitive brown dog 一条好奇的褐色小狗

B little (小的), old (老的) 和 young (年轻的) 常与名词及形容词连用,而并不是独立地提供一种信息,这时它们要紧挨在它们所

修饰的名词前: Your nephew is a nice little boy.

你的侄子是个很可爱的小男孩。

That young man drives too fast.

那年轻人车开得太快了。

little+old+名词是可行的: a little old lady 一位矮小的老太太

但 little+young 是不行的。

用于提供信息时,old 和 young 的位置如上面(c)所述: a young coloured man 一位年轻的有色种人

an old Welsh harp 一架老的威尔士竖琴

表示人物和感情的形容词可放在 young / old 的前面也可放在后面: a young ambitious man 一位有雄心的年轻人

an ambitious young man 一位有雄心壮志的青年

young 在前一个例子中的语气要比在后一个例子中更强烈,所以如果要想强调年龄时,采用第一个例子的语序比较好。

little 同样也可以用在(c)的位置: a handy little calculator 轻便的小计算器 an expensive little hotel 一家昂贵的小旅店

a little sandy beach 一个多沙的小海滩

a little grey foal 一头灰色的小马驹

但是如要强调形体大小,一般用 small 要比用 little 好。

(关于 little 意为"小量的",参见第 5 节。)

C fine (好的), lovely (可爱的), nice (优美的), beautiful (漂亮的)+表示形体 (除 little)、形状和温度的形容词,常常表示赞许。假如说 a beautiful big room (一个漂亮的大房间), a lovelywarm house (一座可爱的、暖和的房子), nice / fine thick steaks (几块美味的厚牛排),则是在暗示喜欢大的房子、暖和的房子、厚牛排。

fine, lovely 和 nice 同样可以和别的一些形容词连用: fine strong coffee 很好的浓咖啡 a lovely quiet beach 可爱宁静的海滩

a nice dry day 舒适干燥的一天

当表语用时,这些词要用 and 隔开: The coffee was fine and strong. 咖啡好喝而且味浓。

The day was nice and dry.

这天舒服又干燥。

beautiful 当这个意义解时不常作表语形容词用。

D pretty(相当,很)后跟一个形容词而这两个词之间不用逗号时,它是一个表示程度的副词,意为 very(非常) / quite(相当): She's a pretty tall girl 意为这女孩的个头相当高。但 a tall,pretty girl 常指这女孩不仅个高而且长得漂亮。

20 形容词的比较等级

A 形容词的比较分三级: B 单音节形容词在构成比较级和最高级时,在该词原级词尾分别添加 er 和 est: brightbrighter brightest

以字母 e 结尾的形容词分别添加 r 和 st: brave braver bravest

C三个或三个以上音节的形容词在构成比较级和最高级时,在

该词原级前分别加副词 more 和 most: interested ?more interested?most interested frightening?more frightening most frightening

D 双音节形容词按上述两条规则之一变化。以 ful 或 re 结尾的词通常添加 more 和 most: doubtful more doubtful most doubtful

obscure more obscure most obscure

以 er, y 或 ly 结尾的通常加 er 和 est: clever cleverer cleverest

pretty prettier prettiest (注意 y 变成 i)

silly sillier silliest

E 不规则的变化有: bad ?worseworst

farfartherfarthest (只指距离)

further ?furthest (用处较广;参见 F, G)

good?better ?best

little less least

many / much?more most

oldelder eldest (仅指人)

older oldest (指人和物)

F farther / farthest 和 further / furthest

这些形式都可以指距离: York is farther/further than Lincoln or Selby.

约克要比林肯市或赛尔比市远。

York is the farthest / furthest town.

约克是(离这里)最远的城市。

Yhrk is the farthest / furthest of the three.

约克是三个城市中(离这里)最远的一个。

(在最后一个句子中 farthest / furthest 是代名词。参见第 **24** 节 **B**。)further 同样可以指"另外的/更多的",主要和抽象名词一起用:Further supplies will soon be available. 很快会得到更多的供应。

Further discussion/debate would be pointless.

继续讨论 / 辩论是无意义的。

同理: further enquiries/delays/demands / information / instructions

进一步(或更多的)询问/耽搁/要求/报导/指示

furthest 同样可以和抽象名词连用来表示"最远的": This was the furthest point they reached in their discussion.

他们在讨论中最远就谈到这里。

This was the furthest concession he would make.

这是他肯做出的最大的让步。

(这四个词作副词的用法,参见第32节。)

G far 和 near (用于指距离)

与比较级和最高级连用时用法都较为灵活: the farthest / furthest mountain 最远的山 the nearest river 最近的一条河

这两个形容词的原级用法比较有限。

far 和 near 主要和 bank (河岸), end (端,头), side (边), wall (墙)等连用: the far bank 河对岸,彼岸

the near bank 你所在的一边的河岸,此岸

near 还可以和 east (东边) 一起用构成 the Near East (近东),

far 可以和 north,south,east 以及 west 一起连用构成 the farnorth(极北地带),the far south(极南的地方),the Far East(远东)以及 the far west(极西部地带)等。

和其他名词连用时 far 常常被 distant(远方的) / remote(遥远的)所代替, near 常被 nearby (附近的) / neighbouring(邻近的)所代替: a remote island(遥远的岛屿),the neighbouring vil—lage(邻村)。关于 far 的副词用法参见第 32 节,关于 near 的副词或介词用法参见第 30 节 C。

Helder, eldest; older, oldest

elder 和 eldest 主要表示的是长幼顺序而非年龄大小。主要用于表示家庭成员之间的长幼关系,如 my elder brother(我的兄长 / 哥哥),her eldest boy / girl(她的长子 / 长女)。

但在 than 前不能用 elder,只能用 older:He is older than I am.

他比我年龄大。

英语口语中 eldest, oldest 和 youngest 在只有两个男孩 / 女孩 / 孩子等时也经常使用: His eldest boy's at school; the other is still at home.

他的大儿子在上学,另一个还呆在家里。

eldest 和 oldest 作代词时,也可以这样用在应当使用比较级的地方: Tom is the eldest. (两人中的) 汤姆是长子。(参见第 24 节 B。)

21 各种表示比较的句子结构

(另参见第341节。)

A 形容词的原级可与 as…as 连用表示"和……同样……",与 not as / so…as 连用表不"不如……那样……": A boy of sixteen is often as tall as his father.

一个 16 岁的男孩常常长得和他父亲一样高。

He was as white as a sheet.

他面色苍白如纸。

Manslaughter is not as/so bad as murder.

杀人罪没有谋杀罪那么重。

Your coffee is not as / so good as the coffee my mother makes.

你煮的咖啡不如我母亲煮的好。

B 形容词比较级可与 than 连用: The new tower blocks are much higher than the old buildings.

新建的塔楼群比旧楼房要高得多。

He makes fewer mistakes than you (do).

他犯的错比你少。

He is stronger than I expected.

他长得要比我想像的结实。相当于: I didn't expect him to be so strong.

我没想到他长得这么壮。

It was more expensive than I thought.

这比我预料的昂贵多了。相当于: I didn't think it would be so expensive.

我没想到它会有这么贵。

如省略 than…时,英语口语中常用最高级代替比较级: This is the best way.

这是最好的办法。

在只有两种选择时也可用这种表示方法。

(参见用做代词的形容词的比较级、最高级,第24节B。)

C 三个或三个以上的人或物进行比较时,以最高级与 the…in / of 结构连用的方式来表达:

This is the oldest theatre in London.

这是伦敦最古老的剧院。

The youngest of the family was the most successful.

全家年龄最小的是最有成就的。

关系从句中经常使用完成时态: It / This is the best beer (that) I have ever drunk.

这是我所喝过的最好的啤酒。

It / This was the worst film (that) he had ever seen.

这是他所看过的电影中最差的一部。

He is the kindest man (that) I have ever met.

他是我遇到过的最仁厚的人。

It was the most worrying day (that) he had ever spent.

这是他度过的最烦恼的日子。

注意: 这里用的是 ever 而不是 never; 然而可以把 never 与比较级连用来表示同一概念: I have never drunk better beer.

我从来没喝过这么好的啤酒。

I have never met a kinder man.

我从来没遇见过这么仁厚的人。

He had never spent a more worrying day.

他从来没有度过这样烦恼的日子。

注意: most+形容词 (most 前不加 the) 意为"非常": You are most kind. 相当于: You are very kind.

你很好心。

意为"非常"的 most 主要和双音节或多音节形容词连用,如: annoying (令人烦恼的), apologetic (歉意的), disobedient (不服从的), encouraging (令人鼓舞的), exciting (兴奋的), helpful (有帮助的), important (重要的), misleading (误导的)等。

D 要表达两个事物彼此相应增长时可用 the+比较级····the+ 比较级这种结构: House Agent: Do you want a big house?

房地产经纪人: 你想买一栋大房子吗?

Ann: Yes, the bigger the better.

安: 是的, 越大越好。

Tom: But the smaller it is, the less it will cost us to heat.

汤姆:可是,房子越小,花的取暖费就越少。

E 一个事物的逐渐增长或减少用两个由 and 连接的比较级表示: The weather is getting colder and colder.

天气越来越冷了。

He became less and less interested.

他越来越不感兴趣。

F用动名词或动词不定式对行为进行比较: Riding a horse is not as easy as riding a motor cycle.

骑马不像骑摩托那么容易。

It is nicer/more fun to go with someone than to go alone.

偕伴同去比自己独自去好玩。

(参见第341节。)

G 原级与 like (相似,介词)和 alike 连用的结构: Tom is very like Bill.

汤姆长得很像比尔。

Bill and Tom are very alike.

贝尔和汤姆长得很像。

He keeps the central heating full on. It's like living in the tropics.

他把暖气开到最大。就好像住在热带一样。

H 原级与 like 和 as 连用(下面列举几个副词和形容词的句子)从理论上讲 like(介词)只能与名词、代词和动名词连用: He swims like a fish.

他游起泳来像条鱼。

You look like a ghost.

你都不像人样了。

Be like Peter / him: go jogging.

像彼得/他那样:去慢跑吧。

The windows were all barred. It was like being in prison.

窗子都用铁棒封住了。就像住在监狱里一样。

as (连词)与动词连用的结构: Do as Peter does: go jogging.

像彼得那样:去慢跑吧。

Why don't you cycle to work as we do?

你干嘛不像我们这样骑车上班?

但在英语口语中,这些地方常用 like 代替 as: Cycle to work like we do.

像我们一样骑车上班。

I like+名词和 as+名词结构: He worked like a slave.

他像奴隶一样地干活。(非常劳累)

He worked as a slave.

他作为奴隶干活。(他是奴隶。)

She used her umberlla as a weapon.

她拿伞当武器。(她用伞打他。)

22 than / as+代词+助动词

A 当 than 或 as 的前后所用的动词相同时,常可以用助动词代替第二个动词: I earn less than he does.

我比他钱挣得少。

主句与从句中的动词不必使用同一时态: He knows more than I did at his age.

他要比我在他这个年龄时懂得多。

B 如从句由 than / as+I / we / you+动词组成而时态并无变化时,常常将动词省略: I' m not as old as you (are).

我没有你年龄大。

He has more time than I/we (have).

他的时间比我/我们多。

正规英语中 as / than 后仍使用 I / we,因为动词虽被省略,代词仍被看做是动词的主语,因此仍用主格。但在非正式英语中,me / us 更常用:He had more time than me. 他比我时间多。

They are richer than us.

他们比我们富有。

C 如 than / as 后跟 he / she / it+动词,常常保留动词: You are stronger than he is. 你比他强壮。

但在极正式的英语中,可以用 he / she / they 而免去动词。在非常口语化的英语中可用 him / her / them 而免去动词。

这些规则也适用于副词比较级: I swim better than he does/better than him.

我游泳比他好。

They work harder than we do/harder than us.

他们比我们干得卖劲。

You can't type as fast as I can/as fast as me.

你打字不如我快。

23 the+形容词

Ablind (失明的), deaf (聋的), disabled (残废的), healthy (健康的) / sick (病弱的),

living(活的) / dead(死的), rich(富有的) / poor(贫穷的),unemployed(失业的) 以及其他某些说明人的性格或状态的形容词,前面加 the 时可以代表一类人。这

一表达方式具有复数含义,所以动词也用复数形式,代词则用 they: The poor get poorer; the rich get richer.

穷者愈穷; 富者愈富。

the+表示国籍的以 ch 或 sh 结尾的形容词也是同样用法: the Dutch 荷兰人

the Spanish 西班牙人

the Welsh 威尔士人

以 se 或 ss 结尾的表示国籍的形容词也可以这样用: the Burmese 缅甸人

the Chinese 中国人

the Japanese 日本人

the Swiss 瑞士人

但这些表达方式也有可能是单数的意思。

B 注意: the+形容词只是泛指某一类人, 假如要特指某一部分人, 则必须加名词: These seats are for the disabled.

这些座位供残疾人坐。

The disabled members of our party were let in free.

我们一伙中的残疾人是免费入场的。

The French like to eat well.

法国人很讲究吃。

The French tourists complained about the food.

法国旅客抱怨食物不好。

一些表示颜色的形容词后加上 s 作复数名词用时也代表一类人: the blacks 黑人

the whites 白人

C the+形容词偶尔也有单数含义: the accused (person) 被告人

the unexpected (thing) 意外的事

24 形容词+one / ones 和形容词作代词

A 大多数形容词可以和代词 one(单数) / ones(复数)连用,这时 one / ones 代表前面已经提到过的名词: Don't buy the expensive apples; get the cheaper ones.

别买那价钱贵的苹果, 买那便宜的。

Hard beds are healthier than soft ones.

硬板床比软床有利于健康。

I lost my old camera; this is a new one.

我的旧相机丢了;这是一架新的。

数词+形容词也可以带 one / ones: If you haven't got a big plate, two small ones will do. 如果没有大盘子,两个小盘也行。

B 形容词作代词

first(第一) / second(第二)等可以和 one / ones 连用,也可以不和 one / ones 连用,即它们既可以作形容词又可以作代词: —Which train did you catch?

- —I caught the first (one).
- 一你赶上了哪班车?
- 一我赶上了头班车。

the+最高级也可以同样使用: Tom is the best (runner).

汤姆是(跑得)最棒的。

The eldest was only ten.

最大的才十岁。

有时 the+比较级也可以这样用: Which (of these two) is the stronger?

(这两个之中)哪一个更强壮?

比较级的这种用法被认为更有书面英语的味道,在非正式英语中我们常用最高级来替代:

Which (of these two) is the strongest?

(两者中)哪个是最强壮的?

表示颜色的形容词有时可用做代词: I like the blue (one) best.

我最喜欢蓝色的 (那一个)。

表示马的颜色的词,特别是 bay(红棕色的)、chestnu(栗色的),grey(灰色的),常当代词用,词尾加上 s 时表示复数: Everyone expected the chestnut to win.

大家都预期那匹栗色的马能获胜。

The coach was drawn by four greys.

大马车由四匹灰色的马拉着。

25 many 和 much 的用法(作形容词和代词)

A many 和 much

many (形容词) 用在可数名词之前。

much (形容词) 用在不可数名词之前。

He didn't make many mistakes.

他没犯多少错。

We haven't much coffee.

家里的咖啡不多了。

many 和 much 的比较级和最高级形式相同,都是 more 和 most: more mistakes / coffee 更多的错误 / 咖啡

most men / damage 几乎全部的男士 / 几乎所有的损害

many, much, more, most 可作代词使用: He gets a lot of letters but she doesn't get many. 他收到的信很多,可她的信不多。

You have a lot of free time but I haven't much.

你有许多空闲时间,可我没有。

more 和 most 的用法较灵活,many 和 much 在否定动词后面用得比较多(见上文的例子),但 many 和 much 在肯定动词和疑问动词后用法较受限制。

B many 和 much 与肯定动词连用

many 前加上 a good / great 时可与肯定动词连用。many 与 much 用 so / as/too 修饰时也可以与肯定动词连用。

I made a good many friends there.

我在那里交了许多朋友。

He has had so many jobs that.

他做过了这么多种工作,以致……

She read as much as she could.

她尽量多读书。

They drink too much (gin).

他们(杜松子酒)喝得太多了。

many 是宾语或宾语的一部分而前面不加任何修饰语时,常常被 a lot/lots of(+名词)或 a lot, lots(代词)代替。much 是宾语或宾语的一部分时常常被 a great / good deal of(+名词)或 agreat / good deal(代词)代替: I saw a lot / lots of seabirds. I expect you saw a lot too.

我看到了许多海鸟。想必你也看到了许多。

He spends a lot / lots of/a great deal of money on his house.

他在房子上花很多钱。

既可以用 many 也可以用 a lot (of) 作主语或作主语的一部分,

但这里的 much 通常由其他形式代替。

但 much 在正规英语中是允许这样用的: Much will depend on what the minister says.

很多事要取决于部长怎么说。

试将肯定句和否定句作一比较: He hasn't won many races.

他没有赢过几次比赛。

You've won a lot / lots of races. / You've won a lot. / You've won a greatmany(races). 你赢过多次比赛。

He didn't eat much fruit.

他没有吃多少水果。

She ate a lot/lots / a great deal of fruit. / She ate a lot / a great deal.

她吃了大量的水果。

C many 和 much 与疑问动词连用

两者前都可加 how: How many times?

多少次?

How much?

多少?

在不用 how 的问句中, many 也可使用。如预期得到的是肯定的回答,则最好使用 a lot(of): Did you take a lot of photos? I expect you did.

你拍了许多照片吗?我想你拍了。

用 much 时不加 how 是可行的,但其他的几种用法更常见: Did you have a lot of snow/much snow last year?

去年你们那儿雪下得多吗?

(关于 much 作副词的用法,参见第 33 节。)

26 形容词+动词不定式

A 下面将一些最常用的可与动词不定式连用的形容词按词义或类型大概分类。一些多义形容词可在不同类里重复出现。

(关于形容词+介词,参见第96节。)

带星号的形容词也可与 that 从句连用,有时 that…should 更常见。(参见第 236 节。)在 B—E 节中(除去 B2 节外)句子用 it 引导的结构。(参见第 67 节。)如果 it+be…前的动词是 find(发现) / think(想) / be—lieve(相信)等,有时可将 that 及动词 be 省略: He found that it was impossible to study at home. 相当于: He found it impossible to study at home.

他觉得不可能在家学习。

B1 it+be+形容词(+of+宾语)+动词不定式结构主要与下列各类形容词连用:(a)表示性格的有: brave(勇敢的),careless(粗心的),cow—ardly(怯懦的),cruel(残酷的),generous(大方的),good(好的),nice(=kind 善良的),mean(吝啬的,卑鄙的),rude(粗鲁的),selfish(自私的),wicked(邪恶的),wrong(不对的)等。与否定动词或疑问动词连用的有: fair*(公正的)/just* (正义的)/right*(对的)。

(b) 表示智能的有: clever (聪明的), foolish (愚蠢的), idiotic* (呆痴的), intelligent (有才智的), sensible (有见识的), silly (傻的), stupid (愚蠢的)。

此外, **absurd***(荒谬的),**ludicrous***(荒唐的),**ridiculous***(滑稽的)和 **unreasonable***(不合理的)有时也可这样使用。

It was kind of you to help him.

你帮助了他,真好心。

It was stupid (of them) to leave their bicycles outside.

(他们) 真傻,居然把自行车放在外面了。

- (b) 组形容词后的 of+宾语结构可省略。有时该结构在(a) 组形容词后也可省去,但 good 和 nice 除外。(后二者如果省略 of+宾语则会改变 good 和 nice 的意义。参见 E。)
- 2 代词+be+形容词+名词+动词不定式既可以与上面的形容词连用,又可以与下列形容词连用: astonishing*(令人惊讶的), curious*(奇怪的), extraordinary*(不寻常的), funny*(=strange*稀奇的), odd*(怪的), queer*(怪的), surpris—ing*(令人惊讶的)等。此外还有 pointless(无意义的), useful(有用的)和 useless(无用的)也可以这样使用。

It was a sensible precaution to take.

这样预防一下是明智的。

That was a wicked thing to say.

说那种话太恶劣了。

这种评价式的话有时可用惊叹句来表达: What a funny way to park a car!

这样停车好怪!

What an odd time to choose!

选的时间多怪!

有时在一些表示不赞成的句子中, 形容词可以省略: What a (silly) way to bring up a child! 怎么用这种(愚蠢的)方法带孩子!

What a time to choose!

怎么选了这么个时间!

that 从句的例句如: It is strange/odd / surprising that he hasn't answered.

真是奇怪/古怪/令人惊讶,他怎么没回音。

C it+be+形容词+动词不定式结构中可以用下列词: advisable*(合意的), inadvisable*(不可取的), better*(较好的), best (最好的), desirable*(可取的), essential*(必要的), good(好的,可取的), important*(重要的), necessary*(必要的), un—necessary*(不必要的), vital*(非常重要的)。也可以用 only+fair*(公平的)/just*(合理的)/right*(对的)。

例句如: —Wouldn't it be better to wait?

- —No, It's essential to book in advance.
- 一等一等不更好吗?
- 一不行,必须预先订票。

可在除 good 以外的形容词后或在 just 后加 for+宾语,但在 good 后会改变其意思,见下文

E: It won't be necessary for him to report to the police.

他没必要去报告警察。

It is only fair for him to have a chance.

给他一次机会才是公平合理的。

inessential (非必要的)和 unimportant (不重要的)通常不这么用,但可以说 not essential。D it+be+形容词(+for+宾语)+动词不定式结构中可以用下列形容词: convenient*(便利的),dangerous (危险的),diffi—cult (困难的),easy (容易的),hard*(艰难的),possible*(可能的),impossible(做不到的),safe(安全的),unsafe(不安全的)。(关于 possible that 的用法参见第 27 节 E。)

Would it be convenient (for you) to see Mr X now?

(您) 现在见 X 先生方便吗?

It was dangerous (for women) to go out alone after dark.

(妇女们) 天黑以后单独出门是危险的。

We found it almost impossible to buy petrol.

我们发现几乎买不到汽油。(参见上面 A。)

上述形容词除 possible 之外,均可用于名词+be+形容词+动词不定式结构中: This cake is easy to make.

这蛋糕很容易做。

The instructions were hard to follow.

这指示很难遵从。

This car isn't safe to drive.

这辆车开起来不安全。

E it+be+形容词 / 分词+动词不定式可以和下列表示人物感情或反应的形容词及分词连用: agreeable (适意的), awful* (糟糕的), delightful* (令人愉快的), disagreeable (令人不愉快的), dreadful* (可怕的), good* / nice* (=pleasant 好的), horrible* (可怕的), lovely*(可爱的), marvellous*(奇妙的), splendid*(极好的), strange*(奇怪的), terrible* (可怕的), wonderful* (精彩的)。

还可用下列动词的现在分词形式: alarm*(使惊慌), amaze* (使惊奇), amuse*(使感到好玩), annoy*(使烦躁), astonish*(使惊讶), bewilder(使困惑), bore(使厌烦), depress*(使感到压抑), disappoint*(使失望), discourage*(使沮丧), dis—gust*(使感厌恶), embarrass(使窘迫), encourage*(鼓励), excite(使激动), frighten(惊恐), horrify*(使恐惧), interest*(使感兴趣), surprise*(使惊讶), terrify(使恐怖), upset(使心绪烦乱)。

名词 fun(使人高兴的经历)和 a relief(宽心的事)可与上述词同样用: It's awful to be alone in such a place.

独自呆在这种地方是够可怕的。

It's boring to do the same thing everyday.

每天干同一种工作是挺烦人的。

It was depressing to find the house empty.

发现屋里没人,令人心里很郁闷。

It would be fun / exciting/interesting to canoe down the river.

划小艇顺河而下是很好玩的 / 令人兴奋的 / 有趣的。

It was a relief to take off our wet boots.

脱掉我们的湿靴子是个解脱。

在 lovely (可爱的), interesting (有趣的), marvellous (极妙的), nice (好的), wonderful (精彩的) 等词之后加上 for+宾语结构是常见的, for+宾语结构也可用在其他形容词之后: It's interesting (for children) to see a house being built.

(孩子们)看造房子是挺有趣的事。

It was marvellous (for the boys) to have a garden to play in.

(男孩子们)能有个花园在里面玩耍,真是妙极了。

注意:如在 good 后面加上 for+宾语,则把 good 的意义限制在 healthy(有益健康的)/beneficial(有益处的)方面: It's good for you to take regular exercise.

经常锻炼对你的身体是有好处的。

(good+动词不定式既有这种含义,也有"愉快的"/"好心的"和"适当的"等意思,请 参见上面的 B 节与 C 节。)

it+be+形容词+名词+动词不定式结构也可和上述形容词

及分词连用: It was an exciting ceremony to watch.

观看这个仪式真叫人兴奋。

It was a horrible place to live (in).

住在那个地方可是够可怕的。

F 在主语+be+形容词+动词不定式结构中如用下列形容词: angry*(发怒的), delighted*(高兴的), dismayed*(沮丧的), glad*(高兴的), happy(幸福的), pleased*(欢喜), relieved*(放心), sad*(伤心), sorry*(抱歉的)及上面 E 节中的动词的过去分词形式, 可表示与上述相似的意思: I'm delighted to see you.

我见到你很高兴。

这里最常用的动词不定式有: to find(发现) / learn(得知) / hear(听说) / see(看到),但 glad(高兴) / happy(幸福) / sad(悲伤) / sorry(抱歉)等形容词后面也常常使用 to say(说) / tell(告诉) / inform(通知)及其他一些动词不定式: He was glad to leave school.

他很高兴不去上学了。

She was dismayed to find the door locked.

发现门是锁着的,她非常沮丧。

G 主语+be+形容词 / 分词+动词不定式结构中可用下列词: able (能够) / unable (不能够); apt (易于的), inclined (倾向于赞同),liable (有义务的 / 易于……的),prone (有……倾向的 / 易于受到……的); prepared (有准备的), not prepared (=notready, not willing, unwilling 没料到的,不情愿的),reluctant (勉强的); prompt (及时的),quick (迅速的),slow (慢的): We are all apt to make mistakes when we try to hurry. 我们想赶快把事办完时,都容易出错误。

I am inclined to believe him.

我倾向于相信他。

I am prepared / ready to help him.

我准备帮助他。

He was most reluctant to lend us the money.

他很不情愿把钱借给我们。

He was slow to realize that times had changed. 相当于: He realized only slowly that times had changed.

他慢慢地才认识到时代不同了。

27 形容词+动词不定式/that 从句/介词结构

A due, due to, owing to, certain, sure, bound, confident due 用于指时间,和动词不定式连用: The race is due to start in ten minutes.

还有十分钟赛马就该开始了。

但 due 也可以单独使用: The plane was due (in) at six. It is an hour overdue.

飞机应该是6点到,现在已误点一小时了。

due to (介词) 意为 "是······的结果", "由于······": The accident was due to carelessness. 这起车祸是由粗心造成的。

owing to 意为"由于······","因为······":Owing to his carelessness we had an accident. 由于他的粗心大意,我们出了车祸。

due to 必须置于主语+动词之后, 但英国人常常粗心大意地在句首应该使用 owing to 时错用了 due to。

certain 和 sure 与动词不定式连用,表达说话人的判断。bound 也可用在此处: Tom is certain/sure/bound to win.

汤姆肯定会赢。(说话人对此很有把握。)

但是主语+certain/sure+that 从句结构则表达主语的判断: Tom is sure that he will win. 汤姆确信他能获胜。(汤姆对于获胜有十分把握。)

confident that 如上面所说可代替 certain/sure that,但 confi—dent 不能放在动词不定式之前。

sure, certain, confident 均可放在 of+名词/代词或动名词之前: Unless you're early you can't be sure of getting a seat. 除非你早去,否则你不会有座位的。

bound 后面可跟动词不定式,但不能跟 that 从句。

bound+动词不定式也有"有义务做"的意思: According to the contract we are bound to supply the materials.

按照合同我们必须提供材料。

B afraid (of), ashamed (of), sorry (for/about)

afraid of, ashamed of, sorry for/about+名词/代名词或动名词的例子如: She is afraid of heights/of falling.

她怕登高/摔下来。

He was ashamed of himself(for behaving so badly)/ashamed of behavingso badly. 他为自己的无礼行为感到羞愧。

I'm sorry for breaking your window.

对不起,我打碎了你的窗户。(道歉)

I'm sorry about your window.

关于你的窗户的事我很抱歉。(道歉/懊悔)

I'm sorry for Peter.

我为彼得感到遗憾。(遗憾)

afraid, ashamed, sorry 均可位于动词不定式之前: She was afraid to speak.

她怕开口说话。(她没说话。)

I' d be ashamed to take his money.

我不好意思拿他的钱。(我没拿钱。)

I' m sorry to say that we have no news.

我很抱歉地告诉你, 我们没得到消息。

或位于 that 从句之前: I'm ashamed that I've nothing better to offer you.

我很不好意思, 我没有更好的东西送给你。

She's afraid (that) he won't believe her.

她怕他不信任她。(担心)

I' m afraid (that) we have no news.

恐怕没有消息。(懊悔)

I' m sorry (that) you can't come.

真遗憾, 你来不了。

(关于这三种结构意思上的区别,参见第 271 节。关于 I'mafraid not/so,参见第 347 节。) C anxious (about),anxious+动词不定式,anxious thatanxious(+about+名词/代名词) 意为"焦虑": I'm anxious (about Tom). His plane is overdue.

我很(为汤姆)着急。他乘的飞机误点了。

be anxious(+for+名词/代名词)+动词不定式意为"急欲/希望": I'm very anxious(for him)to see the Carnival.

我非常希望(他)去看狂欢节。

anxious+that···+should 结构可用于非常正式的英语中: The committee is anxious that this matter should be kept secret.

委员会切望这件事保密。

D fortunate (幸运的)和 lucky (运气好的)既可和 that 从句连用,也可和动词不定式连用。二者在意思上常有不同。

It is fortunate/lucky that…常常意为"……是件好事": It's lucky that Tom has a car. 真幸运,汤姆有一辆汽车。

It's lucky that he passed his test.

真幸运,他通过驾驶执照考试了。(现在他可以自己开车去火车站/带着孩子去海边了等。)It's lucky for us that he has a car.

他有一辆汽车是我们的运气。(他能让我们搭车。)

主语+be+fortunate/lucky+动词不定式结构仍然强调主语的好运气: He's lucky to have a car.

他真幸运有一辆汽车了。(许多人没有。)

He was lucky to pass his test.

真幸运,他通过考试了。(他实际没有达到所要求的水平。)

is/are+fortunate/lucky+动词不定式的现在式主要与静态动词连用,如前面是 was/were 或后面用的是动词不定式的进行式或完成式,动词的选择范围则较广泛: You were fortunate to escape unharmed.

你真幸运,毫发未伤地逃出来了。

You are lucky to be going by air.

你挺幸运的,能乘飞机走。

He is lucky to have sold his house before they decided to build the newairport.

他挺运气的, 在他们决定要修建新机场之前把房子卖了。

it is lucky(幸运)/unlucky(不幸运的)…结构中可用任何动词的不定式: It is unlucky to break a mirror.

打碎镜子是不吉利的。(会带来坏运气。)

fortunate(幸运的)和 unfortunate(不幸运的)不能用于此处,但可用于上述其他结构。

而且常用于较正规英语中。

下列形容词可单独使用或与一个名词连用: I wasn't luckv.

我不走运。

He's fortunate.

他挺幸运的。

Thirteen's my lucky number.

13 是我的吉祥数。

He's a fortunate man.

他是个幸运儿。

E possible (可能的),probable (很可能的) 和 likely (很可能的) 可与由 it 引导的 that 从句连用。likely 也可与主语+动词不定式结构连用:(a)lt's possible that he'll come today. 相当于:(b)Perhaps he'll come/He may come today.

今天他可能会来。

(a) It's probable that he'll come today. 相当于: (b) He'll probably come today. 今天他大概会来。

在上述的两种情况下,(b)形式要比(a)形式更为常见,但如果想对句中的形容词加以修饰,用 that 从句会更合宜: It's just/quite possible that...

很可能 ……

It's not very probable that...

不太可能 ……

以上两种形式对 likely 来讲是同样有用的: It's quite likely that hd'll come today. 相当于: He's quite likely to come today.

他今天很可能来。

is/are+主语+likely+动词不定式结构是非常有用的,因为它为 may 提供了一个疑问形式: Is he likely to ring today?

他今天是不是可能打电话来?

当所指的事情比较明显时,possible,probable,likely 后可不用 that 从句: —Do you think he'll sell his house?

- —It's quite possible/probable/likely (that he'll sell it).
- 一你觉得他会把房子卖掉吗?
- 一很可能(他会把房子卖掉)。

F aware (知道) 和 conscious (感觉到) 与 that 从句或 of+名词/代词或动名词结构连用:

- —It'll be dangerous.
- —I' m aware that It' ll be dangerous. /I' m aware of that.
- 一这将很危险。
- 一我知道这很危险。/我知道那一点。

I was conscious of being watched. 相当于: I felt that someone was watching me. 我意识到了有人在盯着我。

当 conscious 单独使用时,指身体的感觉: I had only a local anaesthetic. I was conscious the whole time.

我只作了局部麻醉。我一直是有知觉的。

第四章 副词

28 副词的类别

方式副词: bravely 勇敢的 fast 快 happily 愉快地 hard 艰难地 quickly 快 well 好(参见第 35 节。)

地点副词: by 近旁 down 下 here 这里 near 附近 there 那里 up 上 (参见第 36 节。)

时间副词: now 现在 soon 不久 still 仍然 then 那里 today 今天 yet 迄今(参见第 37 节。) 频度副词: always 总是 never 从不 occasionally 偶尔 often 时常 twice 两次(参见第 38 节。)

句子副词: certainly 当然 definitely 一定 luckily 幸运地 surely 谅必(参见第 40 节。)程度副词: fairly 相当 hardly 几乎不 rather 十分 quite 非常 too 也 very 很(参见第 41

节。)

疑问副词: when? 何时 where? 何地 why? 为何(参见第60节。)

关系副词: when 何时 where 何地 why 为何(参见第75节 E。)

形式与用法?

29 由 ly 构成的副词

A 许多方式副词和一些程度副词是由相应的形容词+ly 构成的: grave, gravely immediate, immediately

slow, slowly

拼写时应注意: (a) 词尾的 y 变为 i: happy, happily

(b) 词尾的 e 保留不变: extreme, extremely

例外情况: true, truly

due, duly

whole, wholly

- (c) 以 able/ible 结尾的形容词去掉词尾的 e 再加 y: capable, capably
- sensible, sensibly
- (d) 以元音+l 结尾的形容词按常例加 ly: beautiful, beautifully

final, finally

B 特殊情况

good 的副词形式是 well。

kindly 可作形容词也可作副词。除此以外,以 ly 结尾的形容词如 friendly, likely, lonely 等没有副词形式,为了弥补这一缺陷通常使用一个意义相似的副词或副词短语: likely(形容词) ?probably(副词) F

friendly (形容词) in a friendly way (副词短语)

C 一些副词与它们相应的形容词相比含义较窄,或意思不相同。coldly (冷酷地),coolly (冷淡),hotly (热情地),warmly (亲热地) 这些词主要用于表达感情方面: We received them coldly.

我们很冷淡地接待了他们。(不友好地)

They denied the accusation hotly.

他们激烈地驳斥这些谴责。(愤慨地)

She welcomed us warmly.

她向我们表示热烈欢迎。(友好地)

但是: warmly dressed 相当于 wearing clothes (穿着很暖和的衣服)。

coolly 相当于 calmly (冷静地)、courageously (勇敢地)或 impu—dently (无礼或不敬地):

He behaved very coolly in this dangerous situation.

在这个危险的处境中他表现得镇定自若。

presently (=soon 不久): He'll be here presently.

他马上就到这里。

(参见第 30 节 B; 关于 barely, scarcely 参见第 44 节; 关于 surely 参见第 40 节 A。)

30 词形相同的副词与形容词

A 下列常见的词既可是形容词,也可是副词: back ?hard*?little ?right*

deep*high*?long ?short*

direct* ill?low still

early ?just* much/more/most* ?straight

enough kindly?near*?well

far late* ?pretty*?wrong*

fast?left

*请参见本章 B 节。

作副词: ?作形容词: Came back soon. ?the back door

马上回来。?后门

You can dial Rome direct. ?the most direct route

你可以直拨罗马。 最直接的路线

The train went fast. a fast train

火车开得很快。 一列快车

They worked hard. The work is hard.

他们干得很卖劲。(精力旺盛地)?这是一项艰苦的工作。

an ill—made road ?You look ill/well.

修得很差的路?你气色不好/很好。

Turn right here. ?the right answer

从这里往右转。 正确答案

She went straight home. ?a straight line

她直接回家了。 一条直线

He led us wrong. ?This is the wrong way.

他给我们带错路了。 ?这种方法不对。

B 上述带星号的词也有 ly 形式,注意它们的意思。

deeply(深深地)主要用于表达感情: He was deeply offended.

他被深深地触怒了。

directly (直接) 主要用于时间和联系方面: He'll be here directly.

他马上就到。(马上)

The new regulations will affect us directly/indirectly.

新的规章制度直接/不直接影响我们。

(关于 hardly, 参见第 44 节。)

highly (高) 主要用于表示抽象概念: He was a highly paid official.

他是高薪官员。

They spoke very highly of him.

他们对他的评价很高。

justly(公正地)与形容词 just(意为 fair 公正的, right 正确的, lawful 合法的)相对应。 但 just 也可用为程度副词。(参见第 41 节。)

lately (=recently 最近): Have you seen him lately?

你最近看到过他吗?

mostly (=chiefly 主要地)

nearly (=almost 差不多): I' m nearly ready.

我差不多快好了。

prettily (漂亮地) 与形容词 pretty (美的) 相对应: Her little girls are always prettily dressed.

她的几个小女孩经常穿戴得很漂亮。

但 pretty 也可用为程度副词,意为 very(非常): The exam was pretty difficult. 考试相当难。

rightly 与一个过去分词连用,意为 justly (正当地) 或 correctly (正确地): He was rightly/justly punished.

他得到了正当的惩罚。

I was rightly/correctly informed.

我得到了正确的消息。

在这两种情况下,第二个副词比较常用。

shortly(=soon 很快,不久), briefly(简短地)或 curtly(三言两语地)

wrongly 可与一个过去分词连用: You were wrongly (incorrectly) informed.

你得到的消息不正确。

但 He acted wrongly (他做得不对) 意为他或是行为上或是道义上做得不对。

C long 和 near (副词)的用法比较受限制。

1 long

longer, longest 可以不受限制地使用: It took longer than I expected.

花得时间比我预料的长。

但 long 主要用于表示否定和疑问: —How long will it take to get there?

- —It won't take long.
- 一到那儿需要多长时间?
- 一没多长时间。

too/so+long 或 long+enough 结构可表示肯定语气。另外的办法是使用 a long time: It would take too long.

那样花时间太多了。

It would take a long time.

那样会需要很长时间。

在日常会话中(for)a long time 常被(for)ages 替代: I waited for ages. 我等了好长时间。

It took us ages to get there.

我们花了好长时间才到那儿。

2 near

nearer, nearest 也可以随意使用,不受限制: Don't come any nearer.

别再靠近了。

但 near 是原级时,常由 very/quite/so/too 或 enough 来修饰: They live quite near. 他/她们住得很近。

Don't come too near.

别太靠近。

You' re near enough.

你已经靠得够近了。

near 作介词与名词、代词或副词连用的情况更为普遍: Don't go near the edge. 别靠近边缘。

The ship sank near here.

船是在离这里不远的地方下沉的。

D far 和 much 的用法也有限。参见第 32 节和第 33 节。

31 比较级与最高级

A 双音节或多音节副词构成比较级时之前加 more,构成最高级时则加 most: 单音节副词以及副词 early 则在词尾加 er 与 est: hard harder hardest

early ?earlier ?earliest (注意 y 变为 i)

B 不规则变化: well better ?best

badly ?worse worst

little less least

muchmoremost

far farther farthest (仅用于指距离)

further?furthest (用法较广泛。参见第 32 节 A。)

32 far, farther/farthest 和 further/furthest 的用法

A further, furthest

这两个词同 farther/farthest 一样,可作表示地点、距离的副词用:It isn't safe to go any further/farther in this fog.

在这大雾里再往前走是不安全的。

但它们也可以用于表示抽象的概念: Mr A said that these toy pistols should not be on sale. 甲先生说这些玩具手枪不应该出售。

Mr B went further and said that no toy pistols should be sold.

乙先生更进一步,说所有的玩具手枪都不该出售。

Mr C went furthest of all and said that no guns of any kind should be sold.

丙先生最为激烈,说任何枪都应严禁出售。

B 关于 far 的用法限制

far 的比较级和最高级用法都比较自由: He travelled further than we expected.

他比我们预料的去得远。

far 的原级形式主要用于表示否定和疑问的词句中: —How far can you see?

—I can't see far. —你能看多远?

一我看不太远。

在表示肯定的词句中 a long way 要比 far 更常见。a long way away 也要比 far away 常见: They sailed a long way.

他们航行了很远。

He lives a long way away.

他住得离这里很远。

但 very far away 也是可以的,而 so/quite/too+far 和 far+enough 也是可以的: They walked so far that...

他们走了如此远,以致……

They walked too far.

他们走得太远了。

We' ve gone far enough.

我们已经走得够远了。

far 也可用于表示抽象的概念: The new law doesn't go far enough.

这条新的法律还不够严厉。

You' ve gone too far!

你太过份了!(你太侮辱人了/架子太大了/太蛮横无礼了等。)

表示程度时的副词 far,应与比较级或与 too/so+原级形式连用: She swims far better than I do.

她游泳要比我游得好多了。

He drinks far too much.

他酒喝得太多了。

33 much, more, most

A more 和 most 的用法相当自由: You should ride more.

你必须多骑马。

I use this room most.

这个房间我用得最多。

但当 much 是原级时,使用范围较小。

B much 意为 a lot(许多)时可修饰表示否定意思的动词: He doesn't ride much nowadays. 现在他不太骑马了。

在表示疑问的句子里 much 主要与 how 连用。在没有 how 的疑问句中可用 much,但 a lot 更常见: How much has he ridden?

他骑马多吗?

Has he ridden a lot/much?

他近来常骑马吗?

在肯定句中 as/so/too+much 是可以的。在没有 as/so/too 的情况下,肯定句中用 a lot/a good deal/a great deal 会更好: He shouts so much that...

他叫喊的太厉害了,以至于 ……

I talk too much.

我说得太多了。

但是说: He rides a lot/a great deal.

他常骑马。

C very much 意为 greatly (非常) 时,在肯定句中使用比较广泛。

常和它一起用的词有 blame(责备),praise(赞扬),thank(感谢)及一些表达感情的动词:admire(钦佩),amuse(使娱悦),approve(赞成),dislike(不喜欢),distress(使烦恼),enjoy(喜爱),impress(使有深刻印象),like(喜欢),object(反对),shock(震惊),surprise(使惊奇)等等:Thank you very much. 非常感谢你。

They admired him very much.

他们很钦佩他。

She objects very much to the noise they make.

她非常反对他们弄出的噪音。

much (=greatly 非常)可以和 very 连用,也可以省去 very 而与下列分词连用: admired (受钦佩的), amused(娱悦的), dis—liked(不受喜欢的), distressed(烦恼的), impressed (留有……印象的), liked (受喜欢的), shocked (被震惊的), struck (受巨大影响的), upset (心烦意乱的)。

He was (very) much admired.

他很受人钦佩。

She was (very) much impressed by their good manners.

他们彬彬有礼,给她留下了深深的影响。

D much 意为 a lot (许多) 时能够修饰形容词的比较级和最高级及动词: much better 好多了

much the best 最最好

much more quickly 快多了

much too 可与形容词的原级连用: He spoke much too fast.

他说话说得太快了。

E most 放在形容词或副词之前,有"很"的意思。主要与双音节或多音节形容词/副词连用: He was most apologetic.

他已表示十分的歉意了。

She behaved most generously.

她的行为非常慷慨大度。

(参见第 21 节 C。)

34 使用各比较等级的句子结构

(另参见第341节。)

两个分句中都要求使用同一动词时,我们通常用助动词来表示第二个动词。(参见第 22 节。) A as+原级+as 用于肯定句,as/so+原级+as 用于否定句: He worked as slowly as he dared. 他干活敢多么磨蹭就多么磨蹭。

He doesn't snore as/so loudly as you do.

他打鼾的声音没有你响。

It didn't take as/so long as I expected.

花的时间比我预料的短。

B than 与比较级连用: He eats more quickly than I do/than me. 他比我吃得快。

He played better than he had ever played.

他比过去任何时候都演奏得好。

They arrived earlier than I expected.

他们比我预料的到得早。

the+比较级…the+比较级结构中也用副词: The earlier you start the sooner you'll be back.

你出发得越早,回来得就越早。

C 最高级可与 of+名词连用: He went (the) furthest of the explorers.

在所有探险者中他走得最远。

但这种结构不常用。这类句子应当用比较级来表达,如上文所述。副词的最高级(不加 the) + of all 这种结构很常用,但 all 常指同一主语的其他动作: He likes swimming best of all. 他最喜欢游泳。(他喜欢游泳胜过其他一切运动。)

这时 of all 可以省略。

D 关于 like 和 as 表示比较的用法参见第 21 节 H 与 I。 位置?

35 方式副词

A 方式副词位于动词之后: She danced beautifully.

她舞姿优美。

当动词带宾语时,它位于宾语之后: He gave her the money reluctantly.

他勉勉强强地给了她钱。

They speak English well.

他们英语说得好。

不要把副词置于动词和宾语之间。

B 遇到动词+介词+宾语结构时,副词可置于介词之前或宾语之后: He looked at me suspiciously. /He looked suspiciously at me.

他怀有疑心地打量着我。

但是,如果宾语由好几个词组成的时候,就要把副词置于介词之前: He looked suspiciously at everyone who got off the plane.

他用怀疑的目光打量着每一个从飞机上走下来的人。

C 同样,含动词+宾语的句子中宾语的长短也决定副词的位置。如果宾语较短,就用动词+宾语+副词的语序,如上文 B 所述。但是,如果宾语较长,通常就把副词置于动词之前: She carefully picked up all the bits of broken glass.

她小心地拣起所有的碎玻璃片。

He angrily denied that he had stolen the documents.

他愤怒地否认他偷了那些文件。

They secretly decided to leave the town.

他们秘密决定离开这个城市。

D 注意:如果副词置于从句或短语之后,则通常认为它修饰从句或短语中的动词。因此,如果把上面最后一个例句中的 se-cretly 移到句末,就改变了句子的含义: They secretly decided...

他们秘密决定……(决定本身是秘密的。)

They decided to leave the town secretly.

他们决定秘密地离开这座城市。("离开"这个行动是秘密的。)

E 表示性格和智力的副词如 foolishly, generously, kindly, stupidly 等位于动词之前时表示行动是愚蠢的/好意的/慷慨的等: I foolishly forgot my passport.

我愚蠢地忘了我的护照。

He generously paid for us all.

他很慷慨地代我们全付了钱。

He kindly waited for me.

他好意地等着我。

Would you kindly wait?

请您稍候。

注意:也可以用下列句子表示这类种意思: It was foolish of me to forget.

我真蠢,竟然忘记了。

It was kind of him to wait.

多蒙他好心等候。

Would you be kind enough to wait?

劳驾您等一等,好吗? (参见第252节。)

副词可位于动词或动词+宾语之后,但句子意思就改变了: He spoke kindly.

他说得很和蔼。相当于: His voice and words were kind.

他的声调和话语都很和蔼。

不同于: It was kind of him to speak to us.

他跟我们说话, 真是好心。

He paid us generously.

他付我们钱时出手很大方。相当于: he paid more than the usual rate.

他比一般的价格付得多。

不同于: It was generous of him to pay us.

他付了我们钱, 真慷慨。

注意下面两句间的区别: He answered the guestions foolishly.

他对这个问题做了愚蠢的回答。(他的回答是愚蠢的。)

He foolishly answered the questions.

他愚蠢地回答了问题。(他回答问题的行动是愚蠢的。即:他真蠢,根本不该回答。)

F badly 和 well 可用做方式副词或程度副词。作为方式副词,它们可以位于主动动词、宾语之后或者系动词与被动形式之间: He behaved badly.

他表现得很坏。

He read well.

他读得很好。

He paid her badly.

他给她的钱很少。

She speaks French well.

她法语说得很好。

She was badly paid.

她挣的钱很少。The trip was well organized.

旅行组织得很好。

badly 作为程度副词用时通常位于宾语之后或系动词与被动形式之间: The door needs a coat of paint badly. /The door badly needs a coat of paint.

这门急需刷一层油漆。

He was badly injured in the last match.

在最后一场比赛中他受了重伤。

well(表示程度)和 well(表示方式)可放在同样的位置: I'd like the steak well done. 我喜欢牛排烤得熟一点儿。

He knows the town well.

他对那座城市很了解。

Shake the bottle well.

充分晃动瓶子。

The children were well wrapped up.

孩子们都穿戴得很暖和。

well的含义有时取决于它所在的位置。

注意以下区别: You know well that I can't drive.

你完全了解我不会开车。(关于这件事你一点也不会怀疑。)

You know that I can't drive well.

你知道我车开得不好。(我不是一个好司机。)

well 可放在 may/might 和 could 之后,强调一个行动的可能性: He may well refuse. 相 当于: It is quite likely that he will refuse.

他很可能会拒绝。

(关于 may/might as well 的用法,参见第 288 节。)

G somehow,anyhowsomehow(以某种方法/不知怎地/总算是)可放在句首、不及物动词之后及宾语之后: Somehow they managed.

他们总算是凑合下来了。

They managed somehow.

(译文同上。)

They raised the money somehow.

他们想方设法把钱凑起来了。

anyhow 作为方式副词用是不常见的,但通常意为"无论如何/不管怎样"。(参见第 327 节。)

36 地点副词

away, everywhere, here, nowhere, somehere, there 等

A 在句中没有宾语的情况下,以上这些副词通常放在动词之后: She went away. 她走开了。

He lives abroad.

他住在国外。

Bill is upstairs.

比尔在楼上。

它们也可放在动词+宾语或动词+介词+宾语之后: She sent him away.

她把他送走了。

I looked for it everywhere.

我哪儿都找过了。

(关于动词+副词的组合,如 pick up, put down 等,参见第 38 节。)

由介词+名词/代词/副词组成的副词短语也按上述词序规则处理: The parrot sat on a

perch.

鹦鹉停歇在栖木上。

He stood in the doorway.

他站在门口。

He lives near me.

他住得离我近。

另参见下面 E。

B somewhere 和 anywhere 的用法遵循与 some 和 any 相关的基本规则: I've seen that man somewhere.

我在什么地方看到过那个男人。

- —can you see my key anywhere?
- —No, I can't see it anywhere.
- 一你在什么地方看到我的钥匙吗?
- 一没有,我在哪儿也没看见你的钥匙。

Are you going anywhere?

你要出去吗? (一般地问一下)

Are you going somewhere?

你要出去吧? (我认为你要出去)

但 nowhere 一般不位于这一位置,除非用于 to get nowhere 这个习语中,意为"达不到什么目的,得不到任何效果": Threatening people will get you nowhere.

吓唬别人帮不了你的忙。(吓唬别人不会让你得到什么好处。)但可用于简短的答语: —Where are you going?

- -Nowhere.
- 一你去哪儿?
- 一哪儿也不去。

在正规英语中,nowhere 可放在句首,后面动词应该倒装: Nowhere will you find better roses than these. 在哪儿你也找不到比这些更好的玫瑰花了。(参见第 45 节。)C here 和 there 后可跟 be/come/go+作主语的名词: Here's Tom.

汤姆在这里。

There's Ann.

安在那里。

Here comes the train.

火车来了。

There goes our bus.

我们要乘的车刚走。

here 和 there 这样用要比 here/there 用在动词之后更表示强调。而且通常在含义上也有所不同。Tom is here (汤姆在这里) 意为他在这个屋子/楼/城市里等。但是,Here's Tom (汤姆在这儿) 有他刚出现或我们刚发现他的含义。Tom comes here (汤姆来这儿了) 意为他习惯于来这儿。但是,Here comes Tom 有他正在来到或刚刚到达的含义。

如果主语是人称代词,那么动词就应按惯例放在句首: There he is.

他在那儿。

Here I am.

我在这儿。

Here it comes.

它来了。

但 someone 和 something 应放在动词之后: $^{\prime}$ There's someone who can help you.

真有一个人能帮助你。

注意:同句中 there 不重读时,意为存在一个能帮助你的人。(参见第 117 节。)

D 给朋友打电话时,为了说明是谁在打电话,用姓名+here: Ann (on phone): Is that you,

Tom? Ann here. /This is Ann.

安(打电话时):汤姆,是你吗?我是安。

但绝不能说成 Ann is here 或 Here is Ann。

E 副词 away,down,in,off,out,over,round,up 等都可与动态动词+作主语的名词连用:Away went the runners.

赛跑选手们跑远了。

Down fell a dozen apples.

掉下来十来个苹果。

Out sprang the cuckoo.

飞出了一只布谷鸟。

Round and round flew the plane.

飞机盘旋着。

但如果主语是代词,则应放在动词之前: Away they went.

他们跑远了。

Round and round it flew.

它盘旋着飞。

这种语序要比主语+动词+副词更生动,但意思是相同的。

F 在书面英语中,由 down,from,in,on,over,out of,round,up 等介词引导的副词 短语后面可跟表示姿势的动词(如 crouch,hang,lie,sit,stand 等)和表示行动的动词(如 be born,die,live),有时还可以跟其他一些动词: From the rafters hung strings of onions.

房梁上挂着一串串洋葱。

In the doorway stood a man with a gun.

门口站着一个手持一枝枪的男人。

On a perch beside him sat a blue parrot.

在他旁边的栖木上栖着一只蓝色的鹦鹉。

Over the wall came a shower of stones.

墙那边飞过来了纷如雨下的石块。

以上的前三个句子也可以用分词和 be 动词形式来表示: Hanging from the rafters were strings of onions.

Standing in the doorway was a man with a gun.

Sitting on a perch beside him was a blue parrot.

但上面的最后一个例句不能用分词形式,除非落石如雨的情况延续了好一阵。

37 时间副词

A afterwards, eventually, lately, now, recently, soon, then, today, tomorrow 等和表示时间的副词短语 at once, since then, till

(6:00等)

上述副词和词组通常位于句首或句末,在祈使句中及与 till 短语连用时常放在句末: Eventually he came. /He came eventually.

他终于来了。

Then we went home. /We went home then.

然后我们回家。

Write today.

今天就写。

I'll wait till tomorrow.

我等到明天。

(关于 lately, recently 参见第 185 节。)

动词为复合时态时 afterwards,eventually,lately,now,recent—ly,soon 可位于助动词之后: We'll soon be there.

我们马上会到那里。

B before, early, immediately 和 late 位于句末: He came late.

他来晚了。

I' ll go immediately.

我马上就走。

但 before 和 immediately 用做连词引导一个从句时,应位于从句的句首: Immediately the rain stops we'll set out.

雨一停我们就走。

C since 和 ever since 与完成时连用。(参见第 187 节 D。)

since 位于助动词之后或否定句及疑问句的句末,ever since(副词)位于句末。带有 since 和 ever since 的短语和从句常位于句末,有时放在句首也是可以的: He's been in bed since his accident/since he broke his leg.

自从他出了车祸/摔伤了腿,他一直躺在床上。

D yet 和 still (时间副词)

yet 常常位于动词或动词+宾语之后: He hasn't finished (his breakfast) yet.

他还没吃完(他的早饭)。

如果宾语由许多词组成, yet 也可位于动词之前: He hasn't yet applied for the job we told him about.

他还没去申请我们跟他说的那个工作。

still 位于 be 动词之后或其他动词之前: She is still in bed.

她还在睡觉。

yet 的含义是"到说话的时候为止"。它主要用于否定句或疑问句。still 强调动作在继续延续,主要用于肯定句或疑问句,但可用于否定句以强调否定意义的动作仍在延续: He still doesn't understand.

他仍然不懂。("不懂"这一否定意义的动作在延续。)

He doesn't understand vet.

他还没有弄懂。("懂得"这一肯定意义的动作还没开始。)

still 和 yet 重读时表示惊讶、讨厌或不耐烦。它们都可以当做连词使用。(参见第 327 节。) E just 作为时间副词跟复合时态连用: I' m just coming.

我正要来。(另参见第183节。)

(关于 just 作为程度副词,参见第 41 节。)

38 频度副词

(a) always, continually, frequently, occasionally, often, once, twice, periodically, repeatedly, sometimes, usually 等 (b) ever, hardly ever, never, rarely, scarcely ever, seldom 等 A 以上两组副词通常用在下列位置: 1 动词 be 的一般现在时后面: He is always in time for meals.

他总是赶得上吃饭。

2 放在其他动词的一般现在时前面: They sometimes stay up all night.

他们有时整夜不睡。

3 动词如是复合时态并由一个以上动词构成时,这类副词放在第一个助动词后面;如果动词是疑问式,则放在助动词+主语之后: He can never understand.

他永远也不会明白的。

You have often been told not to do that.

多次告诫过你别干那事。

Have you ever ridden a camel?

你骑过骆驼吗?

特殊情况

(a) 这类副词放在 used to 和 have to 的前面: You hardly ever have to remind him; he always remembers.

你根本不用提醒他; 他总是记得的。

- (b) 如在补充陈述或答话中单独使用助动词,频度副词常放在这类动词之前: —Can you park your car near the shops?
- —Yes, I usually can.
- 一你可以在商店附近停车吗?
- 一是的,通常可以。

I know I should take exercise, but I never do.

我知道我应该进行体育锻炼,但我从来没这样做过。如助动词应重读时,频度副词也常放在助动词之前: I never' can remember.

我永远也记不住。

She hardly ever' has met him.

她几乎从来没有遇见过他。

当 do 用于表示强调时,也是如此: I always do arrive in time!

我总是及时到达的!

也可以用重读的频度副词来表示强调,这时频度副词仍放在助动词后面: You should' always check your oil before starting.

每次开车启动前你必须检查一下油量。

B 上述 (a) 组副词也可放在句首或句末。

例外情况

除在祈使句中外,always 通常放在句末,很少置于句首。often 如果放在句末,通常需要加修饰语 very 或 quite: Often he walked.

他过去经常步行。

He walked quite often.

(译文同上。)

C 上述(b)组副词如 hardly ever,never,rarely 等(但不包括单独使用的 ever)也可放在句首,但这时必需倒装后面的主要动词:Hardly/Scarcely ever did they manage to meet unobserved.

他们会面时很少不被人看到。

(关于 hardly, barely, scarcely 的用法,参见第 44 节。)

hardly/scarcely ever, never, rarely 和 seldom 不能与否定动词连用。

D never, ever

never 主要与肯定动词连用而不与否定动词连用。一般情况下它意为"从未有过": He never saw her again

他从没有再见到过她。

I' ve never eaten snails.

我从没吃过蜗牛。

They never eat meat.

他们从来不吃猪肉。(习惯)

I' ve never had a better flight.

我从来没有过这么舒适的飞行。

(关于 never+比较级, 参见第 21 节 C。)

never+肯定动词有时可以替代一个普通的否定动词: I waited but he never turned up. 我等着,可他根本没有来。

never+疑问动词可表示说话人对于未能做到某事而感到惊讶: Has he never been to Japan? I' m surprised, because his wife is Japanese.

他从没去过日本吗?我感到很惊讶,因为他妻子是日本人。

ever 意为"在任何时间", 主要用于疑问句中: —Has he ever marched in a demonstration?

- —No, he never has.
- 一他参加过示威游行吗?
- 一没有,他从没有。

ever 可与否定动词连用,特别是在与复合时态连用时,可代替 never+肯定动词: I havent ever eaten snails.

我从没吃过蜗牛。

ever 的这种用法在一般现在时中不常见。

ever+肯定动词可以用于比较中(参见第21节C),也可以和表示假定和怀疑的词连用。

I don't suppose he ever writes to his mother.

我想他没有给他母亲写过信。

(有关 hardly/scarcely+ever,见以上 A-C。关于 how 之后的 ever 等,参见第 61 节与第 85 节。)

39 各种副词及副词短语在同一句中的位置

方式副词及副词短语常常位于地点副词及副词短语之前: He climbed awkwardly out of the window.

他狼狈地从窗户上爬了出去。

He' d study happily anywhere.

他无论在哪里也会高高兴兴地学习的。

但是, away, back, down, forward, home, in, off, on, out, round 和 up 常常位于方

式副词之前: He walked away sadly.

他伤心地走了。

She looked back anxiously.

她不安地回头看。

They went home quietly.

他们安安静静地回家了。

They rode on confidently.

他们信心十足地继续骑马前行。(参见第 36 节 E。)

here 和 there 也位于方式副词之前,但遇到副词 hard, well, badly 时则位于其后: He stood there silently.

他一声不响地站在那里。

但是: They work harder here.

他们在这儿工作更卖劲。

表示时间的副词及副词短语位于表示方式和地方的副词及副

词短语之后: They worked hard in the garden today.

他们今天在园子里干得很卖劲。

He lived there happily for a year.

他在那儿愉快地居住了一年。

表示时间的副词及副词短语也可位于句首: Every day he queued patiently at the bus stop. 他每天都耐心地在公共汽车站排队。

40 句子副词

这些词修饰整个全句/从句,通常表达说话者/叙述者的观点。A 表示不同程度的确定的副词

(a) actually (=in fact/really), apparently, certainly, clearly,

evidently, obviously, presumably, probably, undoubtedly

- (b) definitely
- (c) perhaps, possible, surely

上述(a)组的副词可位于 be 动词之后: He is obviously intelligent.

很明显, 他是个聪明的人。

也可位于其他动词的一般现在时形式之前: They certainly work hard.

他们确实工作很努力。

He actually lives next door.

他实际上就住在隔壁。

也可位于第一个助动词之后: They have presumably sold their house.

他们据信已经把房子卖了。

也可位于一个句子或从句的句首或句末: Apparently he knew the town well.

显然他很了解这个城镇。

He knew the town well apparently.

(译文同上。)

definitely 也按上述方法使用,但很少用于句首。

Perhaps 和 possibly 主要用于句首: 放在句末有时也是可以的。surely 通常位于句首或句末,尽管它也可位于动词之后。它主要用于疑问句: Surely you could pay £1?

一英镑你总是付得出的吧?

You could pay £1, surely?

(译文同上。)

注意: 虽然形容词 sure 和 certain 在意思上较接近,但副词

surely 和 certainly 意思就不同了。

certainly (=definitely 肯定): He was certainly there; there is no doubt about it.

他肯定在那儿;这是毫无疑问的。

但是 surely 表示说话人不能完全确定后面的陈述是真实的。

尽管说话人认为那是真实的, 但还需要加以证实。

Surely he was there?

他一定在那儿吧? (我差不多能肯定他在那里。)

B 其他修饰全句的副词

admittedly,(un)fortunately,frankly,honestly*,(un)luckily,naturally*,officially*等通常位于句首,但有时放在句末也是可以的。常常用一个逗号将它与句子的其他部分隔开。带星号的几个副词也可作方式副词。

Honestly, Tom didn't get the money.

老实说,汤姆没有拿到钱。(这是修饰全句的副词。在这里 honestly 意为"老实地"。说话人向我们保证汤姆没有拿到钱。)

Tom didn't get the money honestly. 相当于: Tom got the money dishonestly. 汤姆是以不诚实的方法取得这笔钱的。(方式副词)

41 程度副词

absolutely,slmost,barely,completely,enough,entirely,extreme-ly,fairly,far,hardly,just,much,nearly,only,quite,rather,real-ly,scarcely,so,too,very 等(关于<a>little,参见第 5 节 D; 关于 fairly 和 rather,参见第 42 节; 关于 hardly,scarcely,barely,参见第 44 节; 关于 quite,参见第 43 节。)

A 程度副词修饰一个形容词或另一个副词,位于该形容词或副词之前: You are absolutely right.

你完全正确。

I' m almost ready.

我差不多准备好了。

但 enough 要放在形容词或副词之后: The box isn't big enough.

这个盒子不够大。

He didn't work quickly enough.

他干得不够快。

(参见第 252 节 B。)

B far 需要带比较级或 too+原级: It is far better to say nothing.

不说话要好得多。

He drives far too fast.

他车开得太快了。(超出正常车速很多)

这里可以用 much 替代 far。也可以与最高级连用: This solution is much the best. 这种解答是最好的。

C 下列程度副词也可以修饰动词: almost, barely, enough, hardly, just, (a) little,

much, nearly, quite, rather, really 和 scarcely。除了 much 以外,其他的都可位于主要动词之前,与频度副词的用法相同。(参见第 **38** 节。)

He almost/nearly fell.

他几乎/差点儿摔倒。

I am just going.

我正要走。

Tom didn't like it much but I really enjoyed it.

汤姆不太喜欢它,可我倒挺喜欢它。

(关于 much 参见第 33 节, little/a little 参见第 5 节 D。)

D only 也可以修饰动词,从理论上讲它应紧挨所修饰的词,位于动词、形容词、副词之前,位于名词、代词之前或之后:(a) He had only six apples.

他只有六个苹果。(不超过六个。)

(b) He only lent the car.

他只是把车借出去了。(他没有把车送给人家。)

(c) He lent the car to me only.

他只是把车借给我了。(不是借给别人。)

(d) I believe only half of what he said.

我对他所说的话只相信一半。

但在英词口语中,人们通常把 only 这个词放在动词之前,通过对 only 所修饰的词加以重读来体现所要表示的含义: He only had' six apples.

意思与上面(a)相同。

He only lent the car to 'me.

意思与上面(c)相同。

I only believe 'half.

意思与上面(d)相同。

E just 与 only 相同,应位于它所修饰的词的前面: I'll buy just one.

我只买一个。

I had just enough money.

我的钱刚够。

just 也可紧挨动词: I'll just buy one.

(译文同上。)

I just had enough money.

(译文同上。)

但有时语序上的变化会引起语义上的不同: Just sign here. 相当于: This is all you have to do.

你只要在这儿签名就行了。

Sign just here. 相当于: Sign in this particular spot.

你就在这个地方签字。

fairly, rather, quite, hardly 等

42 fairly 和 rather

A 这两个词都有"相当"、"适中"的意思,但 fairly 主要用于修饰褒义的形容词和副词(如 bravely, good, nice, well 等)而 rather 主要修饰贬义的形容词和副词(如 bad, stupidly,

ugly 等): Tom is fairly clever, but Peter is rather stupid.

汤姆相当聪明,而彼得就颇笨。

I walk fairly fast but Ann walks rather slowly.

我走得相当快,而安就走得相当慢。

两者都可以与分词连用: He was fairly relaxed: she was rather tense.

他很放松,而她就相当紧张。

a fairly interesting film 一部相当有意思的电影

a rather boring book 一本相当乏味的书

不定冠词必须放在 fairly 之前,但可放在 rather 之前或之后: a fairly light box 一个相当轻的盒子

a rather heavy box/rather a heavy box

一个相当重的盒子一些本身没有褒贬意义的形容词和副词如 fast, slow, thin, thick, hot, cold 等,之前加上 fairly 时表示赞许而加上 rather 时表示不赞许。This soup is fairly hot (这汤还挺热)这意味说话人喜欢喝热汤。而 This soup is rather hot(这汤太热了)就意味着说话人嫌汤太热了点。

B rather 可用在 alike,like,similar,different 等词及比较级之前,这时它的含义是"少许"或"略微": Siamese cats are rather like dogs in some ways.

暹罗猫在某些方面长得有点儿像狗。

The weather was rather worse than I had expected

天气要比我预料的还坏。

rather a 可以与一些名词连用,如 disappiontment,disadvan-tage,nuisance,pity,shame 及 joke: It's rather a nuisance that we can't park here.

真讨厌,我们不能在这里停车。(有点不方便)

It's rather a shame that he has to work on Sundays.

真讨厌,他连星期天也得去上班。(有点不公平)

fairly 则不能这样用。

C rather 可以用在某些褒义的形容词和副词之前,如 amusing, clever, good, pretty, well 等,但其含义变了。这时它几乎相当于 very 之意,没有贬义,如 She is rather clever (她 很聪明)。

这句含义相当于 She is very clever。rather 这样用时显然具有比 fairly 更深的褒义,如 It is a fairly good play(这个戏还算可以)。这一说法会起到劝阻旁人去看戏的作用。但如果说 It israther a good play(这个戏很好)则无疑是一种推荐。有时 rather 这样用时含有"惊讶"之意:—I suppose the house was filthy.

- —No, as a matter of fact it was rather clean.
- 一我想屋子一定很脏。
- 一不,它实际上却很干净。

D rather 也可用在 enjoy 与 like 这两个词前,有时还可用在 dis-like 与 object 这一类动词之前: I rather like the smell of petrol.

我倒很喜欢汽油味儿。

He rather enjoys queueing.

他却很喜欢排队。

rather 还可以用来对由以上动词构成的问句作简单回答: —Do you like him?

- —Yes, I do, rather.
- 一你喜欢他吗?

一是的,我倒相当喜欢他。

rather+like/enjoy 主要用于表现一种"喜爱",而这种喜爱是出乎旁人或说话者本人意料之外的。但它也可以用来强调动词,如 I rather like Tom (我很喜欢汤姆)。这就要比 I likeTom (我喜欢汤姆) 具有更强烈的感情色彩。

(关于 would rather 参见第 297 节与第 298 节。)

43 quite

这是一个含义容易混淆的词,因为它有两个意思。

A quite 与一些表示"完整"、"完全"的意思的词或词组如 allright,certain,determined,empty,finished,hull,ready,right,sure,wrong 等连用,或与一些具有强烈感情色彩的形容词、副词如 amazing,extraordinary,horrible,perfect 等连用时,它的意思是"完全地"、"全然地": The bottle was quite empty. 瓶子全空了。

You' re quite wrong.

你完全错了。

It's quite extraordinary; I can't understand it at all.

这件事太不寻常了,我根本没法理解。

B 在与其他形容词、副词连用时,quite 略有减弱作用,因此 quitegood 赞誉的程度要比 good 轻。quite 这样用时,其含义类似 fairly,但它的强度根据它被重读的方式可以有很大的不同: quite good (quite 弱读,good 强读)只比 good 稍稍弱一点。

′quite′good(重读强弱程度相同)意思是"还算好"。

¹ quite good (quite 强读, good 弱读) 远不如 good。

quite 的读音越轻,紧跟在它后面的形容词/副词的意思就越重。

quite 的读音越轻,跟在后面的形容词/副词的意思就越重。

注意冠词 a/an 的位置: quite a long walk 一次较长的散步

quite an old castle 一座较古老的城堡

44 hardly, scarcely, barely

hardly, scarcely 和 barely 这三个词在意义上都接近于否定。

hardly 主要与 any, ever, at all 或动词 can 连用: He has hadly any money.

他几乎没有钱。(非常少)

I hardly ever go out.

我很少外出。(我极少外出。)

It hadly rained at all last summer.

去年夏天没怎么下雨。

Her case is so heavy that she can hadly lift it.

她的箱子太重了,她简直提不起来。

也可以和其他动词连用: I hardly know him.

我不太认识他。(我只是与他认识而已。)

注意不要把副词 hard 与 hardly 搞混: He looked hard at it.

他使劲地盯着它看。(他在盯着它。)

He hardly looked at it.

他几乎没看它。(他瞄了它一眼。)

scarcely 意为"几乎不",它可以代替 hardly。上述例句中也可用 scarcely any/scarcely ever

等。

但 scarcely 主要意为"不到"、"不足": There were scarcely twenty people there. 那儿连 20 个人都没有。

(关于 hardly/scarcely 之后的倒装语序,见第 45 节与第 342 节 E。)

barely 意为"不超过"、"仅仅": There were barely twenty people there.

那儿不超过20个人。(刚刚20个)

I can barely see it.

我勉强看得见它。(我只能看见而已。)

动词的倒装

45 某些副词之后的倒装

某些副词和副词短语,主要是一些含有限定或否定意义的副词和副词短语,为了表示强调可放在句首,这时后面应跟动词的倒装(即疑问)形式。这类副词或副词短语中最重要的有:

hardly ever (参见第 38 节 A、C。)

on no account

hardly…when (参见第 342 节 E。)

only by

in no circumstances

only in this way

neither/nor (参见第 112 节 D。)

only then/when

never

scarcely ever

no sooner…than (参见第 342 节 E。)

scarcely...when

not only

seldom

not till

so (参见第 112 节 A。)

nowhere (参见第 36 节 B。)

例句如: —I haven't got a ticket.

- -Neither/Nor have I.
- 一我没有票。
- 一我也没有。

I had never before been asked to accept a bribe. 相当于: Never before had I been asked to accept a bribe.

以前从来没有人试图向我行贿。

They not only rob you, they smash everything too. 相当于: Not only do they rob you, they smash everything too.

他们不仅抢劫你,而且砸烂所有的东西。

He didn't realize that he had lost it till he got home. 相当于: Not till he got home did he realize that he had lost it.

一直到了家,他才发觉那东西丢了。

This switch must not be touched on any account. 相当于: On no account must this switch be touched.

这个开关严禁触摸。

He was able to make himself heard only by shouting. 相当于: Only by shouting was he able to make himself heard.

他只有叫喊才能让别人听到他。

He became so suspicious that…相当于: So suspicious did he become that...

他变得这样疑心,以致……

注意: 在一个句子中,第二个否定动词有时可以用 nor 来表达,并跟倒装语序: He had no money and didn't know anyone he could borrow from.

He had no money, nor did he know anyone he could borrow from.

他身无分文,也不认识任何可以借钱的人。(neither 在这儿不太常用。)(关于副词和副词短语后跟动词的倒装语序和作主语的名词的情况,如 Up went the rocket<火箭直升飞起>,By the door stoodan armed guard<门口站着一名手持武器的士兵>,参见第 36 节 C,E,F。)

第五章 all, each, every, both, neither, either, some, any, no 和 none?

46 all, each, every, everyone, everybody, everything

(关于 all 和 each 的区别,参见第 48 节。)

A all 和 every 的比较

从词义的角度来看, all 指的是一组作为整体来考虑的人或物。

every 指的是一组作为个体来考虑的人或物。但是,在实践中,every 和它的复合词常常用来指一个整体。

Beach (形容词和代词)和 every (形容词)

each 指的是一些作为个体来考虑的人或物。

every 也含有这种意思,但是 every 不像 each 那样强调每一个个体。

Evers man had a weapon (士兵人人都有武器) 意指说话人点了人数和武器,发现两者的数字是相符的。 Each man had aweapon (每个士兵都有一件武器) 意指说话人依次走到每个人身边,经检查确定每个人都有一件武器。

each 是代词和形容词: Each (man) knows what to do.

每一个(人)都知道要做什么。

every 只作形容词: Every man knows...

人人都知道……

each 可与两个或更多的人或物相关,通常是较小的数目,但 every 通常并不与很小的数目相关。

两者都用单数动词,所有格形容词形式是 his/her/its。

(关于相互代词 each other,参见第 53 节 C 和第 70 节 B。)

C everyone/everybody 和 everything (代词)

everyone/everybody+单数动词通常要比 all (the) people+复数动词更常用,如可以说 Everyone is ready (人人都准备好了),而不说 All the people are ready。everyone 和

everybody 之间不存在任何区别。

everything 同样要比 all (the) things 更常用。如可以说 Every-thing has been wasted (一切都浪费了),而不说 All the thingshave been wasted。

all(the)people, all(the)things 可与短语或从句连用: All the people in the room clapped. 全屋的人都鼓掌。

I got all the things you asked for.

我弄到了你要的一切。

除此之外,all(the)people 和 all(the)things 很少使用。

(关于在 everyone/everybody 之后使用代词和所有格形容词的情况,参见第 51 节 C 与第 69 节。)

47 both

both 意为 one and the other (一个和另一个,两者都)。

它后面跟动词的复数形式。

both 可单独使用,后面也可跟名词: Both (doors) were open.

两个(门)都开着。

或后面跟(of)+the/these/those 或所有格形式: both(of)the wheels 两个车轮都······ both(of)your wheels 你的两个车轮都······

或后面跟 of+us/you/them: Both of us knew him.

我们俩都认识他。

人称代词+both 也是可以的: We both knew him.

(译文同上。)

(参见第48节。)

both…and…可以用于强调两个形容词、名词、动词等的组合:It was both cold and wet. 又寒冷又潮湿。

He is both an actor and a director.

他既是演员又是导演。

He both acts and directs.

他又当演员, 又当导演。

48 all/both/each+of 和其他可以替代的结构

A all (代词) 后面可跟 of+the/this/these/that/those/所有格形式和专有名词。

both (代词) +of 的用法是同样的,但只限于用在复数形式之前。of 在这儿常常被省略,特别是与 all+名词/单数代词形式连用时。

all the town 全镇上的人

all (of) Tom's boys 汤姆的所有男孩

all his life 他毕生

both(of)the towns 两个城市都······

all (of) these 这些都······

both (of) his parents 他的父母都……

B 与 all/both+of+人称代词连用时, of 不能省略: all of it 它的全部都……

both of them 他/她/它们俩都……

但是还有另外一个结构,即人称代词+all/both: all of it=it all

all of us=we all (主语), us all (宾语)

all of you=you all

all of them=they all (主语), them all (宾语)

同样: both of us=we both (主语), us both (宾语)

both of you=you both (主语、宾语通用)

both of them=they both (主语), them both (宾语)

All of them were broken. 相当于: They were all broken.

它们全都破了。

All/Both of us went. 相当于: We all/both went.

我们(俩)全都去了。

We ate all/both the cakes.

我们把 (两块) 点心全都吃了。

C 人称代词+all/both 的组合如是复合时态的主语时, 助动词通常位于 all/both 之前: We are all waiting.

我们都在等。

You must both help me.

你们俩都必须帮助我。

be 也应位于 all/both 之前,除非它用于简短的回答中: We are all/both ready.

我们(俩)都准备好了。

但是: 一Who is ready?

- —We all are. /We both are.
- 一谁准备好了?
- 一我们(俩)都准备好了。

其他助动词单独使用时或普通动词用一般现在时时,它们都应位于 all/both 之后: You all have maps.

你们都有地图。

They both knew where to go.

他们俩都知道去哪儿。

D each 与 both 一样,后面可跟 of+these/those 等(of 后面的代词仅限于复数形式)。在这里 of 不可省略:each of the boys 男孩中的每一个

each of these 这些中的每一个

然而,each of us/you/them 可以由代词+each 来替代: each of you=you each(主语、宾语通用)

each of us=we each (主语), us each (宾语)

each of them=they each (主语), them each (宾语)

We each sent in a report.

我们每人递上了一份报告。

They gave us each a form to fill in.

他们给了我们每人一张要填写的表格。

注意: each of us/you/them 是单数: Each of us has a map.

我们每人都有一张地图。

但 we/you/they each 是复数: We each have a map.

我们每人都有一张地图。

we/you/they each 在句中作主语时,句子的语序同上面 C 有关 all 及 both 的语序相同: They have each been questioned.

他们每个人都被查问过。

49 neither, either

Al neither 意为"既不是甲,也不是乙","两者都不……",后面跟单数动词的肯定式。它可以单独使用,后面也可跟名词或 of

+the/these/those/所有格代词或人称代词: (a) I tried both keys but neither (of them) worked.

两把钥匙我都试了,但(两把)都不行。

(b) Neither of them knew the way/Neither boy knew…

他们俩/两个男孩都不认得路。

(c) I' ve read neither of these (books).

这两本(书)我都没看过。

2 either 意为"两者之一","两者中任何一个"。它后面跟动词单数形式。同 neither 一样,它可以单独使用,或跟名词/代词及 of+the/these/those 等连用。

3 either+否定动词可代替 neither+肯定动词,但 neither 是主语时除外。 所以 either 不能用于上面 Al 例句(a)或(b)中,只能用于例句(c)中: I haven't read either of these (books).

这两本(书)我都没看过。

虽然 either 不能作否定句的主语,但它可作肯定句或疑问句的主语或宾语: Either(of these) would do.

这两个中任一个都可以。

Would you like either of these?

你喜欢二者中的任一个吗?

4 代词和所有格形容词与代表人的 neither/either 连用时,从语法上说应当用 he/him, she/her 及 his/her, 但是在英语的口语中用复数形式较为普遍: Neither of them knows the way, do they?

他们俩都不知道路,是吗?

Neither of them had brought their passports.

他们俩都没带护照。

B neither…nor, either… or

neither… nor+肯定动词是把两个否定说法结合在一起的强

调方式: (a) Neither threats nor arguments had any affect on him.

无论是恐吓还是讲道理对他都不起作用。

- (b) They said the room was large and bright but it was neither large norbright. 他们说这间房子又大又明亮,可它既不大也不明亮。
- (c) He neither wrote nor phoned.

他既没写信又没打电话。

either···or+否定动词可代替 neither···nor+肯定动词结构,

但 neither…nor 作动词主语时除外,如上述例句(a)。所以可

以说: (b) …but it wasn't either large or bright.

(c) He didn't either write or phone.

either…or 不能作否定句的主语,但可作肯定句和疑问句的主

语或宾语。这种用法是表示强调二者之中任何一个皆可以: You can have either soup or fruit juice.

汤和果汁你任意喝哪一种都行。

You must either go at once or wait till tomorrow.

你要么马上走,要么等到明天。

It's urgent, so could you either phone or telex?

这事非常紧急, 所以你或是打电话或是用电传, 好吗?

(关于用 either 对说法进行补充的用法,参见第 112 节。关于

neither/nor 后面跟倒装语序,参见第 45 节与第 112 节。)

50 some, any, no 和 none(形容词和代词)

Al some 和 any 意为"某一个数目或某一定的量"。它们或和复数名词或不可数名词连用,或代替这些名词。(关于 some/any 与单数名词连用请参见下面 C。)

some 可以是 a/an 和 one 的复数形式: Have a biscuit/some biscuits.

吃一块/一些饼干。

I ate a date/some dates.

我吃了一个/一些枣。

some, any 和 none 可以和 of+the/this/these/those/所有格代词/人称代词连用: Some of the staff can speak Japanese.

一些工作人员会讲日语。

Did any of your photos come out well?

你的照片有照得好的吗?

2 some 可以有下列各种用法:与肯定动词连用: They bought some honey.

他们买了些蜂蜜。

用于可预料答语为"是"的问句中: Did some of you sleep on the floor?

你们有人睡在了地板上吗? (我想会是这样。)

用于表示建议及要求的句子中: Would you like some wine?

你想喝点葡萄酒吗?

Could you do some typing for me?

你能给我用打点字吗?

(另参见 C。)

3 any 用于以下情况:用于否定句中:I haven't any matches.

我没有火柴。

与 hardly, barely, scarcely 连用(这些词的含义几乎是否定的): I have hardly any spare time.

我简直没有空闲时间。

在 without any… (=with no…) 结构中,与 without 连用。

He crossed the frontier without any difficulty/with no difficulty.

他毫无困难地越过了边界。

用于除上文所述之外的疑问句中: Have you got any money?

你有钱吗?

Did he catch any fish?

他抓到鱼了吗?

用在 if/whether 之后以及表示怀疑的说法中: If you need any more money,please let me know.

如果你还需要钱,就告诉我。

I don't think there is any petrol in the tank.

我想油箱里没有汽油了。

(参见下面 C。)

B no (形容词) 和 none (代词)

no 和 none 可以与肯定动词连用,表示否定: I have no apples. I had some last year but I have none this year.

我没有苹果。去年我有一些,但今年我一个也没有了。

no+名词可以作主语: No work was done.

没有干什么活儿。

No letter (s) arrived.

一封信也没来。

none 可以作主语,但不常见: We expected letters, but none came.

我们在等信,可是一封也没来。

none+of 作主语的情况较为常见: None of the tourists wanted to climb the mountain.

没有一个游客想爬山。

C some 和 any 与可数名词的单数形式连用

some 可以用来表示"一个未指明的或未知的"人或物: Some idiot parked his car outside my garage.

有一个蠢货把车子停在我的车库外面了。

• some+名词后面加上 or other 表示强调说话人不太感兴趣: He doesn't believe in conventional medicine; he has some remedy or otherof his own.

他不相信传统医术;他自己有治疗方法。

any 可以表示"差不多每一个"、"不一定是哪个"。

Any book about riding will tell you how to saddle a horse.

任何有关骑术的书都会告诉你怎样装马鞍。

Any dictionary will give you the meaning of these words.

只要是本词典, 就会给出这些词的词义。

51 someone, somebody, something, anyone,

anybody, anything, noone, nobody, nothing

A 用 some, any 和 no 构成的复合词都遵循上文所述规则: Someone wants to speak to you on the phone.

有你的电话。

Someone/Somebody gave me a ticket for the pop concert.

有人给了我一张流行歌曲音乐会的门票。

No one/Nobody has ever given me a free ticket for anything.

从来没有人给过我免费的什么票。

Do you want anything from the chemist's?

你需要在药店里买什么东西吗?

Would anyone/anybody like a drink?

谁想喝一杯吗?

注意: I drink anything.

我喝什么都行。相当于: I don't mind what I drink.

我不挑喝什么。

Anyone will tell you where the house is.

谁都会告诉你那所房子在哪儿。(参见第50节C。)

B someone, somebody, anyone, anybody, no one, nobody 可以有所有格形式: Someone's passport has been stolen.

有人的护照被偷了。

Is this somebody' s/anybody' s seat?

这座位有人坐吗?

I don't want to waste anyone's time.

我不想浪费任何人的时间。

C 代词和所有格形容词与 someone, somebody, anyone, anybody, no one, nobody, everyone, everybody 连用

所有这些词语都具有单数的含义,因此要用单数动词。因此,指代这些词的人称代词和所有格形容词按道理说也应是 he/she, him/her, his/her, 但在口语中复数形式更为普遍: Has anyone left their luggage on the train?

有谁把行李丢在火车上了吗?

No one saw Tom go out, did they?

没有人看见汤姆出去,对吗?

但在指 something, anything, nothing 时仍然用 it: Something went wrong, didn't it? 有什么地方出毛病了,是吗?

52 else 位于 someone/anybody/nothing 等之后

A someone/somebody/something, anyone/anydy/anything, noone/nobody/nothing, everyone/everybody/everything 以及副词 somewhere, anywhere, nowhere, everywhere 后面都可跟 else: someone else/somebody else=some other person 别的什么人 anyone else/anybody else=any other person 任何别的人

no one else/nobody else=no other person 没有他人

everyone else/everybody else=every other person 其他所有的人 something else=some other thing 别的什么东西

例句如: —I'm afraid I can't help you. You'll have to ask someone else.

- —There isn't anyone else. /There's no one else to ask.
- 一恐怕我帮不了你的忙,你得另找别人。
- 一没有别的什么人。/没有别人可找了。

else 与副词连用: somewhere else=in/at/to some other place 在/到另外一个地方 anywhere else=in/at to any other place 在/到别的什么地方

nowhere else=in/at/to no other place 没在/没到别的地方

Are you going anywhere else?

你还要到别的地方去吗?

B someone/somebody, anyone/anybody, no one/nobody+else 都可以有所有格形式: I took someone else's coat.

我拿了别人的上衣。

Was anyone else's luggage opened?

还有别的什么人的行李给打开了吗?

No one else's luggage was opened.

没有别的人的行李被打开了。

53 another, other, others 与 one 和 some 连用

A another, other, others

- —Have you met Bill's sisters?
- —I' ve met one. I didn't know he had another (sister).
- -Oh, he has two others/two other sisters.
- 一你见过比尔的姐妹了吗?
- 一我只见过一个。我不知道他还有一个(姐妹)。
- 一哦,他还有两个呢。

B one… another/other (s), some…other (s)

One student suggested a play, another (student) / other student / otherswanted a concert.

一个学生建议演话剧,另一个学生/其他学生/其他人希望开音乐会。

Some tourists/Some of the tourists went on the beach; others explored the town.

有些游客/游客中的一些人到海滩去了: 其他人则到市里逛去了。

C one another, each other

Tom and Ann looked at each other. 相当于: Tom looked at Ann and Ann looked at Tom. 汤姆和安互相注视着。

one another 和 each other 都可用于涉及两个或多个人或事物的场合,但 eachother 常常用于涉及多个人或事物的场合。

第六章疑问词 wh-? 和 how?

54 疑问形容词及疑问代词

用于人: 主格 who (代词)

宾格 whom, who (代词)

所有格 whose (代词,形容词)

用于物: 主格/宾格 what (代词,形容词)

用于选择范围有限的人或物: 主格/宾格 which (代词,形容词)

上述这些疑问形容词和疑问代词的单、复数形式都是相同的。

what 也可以用于指人。(参见第 58 节 D。)

55 who, whose 等用做主语时后接肯定动词

who, whose, which, what 作主语时, 通常接一个肯定动词而不是疑问动词: Who pays the bills?

谁付帐? (肯定动词)

Whose/Which horse won?

谁的/哪匹马赢了? (肯定动词)

What happened? /What went wrong?

出了什么事?/出了什么毛病?(肯定动词,可能的回答如 We missedthe train/had an accident<我们误了火车/出了事故>。)

但 who,whose 等后跟 be+名词或人称代词时,要用疑问动词: Who are you? 你是谁?

Whose is this?

这是谁的?

What is that noise?

那噪音是怎么回事?

who, whose 等作动词或介词的宾语时,整句当然需要用疑问动词。

56 who, whom, whose, winch 和 what 的用法举例

A who, whom, whose

who 作主语: Who keeps the keys?

谁保管那些钥匙? (肯定动词)

Who took my gun?

谁拿了我的枪? (肯定动词)

Who are these boys?

这些男孩是谁? (疑问动词)

who, whom 作动词宾语: 常用英语: Who did you see?

你见到谁了?

很正式的英语: Whom did the committee appoint?

委员会指定了谁?

whose 作主语或主语的一部分: Whose car broke down?

谁的车子发生了故障? (肯定动词)

Whose (books) are these?

这些(书)是谁的?(疑问动词)

whose 作动词宾语或主语的一部分: Whose umbrella did you borrow?

你借了谁的雨伞?

B which

Which 作主语或主语的一部分: Which pigeon arrived first?

哪一只鸽子先到达的? (肯定动词)

Which of them is the eldest?

他们中谁的年龄最大? (肯定动词)

which 作动词宾语或宾语的一部分: Which hand do you use?

你用哪一只手?

Which of these dates would you prefer?

这几个日期你喜欢哪一个?

C what

what 作主语或主语的一部分: What caused the explosion?

是什么引起爆炸的? (肯定动词)

What kind of tree is that?

那是哪种树? (肯定动词)

what 作动词宾语或宾语的一部分: What paper do you read?

你经常看什么报纸?

What did they eat?

他们吃了什么?

57 who, whom, which 和 what 作介词宾语

A who, whom

在正规英语中我们用介词+whom 结构: With whom did you go?

你和谁一起去的?

To whom were you speaking?

你刚才在跟谁说话?

但在日常口语中我们常把介词置于句末。这时一般将 whom 变成 who: Who did you go with?

Who were you speaking to?

B which, what

在正规英语中我们用介词+which/what 结构: To which address did you send it?

你把东西寄到哪个地址去了?

On what do you base your theory?

你的理论依据是什么?

在非正规英语中我们将介词置于句末: Which address did you send it to?

What do you base your theory on?

58 what 的用法

A what 是一个指事物的疑问词: What bird is that?

那是什么鸟?

What makes that noise?

什么发出的噪音?

What country do you come from?

你是哪国人?

What did he say?

他说了什么?

B what…for? 意为"为什么":

What did you do that for? 相当于: Why did you do that?

你为什么做那事?

C what +be…like?要求对方进行描述,可以用于人或物: —What was the exam like?

- —It was very difficult.
- 一这次考试怎么样?
- 一难极了。
- —What was the weather like?
- —It was very windy.
- 一天气怎么样?
- 一风很大。
- —What's the food like in your hostel?
- —It's quite good.
- 一你们学生公寓的伙食怎么样?
- 一还不错。

用于人时,既可指人的外表,也可指人的性格、品质: He's short and fat and wears glasses. 他个子不高,很胖,戴眼镜。

He's a very talkative, friendly man.

他是一个非常健谈、和善的人。

what does he / she / it look like? 仅指外表, 也表示他 / 她 / 它像谁 (什么): —What does she look like?

—She is tall and glamorous. She looks like a film star.

牎 な裁囱 ?

- 一她个子很高,很有魅力。看上去像个电影明星。
- —What does it look like?
- —It's black and shiny. It looks like coal.
- 一它看上去什么样?
- 一它黑而亮,看上去像煤。

D what is he? 表示他从事什么职业: —What is his father?

- —He is a tailor.
- 一他父亲是干什么的?
- 一他是个裁缝。

what 作形容词时可用于指人,但不常见: What students are you talking about? (你们在 谈论哪些学生?)这种用法是可以的,但用 Which students…? 时较为常见。

E what 和 how 用于有关度量等的提问中

what 主要与这些名词连用为 what + age / depth / height / length / width,但在口语中用 how old / deep / high / tall / long / wide? 结构。在需要准确的回答时用 what size / weight? 结构,尽管也可用 how big / heavy? 结构: What age are you? / What is your age? / How old are you?

你多大年龄?

What height is he? / What is his height? / How tall is he?

他有多高?

What is the weight of the parcel? / How heavy is it?

包裹有多重?

What size do you take in shoes?

你穿多大号的鞋?

59 which 与 who 和 what 的比较

A which 和 who 用于指物的例子: What will you have to drink? 你想喝点什么?

There is gin, whisky and sherry; which will you have?

我们这里有杜松子酒、威士忌酒以及雪利酒。您想要哪一种?

- —What does it cost to get to Scotland?
- —It depends on how you go.
- —Which (way) is the cheapest? / Which is the cheapest (way)?
- 一到苏格兰去要花多少钱?
- 一这要看你怎么走。
- 一哪一种走法最省钱?
- —I' ve seen the play and the film.
- —What did you think of them? Which (of them) did you like best?
- 一我看了戏剧和电影。
- 一你觉得(它们)怎么样?你最喜欢哪一个?

B which 和 who 用于指人的例子: —Who do you want to speak to?

- —I want to speak to Mr Smith.
- —We have two Smiths here. Which (of them) do you want?
- 一你想找谁谈?
- 一我想找史密斯先生谈。
- 一我们这里有两位姓史密斯的。你要找的是哪一位?

which(代词)指人的时候,不能单独用做动词的主语: Which of you knows the formula? 你们谁知道这个公式? ("of you"是必要的。)

也可以说: Who knows the formula?

C which (形容词) 表示轻微限定的意思时可以用于指人: Which poet (of all the poets) do you like best?

(在所有的诗人当中) 你最喜欢哪一位诗人?

这里可以用 what 代替 which,并且更合乎逻辑,但通常避免用 形容词 what 来指人。

60 疑问副词 why, when, where 和 how

A why? 的含义是"为什么": —Why was he late?

- —He missed the bus.
- 一他为什么迟到了?
- 一他没赶上公共汽车。

B when? 的含义是"什么时候": —When do you get up?

- —7a. m.
- 一你平常什么时候起床?
- 一早晨7点。

C where? 的含义是"什么地方": —Where do you live?

-In London.

- 一你住在哪儿?
- 一住在伦敦。

D how? 的含义是"怎么样": —How did you come?

- —I came by plane.
- 一你是怎么来的?
- 一我是乘飞机来的。
- —How do you start the engine?
- —You press the button.
- 一怎样启动发动机?
- 一按这个按钮。

how 还可有以下用法: 1 与形容词连用(参见第 25 节 C): How strong are you? 你有多大劲儿?

How important is this letter?

这封信的重要性有多大?

(关于 how+old / high 等,参见第 58 节 E。)

2与 much 和 many 连用: How much (money) do you want?

你需要多少钱?

How many (pictures) did you buy?

你买了多少幅(画)?

3 与副词连用: How fast does he drive?

他开得有多快?

How often do you go abroad?

你多长时间出一次国?

How badly was he hurt?

他伤得怎么样?

How soon can you come?

你多快能赶来?

注意 How is she? (她身体怎么样?)询问的是她的健康状况,而 What is she like? (她长得什么样?)询问的是她的外貌。(参见第 58 节 C。)

不要把 How are you? (你身体怎么样?)和 How do you do? (您好!)搞混。当两个人被介绍认识时,双方都说 How do you do? 这只是一句问候语而不是真的提出一个问题。(参见第 126 节。)

61 ever 位于 who,what,where,why,when,how 之

后

Where ever have you been? I' ve been looking for you everywhere!

你究竟到哪儿去了?我在到处找你! Who ever told you I'd lend you the money? I've no money at all! 到底是谁告诉你我会借你钱的?我一点钱也没有!

这里,句子中的 ever 并不是必不可少的,加上它只是为了表示强调说话人惊奇、惊讶、愤怒、气恼和沮丧的语气。它与 on earth (究竟,到底),in the world(究竟)有同样的含义。

这样的句子总是用强调的口气。而且语调本身就表达了说话人的思想感情: Why ever did

you wash it in boiling water?

你究竟为什么把它放在开水里洗? (表示沮丧。)

Who ever are you?

你究竟是谁? (对方大概是个闯入者。)

Who ever left the door open?

到底是谁没关门? (哪个蠢人没关门?)

Where ever have you put my briefcase?

你究竟把我的公文包放到哪儿去了? (我哪儿也找不到。)

What ever are you doing in my car?

你究竟在我的车里搞什么名堂? (表示惊讶或不高兴。)

When ever did you leave home?

你到底是什么时候离开家的? (你一定很早就离开了。)

How ever did he escape unhurt?

他究竟是怎么逃出来还没受伤的? (车子可是完全撞坏了。)

注意: why ever not? 和 what ever for? 的用法如: —You mustn't wear anything green.

- —Why ever not?
- 一你不准穿任何绿色的衣服。
- 一究竟为什么不准穿呢? (我不明白这道禁令的原因。)
- -Bring a knife to class tomorrow.
- —What ever for?
- 一明天上课带一把刀子来。
- 一究竟是干什么用? (我不明白我需要一把刀做什么。)

(关于写成一个词的 whoever, whatever 等的用法参见第 85 节。)

第七章 所有格代词、人称代词及反身代词 my, mine, I, myself 等

62 所有格形容词及所有格代词

所有格形容词/所有格代词

注意:这里不加任何所有格符号即省字撇(apostrophe)。学生应注意,在写所有格形容词 its 时,不要犯加上所有格符号的常见错误。it's(带省字撇)的含义是 it is。

thy, thine 是第二人称单数的古旧的所有格形容词和所有格代词形式。它们在现代英语中已不再使用,只有在《圣经》和 20 世纪以前的诗歌中才能见到。

one's 是代词 one 的所有格形容词形式。

63 所有格形容词的一致关系及用法

A 英语中的所有格形容词在语法上指东西拥有者而不是指所拥有的东西。一个男人或男孩所拥有的东西是 his thing(他的东西),一个女人或女孩所拥有的东西是 her thing(她的东西): Tom's father is his father.

汤姆的父亲是他的父亲。

Mary's father is her father.

玛丽的父亲是她的父亲。

动物或其他事物所拥有的东西是 its thing(它的东西): A tree drops its leaves in autumn. 树木在秋季落叶。

A happy dog wags its tail.

高兴的狗摆动着尾巴。

但如果知道动物的性别,通常用 his / her 来指代。如果事物的拥有者不止一个人,则用 their: The girls are with their brother.

女孩子们和她们的那个兄弟在一起。

Trees drop their leaves in autumn.

树木在秋季落叶。

注意:不管所拥有的东西是单数还是复数,所有格形容词的形式不改变: my glove 我的手套 my gloves 我的一副手套

his foot 他的一只脚 his feet 他的一双脚

B 所有格形容词常与衣服、身体的各部分连用: She changed her shoes.

她换了一双鞋。

He injured his back.

他的背部受了伤。(参见第7节 A6。)

C 为表示强调,可在 my, your, his 等词之后加上 own, 也可以在 one's 之后加上 own: my own room 我自己的房间

her own idea 她自己的主意

own 可以作形容词,如上述例句中那样。它也可作代词: a room of one's own 自己的房子

注意这个习惯用法: I'm on my own. 相当于: I'm alone.

我自己一个人。(没有人跟我在一起。)

64 所有格代词用来代替所有格形容词十名词

A This is our room. / This (room) is ours.

墙′ 增 偿 俏 颐 堑 姆 考 洹?

This is their car. That car is theirs too.

这是他们的汽车。那辆汽车也是他们的。

You' ve got my pen.

你拿了我的笔。

You' re using mine. Where' s yours?

你用的是我的。你的呢?

B of mine 这类短语的含义是 one of my (我的一个)等: a friend of mine=one of my friends 我的一个朋友

a sister of hers=one of her sisters 她的一个姐妹

65 人称代词

A 形式

第二人称单数的古词为: thou(主格) thee(宾格)

- B主格和宾格的用法
- 1 因为 you 和 it 的主格和宾格形式相同,所以使用时不会有困难: —Did you see the snake?
- —Yes, I saw it and it saw me.
- —Did it frighten you?
- 一你看见那条蛇了吗?
- 一嗯,我看到它了,它也看到我了。
- 一它使你受惊了吗?
- 2 第一人称和第三人称形式(it 姑置不论)
- (a) I, he, she, we, they 都可以作动词的主语: I see it.

我看见它了。

He knows you.

他认识你。

They live here.

他们住在这里。

或作动词 be 的表语: It is I.

是我。

但是,我们在这种场合通常用宾格形式: Who is it?

- —It's me.
- 一谁啊?
- 一是我。
- —Where is Tom?
- —That's him over there.
- 一汤姆在哪里?
- 一他就在那边。

但是,如果代词后面跟着的是一个从句,应使用主格代词;

Blame Bill! It was he who chose this colour.

要怪比尔!这种颜色是他挑选的。

(b) me, him, her, us, them 可以作动词的直接宾语: I saw her.

我见到她了。

Tom likes them.

汤姆喜欢他/它/她们。

或者作间接宾语: Bill found me a job.

比尔给我找了一份工作。

Ann gave him a book.

安给了他一本书。(参见第66节。)

或者作介词宾语: with him 和他一起

for her 为了她

without them 没有他 / 她 / 它们

to us 向 / 给我们

66 宾格代词的位置

A 间接宾语置于直接宾语之前: I made Ann / her a cake.

我给安/她做了一块蛋糕。

I sent Bill the photos.

我给比尔寄去了那些照片。

然而,如果直接宾语是人称代词,通常将它紧接在动词之后,并且在它前面使用 to 或 for: I made it for her.

这是我给她做的。

I sent them to him.

我将它们送给了他。(参见第88节。)

这种位置规则不适用于 one, some, any, none 等词: He bought one for Ann. / He bought Ann one. 他给安买了一个。

He gave something to Jack. / He gave Jack something. 他给了杰克一件东西。

B代词作短语动词的宾语时的位置

与许多短语动词连用时,作宾语的名词可以位于动词短语当中或短语动词末尾: Hand your papers in. / Hand in your papers.

把你(们)的试卷交上来。

Hang your coat up. / Hang up your coat.

把你的上衣挂起来。

Take your shoes off. / Take off your shoes.

把你的鞋脱掉。

然而,宾语如是代词,就必须把它置于短语动词当中: hand them in 把它们交上来 hang it up 把它挂起来

take them off 把它们脱掉(参见第三十八章。)

67 it 的用法

A it 通常用来代替事物或指代我们不知道其性别的动物,有时也用来指代婴儿或较年幼的小孩: Where is my map? I left it on the table.

我的地图哪里去了?我把它留在桌子上了。

Look at that bird. It always comes to my window.

看那只鸟。它总是飞到我的窗前来。

Her new baby is tiny. It only weights 2 kilos.

她刚生出的孩子特别小。只有两公斤重。

B 在下列句子中 it 可以用于指代人: Ann (on phone): Who is that? / Who is it? 安 (在打电话): 你是谁啊?

Bill: It's me.

比尔: 是我。

- —Is that Tom over there?
- —No, it's Peter.
- 一是汤姆在那里吗?
- 一不,是彼得。

C it 用于表示时间、距离、天气、温度和潮水的说法中: —What time is it?

- —It is six.
- 一现在几点了?
- **一6** 点了。
- —What's the date?
- —It's the third of March.
- 一今天是几月几号?
- 一今天是3月3日。
- —How far is it to York?
- —It is 400 kilometres.
- —How long does it take to get there?
- —It depends on how you go.
- 一到约克有多远?
- 一400 公里。
- 一到那里需要多少时间?
- 一这要看你怎么走。

It's raining / snowing / freezing.

下雨了 / 下雪了 / 要结冰了。

It's frosty. 有霜冻。

It is a fine night.

今晚很晴朗。

It's full moon tonight.

今晚月圆。

In winter it's / it is dark at six o' clock.

冬天6点钟天就黑了。

It is hot / cold / quiet / noisy in this room.

这个房间里特别热 / 冷 / 安静 / 吵闹。

It's high tide / low tide.

涨潮了/落潮了。

注意下列句子: It's / It is three years since I saw him.

相当于: I haven't seen him for three years.

我已经有三年没见到他了。(参见第188节。)

(关于 it is time+主语+过去时态, 另参见第 293 节。)

D 先行主语 it

1 it 可以引导下列类型的句子(分裂句): It was 'Peter who lent us the money.

是彼得借了钱给我们。(不是保罗)

It's 'today that he's going.

他是今天走。(不是明天)

这种 it 甚至可以与复数名词连用: It's 'pilots that we need, not ground staff.

我们需要的是飞行员,不是地勤人员。(参见第76节。)

2 如不定式是句子主语,通常把 it 置于句首而把不定式放在后面: It is easy to criticize. 批评是容易的。

而不说: To criticize is easy.

又如: It is better to be early.

宁早勿晚。

而不说: To be early is better.

It seems a pity to give up now.

现在放弃好像很遗憾。

而不说: To give up now seems a pity.

如果将 it + be 置于 find / think(that)之后,通常 be 和 that 可省略: He thought(that)it(would be)better to say nothing.

他认为不说话为妙。

We found it impossible to get visas.

我们发现不可能拿到签证。

3 在句子的主语是从句的情况下可以用 it。以下的用法是可以的: That he hasn't phoned is odd.

令人感到奇怪的是他没打电话。

That prices will go up is certain.

价格肯定要上涨。

但是我们通常这样说: It's odd that he hasn't phoned.

It's certain that prices will go up.

其他用法: It never occurred to me that perhaps he was lying.

我从没想到过他可能是在说谎。

It struck me that everyone was unusually silent.

大家都异乎寻常地沉默使我感到吃惊。

Eit / this 可代表句中前面提到过的短语、从句或动词: He smokes in bed,though I don't like it.(it=his smoking in bed)

他躺在床上抽烟,尽管我不喜欢他这样。

He suggested flying, but I thought it would cost too much. (it=flying)

他建议坐飞机去, 可我认为这样花费太大。

Fit 还可以充当非人称动词的主语: it seems 似乎,看起来好像

it appears 似乎,看来

it looks 显得,好像

it happens 碰巧,偶然

68 you, one 和 they 作不定代词

A you 和 one

二者都可作主语: Can you / one camp in the forest?

能在森林里露宿吗?

作宾语时,通常使用 you: They fine you for parking offences.

他们会因为你违章停车而罚你。

在日常会话中, you 较常用。它是一个更"友好"的代词,隐含

着说话人假设自己处在这样的地位。

one 的意思更为客观一些,不太常用,虽然所有格形式 one's 用得较为普遍: It's easy to lose one's / your way in Venice.

在威尼斯是很容易迷路的。

在这些代词后面必须使用正确的所有格形式: One has to show one's pass at the door.

任何人都必须在门口出示通行证。

You have to show your pass at the door.

你必须在门口出示通行证。

如果不用 one 或 you 而用名词的单数形式,那么很明显地所有格形容词必须是 his 或 her: One must do one's best.

一个人必须尽自己最大的努力。

A traveller has to guard his possessions. *?

旅行者必需保管好自己的东西。

B they

they 只能作主语,意为"人们": they say=people say,it is said 人们说,据说 They say it is going to be a cold winter.

据说今年冬季会很冷。

they 也可意为 "有关当局",即政府 / 市政委员会 / 雇主 / 警方等: They want to make this a one-way street.

有关当局想把这条路划为单行线。

69 neither / either, someone / everyone / no one 等

与 they / them / their 连用

上述这些词语都是单数,要用单数动词,因此它们的人称代词应该是 he / she,所有格形容词则是 his / her(he / his 用于阳性和两性都有的场合; she / her 用于指阴性)。但许多以英语为母语的人感到这太麻烦,从而常常用 they / their,即使只牵涉到一个性别也这么使用: Neither of them remembered their instructions.

他们俩谁也没记往自己得到的指示。

Would someone lend me their binoculars?

谁能借给我望远镜用一用?

Everyone has read the notice, haven't they?

大家都看到通知了,是吗?

No one objected, did tnev?

没人反对,对吗? (另参见第51节。)

70 反身代词

A 这类代词有 myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves。 请注意第二人称单数形式 yourself 和第二人称复数形式 yourselves 之间的差别。不定反身代词和

不定强调代词为 oneself。

B 动词所表示的行为施加到施动者自己身上时,也就是主语和宾语同为一人时,用 myself, yourself 等词作动词的宾语: I cut myself.

我把自己割伤了。

He can't shave himself.

他不会给自己刮脸。

It is not always easy to amuse oneself on holiday.

假日自娱并非总是一件容易的事。

Tom and Ann blamed themselves for the accident.

汤姆和安为了这起意外事故责备自己。

This refrigerator defrosts itself.

这台冰箱可自动除霜。

请注意,如果把反身代词换成相互代词 each other,其意思就会发生变化: Tom and Ann blamed each other.

汤姆和安互相责备。(汤姆责备安,安责备汤姆。)

(参见第 53 节 C。)

C myself, yourself 等也可用于动词+介词之后: He spoke to himself.

他暗自心里想着。

Did she pay for herself?

她付了她自己的那一份钱了吗?

Look after yourself.

望你保重。

Take care of yourselves.

希望你们注意身体。

I' m annoyed with myself.

我生自己的气。

He sat by himself.

他独自坐着。

She addressed the envelope to herself.

她在信封收信人处写上了自己的姓名和地址。

但是如果介词是用来指明位置的,一般要用代词而不用反身代词: Did you take your dog with you?

你把狗带去了吗?

They put the child between them.

他们把孩子放在他们中间。

Had he / Did he have any money on him?

他身上有钱吗?

71 myself, himself, herself 等词用做强调代词

myself 等词也可用来强调名词或代词: The king himself gave her the medal.

是国王亲自授予她勋章的。

在讲话中 self 要重读。

这样使用的这类代词本身决不是必不可少的,如被省略也不会改变句子的意思。这类代词通常用来强调句子的主语,这时应位于主语之后: Ann herself opened the door.

安亲自开门。Tom himself went.

汤姆亲自去了。

在有宾语时也可位于宾语之后: Ann opened the door herself.

安亲自开门。

也可位于不及物动词之后: Tom went himself.

汤姆亲自去了。

如果不及物动词之后是介词+名词结构,强调代词则可位于这一名词之后: Tom went to London himself. / Tom himself went to London.

汤姆亲自去伦敦了。

当它强调另一名词时,则直接位于其之后: I saw Tom himself.

我看到汤姆本人了。

I spoke to the President himself.

我和总统本人谈话了。

She liked the diamond itself but not the setting.

她喜欢钻石本身,并不喜欢它的镶嵌底座。

注意下列句子的区别: I did it myself.

是我亲自做的。(是我做的,而不是别人做的。)

I did it by myself.

我独自做的。(我自己做的,没有其他任何人的帮助。)

第八章 关系代词与关系从句

关系从句有三类:限定性关系从句(参见第72节至第77节),非限定性关系从句(参见第78节至第81节),连接性关系从句(参见第82节)。

72 限定性关系从句

这类从句修饰前面的名词,使其有别于其他同类名词。这类从句对清楚了解所修饰名词的特征是必不可少的: The man who told me this refused to give me his name.

告诉我这件事的那个人拒不说出他的姓名。

who told me this 是关系从句。如果省略,句中所提到的那个人是谁就不清楚了。要注意,在被修饰的名词和限定性关系从句之间不加逗号。

限定性关系从句常常跟在 the+名词之后,但也可以用于 a / an+名词、不加 the 的复数名词、代词 all, none, anybody, somebody 等以及 those 之后。

a / an+名词、不带 the 的复数名词及 somebody / someone / some — thing 之后的从句有时只是间接地限定这些名词 / 代词。

在这种情况下名词 / 代词常常是动词或介词的宾语: I met someone who said he knew you. 我碰到了说自己认识你的一个人。

The book is about a girl who falls in love with...

这本书是关于一个女孩,她爱上了……

有时这些从句由一个词或短语将它们与名词 / 代词分开: There's a man here who wants... 这儿有个男人,他想要······

I saw something in the paper which would interest you.

我在报上看到了一些你会感兴趣的东西。

但是,通常关系从句应该紧跟在它们修饰的名词或代词之后: The noise that he made woke everybody up.

他弄出的响声把大家都吵醒了。

She was annoyed by something that I had said.

她为我说的某句话而不高兴。

73 用于限定性关系从句的关系代词

词形变化如下: 74 指人的限定性关系从句

A主格

用 who 或 that, 通常用 who: The man who robbed you has been arrested.

抢劫你的那个人已经被逮捕了。

The girls who serve in the shop are the owner's daughters.

在店里接待顾客的那几个女孩都是店老板的女儿。

Only those who had booked in advance were allowed in.

只有那些预先订票的人可以进去。

Would anyone who saw the accident please get in touch with the police?

凡亲眼看见发生事故的人请与警方联系。

但是在 all,everyone,everybody,no one,nobody 和 those 后面,也可用 that 替代 who:

Everyone who / that knew him liked him.

认得他的人都喜欢他。

Nobody who / that watched the match will ever forget it.

看了这场比赛的人都不会忘记它。

B动词的宾语

用 whom, who 或 that。

指人的关系代词的宾格形式是 whom,但这被认为是十分正规的说法。在口语中经常使用 who 和 that 来代替 whom (that 比 who 更常用);更加普遍的是索性把宾格关系代词省略:

The man whom I saw told me to come back today.

我见到的那个人叫我今天返回。或: The man who I saw...

The man that I saw...

The man I saw···(省略关系代词)

The girls whom he employs are always complaining about their pay.

他雇用的那些女孩子们老是抱怨薪水太低。或: The girls who he employs...

The girls that he employs...

The girls he employs…(省略关系代词)

C介词的宾语

用 whom 或 that。

在正规的英语中介词通常位于关系代词之前,这时关系代词

必须使用 whom 这一形式: the man to whom I spoke 我跟说话的那个人

而在非正式的口语中经常把介词置于句末。这时用 that 来代替 whom, 但更加普遍的是索性省略关系代词: the man who / whom I spoke to

the man that I spoke to

the man I spoke to

同样: The man from whom I bought it told me to oil it.

卖给我这件东西的那个人嘱咐我给它上点油。或: The man who / that I bought it from…

The man I bought it from...

The friend with whom I was travelling spoke French.

和我一起旅行的那个朋友讲法语。或: The friend who / that I was travelling with…

The friend I was travelling with...

D所有格

关系代词的所有格只有 whose 这一种形式: People whose rents have been raised can appeal.

那些被增加了租金的人可以上诉。

The film is about a spy whose wife betrays him.

这部电影是关于一个被自己妻子出卖的间谍的故事。

75 指物的限定性关系从句

A主语

用 which 或 that,而 which 较正式: This is the picture which / that cansed such a sensation.

这就是那部轰动一时的电影。

The stairs which / that lead to the cellar are rather slippery.

通向地窖的楼梯相当滑。

(另参见下面 B。)

B动词的宾语

用 which,that 或干脆省略关系代词: The car which / that I hired broke down. 或: 我租用的那辆小汽车抛锚了。

The car I hired...

一般在 all,everything,little,much,none,no,由 no 构成的复合词及形容词的最高级形式之后很少使用 which,而常用 that。如果这个关系代词是动词的宾语时也可省略: All the apples that fall are eaten by the pigs.

掉在地上的苹果都让猪吃了。

This is the best hotel (that) I know.

这是我所知道的最好的饭店。

C介词的宾语

规范的结构是介词+which,但通常都把介词移到从句的末尾,用关系代词 which,that 或干脆省去关系代词: The ladder on which I was standing began to slip.

我脚下的梯子开始向下滑动。或: The ladder which / that I was standing on began to slip. The ladder I was standing on began to slip.

D所有格

可以用 whose+从句这种结构,但通常是用 with+短语这种结构来代替它: a house whose walls were made of glass 用玻璃做墙的房子

a house with glass walls (译文同上)

E关系副词

用 when, where, why。

注意: when 可以代替用于指时间的 in / on which:

the year when (=in which) he was born 他出生的那一年

the day when (=on which) they arrived 他们到达的那一天

where 可以代替用于指地点的 in / at which: the hotel / where (= in / at which) they were staying 他们当时住的旅店 why 可代替 for which: The reason why he refused is...

他拒绝的理由是……

when, where 和 why 有这种用法时叫做关系副词。

76 分裂句: it+be+名词 / 代词+限定性关系从句

It was 'Tom who helped us.

是汤姆帮助了我们。(不是比尔或杰克)

It was 'Ann that I saw .

我看见的是安。(不是玛丽)

如上文那样宾语是专有名词时,that 要比 who 更常用。用于指其他一切宾语时,that 是正确的: It's the manager that we want to see.

我们要见的是经理。

It was wine that we ordered.

我们要的是红葡萄酒。(不是啤酒)

that 常用于指非人称主语: It's speed that causes accidents, not bad roads.

造成车祸的常是超速行驶,而不是路况不好。

77 用不定式或分词替代关系从句的情况

A 不定式可用于下列各情况: 1 在 the first / second 等词及 the last / only 等词之后,有时还在最高级形式之后: the last man to leave the ship=the last man who left / leaves the ship 最后离开船的那个人

the only one to understand=the only one who understood / understands 唯一理解的人注意:这里的动词不定式取代了主格代词+动词的结构。但它不能用来取代宾格代词+动词的结构,如 the first man that we saw(我们看见的第一个人)中的从句就不能用动词不定式来代替,因为 the first man to see(首先要见的人)这句话表示的是截然不同的意思。但如果 that 是被动句的主语,如 the first man that was seen(第一个被看见的人),则可用一个动词不定式的被动形式: the first man to be seen(第一个被看见的人)来代替这一从句。

2 句中含某种目的或许可的意义时: He has a lot of books to read.

他有许多书要读。(许多可以读或必须要读的书)

She had something to do.

她有事要办。(一件她可以办或必须办的事)

They need a garden to play in.

他们需要有一个可供玩耍的花园。(他们可以在里面玩耍的一个花园)

注意:这里的动词不定式取代了动词+宾格关系代词的结构。有人可能会认为动词不定式的这两种用法会引起混乱,实际上这种情况很少出现,因为句中的其他部分会使动词不定式的含义变得很清楚。the first man to see 这一短语本身可以理解成 the first man that we must see(我们要见的第一个人, man 是宾语)或 the first man who saw(第一个见到某种别的人或物的人, man 是主语),而当它成为句子的一部分时,其含义就显而易见了。

The first man to see is Tom. 相当于: The first man that we must see is Tom. 我们首先要见的人是汤姆。

但是: The first man to see me was Tom. 相当于: The first man who saw me was Tom. 第一个看到我的人是汤姆。

B 现在分词可用于下列各种情况: 1 从句中的主要动词是进行时态时: People who are / were

waiting for the bus often shelter / sheltered in my doorway. 相当于: People waiting for the bus often shelter / sheltered…

等公共汽车的人们常常在我家门口躲风避雨。

2 从句中动词表示一个习惯性或连续性的动作时: Passengers who travel / travelled in this bus buy / bought their tickets in books. 相当于: Passengers travelling...

乘这路公共汽车的乘客买订成小本的车票。

Boys who attend / attended this school have / had to wear uniform. 相当于: Boys attending...

在这个学校就学的男生必须穿校服。

a law which forbids / forbade the import=a law forbidding the import -条禁止进口 \cdots 的法律

a notice which warns / warned people····=a notice warning people····一张警告民众······的 通告

an advertisement which urges / urged····=an advertisement urging····一条鼓励(人们)·······的广告

同样: a petition asking…—份要求……的请愿书

a letter ordering / demanding / telling…一封命令 / 要求 / 通知……的信

a placard protesting…一块抗议……的标语牌

placards protesting…一些抗议……的标语牌

3 从句中的主要动词表示一种愿望,即句中动词是 wish,desire, want,hope 等(但不是 like)时: people who wish / wished to go on the tour=people wishing to go on the tour 希望参加这次旅游的人

fans who hope / hoped for a glimpse of the star=fans hoping for a glimpse of the star 希望看一眼这位明星的影迷

4 含有上述动词之一或者含有表示知道、考虑的任何动词(例如 know,think,believe,expect)的非限定性关系从句(参见下面第 78 节),也同样可以由一个分词短语来代替: Peter,who thought the journey would take two days,said…相当于: Peter,thinking the

journey would take two days, said…

彼得认为旅行需要两天时间,他说……

Tom, who expected to be paid the following week, offered…相当于: Tom, expecting to be paid the following week, offered…

汤姆预计在下周能得到付款,他提出……

Bill, who wanted to make an impression on Ann, took her to…相当于: Bill, wanting to make an impression on Ann, took her to…

比尔想给安留下一个好印象,他带她到 ……

78 非限定性关系从句

A 非限定性关系从句位于确定的名词之后。因此它对这类名词不作限定性描述,仅对该词作进一步说明作为补充而已。它不同于限定性关系从句,在句中并非必不可少,即使省略也不会引起意义上的混乱。它不同于限定性关系从句之处还在于它与被说明的名词之间用逗号隔开。非限定性关系从句中的关系代词绝对不能省略。这种句子结构相当正规,在书面语中用得比口语中多。

B用于非限定性关系从句中的关系代词:

79 指人的非限定性关系从句

A主语

只能用 who。注意逗号: My neighbour, who is very pessimistic, says there will be no apples this year.

我的邻居极为悲观,他说今年苹果将不会有收成。

Peter, who had been driving all day, suggested stopping at the next town.

彼得开了整整一天车, 他建议在下一个城镇停留。

这一类紧接在句子的主语之后的从句主要见于书面英语。在

口语里常常这么说: My neighbour is very pessimistic and says...

我的邻居很悲观,并说……

Peter had been driving all day, so / and he suggested...

彼得开了整整一天车,因此他建议……

但位于句中较后部分的从句,即在主要动词的宾语之后的从句,在口语中是相当普遍的: I' ve invited Ann,who lives in the next flat.

我已经邀请了安,她就住在隔壁的套房里。

从句跟在介词+名词之后也较为普遍:I passed the letter to Peter,who was sitting beside me.

我把信递给了彼得,他就坐在我旁边。

B动词的宾语

用 whom, who。

这类宾格代词在句中不能省略。尽管有时在日常口语中用

who 作宾格关系代词, 但正确的形式应是 whom: Peter, whom everyone suspected, turned out to be innocent.

彼得,大家都怀疑他,结果证明是无罪的。

如上所示,在这个位置的非限定性关系从句在口语中是不常用的。通常很可能这么说:

Everyone suspected Peter, but he turned out to be innocent.

大家都怀疑彼得,但结果证明他是无罪的。

但在口语中常见到非限定性关系从句出现在句中较后的位置,即在主要动词的宾语之后或介词+名词之后: She wanted Tom, whom she liked, as a partner; but she got Jack, whom she didn't like.

她想要她所喜欢的汤姆作为伴侣,可是却得到了她所不喜欢的杰克。

She introduced me to her husband, whom I hadn't met before.

她把我介绍给她丈夫, 我以前没见过他。

C介词的宾语

用 whom。

这个代词在句中不能省略,介词常常位于它之前: Mr Jones,for whom I was working,was very generous about overtime payments.

琼斯先生,我当时给干活的那位,常是很慷慨地付给加班加点的报酬。

然而把介词移到从句之后也是可以的。这在口语中是非常普

遍的,此时 who 往往取代 whom: Mr Jones, who/whom I was working for, …

如果从句中含有一个表示时间或地点的短语, 该短语要留在

从句之末: Peter, with whom I played tennis on Sundays, was fitter than me.

彼得,星期天我常跟打网球的那位,身体比我健康。

这个句子可改为: Peter, who/whom I played tennis with on Sundays, was fitter than me.

D 所有格

用 whose。

Ann, whose children are at school all day, is trying to get a job.

安的孩子们整天都在学校, 所以她在想办法找份工作。

This is George, whose class you will be taking

这一位是乔治, 你就要接他的课。

在口语中,很可能这么说: Ann's children are at school all day, so she…

This is George. You will be taking his class.

80 all, both, few, most, several, some

等+of+whom/which

这种形式可以用于指人,也可用于指事物。见以下例句。括号中给出的是不那么正式的同义说法。

Her sons, both of whom work abroad, ring her up every week.

她的两个儿子,都在国外工作,他们每周都给她打电话来。

(Both her sons work abroad, but they ring her up every week.) He went with a group of people, few of whom were correctly equipped for such a climb.

他和一队人一起去了,其中没有几个人配有进行这样一次登山的适当装备。

(He went with a group of people; few of them...)

The buses, most of which were already full, were surrounded by an angry crowd.

公共汽车大多数都已经挤满了人,它们被愤怒的人群包围着。

(st of the buses were full, and/but they were surrounded by an angrycrowd.)

I met the fruit-pickers, several of whom were university students.

我遇到了摘水果的人们,其中有几个人是大学生。

(I met the fruit-pickers; several of them were...)

I picked up the apples, some of which were badly bruised.

我拣起那些苹果, 其中有一些伤得很厉害。

(I picked up the apples; some of them…)

The house was full of boys, ten of whom were his own grandchildren.

屋子里挤满了小男孩,其中有十个是他自己的孙辈。(The house was full of boys; ten of them…)

81 指物的非限定性关系从句

A 主格

用 which,这里不用 that: That block,Which cost € 5 million to build,has been empty fof years.

那个街区,就是花费了500万英镑建起来的那个,已经空置了多年了。

The 8:15 train, which is usually very punctual, was late today.

8点15分的列车通常是正点的,今天晚点了。

口语中往往可能这么说: That block cost £ 5 million to build and has been empty for years.

那个街区花费了500万英镑建成,已经空置了多年了。

This 8:15 train is usually punctual, but It was late today.

8点15分的列车通常总是正点的,但是今天晚点了。

B 宾格

用 which,这里不用 that,而且 which 决不能省略: She gave me this jumper,which she had knitted herself.

她送给我这件羊毛衫,这是她亲手织的。或: She gave me this jumper; she had knitted it herself. These books,which you can get at any bookshop,will give you all the information you need.

这几本书,你可以在任何书店买到的,会向你提供你所需要的一切资料。或: These books will give you all the information you need. You can get them at any bookshop.

C介词的宾语

介词位于 which 之前或者位于从句之后,但不那么正式: Ashdown Forest, through which we'll be driving, isn't a forest any longer.

阿斯顿森林,我们即将驱车通过,已经不再是森林了。或: Ashdown Forest,which we'll be driving through,isn't a forest any longer.

His house, for which he paid £10, 000, is now worth £50, 000.

他花了一万英镑买的房子,现在值五万英镑。或:His house,which he paid € 10,000 for,is now···

D 与短语动词连用的 which

像下面的短语动词 look after,look forward to,put up with(参见第三十八章)都应被看做一个整体,即介词/副词不应与动词分开:This machine,which I have looked after for twenty years,is still working perfectly.

这台机器我已经照管了20年,现在仍然没一点儿毛病。

Your inefficiency, which we have put up with far too long, is beginning to annoy our customers.

我们对你的不称职容忍得太久,而顾客也开始对此感到不满意了。

E 所有格

用 whose 或 of which。

whose 一般用来指动物和事物, of which 可以用来指物, 但是

除在很正式的英语中之外,比较罕见。

His house, whose windows were all broken, was a depressing sight.

他的房子窗户无一完好,一派令人心酸的景象。

The car, whose handbrake wasn't very reliable, began to slide backwards.

那辆车的手闸不太可靠,车开始向后滑动。

82 连接性关系从句

连接性关系代词为 who,whom,whose,which。逗号的用法跟非限定从句中的用法相同。连接性关系从句不修饰它们前面的名词,而是继续往下叙述。它们通常位于主要动词的宾语之后: I told Peter,who said it wasn't his business.

我告诉了彼得,他说这事与他无关。

或者位于介词+名词之后: I threw the ball to Tom, who threw it to Ann.

我把球扔给汤姆, 他又把球扔给安。

这些关系代词通常可以由 and/but+he/she 等取代: I threw the ball to Tom and he threw it...

I told Peter, but he said…

所以,一个处于这个位置上的从句究竟是非限定性从句还是连接性从句有时很难区分。但学习者没有必要做出这种判断,因为这两种形式基本上是相同的。

下面就连接性关系从句再举若干例子: He drank beer, which made him fat. 相当于: He drank beer, and it made him fat.

他喝啤酒, 因此发胖了。

We went with Peter,whose car broke down before we were halfwaythere. 相当于: We went with Peter but his car broke down before we were halfway there.

我们和彼得一起去的, 但是还没走到半路他的车子就抛了锚。

如第 80 节所述,可以用 one/two 等或 few/several/some 等+of+whom/which 结构: I bought a dozen eggs, six of which broke when I dropped the box.

我买了一打鸡蛋, 六个在我失手掉了盒子时摔碎了。

He introduced me to his boys, one of whom offered to go with me.

他把我介绍给他的男孩们,有一个男孩子自愿提出和我一起去。

The lorry crashed into a queue of people, several of whom had to have hospital treatment.

卡车冲进了一队人之中,其中有几个不得不住院治疗。

which 也可以代表整个从句: The clock struck thirteen, which made everyone laugh. 时钟敲了 13 下,这使大家都笑了起来。

He refused to do his share of the chores, which annoyed the others.

他拒绝干他那一份活儿,这使其他的人很恼火。(他的拒绝使他们恼火。)

The rain rattled on the roof all night, which kept us awake.

雨点整夜敲打着屋顶,这使我们未能入睡。

She was much kinder to her youngest child than she was to the others, which made the others jealous.

她对最小的孩子要比对其他的孩子疼爱得多,这引起了别的孩子的妒忌。

83 what (关系代词) 和 which (连接关系词)

what (= the thing that / the things that 所 \cdots 的事情): what we saw astonished us. 相 当于: he things that we saw astonished us.

我们所看到的事使我们感到惊讶。

When she sees what you have done she will be furious. 相当于: When she sees the damage that you have done she will be furious.

她要是看到你造成的损坏, 她会大发雷霆的。

请务必不要将关系代词 what 与连接关系词 which 混淆。记住,which 必须用来指前面一个句子中的一个词或一组词。而

what 不指前面的任何东西。再者, what 常常是动词的宾语,

然而 which 则常常是动词的主语: He said he had no money, which was not true. 他说他没有钱,这不是实话。

Some of the roads were flooded, which made our journey more difficult.

一些道路被水淹了,这给我们的旅行造成了更多的麻烦。 (参见第82节。)

84 关系从句中的逗号

请记住限定性关系从句不用逗号同前面断开。注意下面例句中加上逗号以后意思上产生的变化:(a)The travellers who knew about the floods took another road. 知道发大水的那些游客改道走了。

(b) The travellers, who knew about the floods, took another road.

游客们知道发了大水,都改道走了。

在(a)中有一个限定性关系从句,它对名词 travellers 的范围作了一定的限制。这个句子的意思是"只有那些知道发了大水

的游客改道走了",并暗示有些别的不知道这一情况的游客仍走现已被水淹的道路。在(b)中有一个非限定性关系从句,它对前面的名词没有起任何限制作用,这句话暗含的意思是"游客们都知道发了大水并改道走了"。

- (c) The boys who wanted to play football were disappointed when it rained. 想踢足球的那些男孩子因为下雨而感到失望。
- (d) The boys, who wanted to play football, were disappointed…那些男孩子想踢足球,对……感到失望。
- (c) 句中的暗含意思是只有一部分男孩希望踢足球。可以推定有一些男孩子对于下不下雨并不在乎。(d) 句中的含义是所有的男孩都想踢足球,并都因下雨而感到失望。
- (e) The wine which was in the cellar was ruined.

地窖里的那些酒全都坏了。

(f) The wine, which was in the cellar, was ruined.

酒放在地窖里,全变坏了。

(e) 句意味着只有一些酒变坏了或可以推定一些放在别处的

酒大概没有坏。(f) 句明确说明所有的酒都放在地窖里而且全都变坏了。

85 whoever, whichever, whatever, whenever,

wherever, however

这些词具有几种不同的含义,可以引导关系从句和其他从句。尽管其他从句严格说不属于本章范围,但是看来最好还是把这些带 ever 的形式放在一起讲。

A whoever (代词) 和 whichever (代词和形容词) 的意思可以是"the one who", "he who", "she who": Whoever gains the most points wins the competition.

谁得分最多,谁就赢得比赛。

Whichever of them gains the most points wins.

他们中哪一个得分最多,哪一个就赢。

Whichever team gains the most points wins.

哪个队得分最多,哪个队就赢。

Whoever gets home first starts cooking the supper.

谁先到家, 谁就开始做晚饭。

Whichever of us gets home first starts cooking.

我们当中不管谁先到家,就开始做饭。

Whoever cleans your windows doesn't make a good job of it.

不管是谁擦洗你的窗户,他都没干好。

B whatever (代词和形容词), whenever, wherever: You can eat what/whatever You like (anything you like).

你喜欢什么就可以吃什么。

When you are older you can watch whatever programme you like.

等你长大了, 你爱看什么节目就可以看什么节目。

My roof leaks when/whenever it rains (every time it rains).

一下雨(每次下雨),我的房顶就漏。

You will see this product advertised everywhere/wherever you go.

无论你到哪里,都能看到这种产品的广告。

Go anywhere / wherever you like.

你愿意去哪儿就去哪儿。

C whoever, whichever, whatever, whenever, wherever, however 都可以是 no matter who… (不论……) 的意思: If I say 'heads, I win; tails you lose', I will win whatever happens / whichever way the coin falls.

如果我说"头,我赢;尾,你输",那么无论什么情况(无论硬币落下后哪一面朝上)我都会赢。

Whatever happens don't forget to write.

无论怎样别忘了写信。

I'll find him, wherever he has gone.

无论他到哪里去了,我都要找到他。(不论他去了哪儿)

whatever you do 经常被置于要求 / 命令之前或之后以强调其重要性:Whatever you do,dont mention my name.

无论如何,不要提起我的名字。

however 是程度副词,常和形容词或另一副词连用: I'd rather have a room of my own, however small (it is), than share a room.

无论房间多么小, 我宁愿一个人住一间, 而不愿意与别人合住一个房间。

However hard I worked, she was never satisfied.

无论我多么努力地工作,她从来没满意过。

D whatever, wherever 可以表示说话人不知情或者不关心: He lives in Wick, wherever that is.

他住在威克,谁知道那地方在哪儿。(我不知道威克在哪里,也不感兴趣。)

He says he's a phrenologist, whatever that is.

他说他是一个颅相学家,谁知道是干什么的。(我不知道那是干什么的,也不感兴趣。) who ever,when ever,what ever 等等也可以分开写成两个字,但意思产生了变化: —I lost seven kilos in a month.

- —How ever did you lose so much in such a short time?
- 一一个月内我体重减轻了七公斤。
- 一在这么短的时间里你怎么会瘦那么多呢?

Bill (suspiciously): I know all about you.

比尔 (怀疑地): 我知道你的底细。

Tom (indignantly): What ever do you mean? 汤姆(怒气冲冲地): 你到底是什么意思? Where ever did you buy your wonderful carpets? 你究竟在什么地方买下这些漂亮的地毯?

第九章介词?

86 概说

介词是通常位于名词或代词之前的词。(关于介词的其他位置,参见第 87 节。)介词之后也可以接动词(但除了在 but 和 except 之后),该动词必须用动名词形式: He is talking of emigrating.

他正在谈论移居国外的事。

They succeeded in escaping.

他们得以逃脱。

学生在介词方面有两个主要问题。他必须弄清楚:(a)在某一个结构中是否需要介词;(b)如需要介词,要用哪一个。

第一个问题对于欧洲学生来说特别棘手。他可能发现母语中某一结构需要介词而英语中的一个类似结构却不需要,反之亦然,如在欧洲的大多数语言中"目的"由一个介词+不定式来表示,而在英语中只由不定式表示:I came here to study.

我到这里来学习。

学生还应该注意,许多主要用做介词的词也可以用做连词及/或副词。这种情况将在以下各节——指出。

87 介词的位置

A 如上所述,介词通常位于名词或代词之前。然而,以下两个结构中的介词在非正式英语中有可能会移到句末: 1 以介词+whom / which / what / whose / where 开头的疑问句: To whom were you talking? (正式的)

Who were you talking to? (非正式的)

你刚才在跟谁谈话?

In which drawer does he keep it? (正式的)

Which drawer does he keep it in? (非正式的)

他把它存放在哪一个抽屉里?

过去常常认为以介词结尾的句子是不合乎语法要求的,但是现在它已被接受为一种口语形式。

2 同样,在关系从句中位于 whom / which 之前的介词也可移到从句之末,此时关系代词常被省略: the paople with whom I was travelling (正式的)

跟我一起旅行的人们

可变为: the people I was travelling with (非正式的)

the company from which I hire my TV set (正式的)

租给我电视机的那家公词

可变为: the company I hire my TV set from (非正式的)

B 但在短语动词中,介词 / 副词跟在动词之后而不改变位置,因此上述的正规结构是不允许的: the child I was looking after 不能改写成 after + whom 形式。Which bridge did they blowup? 也不能改写为 up + which 形式。

88 间接宾语前 to 和 for 的省略

A1 像 I gave the book to Tom (我把书给了汤姆)这样的一个句子也可表示为 I gave Tom the book。也就是说,间接宾语可以在前,而且介词 to 可以省略。

可以使用上述这种结构的动词有: bring, give, hand, leave (in awill), lend, offer, pass (=hand), pay, play (an instrument / pieceof music), promise, sell, send, show, sing, take, tell (=narrate, inform): I showed the map to Bill. 相当于: I showed Bill the map. 我给比尔看了那张地图。

They sent £5 to Mr Smith. 相当于: They sent Mr Smith £5.

他们给史密斯先生寄去了五英镑。

2 同样,I' 11 find a job for Ann(我要给安找一个职业)也可以表示为 I'll find Ann a job (间接宾语在前,省掉 for)。这种结构可用在 book,build,buy,cook(bake,boil,fry 等),fetch,find,get,keep,knit,leave,make,order,reserve 这些动词之后:I'll get a drink for you. 相当于:I'll get you a drink.

我去给你弄一杯喝的。

I bought a book for James.相当于: I bought James a book.

我给詹姆斯买了一本书。

B 通常这两种结构都可以用,但是: 1 在直接宾语是短语或从句时,最好使用不带介词的结构: Tell her the whole story.

把全部情况告诉她。

Show me what you've got in your hand.

给我看一看你手里拿的是什么东西。

2 在下列的情况下,人们更喜欢使用带介词的结构:(a)间接宾语是短语或包含一个从句时: We kept seats for everyone on our list / for everyone who had paid.

我们给名单上的人/已经付了款的人都留了座位。

I had to show my pass to the man at the door.

我不得不向门口的那个人出示我的通行证。

(b) 直接宾语是 it 或 them 时: They kept it for Mary.

他们留着这个给玛丽。

She made them for Bill.

她给比尔做的这些。

We sent it to George.

我们把它给乔治寄去了。

以上这几个句子不能用动词+名词+代词结构来表示。

如果间接宾语也是代词(如 I sent it to him),有时可以将这两个代词的位置互换并省略 to (如 I sent him it),但是带 for 的结构不能这么做,最好避免。

这种限制不适用于其他宾格代词: He gave Bill some.

他给了比尔一些。

He didn't give me any.

他一点也没给我。

He bought Mary one.

他给玛丽买了一个。

I'll show you something.

我给你看一样东西。

C promise, show, tell 可以只和间接宾语连用而不用 to: promise us 答应我们 show him 给他看

tell him 告诉他

read, write 的用法相同,但后面需用 to: read to me 读给我听write to them 写信给他们

play, sing 可与 to 或 for 连用: play to us, play for us 给我们演奏 sing to us, sing for us 唱给我们听

89 to 与表示沟通思想的动词连用时的省略与否]

A 表示命令、请求、邀请及忠告的动词如 advise, ask, beg, com-mand, encourage, implore, invite, order, recommend, remind, re-quest, tell, urge, warn 等动词之后可以直接跟表示说话对象的词+不定式: They advised him to wait. 他们劝他等待。

I unged her to try again.

我鼓励她再试一试。(参见第244节。)

在 advise, remind, tell, warn 等动词之后也可以直接跟表示说话的对象的词,再加其他结构: He reminded them that there were no trains after midnight.

他提醒他们午夜之后没有火车了。

They warned him that the ice was thin/warned him about the ice.

他们警告他冰不厚/警告他冰的事情。

但要注意动词 recommend (=advise) 与其他结构连用时,需要在表示说话对象的词之前加 to: He recommended me to buy it.

他建议我买它。

但是说: He recommended it to me.

他向我推荐这东西。

He recommeded me(for the post)的意思是"他推荐我担任这个职务"。

在 ask 后面表示说话对象的词常常是可加可不加的,这里一律不用介词 to: He asked (me) a question.

他问了(我)一个问题。

He asked (me) if I wanted to apply.

他问(我)我是否想申请。

She asked (her employer) for a day off.

她要求(她的雇主)给她一天假。

B call (=shout), complain, describe, explain, grumble, murmur, mutter, say, shout, speak, suggest, talk, whisper 后面不一定要提到说话对象, 但提到时需要在其前面加 to: Peter complained (to her) about the food.

彼得(向她)抱怨食品不好。

She said nothing (to her parents).

她(跟她的父母)什么也没有说。

He spoke English (to them).

他(跟他们)说英语。

shout at 可以用来表示主语跟对方生气: He shouted at me to get out of his way.

他对我怒喊不要挡他的路。

请和 He shouted to me(他对我高声喊叫)相比较。后者表示他因为我离得比较远而提高声音说话。

90 表示时间和日期的介词: at, on, by, before, in

A at, on

用 at 来表示在某一时刻: at dawn 在黎明

at six 在 6 点钟

at midnight 在午夜

at 4:30 在 4 点 30 分

用 at 来表示在……岁时: at sixteen/at the age of sixteen 16 岁的时候

She got married at seventeen.

她 17 岁结婚。

用 on 来表示在星期几 / 某日: on Monday 在星期一

on 4 June 在 6 月 4 日

on Christmas Day 在圣诞节那一天

但以下的情况例外: at night 在晚上

at Christmas 在圣诞节期间(不仅当天)

at Easter 在复活节期间(不仅当天)

on the morning/afternoon / evening / night of a certain date 在某一具体日期的早上 / 下午 / 傍晚 / 夜里

We arrived on the morning of the sixth.

我们在6号早上到达。

当然也可以说: this / next Monday 在这个 / 下个星期一

any Monday 在任何一个星期一

one Monday 在某个星期一

B by, before

by a time / date / period=at that time or before / not later than that date

在那一时刻或在那一日期或不迟于那一日期

这种表示方法常暗指在那一时刻或日期之前: The train starts at 6:10,so you had better be at the station by 6:10.

火车 6 点 10 分发车, 所以你最好在 6 点 10 分之前到达火车站。

by+a time 常常和完成时态连用,尤其与将来完成时态连用(参见第 216 节): By the end of July I'll have read all those books.

到7月底我将已把那些书全读完了。

before 可作介词、连词或副词: Before signing this...

在签署这个之前……(介词)

Before you sign this...

在你签署这个之前……(连词)

I've seen him somewhere before.

我以前在什么地方见到过他。(副词)

(参见第 195 节 B 与第 342 节。)

C on time, in time, in good time

on time (按时,准时,既不在此时以前也不迟于此时): The 8:15 train started on time. 8点15分的火车按时发车。相当于: It started at 8:15.

火车在点 15 分正点发车。

in time / in time for (+名词)(及时,不迟于······); in good time (for)(留有充足的时间): Passengers should be in time for their train.

旅客们要乘坐火车时应当早点到。

I arrived at the concert hall in good time (for the concert).

我及时到达了音乐厅。(也许音乐会7点半开始,而我在7点15分就到了)。

D on arrival, on arriving, on reaching, on getting to

On arrival / on arriving, he…相当于: When he arrives/arrived, he…

在他到达时,他……

同理, on 也可以与其他某些动词(主要是表示沟通思想的动词)连用: On checking, she found that some of the party didn't know the way.

经核查, 她发现这一组人中有些不认得路。

On hearing / Hearing that the plane had been diverted, they left the air-port.

一听到飞机已经改飞别的机场, 他们就离开了机场。

后面一句中的 on 可以省略。(参见第 277 节。)

E at the beginning / end,in the beginning / end,at first / at lastat the beginning (of…) (在……的开头) / at the end (of…) (在……的最后,照其字面的含义表示在开头 / 最后): At the beginning of a book there is often a table of contents.

在一本书的开头常常有个目录。

At the end there may be an index.

结尾处可能有索引。

in the beginning / at first (=in the early stages 在当初 / 最初) 暗示着以后有所变化。

In the beginning / At first we used hand tools. Later we had machines.

当初/最初我们用手工工具,后来我们有了机器。

in the end / at last (=eventually / after some time 最后 / 终于 / 后来): At first he opposed the marriage, but in the end he gave his consent.

最初他反对这桩婚事,但最终还是同意了。

91 表示时间的介词: from, since, for, during

A from, since 和 for

1 from 通常和 to 或 till / until 连用: Most people work from nine to five.

大多数人从9点工作到5点。

from 也可以用于问地点时: Where do you come from?

你是哪里人?

2 since 只用于时间而从不用于地点之前,意指"从那时起到所指的时刻"。它常常和现在完成时或过去完成时连用(参见第 185 节至第 188 节及第 194 节): He has been here since Monday.

他从星期一开始一直在这里。(从星期一到现在)

He wondered where Ann was. He had not seen her since their guarrel.

他想知道安在哪里。自从他们吵架以后,他就没再见到过她。since 也可以是副词(参见第 37 节及第 185 节至第 188 节):He left school in 1983. I haven't seen him since.

他 1983 年离开学校。打那时起我一直没见过他。

since 也可以是时间连词: He has worked for us ever since he left school.

他离开学校以后就一直为我们工作。

It is two years since I last saw Tom.

从我最后一次见到汤姆到现在,已经有两年了。相当于: I last saw Tom two years ago. 我最后一次见到汤姆是在两年前。

I haven't seen Tom for two years.

我已经有两年没见到汤姆了。

(关于 since 与其他类型的从句连用的情况,参见第 338 节。)

3 for 用来表示一段时间: for six years 六年之久

for two months 有两个月

for ever 永远

Bake it for two hours.

把它烤两个小时。

He travelled in the desert for six months.

他在沙漠中走了六个月。

for+一段时间可以与现在完成时或过去完成时连用,表示动作延续到说话的那一时刻: He has worked here for a year.

他在这里工作已经有一年之久了。(他在一年前就开始在这里工作并仍在这里工作。)

这样用的 for 可以用 since+行动开始的那一刻来代替: He has worked here since this time last year.

他从去年的这个时候起就在这里工作了。

B during 和 for

during 用于已知的一段时间包括大家熟知的节日如 Christmas (圣诞节),Easter (复活节)或者某种已确切限定的时期或阶段之前: during the Middle Ages 在中世纪

during 1941 在 1941 年中

during the summer (of that year) 在 (那一年的) 夏季 during his childhood 在他的童年 时代

during my holidays 在我度假期间

该行动可以持续于整个时期内或只发生在该时期中的某一时刻: It rained all Monday but stopped raining during the night.

星期一整天都在下雨,但夜里雨停了。(在某一时刻)

He was ill for a week, and during that week he ate nothing.

他病了一星期,在那一星期里他什么也没吃。

for(表示目的)可以用于已知的时间阶段之前: I went there / I hired a car/I rented a house for my holidays / for the sum-mer.

因度假期/过夏天我到那里/我租了一辆汽车/我租了一所房子。

for 还有其他各种用法: He asked for €5.

他要五英镑。

I paid £1 for it.

我花一英镑买的。

I bought one for Tom.

我给汤姆买了一个。(参见第88节。)

for 也可以用做连词来引导一个从句。(参见第 330 节。)

92 表示时间的介词 to, till / until,

after 和 afterwards (副词)

A to 和 till / until

to 可以用于时间和地点之前; till / until 只用于时间之前。可以用 from···to 或 from···till / until 结构: They worked from five to ten / from five till ten.

他们从 5 点工作到 10 点。(注意勿与 at five to ten 混淆,后者意为 9 点 55 分。)

但如果句中没有 from,就要用 till / until 而不用 to: Let's start now and work till dark. 让我们现在开始工作一直到天黑。(这里不能用 to。)

till / until 常常和否定意义的动词连用,以表示强调时间晚了: We didn't get home till 2 a.m.

我们一直到凌晨两点钟才到家。

He usually pays me on Friday but last week he didn't pay me till the fol-lowing Monday.

他一般在星期五付给我钱,但上星期他一直到第二周的星期一才把钱给我。

till / until 也常用做时间连词: We'll stay here till it stops raining.

我们将要呆在这里一直到雨停了。

Go on till you come to the level crossing.

一直走到火车道口的地方。

注意:如果省略了 you come to,那么就要由 to 来代替 till: Go on to the level crossing. 一直走到火车道口的地方。

B after, afterwards (副词)

after 是介词,后面必须接名词、代词或动名词: Don't bathe immediately atrer a meal / after eating.

不要饭后/吃饭后就游泳。

Don't have a meal and bathe immediately after it.

不要就餐之后立即游泳。

如果我们不想用名词、代词或动名词,就不能用 after,但可以用 afterwards (= after that) 或者 then: Don't have a meal and bathe immediately afterwards.

(译文同上)

They bathed and afterwards played game / played games afterwards. / They bathed and then played games.

他们游了泳,然后做游戏。

afterwards 可以位于句首或句末并且可以由 soon, immediate— ly, not long 等修饰: Soon afterwards we got a letter.

不久之后我们收到了一封信。

We got a letter not long afterwards.

(译文同上。)

after 也可以作连词用: After he had tuned the piano it sounded quite different.

他给钢琴校过音之后,钢琴的声音完全不同了。

93 表示移动和运动的介词: from, to, at, in,

by, on, into, onto, off, out, out of

A 可以说从(from) 出发地前往(to) 目的地: They flew / drove / cycled/walked from Paris to Rome.

他们从巴黎乘飞机/驾车/骑车/步行前往罗马。

When are you coming back to England?

你将在什么时候回英国?

也可以说送(send) / 邮寄(post)信件给(to)人或到(to)某地。(但请参见后面关于 home 的解释。)

B arrive at / in, get to, reach (不用介词)可以说到达 (arrive in) 一个城市或国家,到达 (arrive at / in) 一个村庄,到达 (arrive at) 任何其他目的地: They arrived in Spain / in Madrid.

他们到达西班牙 / 马德里。

I arrived at the hotel / at the airport / at the bridge / at the crossroads.

我到了旅馆/飞机场/桥梁/十字路口。

get to 和 reach 可以用于任何目的地之前: He got to the station just in time for his train. 他到达火车站刚好赶上火车。

I want to get to Berlin before dark.

我想在天黑之前到达柏林。

They reached the top of the mountain before sunrise.

他们在日出之前到达了山顶。

get in(in 为副词)可以指到达目的地,主要用于表示火车的到

达: What time does the train get in?

火车什么时间到站? (到达终点站/我们的目的地车站)

同时注意下面这一用法: get there / back 到那里 / 回来 (这里 there 和 back 是副词)

C home

可以用一个表示移动的动词+ home 而不用介词: It took us an hour to get home. 我们用了一小时才到家。

They went home by bus.

他们乘公共汽车回家。

但 home 前面有修饰它的词或短语时,则要用介词: She returned to her parents heme 她回到她父母的家里。

可以用 be(是) / live(生活) / stay(停留) / work(工作)等,athome(在家),at $+\cdots+$ home / in $+\cdots+$ home (在某人家)。但是不能直接在 in 之后用 home 这个词: You can do this sort of work at home (at / in your own home).

这种活你可以在家里干。

D表示运输方法的介词: by, on, get in / into / on / onto/off/out of 我们可以乘汽车旅行(travel by car, 但 in the / my / Tom'scar),还可以用下述表示旅行的方式: 乘公共汽车(by bus)/乘火车(by train)/乘飞机(by plane)/乘直升机(by helicopter)/乘气垫船(by hovercraft)等以及乘船(by sea),乘飞机(by air)等。旅行时还可以经由一定路线(by a certain route)或经由某一地点(by a certain place,尽管 via 更为常用): We went by the M4.

我们经 M4 路线前往。

We went via Reading.

我们经里丁前往。

可以说步行前往(walk, go on foot),可以说骑车(动词 cycle)或骑自行车(go on a bicycle 或 by bicycle),可以说骑马(动词 ride 或 go on horseback)。

可以说上(get into)公共或个人的车辆,或只说上车(get in, in 是副词)。

可以说登上(get on / onto)公共车辆,或者只说上车(get on, on 是副词)。

但可以说上船 (go on board a boat= embark)。

可以说骑上(get on / onto)马/骆驼/自行车。可以说从公共或

个人车辆下来(get out of····) 或者只说下车(get out, out 是副词)。

可以说从公共车辆、马、自行车上下来,也可以说 get off apublic vehicle, a horse, a bicycle, 或只说 get off (off 是副词)。

E 当进出某些建筑物、公共机构、国家等并不容易时,也可用 get in / into / out / out of 来表示进出这些地方,而不用 go/come/re- turn 等词。in 和 out 在这些地方作副词用。

I' ve lost my keys! How are we going to get into the flat / to get in? (副 词)

我把钥匙丢了!我们怎么进屋/进去呢?

The house is on fire! We had better get out! (副词)

房子着火了! 我们最好出去!

It's difficult to get into a university nowadays.

如今进大学读书是难事。

F用来指方向的介词和副词有 at, into, to 等(介词), along, on(介词和副词)和 till(连词): Go along the Strand till you see the Savoy on your right.

沿河滨路一直往前走,直到在你看到右边的萨伏依饭店。

The bus stop is just round the corner.

公共汽车站就在街道拐角。

Turn right / left at the Post Office / at the second traffic lights.

在邮局/第二个红绿灯附近向右/左拐。

GO on (副词) past the post office.

一直朝前走, 直到过了邮局。

Turn night / left into Fleet Street.

向右 / 左转入舰队街。

Take the first / second etc. turning on / to the right or on / to your right.

(往前)走到第一/第二个等街口再向右拐。

Go on (副词) to the end of the road.

一直走到这条马路的尽头。(这里不能用 till。)

You will find the bank on your left halfway down the street.

沿着这条路走一半,你可以看到那一家银行在你左侧。

When you come out of the station you will find the bank opposite you / in front of you. 你一走出火车站就可以看到那一家银行在你对面 / 前面。

Get out(of the bus) at the tube station and walk on(副词) till you come to a pub. 在地铁车站附近下公共汽车,一直往前走到一家小酒店处。

Get off(the bus)and walk back(副词) till you come to some traffic lights.

下了(公共汽车)再往回走,直到有红绿灯的地方。

注意不要将 to 和 till 混淆。(参见第 92 节 A。)

94 at, in; in, into; on, onto

A at 和 in

(关于 arrive at / in, 参见第 93 节 B。)

at

我们可以说 be at home (在家), be at work (在工作), be at the office (在办公室), be at school (上学), be at university (上大

学), be at an address (在某一地方), be at a certain point (在某一地点),如 be at the bridge (在桥边),be at the crossroads (在十字路口), be at the bus—stop (在公共汽车站)。

in

使用 in 的地方有 be in a country(在一个国家), be in a town(在一个城镇),be in a village(在一个村庄),be in a square(在一个广场上),be in a street(在一条街上),be in a room(在一间房间里),be in a forest(在一个森林里),be in a wood(在一片小树林里),be in a field(在一片田野里),be in a desert(在沙漠中)等。在任何有边界或被圈起来的地方,都可使用 in。但讲到一个小地方,如 a square,a street,a room,a field 时,如果我们意指"在这地点"而不是指"在里面"时,可以在地点前用 at。

我们可以说 in a building,也可以说 at a building。 in 仅意味着在里面,at 可以指在里面或者在楼旁庭院里或者在楼外。如果说某人 be at the station,他可能在车站外面的街上(in the street outside)、在售票处(in the ticket office)、在候车室(in the waiting room)、在车站餐厅(in the restaurant)或者在站台上(on the platform)。

我们可以说 in the sea,也可以说 at the sea。 in / at a river, lake, swimming pool 等也一样成立。

这里 in 意味着真在水中: The children are swimming in the river.

孩子们正在河里游泳。

at the sea / river / lake 等意指 near / beside the sea (靠近 / 在海边)。但 at sea (不带冠词) 却是一个习语,意味着 on a ship

(在海上航行)。

B in 和 into

如上所述, in 常常指位置。

但 into 指的是移动,表示进入: They climbed into the lorry.

他们爬进了卡车里。

I poured the beer into a tankard.

我把啤酒倒进了大酒杯里。

Thieves broke into my house. / My house was broken into.

盗贼破门闯进了我的家。/我的家被盗贼破门闯入。

in 或 into 都可以和动词 put 连用: He put his hands in / into his pockets.

他伸手到衣兜里。

in 也可以是副词: Come in. 相当于: Enter.

进来。

Get in / into the car.

上来。/进汽车里去。

C on 和 onto

on 既可以用来表示位置也可以用来表示移动: He was sitting on his case.

他那时正坐在他的箱子上。

Snow fell on the hills

雪花落在山丘上。

His name is on the door.

门上有他的名字。

He went on board ship.

他登上了轮船。

在涉及到水平面高低变化的移动时,可以用 onto,但这主要用于人和动物: People climbed onto their roofs.

人们爬上自己家的房顶。

We lifted him onto the table.

我们把他抬到桌上。

The cat jumped onto the mantelpiece.

猫跳到了壁炉台上。

on 也可以作副词: Go on

继续下去。/说下去。

Come on.

跟我来。/快点。

95 above, over, under, below, beneath 等

A above 和 over

above(介词和副词)和 over(介词)两者的含义都是 higher than(高于),有时可以互换使用: The helicopter hovered above / over us.

直升机在我们的上空盘旋。

Flags waved above / over our heads.

旗帜在我们头顶上方飘扬。

但 over 还可以表示覆盖(covering),在对面(on the other side of),横过(across),从一边到另一边(from one side to the oth- er)。We put a rug over him.

我们往他身上盖了一块小毛毯。

He lives over the mountain.

他住在山的那一边。

There is a bridge over the river.

河上有一座桥。

all over+ 名词 / 代词意为"在每一部分": He has friends all over the world.

他的朋友遍天下。

above 则不可能有上述这些意思。

over 还可有"多于"或"高于"的意思。

above 只有"高于"的意思。

over 和 above 都可指较高的职位。但 He is over me 通常表示

He is my immediate superior(他是我的顶头上司),He super — vises my work(他督导我的工作)。above 则不一定有此含义。

如果河上有一座桥,above the bridge 的意思是 upstream(在桥的上游)。

over 可与 meals(饭) / food 食物) / drink(饮料)等连用: They had a chat over a cup of tea.

他们喝茶时聊着天。

在 take+表示时间的词语+over+名词 / 代词结构中, over 可意为 to do / finish(去做 / 完成) 等: He doesn't take bug over lunch / to eat his lunch.

他吃午饭没花多长时间。

He took ages over the job.

他花了很长时间才干完那件事。(他花了很久才完成它。)

above 也可作形容词或副词,意为"前文中的"(在图书或文章等中): the above address 上述地址(前面提到过的地址)

see B above 参见上文 B (前面提到过的 B)

B below 和 under

below (介词和副词) 和 under (介词) 两者的含义都是 lower than (低于),有时可以互换使用,但 under 可以表示 contact (接触): She put the letter under the pillow. 她把信放在枕头下。

The ice crackled under his feet.

冰在他的脚下劈啪作响。

below 通常表示在两个表面之间有一定的间隔: They live below us.

他们住我们楼下。(例如,我们住在第五层,他们住在四层。)

同样: We live above them.

我们住在他们的楼上。(参见上面 A。)

below 和 under 可以指 junior in rank(职位较低)。但 He is under me(他是我的手下)意指 I am his immediate superior(我是他的顶头上司)。below 则不一定有此含义。

(over 和 under 都可用做副词,但含义不同。)

C 有时 beneath 可用来代替 under,但用它来表示抽象含义而不用它表示具体的位置上下则更为稳妥: He would think it beneath him to tell a lie.

他认为说谎有失于他的身份。

She married beneath her.

她嫁给了一位社会地位比她低的人。(进了较低的社会阶层)

D beside, between, behind, in front of, opposite 试设想戏院的一排排座位 A, B, C等, A 排靠舞台最近。

这可以用下面的说法表示: Tom is beside Ann: Mary is beside Bob, etc.

汤姆在安旁边;玛丽在鲍勃旁边(依此类推)。

Ann is between Tom and Bill; Bob is between Mary and Jane.

安在汤姆和比尔之间;鲍勃在玛丽和珍妮之间。

Mary is behind Tom; Tom is in front of Mary.

玛丽在汤姆后面;汤姆在玛丽前面。

但如果汤姆和玛丽正在吃饭,汤姆坐在桌子的一边,玛丽坐在另一边,我们就不用 in front of, 而说: Tom is sitting opposite Mary.

汤姆坐在玛丽对面。

Tom is facing Mary.

汤姆面向玛丽。

但 He stood in front of me(他站在我的前面)既可以指 He stood with his back to me(他背朝我我站着),也可以指 He faced me(他面向着我)。

住在街道一边的人讲到街道另一边的房子时说 the houses op posite us (我们对面的房子), 而不说 the houses in front of us (在我们前面的房子)。

对于其他事物,这些限制都不适用: She put the plate on the table in front of him.

她把盘子放在他面前桌子上。

She sat with a book in front of her.

她坐着,面前放着一本书。

- —Where' s the bank?
- —There it is, just in front of you!
- 一银行在哪里?
- 一在那里,就在你前面!

There's a car—park in front of / at the back of the hotel.

旅馆的前面 / 后面有一个停车场。

E 不要混淆 beside 和 besides。

beside (=at the side of 在……的旁边): We camped beside a lake.

我们在一个湖边野营。

besides (介词) 意为 in addition to (此外) / as well as $(又 \cdots)$: I do all the cooking and besides that I help Tom.

我包做饭,此外我还帮助汤姆。

Besides doing the cooking I help Tom.

除了做饭之外我还帮助汤姆。

besides (副词) 意为 (a) in addition to that (此外) / as well as that (又……): I do the cooking and help Tom besides.

我除了做饭还要帮助汤姆。

和(b)in any case(在任何情况下) / anyway(无论如何,反正): We can't afford oysters. Besides,Tom doesn't like them.

我们买不起牡蛎;再说汤姆也不喜欢吃。

(参见第327节。)

F between 和 among

between 常常表示一个人 / 物与其他两个人 / 物之间的关系。但是,当我们心目中已有了一个确定的数字,between 也可以用来表示在更多的人 / 物之间: Luxemburg lies between Belgiun,Germany and France.

卢森堡位于比利时、德国和法国之间。

among 表示一个人 / 物与其他两个以上的人 / 物间的关系;在正常情况下我们心目中并无确定的数目: He was happy to be among friends again.

他很高兴又回到朋友们中来了。

a village among the hills 一个群山环绕的村庄

G with 也可以在上面最后一句中用来代替 among。当然,它也可以和一个单数宾语连用: He was with a friend.

他和一个朋友在一起。

其他用法的举例如下: He cut it with a knife.

他用小刀切它。

Don't touch it with bare hands.

不要赤手去摸它。

The mountains were covered with snow.

大雪覆盖着群山。

I have no money with me / on me.

我身上没有钱。

He fought / quarrelled with everyone.

他跟每个人都打过架/吵过嘴。

用于描述事物时: the girl with red hair 那个红头发的女孩

the boy with his hands in his pockets 把双手插在口袋里的那个男孩

the man with his back to the camera / with his feet on his desk 那个背对着照相机的 / 脚 搁在桌子上的男人

H but 和 except (介词)

这两个介词具有同样的意思,并且可以互换使用。

but 更常用在介词+宾语结构在句子中直接跟在 nobody (没人) / none (没有任何人或事物) / nothing (什么也没有) / nowhere (什么地方也不) 等之后时: Nobody but Tom knew the way.

只有汤姆认得路。

Nothing but the best is sold in our shops.

本店所售商品均属精品。

句子中介词短语位于较后的位置时,常用 except: Nobody knew the way except Tom.

在 all(全体,一切) / everybody(大家) / everyone(每一个人) / everything(每一件事) / everywhere(任何地方)等之后,也常用 except。在 anybody(任何人) / anything(任何事) / any— where(任何地方)等之后 but 比 except 更表示强调: You can park anywhere but / except here.

你在哪儿停车都行,就是不能在这里停放车子。

but 和 except 后面跟不带 to 的动词不定式。(参见第 98 节。)(关于 but for 在条件句中的 用法参见第 226 节,关于 but 作连词的情况参见第 326 节。)

96 介词与形容词、分词连用

某些形容词和用做形容词的过去分词的后面可以跟介词+名词 / 动名词。(关于动词+介词,参见下一节。)

通常特定的形容词和分词要求跟特定的介词。以下举一些例子;其他可以查阅一本好词典。 好的词典中都在形容词之后列出可以与之连用的介词。

about, at, for, in, of, on, to, with 与某些形容词和分词连用: absorbed in according to

accustomed to (参见第 163 节。)

afraid of (参见第 27 节 B, 第 271 节。)

anxious for / about (参见第 27 节 C。)

ashamed of

aware of (参见第 27 节 F。)

bad at / for

capable of

confident of

due to / for (参见第 27 节 A。)

exposed to

fit for

fond of

frightened of / at

good at / for

interested in

involved in

keen on

liable for / to

nervous of

owing to (参见第 27 节 A。)

pleased with

prepared for

proud of

ready forresponsible for / to

scared of

sorry for / about (参见第 27 节 B。)

successful in

suspicious of

terrified of

tired of

used to (参见第 163 节。)

例句如: He was absorbed in his book.

他在全神贯注地读书。

She is afraid / frightened / scared of the dark.

她害怕黑暗。

According to Tom it ' s 2 : 30.

据汤姆说现在是两点三十分。(汤姆说是两点三十分。)

He is bad / good at chess

他棋下得不好 / 好。

Running is bad / good for you.

跑步对你没好处/有好处。(不利于健康的/利于健康的)

They are very keen on golf.

他们非常喜欢打高尔夫球。

Drivers exceeding the speed limit are liable to a fine.

超速行车的司机应受到罚款。

The management is not responsible for articles left in customers 'cars.

管理人员对于留在顾客车内的东西概不负责。

I' m sorry for your husband.

我很同情你丈夫。(我怜悯他。)

 $I^{\prime}\,$ m sorry for forgetting the tickets.

我忘了票的事,很对不起。

I' m sorry about the tickets.

关于票的事, 我很抱歉。

(关于 good / kind 等+of, 如 It was kind of you to wait, 参见第 26 节 B。)

97 动词和介词

关于动词+介词的复合结构在第三十八章中给出了许多例子。但后面接介词的动词还有很多,下面举出一些例子。在好的词典中可以查到更多的例子。

accuse sb of

apologize (to sb) for

long for

ask for / about

attend to

beg for

believe in

beware of

blame sb for

charge sb with (an offence)

compare sth with

comply with

conform to

consist of

deal in

depend on

dream of

fight with sb for

fine sb for

hope for

insist on

live on (food / money)

apply to sb / for sth

object tooccur to

persist in

prefer sb / sth to sb / sth

prepare for

punish sb for

quarrel with sb about

refer to

rely on

remind sb of

resort to

succeed in

suspect sb of

think of / about

wait for

warn sb of / about

wish for

例句如: Do you believe in ghosts?

你相信有鬼吗?

They were charged with receiving stolen goods.

他们被指控收受赃物。

you haven't complied with the regulations.

你没有遵守条例规定。

For a week she lived on bananas and milk.

她靠吃香蕉喝牛奶过了一星期。

It never occurred to me to insure the house.

我从来也没想到过去给房子投保。

They persisted in defying the law.

他们多次犯法。

When arguments failed he resorted to threats.

他争辩不过别人的时候, 就进行威胁。

注意: feel like+名词 / 代词意指"觉得想吃(喝) 某东西或做某事": De you feel like a drink / a meal / a rest?

你想喝点什么/吃顿饭/休息一下吗?

feel like+动名词意指"觉得想做某事": I don't feel like walking there.

我不想步行到那里去。

(关于 like 在比较中的用法参见第 21 节 G-I。)

被动态动词当然可以接 by+施动者,但它也可以接其他介词: The referee was booed by the crowd.

裁判员遭到了观众的起哄。

The referee was booed for his decision / for awarding a penalty.

裁判员由于所作的裁决/所做出的犯规处罚而遭到起哄。

98 介词后的动名词

A 前面第 89 节中已经提到过,紧接在介词后的动词必须用动名词形式: He left without paying his bill.

他没有付账就走了。

I apologize for not writing before.

我此前未能写信, 谨表歉意。

She insisted on paying for herself.

她坚持要付她自己的那一份钱。

Before signing the contract, read the small print.

在签署合约以前,请详读小号字印出的内容。

(另参见第 259 节。)

还请注意某些名词+介词+动名词结构: There's no point in taking your car if you can't park.

如果那里不能停放车子的话,你开车去就没多大意思了。

What' s the point of taking your car if you can' t park?

如果无处停放车子,你开车去还有什么意思呢?

Is there any chance / likelihood of his changing his mind?

他有可能改变主意吗?

Have you any objection to changing your working hours?

你反不反对改变你的工作时间?

I am in favour of giving everyone a day off.

我赞同给大家放一天假。

B 介词后面必须带动词的动名词形式,这一规则的唯一例外是 except 和 but (介词)。在它们后面带动词原形: I could do nothing except agree.

我除了同意,没有别的办法。

He did nothing but complain.

他只是抱怨,什么也不做。

但是如果 but 用做连词,即如果它引导从句,它的后面就可直接跟完整的不定式或动名词: Being idle sometimes is agreeable, but being idle all the time might become monotonous.

有时清闲无事是令人惬意的,但总是闲呆着就可能变得单调乏味了。

To be idle sometimes is agreeable, but to be idle all the time…(译文同上。)

99 介词 / 副词

许多词既可作介词又可作副词: He got off the bus at the corner. (介词) 他在拐角处下了公共汽车。

He get off at the corner. (副词)

他在拐角处下车。

这些既可作介词又可作副词的词中最重要的有 above, about,

across, along, before, behind, below, besides, by, down, in, near, off, on, over, past, round, since, through, under, up: They were here before six. (介词) 他们 6 点之前在这里。

He has done this sort of work before. (副词)

他以前干过这种工作。

Peter is behind us. (介词)

彼得在我们的后面。

He's a long way behind. (副词)

他远远地落在后面。

She climbed over the wall. (介词)

她爬过墙头。

You'll have to climb over too. (副词)

你也得爬过去。

When the meeting was over the delegates went home. (副词)

会议结束后代表们各自回家了。(这里 over=finished 结束)

The shop is just round the corner. (介词)

商店拐过街口就是。

Come round (to my house) any evening. (副词)

晚上有空来我家串门。

He ran up the stairs. (介词)

他跑上楼梯。

He went up in the lift. (副词)

他乘电梯上去了。

这些词中许多可以用来构成短语动词(参见第三十八章): The plane took off.

飞机起飞了。(离开了地面)

He came round.

他恢复知觉了。(恢复了意识)

第十章 动词概说

100 动词的分类

A 英语动词分两大类: 1 助动词: be have do

can could may might must ought shall should will would need dare used

2 所有其他动词都可称做普通动词,如:work sing pray

B be, have, do, need 和 dare 与普通动词一样,有不定式和分词形式,但是 can, could, may, might, must, ought, shall, should, will 和 would 既没有不定式形式也没有分词形式,所以只有几种非常有限的形式。

在研究助动词之前,先对普通动词的形式作简要的研究可能是有益的,因为普通动词多半加助动词以作时态变化。

普通动词?

101 主动态动词的主要变化?

主动态动词的主要变化请参见下表中的例子: 规则动词的一般过去式和过去分词的构成都是在原形后加 d 或 ed,有时原形的末尾辅音字母必须双写,如 slip, slipped。(参见第 355 节拼写规则。)关于不规则动词,参见第 364 节。现在分词和动名词的变化总是规则的,其构成是在原形后加 ing。在原形后加 ing 时,关于末尾的辅音字母的双写规则,这里也同样适用。(参见第 355 节拼写规则。)

102 主动语态形式一览表?

A 形式

现在一般时式 he works (参见第 172 节。)

进行式 he is working (参见第 164 节。)

完成式 he has worked (参见第 182 节。)

完成进行式 he has been working (参见第 190 节。)

过去一般式 he worked (参见第 175 节。)

进行式 he was working (参见第 178 节。)

完成式 he had worked (参见第 194 节。)

完成进行式 he had been working (参见第 197 节。)

将来一般式 he will work (参见第 201 节。)

进行式 he will be working (参见第 211 节。)

完成式 he will have worked (参见第 216 节。)

完成进行式 he will have been working (参见第 216 节。)

现在 条件语气 he would work (参见第 219 节。)

条件进行式 he would be working (参见第 219 节。)

完成 条件语气 he would have worked (参见第 220 节。)

条件进行式 he would have been working

B 肯定式的缩略式

助动词 be, have, will, would 的缩略形式如下: am' m

is 's

are' re

have 've

has?'s

had?' d

will?' ll

would ?' d

注意: ' s 可以表示 is 或 has; ' d 可以表示 had 或 would: He' s going. 相当于: He is going. 他要走了。

He's gone. 相当于: He has gone.

他已走了。

He'd paid. 相当于: He had paid.

他已付过了。

He'd like a drink. 相当于: He would like a drink.

他想要杯喝的。

这些缩略形式用于代词 here,there,某些疑问词(参见第 104 节)和短的名词之后:Here $^\prime$ s your pen.

你的钢笔在这儿。

The twins' ve arrived.

双胞胎已经到了。

The car' d broken down.

车坏了。

肯定式的缩略式不用于句末: You aren't in a hurry but I am.

你不着急,我可着急。(此处不能用 I' m。)

shall, should, was 和 were 没有书面的缩略形式,但在口语中常读为 / Ml / , / M+d / , / W+z / 和 / W+ (r) / 。

C重音

通常助动词被用来构成时态时不重读, 而主要的动词应重读。

103 各种时态的否定形式

A 一般现在时的否定式:第三人称单数为 does not / doesn' t+动词原形;所有其他人称为 do not / don' t+动词原形。一般过去时的否定式:所有人称都是 did not / didn' t+动词原形。

口语中较常用的缩略形式举例如下: He does not / doesn' t answer letters.

他从不给人回信。

They do not / don' t live here.

他们不住在这儿。

I did not / didn' t phone her.

我没打电话给她。

She did not / didn' t wait for me.

她没等我。

其余的时态的否定式都用在助动词后加 not 的方法构成。口语中可用缩略形式: He has not / hasn't finished.

他还没有完成。

He would not / wouldn' t come.

他不会来。

B 否定式的缩略形式

助动词 be,have,will,would,shall,should,do 的缩略形式如下:am not $\ '$ m not is notisn $\ '$ t $\ '$'s not

are not aren' t/' re not

例句如: I' m not going and Tom isn' t / Tom' s not going.

我不去,汤姆也不去。

We aren' t going. / we' re not going.

我们不去。

have not 和 has not 的缩略形式是 haven't 和 hasn't,但在完成时态中've not 和's not 也是可以的: We haven't seen him. / We've not seen him.

我们没见到过他。

He hasn' t / He' s not come yet.

他还没来。

will not 的缩略形式是 won't, 但'll not 也是可以的。 shall not 的缩略形式是 shan't: I won't go / I'll not go till I hear and I shan't hear till tomorrow.

没有听到音信以前我不去, 而我要到明天才能听到音信。

其他动词的缩略形式是按常规加上 n't。

否定式的缩略式可置于句末: I saw it but he didn't.

我看见它了,可他没看见。

C 英语中,一个否定句只能在句中有一个否定的表达方式,而双

重否定就会使句子具有肯定的含义: Nobody did nothing 意指人人都干了点事。

因此,never,no(形容词),none,nobody,no one,nothing,hard—ly,hardly ever 等词都和肯定动词连用。可以说: He didn't eat anything. / He ate nothing. 他没吃东西。

He doesn't ever complain. / He never complains.

他从来不抱怨。

We haven't seen anyone. / We have seen no one.

我们谁也没看见。

They didn't speak much. / They hardly spoke at all. / They hardly ever spoke. 他们没有说什么。

104 表示疑问和请求的疑问式

A 关于一般现在时的疑问式,第三人称用 does he / she / it+动词原形,其他各人称用 do I / you / we / they+动词原形。

关于一般过去时的疑问式,各人称都用 did+主语+动词原形: Does Peter enjoy parties? 彼得喜欢参加聚会吗?

Did he enjoy Ann's party?

他在安的聚会上玩得开心吗?

至于其他各时态,则通过把主语放在助动词之后的方法来构成疑问式: Have you finished? 你完成了吗?

Are you coming?

你们来吗?

B 用于疑问句中的助动词的缩略形式

1 am, is, are, have, had, will 和 wouldhow, what, who, where, why 这一类词后的缩略形式正如第 102 节 B 节中所示: How will / How'll he get there? 他将怎样到那里去?

What has / What' s happened?

发生了什么事?

is 和 will 在 when 之后也可以有缩略形式: When is / When 's he coming?

他什么时候来?

will 在 which 之后也可有缩略形式: Which will / Which 'll you have?

你要哪一个?

如上面 A 中所示,如动词在前,除了在书面的否定疑问式中可以缩略之外,其他情况下在书面语中都没有缩略形式。但通常在口语中都用缩略形式。

2 shall, should, do 和 did 没有书面缩略形式,虽然有时可将 do you 写成 'd you。在口语中 shall, should 和 do you 常常读为 / Ml / , / M+d / , / dju: / 。

C 疑问式用于疑问句,但不用于下列场合: 1 如问句问的是主语是什么人或什么东西时:

Who told you?

谁告诉你的?

What happened?

出了什么事?

2 在间接引语中时: He said, 'Where does she live?'

他问道:"她住在哪里?"相当于: He asked where she lived.

他问她住在哪里。

3 如果我们在一个问句之前加上像 Do you know,Can you tellme, I want to know,I'd like to know,I wonder / was wondering,Have you any idea,Do you think 等这样一些语句时: What time does it start?

什么时候开始?

但是说: Have you any idea what time it starts?

你知道什么时候开始吗?

Where does Peter live?

彼得住在什么地方?

但是说: I wonder where Peter lives.

我很想知道彼得住在什么地方。

Will I have to pay duty on this?

我必须为此纳税吗?

但是说: Do you think I'll have / Do you know if I'll have to pay duty?

你认为我必须 / 你知道我是否必须交税?

D 请求通常用疑问句表示: Can / Could you help me?

你可以帮助我吗?

Will / Would you pay at the desk?

请您到收款处交款,好吗?

Would you like to come this way?

请您这边来,好吗?

Would you mind moving your car?

请您移动一下汽车,好吗?

但也可以在请求之前加上 I wonder / was wondering 或 Do you think 等这样一类短语,这时用于表示请求的动词就从疑问式变为肯定式 (即陈述式): Could you give me a hand with this?

请您帮我拿一下这东西好吗?

但是说: I wonder / was wondering / wondered if you could give me a hand.

我不知道您是否能帮我一把。

Do you think you could give me a hand?

您能帮我一把吗?

在间接引语中不会引起问题,因为间接请求是用像 ask 这一类动词加上宾语+不定式来表示的: He asked me to give him a hand.

他要我帮他一把。

E 疑问式常用在否定动词之后的附加疑问中: You didn't see him, did you? 你没有见到他,是吗? (参见第 110 节。)

F 为了表示强调而把 never,rarely,seldom,only,when,only by, not only,not till 这一类词或短语放在句首时,随后的主要动词要用倒装形式(与疑问式相同): Only when we landed did we see how badly the plane had been damaged.

我们只是在着陆之后才看到飞机损坏的严重程度。(参见第45节。)

105 否定疑问式

A 这一形式是在普通疑问式之后加上 not 而构成的: Did you not see her? 你没有看见她吗?

Is he not coming?

他不来了吗?

但这种形式几乎总是变为缩略形式: Didn' t you see her?

Isn' the coming?

注意: not 的位置是在主语之前。

am I not 的缩略形式是不规则的,为 aren′t I。

B 当说话人预期或希望得到肯定答语时,常用否定疑问式: Haven't you finished yet? 你还没有结束吗?

Don't you like my new dress?

你不喜欢我的新衣服吗?

Child: Can' t I stay up till the end of the programme?

孩子: 我看完这个节目再去睡觉不行吗?

- —I could wait ten minutes.
- —Couldn′ t you wait a little longer?
- 一我可以等十分钟。
- 一你不能再多等一会儿吗?

C 否定疑问式也可用在反意疑问句中的附加疑问中: You paid him,didn't you? 你给他付过钱了,对吗?

She would like to come, wouldn' t she?

她想来,是吗? (参见第110节。)

助动词?

106 助动词及情态动词

这些词之所以称为助动词,是因为它们帮助构成某种时态或某种表达方法。它们与动词的现在分词、过去分词或不定式结合,帮助构成各种动词时态: I am coming. 我来了。

He has finished.

他已做完了。

I didn' t see them.

我没看到他们。

它们与动词原形连用表示许可、可能、义务、推测等。具体用法见以下几节。这里只举少数例子: He can speak French.

他会讲法语。

You may go.

你可以走了。

We must hurry.

我们必须赶快。

107 助动词:形式与句型

A be, have 和 do(主要的助动词)

1 在否定句和疑问句中,be 与 do 的用法遵从助动词的下列规则: 否定句中,助动词+not: He isn $^\prime$ t coming.

他不来了。It did not matter.

没关系。

疑问句中,主语+助动词: Was he waiting?

他当时在等吗?

Does she see us?

她看到我们了吗?

2 have 在疑问句及否定句中的位置一般与助动词相同: Has he (got) to go? 他一定得走吗?

但有时也用 do / did 形式: Does she have to go?

他一定得走吗?

3 be 与带 to 的动词不定式连用: They are to wait for us at the station.

他们将在车站等我们。

have 后也可接带 to 的动词不定式,但有两种结构除外。(参见第 119 节 A 与第 120 节。) do 与不带 to 的不定式(即动词原形)连用:Did he write?

他写信了吗?

- **4** be(参见第 **115** 节),have 和 do 作助动词使用时,需要带分词或不定式,但在答句或评语等中常省略。
- —Have you seen it?
- —Yes, I have (seen it).
- 一你看见了吗?
- 一是的(,我看见了)。
- 5 在 be,have 和 do 作普通动词使用而有自己本身的意思,如 have 有"拥有"的意思(参见第 122 节)、do 有"干/从事"的意思等(参见第 126 节)时,它们只能是句子中唯一的动词: He is lazy.

他很懒惰.

He has no job.

他没有工作。

He does nothing.

他什么事也不干。

在这种情况下, do 与助动词 do / did 连用: What do you do in the evening?

你一般晚上做什么?

have 可以用两种方法进行变化,即用助动词 do / did 或不用: Have you (got) time? / Do you have time?

你有空吗?

B can, could, may, might, must, ought, will, would, shall 和 should 是情态动词, 也称情态助动词。

情态动词的第三人称单数后不加 s: I must 我必须

he must 他必须

I can 我可以

he can 他可以

它们在构成否定形式和疑问形式时均遵循助动词的规则: will not... ought not...

will he…? ought he…?

它们没有真正的过去时态。情态动词有四种过去形式,即 could, might, should 和 would, 但用途有限。

情态动词没有不定式或分词形式, 所以不能用于进行时态。

除 ought 之外其他情态动词后一律跟不带 to 的动词不定式 (即动词原形): You should pay. You ought to pay.

你应该付钱。

情态动词后面应带动词原形(而非分词等),但有时可省略: —Can you understand?

- —Yes, I can (understand).
- 一你明白吗?
- 一是的(,我明白)。

C need, dare 和 used (半情态动词)

1 当 need 和 dare 作助动词时,可遵循情态动词的句式,后面跟不带 to 的动词不定式: He need not wait.

他不用等。

但也可与 do / did 形式连用,这时后面要接带 to 的动词不定式: He doesn' t dare to interrupt.

他不敢插嘴。

They didn't need to wait.

他们不需要等。(参见第149节。)

need 和 dare 也可作普通动词用,有词形变化,并可与分词连用: He needs help. 他需要帮助。

They dared me to jump.

他们激将我, 要我跳下去。

2 used 有时说成 used to,只指过去的事。它的否定式和疑问式常常遵循助动词的规则: I used not / usedn' t to go.

我一向不去。

虽然严格来讲 used 不带不定式,但经常可以听到 didn't use to 和 did he / she 等+use to? 的形式。

助动词在简略答语、表示同意等的话语中的用法

在谈话中助动词是非常重要的,因为在简略回答、对他人说话表示同意、不同意或作补充陈述时,常使用助动词而不重复原来的动词。

108 简略答语中的助动词

需要用 yes 或 no 回答的问题,如 Do you smoke?(你抽烟吗?)或 Can you ride a bicycle?(你会骑自行车吗?)这类问题,在回答时只要说 yes 或 no,再加上助动词即可。如果原来的主语是一个名词则可用代词来代替:—Do you smoke?

- —Yes, I do.
- 一你抽烟吗?
- 一是的,我抽烟。(不说 Yes, I smoke。)
- -Is that Ann?
- —Yes, it is. / No, it isn' t.
- 一那是安吗?
- 一是的。 / 不, 那不是。
- —Did the twins go?
- —Yes, they did. / No, they didn' t.
- 一那一对双胞胎去了吗?
- 一是的,去了。/不,他们没去。
- —Will there be an exam?
- —Yes, there will. / No, there won' t.
- 一要进行考试吗?
- 一是的,要考试。/不,不考试。

如果问句中有一个以上的助动词,第一个助动词必须出现在

答句中: —Should he have gone?

- —Yes, he should.
- 一他本应夫吗?
- 一是的,他本应去的。

如果问句中用 must I / he 等或 need I / he 等,答句应该是 Yes,you / he 等+must 或 No, you / he 等+needn' t: —Must I / Need I take all these pills?

- —Yes, you must. / No, you needn' t.
- 一我必须把这些药片都吃下去吗?
- 一是的, 你必须。 / 不, 你不必都吃下去。(参见第 147 节。)
- 不用助动词而只用 yes 或 no 的回答不如这些回答那么有礼貌。

109 对他人说话表示同意或不同意

A 对肯定性的说法表示同意时,可用 yes, so 或 of course+助动词的肯定式。如原话中的动词带有助动词时,则必须重复这个助动词。如果原话的动词不带助动词,则现在时用 do, does, 过去时用 did: —He works too hard.

- —Yes, he does.
- 一他干得太卖劲了。
- 一是的,他确实如此。
- —There may be a strike.
- —Yes, there may.
- 一可能要罢工了。
- 一是的,可能会。
- —Living in London will be expensive.
- (Yes,) of course it will.
- 一生活在伦敦开销比较大。
- 一(是的,)肯定会是这样。
- —That's Ann!
- —Oh, so it is.
- 一那是安!
- 一噢,真的。

B 对否定的说法表示不同意时,答话中用 yes / oh yes+助动词的肯定式。这时助动词需要重读。

- —I won' t have to pay.
- —Oh yes, you ' will!
- 一我不用付钱。
- 一噢,不,你应该付!
- —My alarm didn′ t ring!
- —Oh yes, it ' did!
- 一我的闹钟没有响!
- 一噢,不,它响了。
- —There isn' t any salt in this.
- —Yes, there ' is.
- 一这里面一点盐也没有。
- 一不,有盐。

- —Bread won' t make me fat.
- —Oh yes, it' will.
- 一面包不会使我发胖的。
- 一噢, 不, 会的。

C 对否定说法表示同意时,答话中用 no+助动词的否定式: —It wouldn't take long to get there.

- ─No, it wouldn' t.
- 一到那里用不了多长时间。
- 一是的,用不了多长时间。
- —I haven' t paid you yet.
- —No, you haven′t.
- 一我还没付你钱呢。
- 一是的, 你还没付钱。
- —The boys mustn′t be late.
- —No, they mustn' t.
- 一男孩子们不应该迟到。
- 一是的,他们不能迟到。
- —The door can't have been locked.
- ─No, it can' t.
- 一门不可能锁上了。
- 一是的,不可能。
- D 对肯定的说法表示不同意时,答话中用 no / oh no+助动词的否定式: —Ann'll lend it to you.
- —Oh no, she won' t.
- 一安会借给你的。
- 一噢,不,她不会的。
- —Peter gets up too late.
- —No, he doesn′ t.
- 一彼得起床太晚。
- 一不,他起得不晚。
- —There is plenty of time.
- —No, there isn' t.
- 一时间多的是。
- 一不,时间不多。
- -Prices are coming down.
- —Oh ho, they aren' t.
- 一物价正在下跌。
- 一哦,不,没有下跌。

对一种假设表示不同意时可用 but,这种假设可以用问句的形式表达: —Why did you travel first class?

- —But I didn't!
- 一你为什么坐头等舱?
- 一可我哪儿坐头等舱了?

110 附加疑问

这是一些句子后面的简略的附加成分,用于征求对方的同意或肯定。

A 在否定的陈述之后用普通的疑问式: You didn't see him, did you? 你没有见到他,对吗?

Ann can't swim, can she?

安不会游泳, 是吗?

That isn't Tom, is it?

那不是汤姆,是吗?

在肯定的陈述之后用否定疑问式: Peter helped you, didn't he?

彼得帮了你的忙,是吗?

Mary was there, wasn't she?

玛丽那时在那里,对吗?

附加疑问中的否定动词一般都要用缩略形式。

不规则的用法如: I' m late, aren't !?

我迟到了,是吗?

注意 let's 带的附加问句中用助动词 shall: Let's go, shall we?

咱们走吧,好吗?

附加疑问的主语总是用代词。

B 否定陈述后的附加疑问举例: Peter doesn't smoke, does he?

彼得不吸烟, 是吗?

Ann isn't studying music, is she?

安没有在学音乐,是吗?

Bill didn't want to go, did he?

比尔当时不愿意去,是吗?

James wasn't driving the car, was he?

詹姆斯当时没在开车,是吗?

You haven't ridden a horse for a long time, have you?

你好久没骑过马了,对吗?

The twins hadn't seen a hovercraft before, had they?

那对双胞胎以前没见过气垫船,对吗?

They couldn't understand him, could they?

他们听不懂他的话,对吗?

There wasn't enough time, was there?

时间不够,是吗?

People shouldn't drop litter on pavements, should they?

人们不应该在人行道上乱丢废物,对吗?

Ann hasn't got a colour TV, has she?

安没有彩色电视机,是吗?

注意: 凡是包含 neither, no (形容词), none, no one, nobody, nothing, scarcely, barely, hardly, hardly ever, seldom 等词的陈述句,都应看做是否定陈述,后面接一个普通的附

nardly, nardly ever, seldom 等间的陈处可, 郁应有做是否定陈处, 后面接一个普通的的加疑问: No salt is allowed, is it?

不许吃盐,是吗?

Nothing was said, was it?

什么也没说, 是吗?

Peter hardly ever goes to parties, does he?

彼得很少去参加社交聚会,对吗?

当句子的主语是 anyone, anybody, no one, nobody, none, neither 时,在附加疑问中用 they: I don't suppose anyone will volunteer, will they?

我想不会有人自愿参加,对吗?

No one would object, would they?

没有人会反对,是吗?

Neither of them complained, did they?

他们俩谁也没有抱怨,对吗?

C 肯定陈述后的附加疑问

在一般现在时的附加疑问中用 don't / doesn't? 形式,在一般过去时的附加疑问中用 didn't? 形式: Edward lives here, doesn't he?

爱德华住在这里,是吗?

You found your passport, didn't you?

你找到你的护照了,对吗?

在其他各时态之后, 否定的附加疑问中只用助动词: Mary's coming tomorrow, isn't she? 玛丽明天来, 是吗?

Peter's heard the news, hasn't he?

彼得听到那消息了,对吗?

要注意缩略形式's 相当于 is / has 而'd 相当于 had / would: Peter'd written before you phoned, hadn't he?

彼得在你打电话之前已经写信了,对吗?

Mary' d come if you asked her, wouldn't she?

如果你让玛丽来她会来的,对吗?

You'd better change your wet shoes, hadn't you?

你最好还是把湿鞋子换掉,对吗?

The boys' d rather go by air, wouldn' t they?

男孩子更愿意坐飞机走,对吗?

主语是 everybody, everyone, somebody, someone 等词时, 在附加疑问中可用代词 they 来替代: Everyone warned you, didn't they?

大家都向你提出了警告,是吗?

Someone had recognized him, hadn't they?

有人认出了他,对吗?

否定的附加疑问可以不用缩略形式,但这时请注意语序是不同的: You saw him, did you not?

你见到他了,是吗?

这个形式不常用。

D 语调

使用附加疑问的时候,说话人通常不需要对方提供情况,但却希望得到同意,因此这些附加疑问通常与陈述句的语调相同,用降调。

然而,说话人有时的确想得到一些情况。他还不很清楚他所作的陈述是否真实,要求加以证实。在这种情况下附加疑问就要用升调,而且第一句中的重要的词要重读,通常这个词的音

调也上升了。

(参见本书英文作者著 Structure Drills 第 11 节至第 13 节。)

111 附加评论

A 附加评论与附加疑问相同,是由助动词构成的,但不同的是在肯定的陈述句之后用普通的 附加疑问形式,在否定的陈述句之后用否定的附加疑问形式。

附加评论可以加在一个肯定的陈述句之后表示说话者注意到所陈述的事: You saw him, did you? 相当于: Oh, so you saw him.

你看到他了,是吧?

You've found a job, have you? 相当于: Oh, so you've found a job.

你找到工作了,是吧?

它也可以用来回答一个肯定的或否定的陈述句: -I'm living in London now.

- -Are you?
- -我现在住在伦敦。
- -是吗?
- -I didn't pay Paul.
- -Didn't you?
- -我没有付保罗的款。
- -真的吗?

当用来回答一个陈述句时,这一种附加评论大约相当于 Real-ly!(真的吗?)或 Indeed!(真的呀?)的意思。

B 这种附加语的主要用法在于表示说话人对于一句陈述的反应。通过语调他可以表示他是感兴趣的、不感兴趣的、惊奇的、高兴的、快乐的、愤怒的、怀疑的、不相信的等等。

说话人可以用再加一个助动词的办法更有力地表示他的感情: -I borrowed your car.

- -Oh, you did, did you?
- -我借用了你的汽车。
- -哦, 你借了, 是吗?
- -I didn't think you'd need it.
- -Oh, you didn't, didn't you?
- -我没想到你会需要它的。
- -哦, 你没有想到, 是吗?

也就是说,在普通的疑问式之前用一个助动词的肯定式,而在否定疑问之前用一个助动词的否定式。

在这里,其含义同样取决于所用的语调,说话人可能非常愤怒,甚至于非常暴躁;但这种形式也可以表示羡慕或愉快。

112 对一个说法作补充

A 对肯定性的话如作肯定性补充时,可用主语+助动词+too / also 或 so+助动词+主语的结构。如果第一句中有助动词时,补充中要再一次重复前面的助动词。

Bill would enjoy a game and Tom would too / so would Tom.

比尔可能会喜欢游戏 / 运动, 汤姆也会。

如果前一句中没有助动词时,应在补充中用 do / does / did。也就是说,不应说: Bill likes golf and Tom likes golf (too).

比尔喜欢高尔夫球而汤姆也喜欢高尔夫球。

而应说: Bill likes golf and Tom does too / so does Tom.

补充当然也可以由说话的对方来说: -The boys cheated!

- -The girls did too! / So did the girls!
- -男孩子们作弊了!
- -女孩子们也作弊了!
- -I' m having a tooth out tomorrow.
- -So' m l.
- -我明天要去拨牙。
- -我也去拨牙。

当两句话是由同一个人说出时,通常两个主语都要加重语气。

当两句话由两个人分别说出时,第二个主语的语气要比第一个主语的语气重。

- B 对否定性说法作肯定性补充时,其句式为 but+主语+助动词: -Bill hasn't got a licence.
- -But Donald has.
- -比尔没有拿到执照。
- -但唐纳德拿到了。

She doesn't eat meat but her husband does.

她不吃肉,但她丈夫吃。

The horse wasn't hurt but the rider was.

马没伤着, 可骑马的人受了伤。

C 对肯定性说法作否定性补充时, 其句式为 but+主语+助动词的否定式: He likes pop music but I don't.

他喜欢流行音乐, 而我不喜欢。

You can go but I can't.

你可以走,可我不能走。

Peter passed the test but Bill didn't.

彼得通过了考试,而比尔没有通过。

D 对否定性说法作否定性补充时,其句式为 neither / nor+助动词+主语: Tom never goes to concerts,neither does his wife.

汤姆从来不去音乐会, 他的妻子也从来不去。

- —Ann hasn't any spare time.
- -Neither / Nor have I.
- -安没有空闲时间。
- -我也没有。
- -I didn't get much sleep last night.
- -Neither / Nor did I.
- -我昨晚上没睡好。
- -我也是。

还可用主语+助动词的否定形式+either 结构作补充: He didn't like the book; I didn't either.

他不喜欢这本书, 我也不喜欢。

They don't mind the noise; we don't either.

他们不怕吵闹,我们也不怕。

此外也可不省略动词而用动词+宾语(如有宾语的话) +ei-ther 结构: I didn't like it either. 我也不喜欢这个。

We don't mind it either.

我们也不在乎它。

第十一章 be, have 和 do be 作助动词?

113 构成各种时态的形式及用法

A 形式

动词的主要变比形式: be, was / were, been

动名词 / 现在分词: being

现在时:过去时: be 作普通动词用时,各种变化均与上表所列相同。其他时态变化均与普通动词的变化一致。但 be 除了在被动语态中和第 115 节 B 中所述情况下可用进行式外,通常不用进行式。

B 用于构成时态

be 用于进行式的主动形式: He is working / will be working 等

be 用于所有被动形式: He was follwed / is being followed 等

注意: be 可用于被动进行式: 主动: They are carrying him.

他们正抬着他。

被动: He is being carried.

他正被抬着。

(关于 be 与形容词连用于进行时,参见第 115 节 B。)

114 be + 不定式?

A be+不定式结构,如 I am to go,是很重要的用法。它可以用于以下几个方面: 1 传达命令或指示: No one is to leave this building without the permission of the police.

未经警方人员的允许,任何人不得擅自离开这所房子。(没有人能离开)

He is to stay here till we return.

在我们回来之前他必须呆在这里。(他必须留下)

给出指示的这种语气比较超然,因而主要用于第三人称。与第二人称 you 连用时,它常常暗示说话人把别人所发出的指示传达给对方。请看以下两个句子:(a) Stay here, Tom. 留在这里,汤姆。

(b) You are to stay here, Tom.

汤姆,要你留在这里。

它们之间的区别在于: (a) 句中是说话人要汤姆留在这里,而在(b) 句中他只是把另一个人的要求转达给汤姆。

在间接引语中自然就没有这种区别。be+不定式结构是可以用来表达间接命令的一种形式,尤其是在引导动词为现在时的情况下: He says, 'Wait till I come.'

他说: "等到我来为止。" 相当于: He says that we are to wait till he comes.

他说我们得等到他来为止。

祈使句前面有一个从句时,也可以用这种形式: He said, 'If I fall asleep at the wheel wake me up.'

他说,"如果我开车时打瞌睡,就把我叫醒。"

He said that if he fell asleep at the wheel she was to wake him up.

他说,如果他在开车时打瞌睡,她必须把他叫醒。

这种形式还用来把征询指示的请求变为间接引语: 'Where shall I put it, sir?'he asked.

"先生,我把它放在什么地方?"他问道。相当于: He asked where he was to put it.

他问他该把它放在哪里。(参见第 318 节 B。)

2 表达一种计划安排: She is to be married next month.

她预定在下个月结婚。

The expedition is to start in a week's time.

探险队预定在一周后出发。

这种结构常用于新闻报导: The Prime Minister is to make a statement tomorrow.

首相将在明天发表声明。

在新闻标题中, be 常被省略: Prime Minister to make statement tomorrow.

(译文同上。)

过去时: He was to go.

当时他是预定去的。(不定式的一般式)

He was to have gone.

他本来是预定要去。(不定式的完成式)

第一句并没有告诉我们计划是否执行了,第二句则用来表示一个未实现的计划。又如: The Lord Mayor was to have laid the foundation stone but he was taken ill last night so the Lady Mayoress is doing it instead.

市长大人原订要来行奠基礼,可他昨天晚间病了,所以市长夫人替他代行。

B was / were+不定式结构可用来表达一种"命运"的意念: He received a blow on the head. It didn't worry him at the time but it was to be very troublesome later.

他的头上挨了一下子。他当时不感到怎么样,但是这事后来竟变得很麻烦。(结果是很/证明麻烦的)

They said goodbye,little knowing that they were never to meet again. 他们相互道别,根本没有想到竟再也不能相见了。(命运注定不再相见)

C be about+不定式结构表示即将发生的动作: They are about to start.

他们就要出发了。(他们正准备开门。)

加上副词 just 能使将来更加具有即时感: They are just about to leave.

他们马上就要离开了。

这个句式同样也可以用于过去时: He was just about to dive when he saw the shark. 他当时正待扎进水里,却看到了鲨鱼。

be on the point of+动名词与 be about+不定式意思相同,但比后者动作还要快一点。 be 作普通动词

形式:关于作助动词(参见第113节A。)

115 be 表示存在, be+形容词

A be 通常用来表示人或物的存在,或提供有关情况: Tom is a carpenter.

汤姆是木匠。

The dog is in the garden.

那只狗在花园里。

Malta is an island.

马耳他是一个岛国。

The roads were rough and narrow.

道路既崎岖又狭窄。

Gold is a metal.

金是一种金属。

Peter was tall and fair.

彼得身材高大,皮肤白皙。

B be 可以用来表示身体和精神状况: I am hot / cold.

我感到热 / 冷。

He was excitnd / calm.

他激动 / 冷静。

They will be happy / unhappy.

他们会感到愉快 / 不快。

be 和某些形容词例如 quiet / noisy, good / bad, wise / foolish 等连用时可以用进行式, 如 Tom is being foolish (汤姆此刻正在说傻话或做傻事), 意指主语此刻正在表现出这种特征。试把这个句子与 Tom is foolish (汤姆很愚蠢) 相比较。后一句意指汤姆在言谈和行动上总是愚蠢的。同理: The children are being quiet.

孩子们现在不吵不闹。相当于: They are playing quietly now.

他们在安静地玩着。

但如果说 The children are quiet,则可能意指孩子们平时总是安静地玩。

另外一些形容词也可以用于进行式: annoying ?generous / mean

cautious / rash?helpful / unhelpful

clever / stupid irritating

difficult ?mysterious

economical / extravagantoptimistic / pessimistic

formal?polite

funny selfish / unselfish

其中有些形容词如 stupid, difficult, funny, polite 等用于进行式时,可以意味着主语有意这样做。

You are being stupid (你有意装傻) 可以意指 You are not try—ing to understand (你不想努力弄懂)。

He is being difficult (他故意犯别扭) 通常意味着 He is raising unnecessary objections (他 正在提出一些不必要的异议)。

He is being funny(他在故意做出滑稽可笑的样子)通常意味着 He is only joking. Don't believe him (他只是开玩笑,不要相信他)。

She is just being polite (她只是做出有礼貌的样子) 可能意指 She is only pretending to admire your car / clothes / house 等 (她装做表示羡慕你的车子 / 衣服 / 房子等)。

C 表示年龄: -How old are you?

- -I am ten. / I am ten years old.
- -你多大岁数?

- -我十岁了。(但不能说: I am ten years.)
- -How old is the tower?
- -It is 400 years old.
- -那座塔有多少年历史了?
- -它有 400 年的历史了。(在说明事物的年代多久时,必须用 years old。)
- D 表示尺寸和重量: -How tall are you? / What is your height?
- -I am 1.65 metres.
- 一你有多高?
- 一我一米六五。
- -How high are we now?
- -We' re about 20, 000 feet.
- -我们现在的飞行高度是多少?
- -大约两万英尺。
- -What is your weight? / What do you weigh? How much do you weigh?
- -I am 65 kilos. / I weigh 65 kilos.
- -你体重多少?
- -我65公斤。

E 表示价格: -How much is this melon? / What does this melon cost?

- -lt's £1.
- -这甜瓜怎么卖?
- -一英镑。

The best sats are $(=\cos t)$ £5.

最好的座位的票价是五英镑。

116 there is / are / was / were 等

A 表示不定的人或物的名词作动词 be 的主语时,通常用 there+be+名词结构。可以说 A policeman is at the door (门口站着一位警察),但通常说 There is a policeman at the door (有一位警察站在门口)。

注意:虽然 there 像是主语,但真正的主语却是跟在动词之后的名词。如果该名词是复数,动词在数上就必须和它一致: There are two policemen at the door.

有两个警察站在门口。

上述两种句子结构(即名词+be 结构和 there+be+名词结

构)都是可行的,当 be 意为 exist(存在) / happen(发生) / takeplace(发生)时 there 结构是必要的: There is a mistake / There are mistakes in this translation.

这篇译文里有错误。

这个句子不能改写成 A mistake is / Mistakes are 等。

在下列句子中,例句之后加(R)的表示 there 结构可被名词 / 代词+动词结构代替: There have been several break—ins this year.

今年发生了好几起强行入室盗窃事件。

There will be plenty of room for everyone.

将有足够的房间分给大家。

There were hundreds of people on the beach. (R)

海滩上有成千上万的人。

B there 同样也可以与 someone / anyone / no one / something 等连用: There'someone on the phone for you. (R)

有你的电话。

C there+be+something / nothing / anything+形容词结构也是可以的: -ls there anything wrong (with your car)? (R)

- -No, there is nothing wrong with it. (R)
- (你的车)出了什么毛病吗?
- -不,没出什么毛病。

There's something odd / strange about this letter.

这封信有点奇怪。

D 名词或 someone / something 等后面可跟关系从句: There's a film I want to see. 有部电影我想去看。

There's something I must say.

我有些话必须得说。

或后面跟动词不定式: There's nothing to do.

没事可干。(没我们干的事/必须干的事。)

(参见第 250 节。)

E there 结构可以与另一个助动词+be 结构连用: There must be no doubt about this. 这一点不能含糊。

There may be a letter for me.

大概有我一封信。

或与 seem+be, appear+be 连用: There seems to be something wrong here.

这儿好像有点不大对劲。

F 以上这么用的 there 通常不重读。

注意不要将有以上用法的 there 与当做副词用并带有重音的 there 搞混: 'There's a man I want to see.

那就是我想见的人。(他站在门口。)

请比较: 'There's a man I want to see.

我要见个人。(这个人存在。)

117 it is 和 there is 的比较

关于 it is 的用法参见第 67 节。

以下这些例子有助于防止把这两种形式混淆: A it is+形容词; there is+名词: It is foggy. / There is a fog.

有雾。

It was very wet. / There was a lot of rain.

很湿。/下了不少雨。

It won't be very sunny. / There won't be much sun.

天气不会很晴朗。

B it is 与 there is 都可以表示时间和距离: It is a long way to York.

到约克路很远。

There is a long way still to go.

还有很长的路要走。(我们还有好多英里的路程。) It is time to go home.

该回家了。(我们一般是6点回家而现在6点了。)

There is time for us to go home and come back here again before the filmstarts.

在电影开演之前我们有时间先回家一趟再回到这里。(还有足够的时间)

C there is+名词 / 代词和用于识别人或物的 it is+名词 / 代词的比较: There is someone at the door. I think it's the man to read the meters.

门口有个人。我想他是来抄(水、电等)表的。

There is a key here. Is it the key of the safe?

这里有一把钥匙。是开保险箱的吗?

D 用于分裂句的 it is(参见第67节D)以及 there is 的比较: It is the grandmother who makes the decisions.

做出决定的是老奶奶。(是老奶奶而不是家里的其他成员)

... and there's the grandmother, who lives in the granny—flat.

……还有老奶奶,住在专用套房里的那位。(有老奶奶其人)

have 作助动词?

118 构成各种时态的形式及用法

A 形式

主要变化形式: have, had, had

动名词 / 现在分词: having

现在时: 否定式的另一种缩略形式(主要用于完成时): I' ve not,

you' ve not, he's not 等

否定疑问式: have I not? / haven' t I? have you not? haven' t you? hashe not? / hasn' t he? 等

have 的其他时态变化规则,与普通动词的相同。

B 用于构成时态

have 与过去分词连用,构成以下时态: 现在完成时: I have worked.

过去完成时: I had worked.

将来完成时: I will / shall have worked.

条件完成时: I would / should have worked.

119 have+宾语+过去分词

A 想对 I employed someone to do something for me(我雇用了某人为我做事)这一类句子作更简洁的表达时,可以用这种结构:即不说 I employed someone to clean my car,而说 I had my car cleaned(我叫人擦了车子)。又如不说 I got a man to sweep my chimneys(这里 got= paid / persuaded 等),而说 I had my chimneys swept(我叫人通了烟囱)。

注意必须用 have+宾语+过去分词,否则意思就变了: He had his hair cut.

他理了发。相当于: He employed someone to do it.

他雇人理发。

但是: He had cut his hair. (过去完成时)

他自己理了发。(在说话之前的某个时刻他自己给自己理了发)

have 这样用时,其否定式和疑问式的现在时和过去时都要用

do 来构成: -Do you have your windows cleaned evny month?

- -I don't have them cleaned: I clean them myself.
- -你每月都要叫人擦窗户吗?
- -我不叫别人擦,我自己擦。

He was talking about having central heating put in. Did he have it put in in the end? 他那会儿总说要找人装暖气。到底装上了没有?

这种结构可以用于进行时态: I can't ask you to dinner this week as I am having my house painted at the moment.

这一周我不能请你来吃饭了,因为现在我正让人刷房子呢。

While I was having my hair done the police towed away my car.

我(让人)做头发时,警察把我的汽车拖走了。

The house is too small and he is having a room built on.

房子太小了,他正叫人添盖一个房间。

get 能够像 have 一样用于上述句中,但更口语化。句中提到完成动作的那个人的时候,也可以用 get: She got him to dig away the snow.

她让他把雪挖走。(她雇/说服他……)

(have 与不带 to 的不定式连用也能起同样的作用,如 She hadhim dig away the snow。但在英国英语中 get 结构要常用得多。)

B have+宾语+过去分词结构在口语中可以用来代替常表示意外或不幸遭遇的被动态动词。如 His fruit was stolen before hehad a chance to pick it(他树上的果子还没来得及摘就被人偷掉了)可由 He had his fruit stolen before he had a chance topick it 来代替。Two of his teeth were knoceked out in the fight(他的两颗牙在打架中被打掉了)可由 He had two of his teethknocked out····来代替。

在本节 A 中,可以看到主语是命令别人做某事的人,而在这儿,主语则是承受行为结果的人。这里主语也可以是物: The houses had their roofs ripped off by the gale. 房子被狂风掀掉了屋顶。

这里也可以用 get 代替 have: The cat got her tail singed through sitting too near the fire. 猫坐得太靠近炉火,尾巴上的毛被烤焦了。

120 had better+不带 to 的不定式

这里 had 是指不真实的过去; 其含义是现在或将来时: I had / I' d better ring him at once / tomorrow.

我最好还是现在/明天就给他打电话。

其否定式是在 better 之后加上 not: You had better not miss the last bus.

你最好不要误了最后一班公共汽车。(误了这趟车是不明智的或者我劝你/提醒你不要误了 这趟车。)

had 通常在代词后用缩略形式,在口语中有时轻读甚至弱读到将近听不到的地步。

had better 通常不用于普通的疑问式,但有时用于否定疑问式,作为一种劝告句式: Hadn't you better ask him first?

你先问一下他不更好吗?相当于: Wouldn't it be a good thing to ask him first? 是不是先问一下他比较好?

you had better 是一种很有用的劝告句式: You had better fly.

你最好是乘飞机走。(我劝你乘飞机走。)

在间接引语中,had better 与第一、第三人称连用时保持不变,与第二人称连用时可以保持不变,或者转述为 advise+宾语+不定式: He said, 'I had better hurry.'

他说:"我最好快一点。"相当于: He said (that) he'd better hurry. 他说他最好快一点。

He said, 'Ann had better hurry.'

他说:"安最好快一点。"相当于: He said(that)Ann had better hurry. 他说安最好快一点。

He said, 'You' d better hurry.

他说:"你最好快一点。"相当于: He said(that) I'd better hurry. 他说我最好快一点。

He advised me to hurry.

他劝我快一点。

121 have+宾语+现在分词

A 这种说法常常和表示将来某段时间的短语连用: I'll have you driving in three days.

我将使你在三天之内学会开车。(由于我的努力,过三天你就学会开汽车了。)

但也可以用于过去时和现在时: He had them all dancing.

他使得他们全都跳起舞来。(他教/说服他们都跳舞。)

I have them all talking to each other.

我使得他们全都相互交谈起来。(我鼓励/说服他们都相互交谈起来。)

这种结构也可以用于疑问式: Will you really have her driving in three days?

你真的能在三天之内就教会她开车吗?

但通常不用于否定式。

B If you give all—night parties you'll have the neighbours complaining.

你如果举办通宵晚会,会搞得邻居们都抱怨你的。(邻居们将抱怨你的。)

If film—stars put their numbers in telephone books they'd have everyone ring them up. 电影明星们如果把他们的电话号码列入电话簿,就会招致所有的人给他们打电话。(人人都会 / 不断地给他们打电话)。

在第一例句中 you'll have 表达了这样的意思:"你将遭到这样的事"。同样,在第二句中they'd have 含有这样的意思:"他们会遭到这样的事"。

If you don't put a fence round your garden you'll have people walking inand stealing your fruit.

如果你不把你的果园用篱笆围起来,人们会走进来偷摘果子。(人们将走进来/不断进来偷摘果子,即:你要遭到这类事。)

这种结构可以用于疑问句或否定句中: When they move that bus stop you won't have people sitting on your steps waiting for the bus any more.

那个公共汽车站迁走之后,再不会有人坐在你的台阶上等公共汽车了。

这种结构主要用于对 have 的主语来说是不愉快的行为,就如以上的例句所表示的那样。但 也可用在并非不愉快的场合: When he became famous,he had people stopping him in the street and asking for his autograph. 相当于: When he became famous,people stopped him in the street and asked forhis autograph.

他成名之后,常有人在街上拦住他要他签名。

但 I won't have + 宾语十现在分词通常意指"我不能允许或我不允许此事": I won't have

him sitting down to dinner in his overalls. I make him change them.

我不允许他穿着工作服就坐下吃饭。我要他换衣服。(我不许他坐下······) 这种用法只限于第一人称。

(关于 have 用于表达责任、义务等意思,参见第十四章。)

have 作普通动词?

122 have 意指 possess (拥有)

A have 的基本含义是"拥有": He has a black beard.

他长着黑胡子。

I have had this car for ten years.

这辆车我已经买了十年了。

She will have £4, 000 a year when she retires.

她退休后,每年将得到4,000英镑。

B 形式

注意否定式和疑问式可用两种形式构成。

C 为表示习惯动作, do 与 have 连用: -Do you have earthquakes in your country?

- -Yes, but we don't have them very often.
- -你们国家地震吗?

-有,但不经常。

have 没有"习惯"的含义时,在英国更常用 have not(got) / haveyou(got)这些形式,虽然其他说英语的国家(特别是美国)在这种场合也用带 do 的形式。

美国人可能说: Can you help me now? Do you have time?

你现在能帮我吗?你有时间吗?

而英国人却多半要这么说: Can you help me now? Have you got time?

因此用 do 的形式始终是稳妥的,但住在英国的外国学生也应该练习其他的形式。

D 如上所示, got 可以加到 have / have not / have you 等结构中去而不引起含义上的变化, 因此用不用它完全是随意的, 但通常

还是加 got。然而 got 不能加到简略答语或附加疑问中去: -Have you got an ice—axe?

- -Yes, I have.
- -你有破冰斧吗?
- -是的,我有。

She's got a nice voice, hasn't she?

她的嗓音很美,是吗?

have 肯定式)接 got 时通常可以缩略: I've got my ticket.

我拿到票了。

He's got a flat in Pimlico.

他在皮姆利科岛有一套房子。

这时句子重音在 got 上,而've 或's 通常仅勉强能听到。have (肯定式) 不和 got 连用时,常常不缩略,这时 have 和 has 就要读清楚。

123 have 意指 take (a meal) (吃<饭>),

give (a party) (举行<聚会>) 等

A have 也可以用来表示: take (a meal / food / drink, a bath / a lesson 等)(吃<饭>, 吃 < 东西>, 喝 < 东西>, 洗 < 澡>, 上 < 课>等)

give (a party) (举行<聚会>), entertain (guests) (招待<客人>)

encounter (difficulties / trouble) (遭受<困难或麻烦>)

experience(体验),enjoy(享受),通常和形容词如 good 连用: We have lunch at one. 我们 1 点钟吃午饭。

They are having a party tomorrow.

他们明天举行聚会。

Did you have trouble with Customs?

你们在海关遇到麻烦没有?

I hope you'll have a good holiday.

我希望你愉快地度过假期。

B have 用于表示上述含义时,遵循普通动词的变化规则,它后面决不能跟 got。

它的否定式与疑问式用 do / did 来构成。

它可以用于进行时态。

We are having breakfast early tomorrow.

我们明天一早吃早饭。(不远的将来)

She is having twenty people to dinner next Monday.

下星期一她要请 20 个人吃饭。(不远的将来)

I can't answer the telephone. I am having a bath.

我不能接电话,我正在洗澡。(当前)

How many English lessons do you have a week? I have six.

你一周上几节英语课?我上六节。

You have coffee at eleven, don't you?

你们一般 11 点钟喝咖啡,是吗? (习惯)

Ann has breakfast in bed, but Mary doesn't.

安经常在床上吃早饭, 可玛丽不这样。

Will you have some tea / coffee?

请喝杯茶 / 咖啡好吗? (这是一种邀请,我们可以省略掉 Will you,即只说 Have some tea 等。)

Did you have a good time at the theatre?

你在戏院看戏愉快吗? (你过得愉快吗?)

Have a good time!

好好地玩吧!

I am having a wonderful holiday.

我正在度一个非常愉快的假期。

I didn't have a very good journey.

我在旅途中不很舒服。

do?

124 形式

主要变化形式: do, did, done

动名词 / 现在分词: doing

现在时:作普通动词用的 do 的肯定式如上所示,但是它的否定式和疑问式需要在上述形式前再加上 do: What does / did she do?

她干什么工作? (参见第 126 节。)

过去时: I don't know.

我不知道。

Did you see it?

你看到过没有?

He doesn't like me.

他不喜欢我。

125 do 用做助动词

A 助动词 do 用来构成普通动词现在式和过去式的否定式和疑问式: He doesn't work. 他不工作。

He didn't work.

他以前不工作。

Does he work?

他工作吗?

Did he work?

他以前工作吗?

B 想特别加重语气时,可在肯定式中用 do / did+不带 to 的不定式这种形式。它主要用在别人对所提到的动作表示怀疑的场合: You didn't see him.

你没有看到他。

I' did see him.

我确实见到他了。(did 在说话中要特意重读。语气比 I saw him 强。)

I know that you didn't expect me to go, but I' did go.

我知道你本没料到我会去的,可我确实去了。

C do 也用来避免重复前面已出现过的普通动词: 1 用于简略答语中表示同意和不同意(参见第 109 节): —Tom talks too much.

- —Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.
- 一汤姆话说得太多。
- 一是的。 / 不, 他说得不多。
- —He didn't go.
- —No, he didn't. / Oh yes, he did.
- 一他没去。
- 一是,他没去。/哦,不,他去了。
- 2 用于补充 (参见第 112 节): He likes concerts and so do we.

他喜欢听音乐会,我们也一样。(注意倒装。)

He lives here but I don't.

他住在这里, 但我不住这儿。

He doesn't drive but I do.

他不开车,但我开。

3 用于附加疑问(参见第 110 节): He lives here, doesn't he?

他住在这里, 是吗?

He didn't see you, did he?

他没见到你,对吗?

D do 用于简略答语中,避免重复主要动词: —Do you smoke?

- —Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- 一你抽烟吗?
- 一是的,我抽烟。(不说 Yes, I smoke。) / 不,我不抽。
- —Did you see him?
- —Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.
- 一你见到他了吗?
- 一是的,见到了。/不,没见到。(参见第 108 节。)

E 在比较等级中的用法与 D 相同(参见第 22 节): He drives faster than I do. 他开车比我开得快。

F do+祈使语气可使请求或邀请更有说服力: Do come with us.

一定和我们一起来。(比 Come with us 更有说服力。)

Do work a little harder.

务必请你工作再努力一点吧。

Do help me, please.

请一定帮我的忙。

G do 也同样用于别人征询是否同意时自己的肯定答语中,以表示赞许或鼓励: -Shall I write to him?

- —Yes, do. / Do.
- 一我是否可以写信给他?
- 一行, 写吧。

126 do 用做普通动词

do 像 have 一样可用做普通动词,这时它就与 do 和 did 连用来构成一般现在时和一般过去时的肯定式和疑问式: I do not do do you do? ?don't you do?

he does not do?does he do? doesn't he do?

I did not do did you do? ?didn't you do?

等 do 可以用在进行式或一般式中: —what are you doing (now)?

- —I'm doing my homework.
- 一(现在)你在做什么?
- 一我在做家庭作业。

What's he doing tomorrow?

他明天要做什么? (最近将来)

What does he do in the evening?

他平时晚上做什么? (习惯)

—Why did you do it?

- —I did it because I was angry.
- 一你是为什么这么干的?
- 一因为当时我生气。

How do you do? 是经过介绍之后双方互致的问候语: Hostess: Mr Day, may I introduce Mr Davis? Mr Davis, Mr Dav.

女主人: 戴先生, 让我来介绍戴维斯先生。这位是戴维斯先生, 这位是戴先生。

两位先生这时都说: How do you do?

您好。

原先这是问候对方健康的话,现在仅用为介绍场合中的公式化的问候语。

do 的其他用法如: He doesn't do what he's told.

他不按照告诉他的去做。(不服从命令)

- —What do you do for a living?
- -I'm an artist.
- 一你是做什么工作的?
- 一我是个画家。

How's the new boy doing?

新来的男孩这两天怎么样? (进展)

- —I haven't got a torch. Will a candle do (= be suitable/adequate)?
- —A candle won't do. I'm looking for a gas leak.
- 一我没有手电筒。蜡烛行吗?
- 一蜡烛不行。我要查找煤气泄漏的地方。
- —Would \pounds 10 do (= be adequate) ?
- —No, it wouldn't. I need £ 20.
- 一十英镑行吗? (是否足够)
- 一不够,我需要20英镑。

to do with (只限于动词不定式) 有 "有关系"的意思。主要用于 it is / was something / nothing to do with+名词 / 代词 / 动名词结构: It's nothing to do with you. 相当于: It doesn't concern you.

这跟你没关系。

第十二章 may 和 can 表示许可和可能、许可

127 may 用来表示许可

may用于所有人称的现在时及将来时句子中。

might 用于所有人称的过去时及条件句中。

否定形式: may not / mayn't, might not / mightn't

疑问式: mag I? might I? 等

否定疑问式: may I not? / mayn't I? might I not? / mightn't I? 等表示许可的 may 的其他形式可用 allow, be allowed 的相应形式代替。may 后面接不带 to 的不定式(即动词原形)。

128 can 用来表示许可

can 用于所有人称的现在时及将来时句子中。

could 用于所有人称的过去时及条件句中。

否定式: cannot / can't, could not/couldn't

疑问式: can I? could I? 等

否定疑问式: can | not? / can't |? could | not? / couldn't |? 等

表示许可的 can 的其他形式可用 allow, be allowed 的相应形式代替。can 与不带 to 的不定式连用。

129 may 和 can 用来表示现在或将来的许可

A第一人称

I / we can 是最常用的形式: I can take a day off whenever I want.

我什么时候想休息一天就休息一天。

I / we may 可以意为我 / 我们获准做某事: I may leave the office as soon as I have finished.

我获准一结束工作就可以离开办公室。

但这不是很常用的结构,更常说: I can leave / I'm allowed to leave…

我可以离开 / 人家允许我离开

I / we may / might 在间接引语中更为常见: 'You may leave when you'ye finished,' he says/said.

他说:"你做完以后就可以走。"相当于: He says we may leave/He said we might leave... 他说 / 说过我们可以走······

但在口语中常会使用 can / could: He says we can leave. / He said we could leave. 他说 / 说过我们可以离开。

B 第二人称

这里 may 主要用来表示说话人的允许: You may park here (你可以在这里停车)意指我允许你在这里停放汽车,一般情况下它不是指警察等准许你在此停车,也不是说你有权停车。can 可在这里代替 may 用来表示许可,是不正式的用法。它不仅表示给予许可,而且还表示获得许可的意思。 You can park here(你可以在这里停车)意指我允许你停车/警察准许你停车/你有权利在这儿停车。

同样: You can take two books home with you(你可以带两本书回家)意指我允许你带走/图书馆允许你带走。 You can't eat sandwiches in the library(你不能在图书馆里吃三明治)意为我不允许你在图书馆吃三明治/图书馆工作人员不准许或这么做不合适。

could 可以在具有附带条件的情况下使用: Why don't you ring him? You can / could use my phone.

你为什么不给他打电话?你可以用我的电话。

could 还常用于动词过去式引导的间接引语中: He said I could use his phone. 他说我可以用他的电话。

C第三人称

表示说话人的允许时,可用 may,正如上面 B 所示: He may take my car. 他可以用我的车。(我许可他这么做。)

They may phone the office and reverse the charges.

他们可以给办公室打电话让对方付电话费。(我许可他们这么做。)

但 may 主要用于不具体指某个人而泛指一类人的权力或允许的话语中: In certain circumstances a police officer may(= has the right to) ask a driver to take a breath test. 在特定的情况下警官可以(有权)要求驾驶员接受酒精检测。

If convicted, an accused person may (=has the right to) appeal.

如果宣告有罪,被告有权上诉。

Scrabble rules: No letter may be moved after it has been played.

纵横拼字游戏的规则:字母棋子已落到棋盘上就不许再动了。

在非正规英语中常会使用 can / can't: He can take the car.

他可以用这辆车。

They can phone the office.

他们可以给办公室打电话。

A police officer can ask a driver...

警察有权要求驾驶员 ……

An accused person can appeal.

被告有权上诉。

No letter can be moved...

字母棋子不许再动……

130 could 或 was / were allowed to 用来表示过去的许可

could 也能表示过去的一般的允许: On Sundays we could (=were allowed to) stay up late. 星期天晚上我们能到较晚才睡。

当某一具体行为获准并付诸实施时,就必须用 was / were allowed 代替 could: I had a visa so I was allowed to cross the frontier.

我有签证, 所以我被允许越过边界。

couldn't 的用法比 could 要稍为广泛一些: We couldn't bring our dog into the restaurant. 我们不能把狗带进饭馆里。

与此相反的意思应当用 allow 表示: We were allowed to bring...

允许我们把狗带进……,

如欲使用完成时和被动语态,则必须用 allowed: Since his accident he hasn't been allowed to drive.

自从他出了车祸以后就不允许他再开车了。

As a child he had been allowed to do exactly what he liked.

他小时候,容许他爱干什么就干什么。

(关于 might / could 在间接引语中的用法,参见第 129 节 A。)

131 请求许可

(参见第 283 节。)

A can I? could I? , may I? , might I? 都可以用于现在时和将来时,其中 can I? 是最不正式的用法。

could I? 是四种用法中最为普遍有用的一种。它既可用于正式的请求中,也可用于非正式的请求中。

may I? 要比 could I? 稍为正式一些,但也通用于正式及非正式的请求中。

might I? 与 may I? 不同。它没有 may I? 表现得那么自信。它表示比较胆怯,同时对回答比较没有把握。

B 否定疑问式 can't I? 和 couldn't I? 用来表示说话的人希望能得到肯定的回答: Can't I stay up till the end of the programme?

我不能一直呆到节目结束再去睡吗?

Couldn't I pay by cheque?

我可以用支票付款吧?

may 和 might 不能这么用。

C 对于 can I? / could I? 这种请求的回答通常是: Yes, you can.

是的, 你可以。

Yes, of course (you can).

(你) 当然行。

No, you can't.

不, 你不行。

对于 may I? / might I? 这种请求的肯定回答通常是: Yes, you may.

是的, 你可以。

Yes, of course (you may).

(你) 当然可以。

用否定回答 No,you may not(不,你不行)是可以的,但通常用比较婉转的句式来代替: I'd rather you didn't.

我希望你不这么做。

I'm afraid not.

恐怕不行。

D 询问是否允许时,现在时用 can 或 am/is / are allowed to; 过去时用 could 或 was/were allowed to: Can Tom use the car whenever he likes?

汤姆能随时用车……吗?

Is Tom allowed to use the car…?

允许汤姆用车……吗?

Could students choose what they wanted to study?

学生可以任意选择学习科目吗?

Were students allowed to choose…?

允许学生任意选择 ……吗?

可能?

132 may / might 表示可能

A 形式

may / might 可以用于现在时或将来时。

might 可以用于条件句中或动词过去式之后。

否定式: may not / mayn't, might not / mightn't

疑问式: 见下面 E

不定式: to be+likely

B may / might+不定式的一般 (现在) 式可以表示现在或将来的可能性: He may / might tell his wife.

他可能会告诉他的妻子。(他也许告诉/将告诉他的妻子。)

He may / might emigrate.

他可能移居国外。(或许他将移居国外。)

Ann may / might know Tom's address.

安可能知道汤姆的地址。(也许安知道……)

同样,可以与不定式的进行式连用: He may / might be waiting at the station.

他可能在火车站等着。(或许他正在火车站等着。)

He may / might be waiting at the station when we arrive.

我们到达车站时他可能在那里等着。(也许他将等着……)

C may 或 might 用于表示未来的可能性

通常两者都可以用,用 might 时怀疑的语气稍重一些。注意: 在口语中也可以通过重读 may 或 might 来表示较为怀疑。

Tom'may lend you the money (汤姆也许会借钱给你) 在 may 上特别重读,表示这件事可能性不很大。

Tom'might lend you the money (汤姆没准儿会借钱给你) 在 might 上特别重读,表示我认为这件事不大可能 / 我认为这件事不可能。

D might 必须用于条件句中,且必须在动词过去式所引导的句子中: If you invited him be might come.

如果你邀请了他,他可能会来的。

I know we might have to wait at the frontier.

我知道我们可能必须在边界上等。

He said he might hire a car.

他说他可能会租用一辆车。(间接引语)

E may / might 的否定式和疑问式

否定式的用法不会有问题: He may / might not believe your story.

他可能(会)不相信你的话。(也许他不会相信你的话。)

疑问式通常由 do you think? 或者带 be+likely 结构的句式来表示: Do you think he's alone?

你以为他是独自一个人吗?

Do you think he believes your story?

你以为他会相信你的话?

Is it likely that the plane will be late?

飞机可能会晚点吗?

Is the plane likely to be late?

飞机可能会晚点吗?

用于表示可能性时,极少把 may? 放在句子的开头。它可以置于稍后的位置: When may we expect you?

我们可以指望你在什么时间来?

What may be the result of the new tax?

征收新税可能产生什么结果?

但含有 be+likely 或 think 的句式更常用: When are you likely to arrive?

你可能什么时候到?

What do you think the result will be?

你认为会产生什么样的结果?

表示可能性时,might? 勉强可以用在句首: Might they be waiting outside the station? 他们有可能在车站外面等着吧?

但更常用的句式则是 Could they be waiting? (他们会不会在等着?)或 Do you think they are waiting? (你是否认为他们在等着?)的意思。(参见第 **134** 节。)

然而,may / might 的肯定式可以构成问句的一部分: Do you think he may / might not be able to pay?

你认为他可能会付不起钱吗?

(有关这种类型的问句,参见第104节。)

133 may / might+完成式

A 用于推测过去的行动: He may / might have gone. 相当于: It is possible that he went / has gone. / Perhaps he went/has gone.

当时他可能去了。

如第 132 节 D 所述, 如果主句的动词是过去时, 就必须用 might: He said / thought that she might have missed the plane.

他说/想她可能已经误了那班飞机。

如不确定性已然消失,必须用 might 而不用 may: He came home alone. You shouldn't have let him do that: he might have got lost.

他独自回家了。你本不应当让他那么做的,他可能会迷路的。(但他并未迷路。)

在下一句中也是这样: You shouldn't have drunk the wine; it may / might have been drugged.

你本不应喝那酒的,里边可能放了药。

it may have been drugged 通常表示还不能确定酒里是否放了迷药。

it might have been drugged 也可具有与上述相同的含义,但也可能意指现在知道酒里没有迷药。

在叙述最终并未得到检验的事情时用 might 而不用 may: Perhaps we should have taken the other road. It might have been quick- er.

也许我们本应当走另一条路。那样可能更快些。

It's a good thing you didn't lend him the money. You might never have got it back.

你没借给他钱倒是好事。如果你借给了他,就可能永远也要不回来了。

上述这类例句同条件句的第三种类型非常相似: If we had taken the other road we might have arrived earlier.

如果我们当时走了另一条路,就可能到得早一些。

B may / might 可用于条件句中以代替 will / would,表示一种可能的而不是肯定无疑的结果: If he sees you he will stop.

如果他看见你,他就会停下来。(确定的)

If he sees you he may stop.

如果他看见你,他可能停下来。(可能的)

同样, may / might 也可用于下列句子当中: If you poured hot water into it, it might crack.

你如果往它里面倒进热水的话,它就可能裂开。

If you had left it there someone might have stolen it.

要是你当时把那东西落在那里,就可能有人把它偷走。(参见第 223 节 B。)

134 could 替代 may / might 的用法

A could be 可以用来代替 may / might be: —I wonder where Tom is.

- —He may / might / could be in the library.
- 一我想知道汤姆在哪里。
- 一他可能在图书馆。(也许他在图书馆。)
- 当 be 作为进行式的组成部分时,也可以这样用: —I wonder why Bill isn't here.
- —He may / might / could still be waiting for a bus. —我不知道比尔为什么不在这里。
- 一他可能还在等公共汽车。(也许他正在等公共汽车。)
- 当 be 作为被动式的组成部分时,也可以这样用: —Do you think the plane will be on time?
- —I don't know. It may / might / could be delayed by fog.
- 一你认为飞机会准时到吗?
- 一我不知道。它可能会因雾而晚点。(或许它会因雾晚点。)

在疑问句中, could 或 might 都可以使用: Might / Could he be waiting for us at the station?

他会不会在车站等着我们? (你认为他会不会正在等……?)

但在否定句中 could 与 may / might 的含义有区别: He may / might not be driving the car himself.

他可能不是自己在开车。(也许他不是亲自在开车。)

但 He couldn't be driving the car himself(他不可能在亲自开车)表示一个否定的推论, 意指这不可能,他不会开车。B could+完成式可以用来代替 may / might+完成式(表示可能性): —I wonder how Tom knew about Ann's engagement.

- —He may / might / could have heard it from Jack.
- 一我不知道汤姆是怎么知道安订婚的事。
- 一他可能是从杰克那里听到的。(或许他是从杰克那里听来的。) 也像上面 A 项所述那样,在疑问句中 might 或者 could 都可以使用: Could / Might the bank have made a mistake? 银行会不会出了差错呢? (你认为银行可能出了差错吗?)

但在否定句中含义有所区别: Ann might not have seen Tom yesterday.

安昨天可能没有见到汤姆。(也许她没见到他。)

但是: Ann couldn't have seen Tom yesterday.

昨天安不可能见到过汤姆。(否定的推论;也许安和汤姆不在同一个城市里。)

135 can 表示可能

A 一般的可能性

主语+ can 可以意指 it is possible, 即条件许可(这与 may 所表示的那种可能性完全不同): You can ski on the hills.

你能在山上滑雪。(雪厚得能滑行。)

We can't bathe here on account of the sharks.

我们不能在这里游泳,因为有鲨鱼。(在这里游泳不安全。)

Can you get to the top of the mountain in one day?

你能够在一天之内爬上山顶吗? (这可能吗?)

B can 也可以表示偶然的可能性: Measles can be quite dangerous.

麻疹有可能很危险。(有时麻疹可能很危险。/有时它们是危险的。)

The Straits of Dover can be very rough.

多佛海峡风浪可能很大。(这个海峡可能有大风浪;这种情况有时发生。)

could 用于过去时: He could be very unreasonable

他会很不讲道理的。(有时他很不讲道理;这种事是有可能的。)

can 这样的用法只限于现在时与过去时,并且多半只用于肯定式。

第十三章 can 和 be able 表示能力?

136 can 和 be able 的各种形式

can 和 be+形容词 able 在此互相关联;后者补充 can 所没有的形式,并可以替换 can 用于现在时和过去时,因此有以下各种形式:不定式: to be able

过去分词: been able

将来时只有一个形式,因为 can 除了表示许可时外不能用于将来时,但是在条件语气中则有两种形式: could 和 would beable。

be able 的所有其他时态,都按照普通动词的规则来构成:现在完成时: have been able 过去完成时: had been able

否定疑问式: could you not? / couldn't you? were you not? / weren't youable? will you not? / won't you be able? 等

can / be / will / shall not 和 have 都可以按通常方法缩略: I wasn't able he won't be able I've been able

can 后面带不带 to 的不定式(即动词原形)。

be able 后面带有 to 的不定式。

137 can / am able, could / was able

A can 与 be able

1 shall / will be able 是唯一的将来时形式: Our baby will be able to walk in a few weeks. 我们的宝宝再过几个星期就能走路了。

2 can 和 be able 都可用于现在时,can 则更常用些: Can you / Are you able to type? 你会打字吗?

I can't pay you today. Can you wait till tomorrow?

今天我不能付你钱。你可以等到明天吗?

Could you wait?

您能等候吗? (参见下面 B2。)

3 在现在完成时中,必须用 be able 形式: Since his accident he hasn't been able to leave the house.

自从他遇到意外以后,他一直没能出门。

B could

1 如存在着条件的含义,could 可以用来表示现在时的意义: Could you run the business by yourself?

你能自己管理这企业吗? (如果必要的话)

Could he get another job?

他能找到另一份工作吗? (如果他辞掉这份工作的话)

I could get you a copy.

我可以给你弄到一本。(如果你想要的话)

在头两个例句中 could 可以用 would be able 替代。

2 could you? 是一种极好的表示请求的方式。它跟 would you?

可以替换使用,但比后者更有礼貌些: Could you show me the way/lend me € 5 / wait half an hour?

你能给我指一下路/借我五英镑/等半小时吗?

Could you please send me an application form?

您能否寄给我一份申请表?

couldn't you? 也是很有用的: Householder: Could you come and mend a leak in a pipe? 房主: 你能不能来修理一下管道?

Plumber: Would sometime next month suit you?

管道工: 您看下个月什么时候合适吗?

Householder: Couldn't you come a little earlier?

房主: 你是否能提前一些日子来?

C could 和 was / were able 用于表示过去的能力

1 只表示一般的能力时,两者都可用: When I was young I could / was able to climb any tree in the forest.

我年轻的时候, 林子里的什么树我都能爬。

2 表示能力+特定行为时,要用 was / were able: Although the pilot was badly hurt he was able to explain what had hap—pened.

飞行员的伤势虽然很重,但是他还能够解释发生的一切。(他能够而且的确作了解释。)

The boat capsized quite near the bank so the children were able to swim to safety.

船是在离岸很近处翻的,因此,那些孩子能够游到安全的地方。(他们能够也的确游到安全的地方。)

但是,这一规则用于否定句中表示未能发生的事时或与表示感觉的动词连用时,就不那么严格了: He read the message but he couldn't / wasn't able to understand it.

他读了那张纸条,但却不懂是什么意思。

I could / was able to see him through the window.

我透过窗户能看见他。

D 过去完成式是 had been able: He said he had lost his passport and hadn't been able to leave the country.

他说他丢了护照因而不能离开这个国家。(有关 could 在间接引语中的用法,参见第 312 节。)

138 could+完成式

A 这种结构表示过去的能力,表示动作并未付诸实施: I could have lent you the money. Why

didn't you ask me?

我那时是能借钱给你的。你为什么没有向我借?

(另参见第 154 节。)

或用于表示不知道行动是否已付诸实施的场合: The money has disappeared! Who could have taken it?

钱不见了! 谁会把它拿走呢?

Tom could have (taken it); he was here alone yesterday.

有可能是汤姆把它拿走的; 昨天他单独一个人在这里呆过。

比较以下两句: He was able to sent a message.

他设法送了个信来。(他送了。)

He could have sent a message.

他本可以送个信来。(他没有送,或者我们不知道他是否送过。)(另参见第135节。)

B could+完成式可表示因别人没做某事感到不满或责备: You could have told me.

你本来可以告诉我的。相当于: I am annoyed/disappointed that you didn't tell me. You should have told me.

你没告诉我,我感到不高兴/失望。你本来应该告诉我的。

说话的人要对自己希望强调的词重读。

(关于 might 的同样用法,参见第 285 节。)

第十四章 ought, should, must, have

to, need 表示义务?

139 ought 的各种形式

ought 是情态动词。(参见第 107 节 B。)

ought 没有其他形式,可用于现在时以及将来时。用于过去时则位于动词过去式之后或不定式的完成式之前: I ought to write to him today / tomorrow.

我今天/明天应该给他写封信。

I knew I ought to write to him.

我那时知道我应该给他写封信。

She said I ought to write.

她说我应该写。

I know / knew that I ought to have written.

我知道 / 那时知道我该写的。

否定式: ought not/oughtn't

疑问式: ought I? 等

否定疑问式: ought I not? / oughtn't I? 等

ought 与带 to 的不定式连用。为了提醒学生这一点,常称之为 ought to。

问句或话语中用 ought to 的时候,可以用 should 来回答;用 should 的问句或话语也可以用 ought to 回答:—You ought to put in central heating.

—Yes, I suppose I should.

一你应该装上暖气。

140 should 的各种形式

should 也是情态动词。

与 ought 的各种形式相同, should 可用于现在时以及将来时。如位于动词过去式之后时, 也可以用于过去时。在上文的各例句中 should 可代替 ought to 使用。

否定式: should not / shouldn't

疑问式: should I? 等

否定疑问式: should I not? /shouldn't I? 等

should 后面带没有 to 的不定式(即动词原形)。

should 和 ought 用于表示义务时通常意思是同样的,但 should 是较为常用的形式。

在会话中 should / ought to 常可单独使用,此时动词不定式省略而不说出: —You should paint/ought to paint your door.

- —Yes, I know I should / I know I ought to.
- 一你应当油漆一下你的门。
- 一对,我知道我该这样做。

141 ought / should 与 must 和 have to 的比较

A 用法的不同

1 ought / should 表示主语的义务或责任: You should send in accurate income tax returns. 你应当寄去准确的个人所得税报表。

或指出一个正确、明智的动作: They shouldn't allow parking here; the street is too narrow. 这儿不该允许停车;马路太窄了。

This word is spelt wrongly. There should be another 's'.

这个字拼写错了,还应该有个"s"。

这不像 must 那样牵涉到说话人的权威,也不像 have to 那样牵涉到外界权威(参见第 145 节),仅仅牵涉到良心或见识的问题: Pianist to pupil: You must practise at least an hour a day.

钢琴师对学生说: 你每天最少要练习一小时。

Pupil to musical friend: I have to practise an hour a day!

学生对爱好音乐的朋友说:我每天不得不练习一小时!

Musical friend: You ought to / should practise for more than an hour.

爱好音乐的朋友说:你应该每天练习不止一小时。

2 ought/should 与 must 和 have to 之间的又一区别在于,用 must 和 have to 时通常给人的印象是一种义务正在被履行或将被履行。主语为第一人称时尤其是这样,而其他人称为主语时也常是这样。但 ought / should 则不使人特别感到义务正在或将要被履行。它时常给人义务不在或不将得到履行的印象,在第一人称主语后更是如此。

如果一位驾驶员说 I ought to / should go slowly here; it's a built-up area(我是该在此慢行的,这是一个建筑物密集的地区),这通常这意味着他不想要放慢车速。如果他真的要放慢车速,他会说 I must go / have to go / I will have to go slowly here。同样,如果某人说We must have a party to celebrate your engagement(我们必须举办一个聚会来庆祝你的

订婚之喜),他的朋友们有相当理由相信会举行聚会的,但如果他说 Weshould have a party…就不是非常确定无疑的事了,他说话的语气或表情可能表示不可能举行聚会。

B 用法中类似的地方

1 should (但不是 ought) 可以用于正式通知或书面文告等: Candidates should be prepared to answer questions on...

应试者应有准备回答……方面的问题。

Intending travellers should be in possession of the following documents····准备去旅行的人应备有以下的证明文件······

On hearing the alarm bell,hotel guests should leave their rooms…听到警报铃声后,饭店的旅客必须离开各自的房间……

在这里可以用 must 而不改变句子的意思,但在此 should 表示义务的口气更缓和些。

2 ought 和 should 可表示忠告: You ought to / should read this. It's very good.

你应该读一下这个。它写得很好。

但在语气较重的劝告中用 must 比较好: You must read this. It's marvellous!

你必须读这个。写得精彩极了!

142 ought / should 与进行式连用

ought / should 与进行式连用时表示主语没有履行其义务,做了

愚蠢、鲁莽的事等或做事不明智、不慎重等: He ought to be studying for his exam. He shouldn't be spending all his time on the beach.

他本该正在学习以备考试。他不该把他的全部时间都在海滩上度过。We should be wearing seat belts.

我们应该系好安全带。(但我们没有系安全带。)

I shouldn't be telling you this. It's supposed to be a secret.

我不应该告诉你这件事。这是个秘密。

143 ought / should 与完成式连用

这个结构用来表示没有覆行义务或不明智地忽略了该做的事。在否定式中这一结构表示从前发生的、错误的或愚蠢的事。

You ought to have told him that the paint on that seat was wet.

你本应该告诉他椅子上的油漆还没有干。

You should have turned his omelette; he likes it turned.

你本应该给他摊的鸡蛋翻个身的;他喜欢吃两面都煎透的摊鸡蛋。

They ought to have stopped at the traffic lights.

他们本应在红绿灯处停下。

She shouldn't have opened the letter; it wasn't addressed to her.

她不应该拆开信,信封上写的不是她的名字。

The Emergency Exit doors shouldn't have been blocked.

紧急出口的门本来不应被堵死。

144 must 和 have to 的各种形式

A must

must 是情态动词。(参见第 107 节 B。)它用于现在时和将来时。

否定式: must not / mustn't

疑问式: must I? 等

否定疑问式: must I not? / mustn't I? 等

过去时用 had to 代替。

must 与不带 to 的不定式(即动词原形)连用。

它可表示义务和语气较强的劝告: Father: You must get up earlier in the morning. 父亲: 你早晨必须起早一点。(义务)

You must take more exercise. Join a squash club.

你应该多锻炼。参加一个壁球俱乐部吧。(劝告)

B have to

*请见下面 C。

C 带星号的 have to 各形式间的区别

have to(不带 got)与否定式 don't / doesn't have to 是表示习惯性行动的正确形式,但也可以用于表示一次性行动。在美国英语中是普遍使用的。

have (got) to 和 haven't (got) to 只用于表示一次性行动: Tom: I have to go to work every day except Sunday. But I don't have to

work a full day on Saturday.

汤姆:除了星期天外我必须每天去上班,但星期六我不必干一整天。但在星期天他可以说:I'm glad I haven't(got to go to work today. / I'm glad I don't have to go to work today. 我真高兴,今天不必上班。

过去式 didn't have to 既可表示过去的习惯,也可表示一次性行动。

hadn't (got) to 多用于表示一次性行动。

didn't have to 是较为普遍的形式。

have to 在肯定句中表示"义务"。

have to 在否定句中表示"无义务"。这种意思也可由 need not,don't need 等来表示。(参见第 149 节。)

145 肯定句中 must 和 have to 的区别

A must 表示由说话人加予的义务: Mother: You must wipe your feet when you come in. 母亲: 你进屋前必须先蹭脚。

have to 则表示外界的义务: Small boy: I have to wipe my feet every time I come in. 小男孩: 我每次进屋前都得先蹭掉鞋上的土。

B 第二人称的例句

1 说话人的权威

Mother: You must wear a dress tonight. You can't go to the opera in those dreadful jeans. 母亲: 你今晚必须穿一条礼服裙衣。你可不能穿着那些难看的牛仔服去歌剧院。

Employer: You must use a dictionary. I'm tired of correcting your spelling mistakes.

雇主: 你必须用字典。我厌烦给你改拼写错误了。

Doctor: You must cut down on your smoking.

医生: 你必须少吸烟。

2 外界的权威

You have to wear uniform on duty, don't you?

你在值班时必须穿制服,是吗?

You have to train very hard for these big matches, I suppose.

我想,为参加这些大赛你必须刻苦训练。

You'll have to get up earlier when you start work, won't you?

你开始上班时,就要早起一些了,是吗?

You'll have to cross the line by the footbridge.

你必须从天桥过马路。

C第三人称的例句

这时 must 主要用于书面指令或指导: Railway company: Passengers must cross the line by the footbridge.

铁路公告: 旅客必须由天桥过马路。

Office manager: Staff must be at their desks by 9:00.

办公室经理:工作人员必须在9:00前到达各自的办公桌前。

Regulation: A trailer must have two rear lamps.

规章:拖车必须有两盏后灯。

只不过是讲述或评论他人的义务时,则用 have to: In this office even the senior staff have to be at their desks by 9:00.

在这个办公室,就连高级职员也要在9:00前到达他们各自的办公桌前。

She has to make her children's clothes. She can't afford to buy them.

她必须自己给孩子们做衣服穿。她买不起。

They'll have to send a diver down to examine the hull.

他们必须派潜水员下水去检查船体。

如果用 must 代替上面例子中的 have to,就可能意指说话的人有权下命令这样做。

但 must 可用于表示说话人对某种责任、义务是赞成或同意的: A driver who has knocked someone down must stop.

撞人的司机必须停车。(说话人认为这是司机的责任。)

或表示说话人很强烈地认为应该这样: Something must be done to stop these accidents. 必须采取某种措施以防止这些事故。

D 第一人称的例子

第一人称为主语时, must 和 have to 二者之间的差别不那么重要, 常常两种形式都可以用:

Typist: I must / will have to buy a dictionary.

打字员:我必须去买一本字典。

Patient: I must / have to/will have to cut down on my smoking.

患者: 我必须减少吸烟。

但在表达习惯时,have to 更好: I have to take two of these pills a day.

我必须每天吃两片这种药。

某事对说话人很急迫,或被说话人认为很重要时,则以用 must 为好: I must tell you about a dream I had last night.

我必须把我昨晚做的梦告诉你。

Before we do anything I must find my cheque book.

在我们干任何事之前,我必须先找到我的支票簿。

E 其他例句(各种人称)

You must come and see us some time.

你有空一定来看我们。(这是一种常用的随便的邀请方式。)

The children have to play in the street till their parents come home.

孩子们不得不一直在马路上玩到他们的父母回到家里为止。

This sort of thing must stop!

必须制止这种事!(说话人或者有权或者对此事感觉强烈。)

You must write to your uncle and thank him for his nice present.

你必须给你叔叔写信并感谢他给你的很好的礼物。

If there are no taxis we'll have to walk.

如果没有出租车了,我们就不得不步行。

If your father was a poor man you'd have to work.

如果你父亲是个穷人, 你就不得不工作了。

We have to walk our dog twice a day.

我们每天得遛两次狗。

注意如下常见的例子: In shop window: Closing down sale! Everything must go! 商店橱窗里的告白: 关门大甩卖! 卖完为止!

F 表示过去的义务的肯定句用 had to 表示过去的义务时,而且说话人本身的权威和外界的权威无法区分时,只可用一个形式,即 had to: I ran out of money and had to borrow from Tom.

我没钱花了,不得不向汤姆借钱。

You had to pay duty on that, I suppose?

我想你不得不为那个付了税吧?

There were no buses so he had to walk.

没有公共汽车, 所以他只好走着去。

146 need not 和 must not 用于现在时和将来时

need not 可用于现在时和过去时。各人称的形式都一样。(参见第 148 节。) need not 表示 "无义务"。它表示说话人允许不去做某事,或仅仅表示某事并非必要: Employer: You needn't make two copies. One will do.

雇主: 你不用打印两份。一份就够了。

Give them this cheque. They needn't send me a receipt.

把这张支票给他们。他们不用给我送来收据。

You needn't change (your clothes). Just come as you are.

你不用换(衣服)了。就穿着现在穿的衣服来吧。

must not 表示否定的义务,即说话人叫你不要如何或是特别强调地劝告你不可如何: You mustn't repeat this to anyone.

你不能把这件事告诉任何别人。

Notice in shop: Staff must not smoke when serving customers.

商店通告:工作人员在为顾客服务时一律不许抽烟。

You mustn't leave your car unlocked. This place is full of thieves.

你千万不能不锁车门就离开。这地方遍地是小偷。

147 need not, must not 和 must 用于现在时和将来时

Doctor: You needn't go on a diet; but you must eat sensibly and youmustn't overeat.

医生: 你不必节食,但要饮食有度,不能吃得过饱。

Zoo notice: Visitors must not feed the animals.

动物园通告:参观者不得给动物投喂食物。

Railway notice: Passengers must not walk on the line.

铁路通告: 旅客不得在铁路线上行走。

You mustn't drive fast. There is a speed limit here.

你不能开快车。这地方有速度限制。

You needn't drive fast. We've plenty of time.

你不必开得快。我们时间足够。

You needn't strike a match. I can see well enough.

你不用划亮火柴。我可以看清。

You mustn't strike a match. This room is full of gas.

你不能划火柴。这屋里满是煤气。

School notice: The lifts must not be used during Fire Drill.

学校通告:在消防演习期间禁止使用电梯。

You mustn't wear that dress again. You look terrible in yellow.

你别再穿那套裙装了。你穿黄色难看极了。

Teacher: You needn't read the whole book but you must read the first four-chapters.

老师: 你们不必把整本书全读完, 但必须读完前四章。

You must cut down that dead tree or it will fall on your house.

你必须把那棵死树砍了, 否则它会倒在你的屋顶上。

Doctor: You mustn't take more than two of these pills at once. Three might be fatal.

医生:这些药你每次服用时不得超过两片。服三片就可能有生命危险。

Doctor (to patient's wife): If the pain has gone he needn't take any more of these.

医生(对患者的妻子):如果疼痛已经消失了,他就不必再服这些药片了。

148 need 的各种形式

A need 既可以作助动词,也可以作普通动词。用为助动词时,它是半情态动词,即它既有情态动词的形式又有普通动词的形式。它的情态动词的形式有 need 或 need not / needn't,可用于各种人称的现在时、将来时和间接引语中。(参见下面 C 节。)疑问式: need I? 等否定疑问式: need I not? / needn't I? 等 need 以上述各种形式变化时,后面接不带 to 的不定式(即动词原形)。

B need 为助动词时一般只在下述情况下可以用于肯定式: 当一个否定句或疑问句由于前面加上一个短语而使其中的否定动词或疑问动词变成肯定的意思时: I needn't wear a coat. / I don't suppose I need wear a coat.

我不需要穿外衣。/我认为我不需要穿外衣。

Need I tell Tom? / Do you think I need tell Tom?

我需要告诉汤姆吗? / 你认为我需要告诉汤姆吗?

有时在相当正规的英语中,它也与 hardly / scarcely 或 only 连用: I need hardly say how pleased we are to welcome $Mr\ X$.

我几乎不用说我们是多么高兴欢迎 X 先生的来到。(我无需说……)

You need only touch one of the pictures for all the alarm bells to start ringing.

你只要摸一下其中的一幅画,所有的警铃就都会响起来。(如果你摸到其中的一幅画,所有的铃······)

C needn't 在直接引语中可以不必改变: You needn't pay till the 31st, 'he says / said.

他说: "你到 31 号才需要付钱。"相当于: He says / said I needn't pay till the 31st. 他说我到 31 号才需要付钱。

(参见第 325 节 C。)

D need 变否定形式时也可像普通动词一样变化,如下面第 149 节所示。表中也列出了相应的 have to 形式。关于疑问句形式参见第 151 节。

need 与 will / shall, do / does / did 等助动词连用时应当用带 to 的不定式, 有时称为 need to 以引起学生注意。

149 表示无义务的各种形式

但是,关于 needn't 在间接引语中的用法,参见上面第 148 节 C。

shan't / won't need to=shan't / won't have to

don't / doesn't need to=don't / doesn't have to

didn't need to= didn't have to (但 didn't have to 更常见)

从上面的表格中可以看出,与 haven't / hasn't got to 和 hadn't got to 完全同义的 need 的形式是不存在的。

150 need not 与其他各种形式的区别

A1 如前所述, need not 表示说话人的权威或劝告: You needn't write me another cheque. Just change the date and initial it.

你不必给我另开一张支票。你只需改一下日期并签上你姓名的第一个字母。

I'm in no hurry. He needn't send it by air. He can send it by sea.

我不着急。他不必用航空寄来。海运过来就行。

You needn't do it by hand. I'll lend you my machine.

你不必用手缝。我把缝纫机借给你。

You needn't call me Mr Jones. We all use first names here.

你不用管我叫琼斯先生。我们这里都只叫名字。

College lecturer: You needn't type your essays but you must write legi- bly.

大学教师: 你们不必把文章用打字机打出来, 但必须字迹清楚。

2 其他表示外界权威的形式: Tom doesn't have to wear uniform at school.

汤姆在学校不一定要穿校服。

We don't have to type our essays but we have to write legibly.

我们的文章不一定要打出来,但字迹一定要清楚。

When I'm an old age pensioner I won't have to pay any more bus fares.

等我到领取养老金的时候, 我坐公共汽车就不用买票了。

Ann hasn't got to go / doesn't have to go to this lecture. Attendance is optional.

安不一定非去听讲。那讲座是可去可不去的。

When I have a telephone of my own I won't have to waste time waiting outside these wretched telephone boxes.

等我自己有了电话,我就不用等在讨厌的电话亭外而浪费时间了。

Ann doesn't have to cook for herself. She works at a hotel and gets all hermeals there. 安不用自己做饭吃。她在一家饭店工作,在那里用餐。

3 然而,有时 need not 也可以用于表示外界权威,以代替 won't / don't need to 或 won't / don't have to 等各种形式。这种用法尤其普遍地用于第一人称: I needn't / won't / don't have to type this report today. Mr Jones said that there was no hurry about it.

我今天不必把这个报告打出来。琼斯先生说这份报告不急着要。

请注意,虽然 need not 可用来表示将来的习惯性动作: I'm retiring. After Friday I need never go to the office again.

我就要退休了。星期五之后我就再也不必到办公室去了。

但不能用 need not 表示一个现在的习惯性动作: I don't have to queue for my bus. I get on at the terminus.

我用不着排队等公共汽车。我在首发站上车。(这里不能用 need not。)

B 讨夫时

如 need 用于过去时,说话人的权威和外界权威之间的差别就消失了,因而我们可任意运用以下三种形式: didn't have to,didn't need to 和 hadn't got to。这几种用法不存在含义上的差别,但 hadn't got to 不常用于表示习惯性动作。 didn't have to 是最常用的: I didn't have to wait long. He was only a few minutes late.

我没等太长时间。他只迟到了几分钟。

When he was at university he didn't have to / need to pay anything for his keep, for he stayed with his uncle.

他读大学时不需要付食宿费用,因为他与他的叔父住在一起。

151 must, have to 和 need 用于疑问句

need?和 must?都意味着说话的对方是有关的权威。need?还包含着说话人希望得到否定回答的含义:Must I go, mother?和 Need I go, mother?含义相同,但在后一问句中,说话人希望他的母亲回答说"不"。need的另一种疑问式 do I need?等也有同样的用法。注意以下各种可能的回答:一Shall I have to go?

- —Yes, you will. / No, you won't.
- 一我必须去吗?
- 一是的,必须去。/不,不必去。
- -Have I got to go?
- —Yes, you have. / No, you haven't.
- 一我必须去吗?
- 一是的,必须去。/不,不必去。
- —Does he have to go?
- —Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't
- 一他必须去吗?
- 一是的,必须去。/不,不必去。
- —Need I go?
- —Yes, you must. / No, you needn't.
- 一我需要去吗?
- 一是的,必须去。/不,不需要去。
- -Must I go?
- —Yes, you must. / No, you needn't.

- 一我必须去吗?
- 一是的,必须去。/不,不需要去。

152 needn't+完成式

这个结构用来表示虽然不必要但却已完成的动作: I needn't have written to him because he phoned me shortly afterwards.

我本来不需要给他写信,因为不久之后他就给我打了电话。(但我的确写了,因而浪费了时间。)

You needn't have brought your umbrella for we are going by car.

你本来不用带雨伞,因为我们将要坐车去。(但是你却多余地带了伞。)

He needn't have left home at 6:00; the train doesn't start till 7:30.

他本不必 6 点就离开家;火车 7 点 30 分才出发。(因此他要等一个小时。)

153 needn't have (done) 和 didn't have / need (to do)

的比较

A needn't have done 意指没必要干某件事但多余地干了,即浪费了时间: You needn't have watered the flowers, for it is going to rain.

你本不必浇那些花,因为就要下雨了。(你浪费了时间。)

You needn't have written such a long essay. The teacher only asked for 300 words, and you have written 600.

你本不必写这么长的文章。老师只要求写300个字而你却写了600个字。

He needn't have bought such a large house. His wife would have been quite happy in a cottage.

他没必要买这么大一所房子。他的妻子住在一个小房子里也会感到很满意的。(浪费了钱) You needn't have carried all these parcels yourself. The shop would have delivered them if you had asked them.

你本来没有必要自己拿着这些大包小裹的。要是当时你跟商店说一声,他们就会把东西送来的。

B didn't have / need to do 意指不一定非干某事,而通常也并没有这样做: I didn't have to translate it for him for he understands Dutch.

我用不着替他翻译,因为他懂荷兰语。

I didn't have to cut the grass myself. My brother did it.

我用不着自己修剪草坪。我的兄弟修剪过了。(无义务,而且无行动)有些人的确把 didn't have to / didn't need to 用于表示已完成的动作,这时 have 或 need 都要加以重读: You didn't have to give him my name 通常意味着没有必要告诉他我的姓名,但是你却告诉了他。但当一个不必要的动作实际已完成了时,还是用 needn't have+过去分词为好: You needn't have given him my name.

你本来没必要把我的姓名告诉他的。

154 needn't, could 和 should+完成式

A needn't+完成式常常和 could+完成式结合使用。这种用法最好通过例句来说明: —I wanted a copy of the letter, so I typed it twice.

- —You needn't have typed it twice. You could have used a carbon.
- 一我需要那封信的副本, 所以我打了两遍字。
- 一你没必要打两遍。你当时本可以用复写纸打。
- —I walked up six flights of stairs.
- —You needn't have walked up: you could have taken the lift.
- 一我爬了六层楼梯。
- 一你没必要走着上去;你本来可以乘电梯的。
- —She stood in a queue to get an Underground ticket.
- —But she needn't have stood in a queue. She could have got a ticket from the machine.
- 一她排队买一张地铁车票。
- 一可她本来不需要排队。她本可以在售票机那儿买票。

B needn't have 和 should have 的比较

should 或 ought to 在以上 A 的例句中都可以代替 need 或 could: She shouldn't have stood in a queue. She should have got tickets from the machine.

她本来就不该去排队。她应当在售票机那儿买票。

但这里存在着含义上的差别: She shouldn't have stood in a queue.

她本来就不该去排队。(她排队是错误的或愚蠢的。)

She needn't have stood in a queue.

她本不必去排队。(这样做是不必要的,但她却排了队。)

shouldn't have (done) 有批评之意。

needn't have (done) 不含有批评之意。

155 need 意指 require (需要)

如第 149 节所示, need 可以像普通动词那样变化。此时它有

通常的各种规则的变化形式,但没有进行式。

need 可以和带 to 的不定式连用,或者和作宾语的名词 / 代词连用: I need to know the exact size.

我需要知道确切的尺寸。

How much money do you need? I need $\, \pounds \,$

5. 你需要多少钱?我需要五英镑。

need 可以和不定式的被动式或动名词连用

Your hair needs to be cut / needs cutting.

你需要理发了。

The windows need to be washed / need washing.

这些窗户需要擦洗了。

这里可以用 want+动名词代替: Your hair wants cutting.

你需要理发了。

第十五章 must, have, will 和 should 表示推断和假设?

156 must 表示推断

A 各种形式

现在时

must+现在式: He must live here.

他一定是住在这里。

或 must+进行式: He must be living here.

(译文同上。)

过夫时

must+完成式: He must have lived here.

他一定在这里住过。

或 must+ 完成进行式: He must have been living here.

他当时一定住在这里的。

注意 must 的各种过去式表示推断和 had to 相当于 must 表示义务的区别。

must 不能用于表示否定的推断 (参见第 159 节),一般也不用于疑问式,除非是对含有 must 的推断句提问: —There is a lot of noise from upstairs. It must be Tom.

- —Why must it be Tom? Other people use that flat.
- 一楼上喧闹的声音很大。一定是汤姆弄的。
- 一为什么一定是汤姆呢?那套房子里也有别人。

B 例句

He has a house in London and another in Paris, so he must be rich.

他在伦敦有一栋房子, 在巴黎又有一栋房子, 可知他一定有钱。

- —I've had no sleep for 48 hours.
- —You must be exhausted.
- 一我已经 48 小时没睡觉了。
- 一你一定筋疲力尽了。

He develops his own films. That must save him a lot of money.

他自己冲洗照片。那样肯定为他节省了很多钱。

I keep meeting him on the bus. He must live / must be living near by.

我接连在公共汽车上碰到他。他一定就住在附近。

The police are stopping all cars. They must be looking for the escapedprisoner.

警察命令每一辆车都停下来(接受检查)。他们一定是在查找逃犯。—What explosion? I didn't hear any.

- -You must have heard it! The whole town heard it!
- 一什么爆炸声?我一点也没听见。
- 一你一定听见了!全城人都听见了!

He must have taken sleeping pills last night. He didn't wake up till lunch time.

他昨晚一定吃了安眠药。他一直到吃中午饭的时候才醒来。

- —I waited under the clock!
- —So did I, but I didn't see you! We must have been waiting under differ- ent clocks.
- 一我在大钟底下等的!

- 一我也是,可我没见到你!一定是在两个不同的钟底下等的。
- —It was a head-on collision, but the drivers weren't hurt.
- —They must have been wearing their seat belts.
- 一这次车祸中肇事车辆迎头相撞,但两个驾驶员都没伤着。
- 一他们肯定系了安全带了。

157 must 与 may / might 的比较

它们之间的差别最好通过实例来了解:(a)设想一个钥匙环上有三把钥匙,而且知道其中一把钥匙是开地下室的门的。可能选出一把钥匙说: This may / might be the key.

可能就是这一把钥匙。(也许这是那把钥匙。)

- 但一连试了两把钥匙都没打开锁,就会拿起第三把钥匙说: This must be the key.
- 一定是这把钥匙。(不存在别的选择了。)
- (b) —I wonder why Tom hasn't answered my letter.
- —He may / might be ill.
- 一我不知道汤姆为什么没给我回信。
- 一他可能生病了。(但也存在其他可能性:说不定他出门了,或者事情太忙无暇写信。) 但假设比尔从来没有人来访问他。如果急救车停在他门口,邻居们会说 Bill must be ill (比尔一定得了病了)。这是对于急救车来到他家一事可能做出的唯一解释。
- (c) 同样,在谈到过去的动作时: He may have come by train.

他也许是乘火车来的。(但也存在别的可能:他可能是乘出租汽车或公共汽车来的。)

但 He must have come by taxi(他一定是乘出租汽车来的)意指他没有其他选择,不存在用其他办法进行这种旅行的可能。

158 have / had 表示推断

这是美国人的用法,但有时英国人也这么用。

have / had 主要是用在与 to be 连用时: —There's a tall gred bird fishing in the river.

- —It has to be / must be a heron.
- 一河里有一个大个的灰鸟在捕鱼。
- 一那一定是一只苍鹭。

had+to be 可表示说话人对过去可能发生的事认为是肯定无疑的. There was a knock on the door. It had to be Tom.

有人敲门。肯定是汤姆。(他肯定是汤姆。)

had+to be 也可用来代替 must+完成式: —I wonder who took the money.

- —It had to be Tom. / It must have been Tom. He's the only one who wasthere.
- 一我不知道谁把这钱拿去了。
- 一肯定是汤姆。当时只有他在那里。

但为了避免混淆,建议学生们还是尽量用 must 的各种形式。

159 can't 和 couldn't 表示否定的推断

A 对现在事件的否定推断,可以用 can't 或 couldn't 加上动词 be 的现在式或者可以用 can't / couldn't 加上动词的进行式表示: Child: Can I have some sweets? I'm hungry. 孩子:我可以吃些糖果吗?我饿了。

Mother: You can't / couldn't be hungry. You've just had dinner.

母亲: 你不会饿的。你刚吃过饭。

Ann (looking through binoculars): An aeroplane is pulling up people from the boat!

安(透过望远镜):有一架飞机正把人们从小船吊到飞机上!

Tom: It can't / couldn't be an aeroplane. It must be a helicopter.

汤姆:不可能是一架飞机。一定是一架直升机。

- —He says he's still reading The Turn of the Screw.
- —He can't / couldn't still be reading it. I lent it to him ages ago and it's quite a short book.
- 一他说他还在读《螺丝在拧紧》。
- 一他不可能还在读那本书。我很久以前就把书借给他了, 而且书也很薄。
- B 对过去事件的否定推断,可以由 can't / couldn't+动词的完成式或完成进行式表示: —A man answered the phone. I suppose it was her husband.
- —It can't / couldn't have been her husband. He's been deaf for ages.
- 一是一个男人接的电话。我想大概是她丈夫。
- 一不可能是她丈夫。他耳聋了许多年了。
- —I took a Circle Line train to St Paul's.
- —You can't / couldn't have taken the Circle Line. It doesn't go through St Paul's. You must have been on the Central Line.
- 一我乘地铁环线去了圣保罗大教堂。
- 一你不可能乘环形地铁。它不经过圣保罗大教堂。你一定是乘的中央线地铁。

如所表示的推断是过去做出来的或是由动词过去式引导的,就必须用 couldn't: She said I couldn't have come on the Cricle Line.

她说我不可能是乘地铁环线来的。

He said it couldn't be an areoplane.

他说那不可能是飞机。

否则 can't 或 couldn't 都可以使用。

160 will 和 should 表示假设

A will 用于表示对现在或过去行为的假设

will 可与现在式 (只限于表示未经预先考虑或计划的行为) 或进行式或完成式连用. Ring his home number. He'll be at home now.

拨他住宅号码。他现在会在家。(我肯定他在家。)

He'll be expecting a call from you.

他该在等你的电话。(我肯定他在等电话。)

He'll have finished his supper.

他该吃过晚饭了。(我肯定他吃过晚饭了。)

It's no use asking Tom; he won't know.

这事问汤姆没用,他不会知道。(我肯定他不知道。)

Will Bill be at the club now, do you think?

你觉得比尔现在会在俱乐部吗? (你认为他在吗?)

B should 用于表示对现在或过去的行为的假设

should 在此主要与现在式(仅限于表示未经预先考虑或计划的行为)的肯定式或否定式连

用。有时也可与进行式或完成式连用: The plane should be landing now.

现在飞机肯定在降落。(我认为飞机正在降落。)

The letter should have arrived by now.

信现在该到了。(我认为该到了。)

用 should 表示推断时没有用 will 表示推断时自信心强: Tom should know the address.

汤姆应该知道地址。(我想汤姆知道。)

Tom will know the address.

汤姆会知道地址的。(我肯定他会知道的。)

He should have finished by now.

他现在该完成了。(我认为他该完成了。)

但是: He'll have finished by now.

他现在想必完成了。(我肯定他完成了。)

should 不用于表示使说话的人不高兴的推断: Let's not go shopping now. The shops will be very crowded.

我们现在别去商店买东西了。商店这会儿人肯定特别多。(在此不必用 should。)

但要表示与此相反的而使说话人高兴的推断时,两种形式都可以用: Let's go shopping now. The shops will be / should be fairly empty.

我们去商店买东西吧。商店里人不会太多。

The shops won't be / shouldn't be too crowded.

商店里不会太拥挤。

C will 和 should 也都可以表示对将来的假设: He should / will have plenty of time to get to the station.

他该有足够的时间去火车站。

They shouldn't / won't have any difficulty in finding the house.

他们找这房子时大概不会有困难。

will+现在式表示对将来的推断时,不限于表示并非故意所做的动作。(参见第 209 节。)

D ought to 也可以与 should 一样在上述 B 和 C 中有相同的用法: The plane ought to be / should be taking off in a minute.

飞机应马上起飞了。

但 should 是较常用的形式。

第十六章 助动词 dare 和 used?

161 dare

A 在肯定式中,dare 的变化与普通动词相同,即现在式为 dare / dares,过去式为 dared;但否定式和疑问式既可以像普通动词那样变化,也可以像助动词那样变化。换句话说,dare 是半情态动词。

否定式: 现在 do / does not ?dare dare / dares not

过去 did not daredared not

疑问式: 现在 do you / does he dare? dare you / he?

过去 did you / did he dare? dared you / he?

通常更多使用它作为普通动词的结构。

B 接在 dare 后的不定式

do / did 的否定式或疑问式理论上后面应当接带 to 的不定式,但实际上 to 常被省略: He doesn't dare(to)say anything.

他什么也不敢说。

Did he dare (to) criticize my arrangements?

他敢批评我的安排吗?

dare I / he / you? 等以及 dare not 这些形式后都接不带 to 的不定式: Dare we interrupt? 我们敢插嘴吗?

They dared not move.

他们不敢动。

当 dare 的主语是 nobody, anybody 等词时, to 可用可不用: Nobody dared (to) speak. 没人敢说话。

C dare 除了在 I daresay 这一说法外,不大用于肯定式。I dare- say(或 I dare say)有两个惯用含义: 1 I suppose(我想): I daresay there'll be a restaurant car on the train. 我想这火车上会有餐车。

2 I accept what you say(but it doesn't make any difference)(我同意你说的,但这无关紧要): English tourist: But I drive on the left in England!

英国旅游者: 可在英国我开车时是靠左走!

Swiss policeman: I daresay you do, but we drive on the right here.

瑞士警察: 我相信你所说的, 但是在这里我们必须靠右走。

Traveller: But the watch was given to me; I didn't buy it.

旅客:可这表是人家送我的,并不是我自己买的。

Customs officer: I daresay you didn't, but you'll have to pay duty on it all the same. 海关官员:我可以承认你不是买的,但你照样得交关税。

daresay 的这种用法只用于第一人称单数。

D how dare (d) you? how dare (d) he / they? 可以表示说话人的愤怒: How dare you open my letters?

你怎么竟敢拆我的信件? (我因你拆我的信而生你的气。)

How dared he complain?

他怎么还敢抱怨? (我因他埋怨而生气。)

E dare 也可作普通及物动词,意指"挑战、激将"(仅针对需要勇气的行为而言),后接宾语+带 to 的不定式: Mother: Why did you throw that stone through the window?

母亲: 你为什么往窗户里扔石头?

Son: Another boy dared me (to throw it).

儿子: 有个小男孩激将我,说我不敢扔。

162 used

A 形式

used 是没有现在式的不完全变化动词的过去式。

肯定式: used 用于所有人称

否定式: used not / usedn't 用于所有人称

疑问式: used you / he / they? 等

否定疑问式: used you not? / usedn't you? 等

其否定式和疑问式也可以用 did 来构成: didn't use to did you use to? didn't you use to? 这是一种较不正规的形式,在口语中用得相当普遍。

used 后面接带 to 的不定式,为提醒学生这一点,常常称之为 used to (就如表示义务的 have 被称为 have to)。

B 用法

used to 可用于以下场合: 1 表示已经中断的一个习惯,或者过去与现在相反的状况: I used to smoke cigarettes; now I smoke a pipe.

我以前抽烟卷,现在我抽烟斗。

He used to drink beer: now he drinks wine.

他以前喝啤酒,现在他喝葡萄酒。

She usedn't to like Tom but she guite likes him now.

她以前不喜欢汤姆, 可她现在很喜欢他。

She used to dislike Tom but she quite likes him now. (译文同上。)

used 通常不重读,但是如果说话人想强调现在与过去的对比,可以加以重读。

2 表示过去的例行活动或方式。这样使用时,不是将过去与现在对比。仅仅描述某人在某一定时期的例行活动。这时常常描述一连串的动作。这里 used to 可以由 would 取代(但 would 不能代替如在上面 1 中所提到的、表示已经中断的习惯的 usedto)。这种情况下的 used to 总是不重读的。

Tom and Ann were a young married couple. Every morning Tom used to kiss Ann and set off for work. Ann used to stand at the window and wave goodbye. In the evening she used to welcome him home and ask him to tell her about his day.

汤姆和安是一对年轻的夫妇。每天早上汤姆都要亲吻安,然后再去上班。安总是要站在窗前挥手送别。傍晚的时候,安总要迎接汤姆回家并要他告诉她一天的情况。

如果用 would 就会写成: Every morning Tom would kiss Ann and set off for work. Ann would stand at the window and wave goodbye…

每天早上汤姆总是亲吻了安,然后再去上班。安总是要站在窗前挥手送别……

注意: used 没有现在式。因此要表示现在的习惯或例行活动时,我们必须用所需动词的现在式。

163 be / become / get used to

used 也可以用做形容词,意指已习惯于某事,它的前面接 be,become 或 get 的各种形式,后面接介词 to+名词 / 代词 / 动名词: I am used to noise.

我习惯于嘈杂的声音。

I am used to working in a noisy room.

我习惯于在喧闹的房间里工作。

You will soon get used to the electric typewriters.

你很快会习惯电动打字机的。

You will soon get used to typing on electric typewriters.

你很快就会习惯在电动打字机上打字。

They soon got used to the traffic regulations.

他们很快就对交通条例习惯了。

They soon got used to driving on the left.

他们不久就习惯于靠左边行车。

I am used to…等是对一种心理状态的陈述。I am used to working in a noisy room 意指我在嘈杂的房间里工作过,因此吵闹的声音不打扰我,我也不介意。You'll soon get used to

typing on electric typewriters 意指在你使用一些时间之后,你会感觉到电动打字机是很容易使用的。

如在上述例句中那样 I'm used to it 常常意指我不在乎/这没有给我带来麻烦。但它可以有另外一种用法。试想在我们的一个只供饭菜和茶水的食堂里,一位新从法国来的法国人可能这样说: I'm used to wine with my meals,so I find these lunches rather unsatisfy-ing.我习惯于吃饭时喝葡萄酒,因此我觉得这些午饭相当不令人满意。

不要混淆主语+be / become / get+used to 和主语+used to 这两种结构。(参见第 162 节。) 在第一种结构中 used 是形容词,to 是介词,而在第二种结构中 used 是动词,to 是紧接其后的不定式的组成部分。

要防止这些结构与规则动词 use (/ju:z/) 相混淆, use 的含义是 employ (使用)。

第十七章

现在时态

英语中有两种现在时态:现在进行时: I am working. 我正在工作。

一般现在时: I work. 我工作。

164 现在进行时形式

现在进行时是由助动词 be+现在分词(动词原形+ing)构成的: A

B 缩略形式:如第 102 节 B 所示,在现在时的各种形式中,be 可以缩略,所以任何动词的现在进行时形式也都可以缩略,如下表所示:疑问词后面的缩略形式: am, is, are 的缩略形式如第 104 节 B 所示: Why's he working?

他为什么在工作?

Where're you working?

你在什么地方工作?

165 拼写

A 动词以单一的 e 字母结尾时, 去掉 e 再加 ing: argue, arguing

hate, hating

love, loving

age, dye, 和 singe 除外: ageing dyeing singeing

动词以 ee 结尾时,直接加 ing: agree, agreeing

see, seeing

B 单音节动词中只有一个元音字母并以单一辅音字母结尾时,则先双写该辅音字母再加ing:

hit, hitting

run, running

stop, stopping

两个或两个以上音节的动词,如果它的最后一个音节只含有一个元音字母而又以单一辅音字母结尾,重音又落在这个音节上,就要双写该辅音字母,然后加 ing: ad'mit, admitting be'gin, beginning

pre'fer, preferring

但是: 'budget, budgeting

'enter, entering (重音不在最后音节上)

单一元音字母后的结尾字母 l 总要双写: signal, signalling

travel, travelling

在美国英语中,这种情况下 (不双写。

C 以 y 结尾的动词可以直接加 ing,该词的拼写不受任何影响: carry, carrying

enjoy, enjoying

hurry, hurrying

166 用法

A 表示动作现在正在发生或进行: It is raining.

下雨了。

I am not wearing a coat as it isn't cold.

天气不冷, 我没穿外衣。

Why are you sitting at my desk?

你为什么坐在我的桌前?

- -What's the baby doing?
- —He's tearing up a £5 note.
- 一宝宝在干嘛?
- 一他在撕一张面值五英镑的钞票。

B 表示现阶段正在进行的动作,但说话时该动作并不一定正在进行: I am reading a play by Shaw.

我正在读一本由萧伯纳写的剧本。(这可以指说话的那一时刻,也可指更一般意义的现在。) He is teaching French and learning Greek.

他在教法语,又在学希腊语。(在说话的那一时刻,他可能既不在教也不在学。)

如上述例句中一样,两个进行时态的动词为一个主语并由 and 连接在一起时,第二个动词前的助动词可以省略。这适用于所有的动词复合时态中: She was knitting and listening to the radio.

她一边编织一边听收音机。

C 表示最近的将来已定的安排(这是用于表示眼前打算的最普通的说法): I'm meeting Peter tonight. He is taking me to the theatre.

今天晚上我要跟彼得会面。他要带我去看戏。

- —Are you doing anything tomorrow afternoon?
- —Yes, I'm playing tennis with Ann.
- 一你明天下午有事吗?
- 一有,我要跟安打网球。

注意:一定要指出动作的时间,否则可能把现在与将来两种含义弄混。但 come 和 go 可以这样用而无需指出时间。(参见第 202 节 B。)

167 其他可能的用法

A 表示一个动作在某一未来时刻之前开始并可能当时仍在进行: At six I am bathing the baby.

6点钟, 我将在给婴儿洗澡。(我在6点之前开始给他洗澡。)

它可以跟一个用一般现在时的动词连用,表示相同的意思. They are flying over the desert when one of the engines fails.

他们飞越沙漠时,一个引擎出了故障。

现在进行时除了用于描述日常例行活动以及在生动的叙述中,一般很少这样用。但是,过去进行时常常这样同过去某一时刻或过去式连用。(参见第 179 节 C 与 E。)

B 与 always 连用: He is always losing his keys.

他老是丢钥匙。

这种形式主要用于肯定式: 1 表示一种经常重复的动作,而这种动作常使说话人感到厌烦或觉得不合情理: Tom is always going away for weekends.

汤姆每个周末总是外出。(现在进行时)

这表示他经常这样做,可能已使说话人感到过分频繁了。但这并不一定表示他每个周末必然外出,所以不能严格按字面来理解。试同 always+一般现在时比较: Tom always goes away at weekends. 相当于: Tom goes away at weekends.

汤姆每个周末都外出。(这句话可以照字面理解)

I / we+always+进行时也可以这样使用。这时这种经常重复的动作常常是偶然的而非故意的: I'm always making that mistake.

我常犯那错误。

2 表示一种看起来好像是连续不断的动作: He's always working. 相当于: He works the whole time.

他总是在工作。

这种用法常表示说话人对这个动作不耐烦,但不总是这样。如 He's always reading(他总是在看书)可指他在看书上花了过多的时间,但也可以是一种赞扬的口气。这个用法也可以用于第一人称。用于第一人称时,这种动作常是有意识的,与本节其他的动作一样。

168 通常不用于进行时的动词

进行时态主要只用于表示有意识的动作。因此某些动词通常不用进行时态而只有一种现在时态,即一般现在时。这些动词可以分类如下: A表示感觉(不由自主的动作)的动词如 feel, hear, see, smell: 也包括 notice 和 observe(=notic)以及当连词用的 feel,

look, taste 等。(参见第 18 节 B 与 C。)

关于 feel, look, smell, taste 的某些用法,参见第 169 节。关于 hear 和 see 参见第 170 节。

表示有意识地使用感官的动词如 gaze,listen,look(at),ob- serve(=watch),stare 和 watch 可用于各种进行时态:—Watch!

—I am watching but I don't see anything unusual.

一看!

一我是在看,可我看不出有什么不寻常的事。

He is listening to a tape, but he's wearing earphones so nobody else hears it.

他在听磁带,可他是戴着耳机听的,所以别人谁也听不见。

B 表示感情和情绪的动词如 admire (=respect), adore, appreci- ate (=value), care for (=like), desire, detest, dislike, fear, hate, like, loathe, love, mind (=care), respect, value, want, wish 等。

但是,在 admire 意为"以敬佩、赞美或羡慕的眼光看着",ap- preciate 意为"增值",care for 意为"照顾",long for 意为"渴望得到", mind 意为"照顾 / 使自己关顾到",value 意为"估计事

物值多少钱",enjoy 和 like / love 意为"享用"和 hate 表示"很讨厌地干和用着"时,它们都表示了主动的动作,可以有进行时态。但 like,love 与 hate 还是用一般时态更为保险: He's enjoying his holiday in the Arctic. He hates touristy places and he doesn't mind the cold.

他正在北极地区享受假日。他不喜欢旅游味道浓的地方,他也不怕冷。

I'm minding my own business.

我在管我自己的事。

- —How are you liking / Do you like your new job?
- —I'm hating it. / I hate it. I just don't like work, you see.
- 一你喜欢你的新工作吗?
- 一我恨透了它/我讨厌它。你知道,我就是不愿意干活。
- C 表示精神活动的动词如 agree,appreciate(=understand),as- sume,believe,expect (=think),feel (=think),feel sure / cer- tain,forget,know,mean,perceive,realize,recall,recongnize,recollect,remember,see(=understand),see through someone(=penetrate his attempt to deceive),suppose,think(=have an opinion),trust(=believe / have confidence in),understand。

但 appreciate 意为"增值"时可用进行时。关于 think, assume, expect 参见第 171 节。

D 表示拥有的动词如 belong, owe, own, possess: How much do I owe you?

我欠你多少钱? (我该给你多少钱?)

E 助动词,但 be 和 have 的某些用法除外。

(参见第 113 节 B, 第 115 节 B 和第 123 节。)

F appear (=seem), concern, consist, contain, hold (=contain), keep (=continue), matter, seem, signify, sound (=seem / ap — pear): It concerns us all. 它和我们大家都有关系。

This box contains explosives.

这个匣子里面是炸药。

但 appear 意为"公开露面或出现"时则可用进行时。

169 feel,look,smell 和 taste

A feel

如 feel 后面跟表示主语的感情或身体或精神状况的形容词(例如 angry / pleased,happy / sad,hot / cold,tense / relaxed, nervous / confident)时,它通常用一般时态,但也可用进行时态: —How do you feel / are you feeling?

- —I feel / am feeling better.
- 一你感觉怎么样了?
- 一我觉得好点了。

feel 可表示"触摸"(以便了解某种情况)。这时可用各种进行时态: The doctor was feeling her pulse。

医生正在为她号脉。

同样,feel for 意为"摸索着寻找"时,可用进行时态: He was feeling for the keyhole in the dark.

他摸黑找钥匙孔。

但 feel 意为"感觉"时不能用进行时态: Don't you feel the house shaking? 你没感觉到房子在摇晃吗?

feel 意为"想"时,不用进行时态: I feel you are wrong.

我想你错了。

feel 作连系动词时,也没有进行时态: The water feels cold.

这水(摸上去)很凉。

B look

look 作连系动词用时不能用进行时态,例如 That cake looks good (那点心看上去很好)。 look on (=consider), look up to (=respect) 或 look down on (=despise) 也不能用进行时态。(参见第三十八章。)

但 look (at), look for / in / into / out 和 look on (=watch) 表示 有意识的主动行为,可用各种进行时态: He is looking for his glasses.

他正在找他的眼镜呢。

I'm looking out for a better job.

我在找一份更好的工作。

C smell

smell 表示"察觉到气味"的意思时,不能用进行时态,如 I smell gas (我闻到了煤气味)。 smell 作连系动词 (表示"有······的味道") 时也不能用进行时态。但 smell 意为"(用鼻子)嗅"时,时则可用进行时态:Why are you smelling the milk? Does it smell sour? 你为什么在闻牛奶?是不是有酸味了?

D taste

taste 作连系动词时,不能用进行时态: This coffee tastes bitter.

这种咖啡味道苦。(尝起来味道苦了一点。)

但 taste 意为"品尝味道"时可用进行时态: She was tasting the pudding to see if it was sweet enough.

她在尝布丁的甜味是否够了。

170 see 和 hear

A see 意指约见(通常用于商业活动)以及会见时可用进行时态: The director is seeing the applicants this morning.

今天早上主任要见那些求职的人。

I am seeing my solicitor tomorrow.

我明天要见我的律师。(参见第202节。)

see 可以指访问,通常指旅游者而言: Tom is seeing the town / the sights.

汤姆正在这座城市观光 / 观光各处景点。

下列词组也可以用进行时态: see about (= make arrangements / enquiries 安排,查询): We are seeing about a work permit for you.

我们正在给你办理工作执照。(着手安排此事)

see to (=arrange, put right, deal with 安排, 修理, 处理): The plumber is here. He

is seeing to the leak in our tank.

管道工在这里。他正在修理我们的水箱的漏洞。

see somebody out (= escort him / her to the door 送他 / 她到门口)

see somebody home (=escort him / her home 送他 / 她回家)

see somebody to+place(=escort him / her to+place 送他 / 她到某地): Ann: Is Bill seeing you home after the party?

安: 比尔是不是要在晚会结束后送你回家?

Mary: No, he's just seeing me to my bus.

玛丽:不,他只把我送上公共汽车。

see someone off(=say goodbye to a departing traveller at the starting point of his journey 为一个即将离开的旅客在旅程的起点,通常是火车站或机场等处送行): We're leaving tomorrow. Bill is seeing us off at the airport.

我们明天就要离开了。比尔要到机场去为我们送行。

B hear 如指正式地听取投诉 / 证言等时,也可用进行时态: The court is hearing evidence this afternoon.

法庭今天下午听取证词。

意指听到消息或信件的 hear 只有在现在完成时及一般将来时中才能用进行时态: I' ve been hearing all about your accident.

我一直在听人说你出事故的详细情况。

You'll be hearing about the new scheme at our next meeting.

在我们下一次会议上你就会听到新计划的情况。

171 think, assume 和 expect

A think 不表示征求意见或发表意见时,可用进行时态: —What are you thinking about?

- —I' m thinking about the play we saw last night.
- 一你在想什么?
- 一我正在想昨晚我们看的戏。

但是: —What do you think of it?

- —I don't think much of it.
- 一你觉得怎么样? (征求意见)
- 一我认为不怎么好。(表示意见)
- —Tom is thinking of emigrating. What do you think of the idea?
- —I think it is a stupid idea. He should stay where he is.
- 一汤姆正在考虑移居国外。你认为这主意怎么样?
- 一我看这主意很蠢。他应该留在原地。

B assume 意为以某种说法为出发点时可用进行时态: I'm assuming that you have time to do a lot of research.

我姑且认为你有时间进行大量的研究工作。

assume 意为接过权力 / 掌管一个国家或组织时也可用进行时态: The new government is assuming power at once.

新政府将立即掌握政权。

C expect 意指等待时也用进行时态: I' m expecting a letter.

我今天在等一封信。

She's expecting a baby in May.

她预期在5月份分娩。

172 一般现在时形式

一般现在时的肯定式与不定式的形式相同,但第三人称单数要加 s: 不规则动词的一般现在时形式的构成与规则动词的构成完全相同。

B 缩略形式: 动词 do 在否定式和否定疑问式中通常用缩略形式 (参见第 103 节 A): I don't work.

He doesn't work.

Don't I work?

Doesn't he work?

C拼写注意事项

以 ss, sh, ch, x 和。结尾的动词,在构成第三人称单数时,要加 es: I kiss, he kisses

I box, he boxes

I rush, he rushes

I do. he does

I watch, he watches

I go, he goes

以字母 y 结尾的动词, y 前为辅音字母时, 要把 y 变为 i 再加 es: I carry, he carries

I copy, he copies

I try, he tries

以字母 y 结尾的动词, y 前为元音字母时, 按照通常规则变化: I obey, he obeys

I say, he says

173 用来表示习惯性动作

A 用来表示习惯动作: He smokes.

他抽烟。Dogs bark.

狗(会)叫。

Cats drink milk.

猫喝牛奶。

一般现在时并不告诉我们说话时动作是否在进行,如果要明确这一点,就必须加一个动词的进行时形式: He's working. He always works at night.

他在工作。他常常在晚上工作。

My dog barks a lot, but he isn't barking at the moment.

我的狗老爱叫,但此刻没叫。

B 一般现在时常常和某些副词或副词短语连用,诸如 always, never, occasionally, often, sometimes, usually, every week, on Mondays, twice a year 等: How often do you wash your hair?

你多长时间洗一次头发?

I go to church on Sundays.

我星期天去教堂做礼拜。

It rains in winter.

冬天常下雨。

或与表示惯例或习惯性动作的时间从句连用。

whenever 和 when (=whenever) 特别有用: Whenever it rains the roof leaks. 只要下雨屋顶就漏水。

When you open the door a light goes on.

只要你打开门, 灯就亮了。

174 其他用法

A 询问或引用书籍、通知或新近接到的信件的内容时,常将一般现在时与动词 say 连用: — What does that notice say?

- —It says, 'No parking.'
- 一那通知说什么?
- 一通知说:"不准停放车辆。"
- —What does the book say?
- —It says, 'Cook very slowly.'
- 一这本书说些什么?
- 一书上说:"要慢慢煮。"
- —I see you' ve got a letter from Ann. What does she say?
- —She says she is coming to London next week.
- 一我知道你收到安的来信了。她说了些什么?
- 一她说她下周要来伦敦。

Shakespeare says, 'Neither a borrower nor a lender be.'

莎士比亚说:"既不要向人借钱,也不要借给人钱。"

其他表示说话或交流意思的动词也可用一般现在时: Shakespeare advises us not to borrow or lend.

莎士比亚劝我们既不要向人借钱也不要借钱给人。

A notice at the end of the road warns people not to go any further.

路的尽头处的通告警告人们不要再往前走。

B可用于报刊新闻等的标题: MASS MURDERER ESCAPES 残杀多人的凶手逃跑

PEACE TALKS FAIL 和谈破裂

C 用于戏剧性的叙述。在描述戏剧、歌剧等中的动作时极为有用。也常用于电台评论员、解说员对运动项目、公共集会等的报道中: When the curtain rises,Juliet is writing at her desk. Suddenly,the win— dow opens and a masked man enters.

幕启时,朱丽叶正坐在桌旁写字。忽然,窗户开了,一个戴面罩的人走进来。

D 表示计划好的将来行动或一系列行动,特别是指旅途中的行动。旅行社人员常这样用:

We leave London at 10:00 next Tuesday and arrive in Paris at 13:00.

We spend two hours in Paris and leave again at 15:00. We arrive in Rome at 19:30, spend four hours in Rome…

下星期二上午 10 点我们离开伦敦,下午 1 点到达巴黎。在巴黎停留两小时,3 点又离开巴黎; 7 点半到达罗马,并在罗马停留四小时……

E 那些不能够用现在进行时的动词如 love, see, believe 等,必须用一般现在时形式代替现在进行时形式,因此说 I love you 而不说 I am loving you。(参见第 168 节。)

F用于条件句类型 1 (参见第 221 节): If I see Ann I'll ask her.

我如果见到安,就会问她。

Unless you take the brake off the car won't move.

除非你把煞车松开,否则车是动不了的。

G用干时间从句

(a) 有一种例行公事的意思: As soon as he earns any money he spends it. 他挣了钱就花。

She takes the boy to school before she goes to work.

她上班之前先把男孩送到学校。

(b) 在主要动词是将来时的时候(参见第 342 节):It will stop raining soon. Then we'll go out. 相当于:When it stops raining we'll go out. 雨很快就要停了。然后我们出去。

第十八章 过去时态和完成时态

175 一般过去时形式

A规则动词的过去式是在动词原形后加 ed 构成的:动词原形: work

过去式: worked

以 e 结尾的动词只加 d: 动词原形: love

过去式: loved

对所有人称,均无词形变化: I worked ?you worked he worked 等

规则和不规则动词的否定式均由 did not / didn't +动词原形构成: I did not / didn't work you did not / didn't work 等

疑问式则均由 did+主语+动词原形构成: did I work? did you work? 等

否定疑问式: did you not / didn't you work? 等

B拼写注意事项

加 ing 时最后一个辅音字母双写的规则(参见第 165 节)也适用于加 ed 的场合:admit,admitted

stop, stopped

travel, travelled

以 y 结尾的动词,y 前为辅音字母时,在加 ed 之前要把 y 变为 i: carry, carried

try, tried

但 y 前面是元音字母时则不变: obey, obeyed

176 不规则动词

不规则动词的一般过去时形式差别很大:动词原形: eat, leave, see, speak

过去式: ate, left, saw, spoke

因此必须牢记每一个不规则动词的过去式,这样其他问题也就迎刃而解了,因为不规则动词也像规则动词一样,其过去式都没有人称变化。

不规则动词的变化表参见第 364 节。

177 用来叙述过去发生的事件

A表示在过去某一特定时间结束的动作,因此可用于: 1 指明发生在过去的动作: I met him vesterday.

我昨天遇见了他。

Pasteur died in 1895.

巴斯彻于 1895 年去世。

2 询问过去的特定时间: When did you meet him?

你是什么时候见到他的?

3 动作显然在过去某特定时刻发生时,虽然并末明确提及该时刻: The train was ten minutes late.

火车晚点了十分钟。

How did you get your present job?

你是怎么得到现在这份工作的?

I bought this car in Montreal.

我在蒙特利尔买的这辆车。

- 4 有时由于用现在完成时作了问答而使时间随之变得明确时: —Where have you been?
- —I' ve been to the opera.
- —Did you enjoy it?
- 一你去哪儿了?
- 一我看歌剧去了。
- 一你喜欢这歌剧吗?

(详见第 184 节 A 中例句。)

B 一般过去时用来表示一个并未指明发生在过去何时的动作,但是,(a)该动作占用了现已结束的某一段时间;或(b)该动作发生在现已结束的某一段时间之内的某一时刻。可以用图解表示如下,TS表示现在说话时的时间。

{ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461322T1.bmp}

类型(a)的例句: He worked in that bank for four years.

他在那家银行工作了四年之久。(但现在已不在那儿工作。)

She lived in Rome for a long time.

她在罗马住过很长时间。(但现在并不住在那里了。)

类型(b)的例句: My grandmother once saw Queen Victoria.

我的祖母见过一次维多利亚女王。

Did you ever hear Maria Callas sing?

你听过玛丽娅·卡拉斯唱歌吗?

上述情况与现在完成时的用法相比时就更易理解。(参见第 182 节至第 184 节。)

C 一般过去时还用来表示过去的习惯: He always carried an umbrella.

他总是带着一把雨伞。

They never drank wine.

他们从来不喝葡萄酒。

(关于 used to 用于表示过去习惯,参见第 162 节。)

D一般过去时用于条件句类型 2。(参见第 222 节。)

(虚拟过去时在 as if, as though, it is time, if only, wish, would sooner / rather 之

后的用法参见第二十八章与第二十九章。)

过去进行时?

178 形式

过去进行时是由动词 be 的过去式+现在分词构成的:参见第 165 节中关于现在分词的拼写法。

注意有些词不能用于进行时态。(参见第 168 节。)

179 主要用法

A 过去进行时主要用来表示在过去延续了一段时间的动作,但动作延续的界限不清楚,也无关紧要。可以用图解表示。

······表示这一动作的开始或结束是不明确的:

B 不与时间状语连用时,可以表示逐渐的发展: It was getting darker.

天越来越黑了。

The wind was rising.

起风了。

C 与表示某一时刻的词语连用,表示动作在那一时刻之前开始,并可能继续下去。 At eight he was having breakfast 意指 8 点时他正在吃早饭,即他在 8 点前就已开始吃早饭了。 He had breakfast at eight 意指他是在 8 点开始吃早饭的。

D 时间状语可以用动词过去式代替。这时就可以用图解表示为: When I arrived 我到达时

{ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461324T1.bmp}

Tom was talking on the phone.

汤姆正在打电话。

在这个句子中,我们表达了这样一个概念:过去进行时表示的动作在一般过去时表示的动作发生之前就已开始,并可能延续下去。上面的图解可能有助于说明这一关系。一般过去时表示的动作由X表示。把这一组合与两个一般过去时态的组合进行对比,就可以看出差别;后者一般表示两个一前一后的动作:When he saw me he put the receiver down.

他一看到我就把电话听筒放下了。

E 在描述性的段落中常使用进行时态。注意以下描述(过去进行时)与叙述(一般过去时) 的组合: A wood fire was burning on the hearth,and a cat was sleeping in front of it. A girl was playing the piano and (was) singing softly to herself. Sud— denly there was a knock on the door. The girl stopped playing. The cat woke up.

木柴在壁炉中燃烧着,一只猫在炉前睡觉。女孩弹着钢琴并径自柔声地唱着。突然传来一阵敲门声。女孩停下来。猫惊醒了。

180 其他用法

表示过去相当于现在进行时的动作: A 直接引语: He said, 'I am living in London.' 他说:"我现在住在伦敦。"

间接引语: He said he was living in London.

他说他那时住在伦敦。

B 现在进行时可以用来表示对将来确定的安排: I'm leaving toninght. I've got my plane ticket.

我今天晚上就要动身了,已经买好了机票。

同样,过去进行时也可以表示过去对将来的安排: He was busy packing, for he was leaving that night.

他那时正忙着打点行李,因为那天晚上他就要走了。(在那之前某时已做出走的决定。)

C 过去进行时与 always 连用: He was always ringing me up.

他老是给我打电话。

He was always working.

他总是在工作。

(参见第 167 节 B 所说的现在进行时与 always 连用的用法。)

181 过去进行时替代一般过去时的用法

过去进行时可以用来代替一般过去时,表示更为偶然而非预定的动作: I was talking to Tom the other day.

那天我跟汤姆聊天来着。

这里的过去进行时给人的印象是这一动作既不特殊,也不引人注目。它同时还倾向于解除主语对于这一动作所负的责任。句中谁先开口说话既不清楚,也无关紧要。要注意它与一般过去时的差异: I talked to Tom(我跟汤姆谈话了)表示主语 I 是主动的。类似的句子还有: From four to six Tom was washing the car.

从4点到6点汤姆在洗车。

这通常表示一个随便的、可能是例行的活动,可与下句相比: From four to six Tom washed the car.

从4点到6点汤姆洗了车。(表示汤姆有意的、经过考虑的行动)

注意:进行时态只用于表示显然是连续不断的动作。如果把动作分割开,或者说出其发生的次数,就必须用一般过去时: I talked to Tom several times.

我跟汤姆谈过几次话。

Tom washed both cars.

汤姆把两辆汽车都洗了。

当然,看来是并行的两个动作可以都用进行时态来表示: Between one and two I was doing the shopping and walking the dog.

一点到两点之间我在购物、遛狗。

这样用的进行时态通常和某些时间状语如 today, last night, in the afternoon 连用。这些时间状语可以看做是表示某一时刻,也可以看做是表示某一段时间。如上面例句所示,某一段时间也可以用确切的时间来表示。

如想问起一段时间怎样度过时,用过去进行时态要用比一般过去时显得有礼貌: What were

you doing before you came here?(你来这里之前做什么工作?)要比 What did you do be — fore you came here? 听起来有礼貌。

另一方面, What were you doing in my room? (你在我的房间里干什么来着?)可能表示这样一种情感:我认为你没有权利在我的屋子里。但 What did you do in my room?却毫无这种含义。

现在完成时?

182 形式和用法

A 形式

现在完成时由 have 的现在式+过去分词构成: I have worked 等

规则动词的过去分词形式与过去式完全相同,如 loved, walked 等。(参见第三十七章拼写规则。)

不规则动词的过去分词形式则各不相同,需要记住。(参见第364节。)

否定式由助动词后加 not 构成。

疑问式由倒装了的助动词与主语构成。

现在完成时的各种形式如下:缩略形式: have / has 和 have not / has not 可以缩略(参见第 118 节): I' ve worked you haven't worked hasn't he worked?等

缩略形式在日常口语中说得很轻,经常是几乎听不见的。

have 和 has 的缩略形式如在第 104 节 B 中所示: Where' ve you been?

你去哪儿了?

What's he done?

他做了什么事?

B用法

这一时态可以说是现在时与过去时的一种混合,它总与现在有密切联系,主要用于对话、书信、报纸以及电视与电台报导。

183 与 just 连用表示刚完成的动作

He has just gone out.

他刚出去。相当于: He went out a few minutes ago.

他在几分钟前出去了。

这是现在完成时态的一种特殊用法。just 必须位于助动词与主要动词之间。这种搭配主要用于肯定式,也可用于疑问式: Has he just gone out?

他刚刚出去吗?

just 一般不用于否定式。

184 用于表示时间尚未指明或不确定的过去发生的动作

A 它可以表示未说明最近何时发生的动作: I have read the instructions but I don't understand them.

我已经看了说明, 但没看懂。

- —Have you had breakfast?
- —No, I haven't had it yet.
- 一你吃过早饭了没有?
- 一没有,我还没吃呢。

和下面的例句相比: I read the instructions last night.

我昨天晚上看了说明。(指明时间,因此等于有了具体时间,所以要用一般过去时。)

Did you have breakfast at the hotel?

He hasn't come yet.

他还没有来。(所以我们一直在等他。)

C 现在完成时也可用来表示在更早一点的过去发生的动作,它和现在的时间的联系仍然保持着,即该动作有可能现在仍在重复: I have seen wolves in that forest.

我在那片森林里见过狼。

意指还可能在那森林里见到狼。

John Smith has written a number of short stories.

约翰 • 史密斯已经写了许多短篇小说。

意指他仍活着并可能写更多的小说。

如果第一句中的狼已被杀,第二句中的约翰·史密斯已死了,就会说: I saw wolves in that forest once / several times.

我在那片森林里曾经/几次看到过狼。

I used to see wolves here.

我过去常在这里看到狼。

John Smith wrote a number of short stories.

约翰 • 史密斯写过许多短篇小说。

还要注意,这样用现在完成时时,并不一定想着某一具体动作(该动作可能已发生若干次)或者想着该动作完成的确切的时间。如果想到的是在某一具体时间完成的某一具体的动作,很可能要用一般过去时。

185 表示一个尚未过去的时间段内发生的动作

A 这类动作可以用下面的图解来表示: {ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461331T1.bmp} 每个 X 表示一个动作。

TS 表示现在说话的时间。

B 表示尚未成为过去的时间段的词有: today (今天) 或 this morning / afternoon / evening / week / month / year / century (这个早上 / 下午 / 晚上 / 周 / 月 / 年 / 世纪) 等。

注意:现在完成时与 this morning 连用仅限于表示大约 1 点以前。因为 1 点钟以后,this morning 就成了一个过去的时间段,在此阶段内发生的动作就要用一般过去时表示:(at 11 a. m.) Tom has rung up three times this morning already.

(上午11点时说)今天上午汤姆已经打三次电话了。

(at 2 p. m.) Tom rang up three times this morning.

(下午两点时说)汤姆今天上午打过三次电话。

同样,this afternoon 可以用于现在完成时,但限于到下午 5 点左右:(at 4 p. m.)I haven't seen Tom this afternoon.

(下午4点时说)我今天下午还没见到过汤姆。

(at 6 p. m.) I didn't see Tom this afternoon.

(下午6点时说)今天下午我没看见过汤姆。

现在完成时与尚未成为过去的时间段连用时, 意指动作在该时期中某一不确定的时刻发生或者未发生过: —Have you seen him today?

- —Yes, I have. / Yes, I' ve seen him today.
- 一你今天看到他了吗? (在今天任何时刻)
- 一是的,我见过。/是的,我今天看到他了。(在今天某一时刻)

但是,如果知道一个动作通常在某一时刻或在尚未过去的一段时间中的某一段发生的话,就要用一般过去时。如果我的闹钟通常在早上 6 点钟响,在早饭时我可能会这样说: My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.

我的闹钟今天早上没有闹。

试设想这种情景:邮递员通常早上 9 点至 10 点来。从 9 点开始到 10 点为止,我们会这么说: Has the postman come yet / this morning?

邮递员今天早上/来过没有?

但过了 **9** 点到 **10** 点这一段时间,我们就会说: Did the postman come this morning? 邮递员今天上午来过吗?

这里用过去时是因为我们想着已经过去的一段时间,尽管没有明确地提到这段时间。

Has the postman ?Did the postman

come this morning? come this morning?

邮递员来了吗? 邮递员来过吗?

{ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461333T1.bmp}

C lately 和 recently 与现在完成时连用也可表示一段尚未完全过去的时间。Has he been here lately / recently? (他最近来过吗?) 和 He hasn't been here lately / recently (他最近来过) 这两句中 lately / recently 意指在最近的一周 / 月等中的任何一个时刻。

另外 He has been here recently (他最近来过这里) 中的 recent ly 意指在最近一周 / 月等中的一个未明确说明的时间。除表示不断发生于一段时间内的动作之外,lately 与肯定式连用的情况比较少见: There have been some changes lately / recently.

最近发生了一些变化。

He's had a lot of bad luck lately / recently.

近来他的运气坏得很。

recently 与一般过去时连用时意指在此以前不久: He left recently. 相当于: He left a short time ago.

他刚刚离开不久。

D 现在完成时可以与 ever,never,always,occasionally,often,sev— eral times,since +某一具体的时间,since+从句或作副词用的 since 连用,表示与上面所述同样的意思: 1 Ann: Have you ever fallen off a horse?

安: 你从马上摔下来过吗?

Tom: Yes, I' ve fallen off quite often / occasionally.

汤姆: 是的, 我常/偶尔从马背上摔下来。

但是如果汤姆现在不骑马了,可以说: Ann: Did you ever fall off a horse? (一般过去时) 安: 你那时从马背上摔下来过吗?

Tom: Yes, I did occasionally / frequently.

汤姆: 摔过, 那时我偶尔/时常从马背上摔下来。

2 I haven't seen him since November.

11 月以来我一直没看到过他。

Has he written since he left home?

他离开家后来讨信吗?

We had a letter last week. We haven't heard since.

上星期我们接到了一封信。从那以后没有收到过信。

I' ve since changed my mind. 相当于: I' ve changed my mind since then.

从那以后我改变了主意。

3 现在完成时可以用于表示习惯性动作: They' ve always answered my letters.

他们总是给我回信的。

I' ve never been late for work.

我上班从来没迟到过。

有时这些好像是连续的动作,而不是重复的动作: Since my accident I have written with my left hand.

出了事故以后我一直用左手写字。

I' ve worn glasses since my childhood.

我从小就戴眼镜。

可以用 for +一段时间来代替 since +某一具体的时间: I' ve used my left hand for a month now.

我使用左手已经一个月了。

I' ve worn glasses for ten years.

我戴眼镜已经十年了。(参见第 186 节。)

4 还要注意以下这种句型: This is the best wine I have ever drunk.

这是我喝过的最好的葡萄酒。

This is the worst book I have ever read.

这是我读过的最糟的书。

This is the easiest job I have ever had.

这是我干过的最容易的工作。

可以去掉这种结构中的 ever,也不用形容词的最高级形式,而和 the first,the second 等以及 the only 连用: It / This is the first time I have seen a mounted band.

这是我第一次看到骑兵乐队。

It is only the second time he has been in a canoe.

这才是他第二次乘独木舟。

This is the only book he has written.

这是他写的唯一的一本书。

186 表示一个尚未完全过去的时期内延续的动作

表示时间的词 for, since (参见第 187 节), all day / night / week, all my 等 life, all the time, always, lately, never, recently

A 现在完成时用来表示一个从过去开始而且将继续到现在说话时间之后的动作: He has been in the army for two years.

他在军队里已经服役两年了。(他还在军队里。)

I have smoked since I left sohool.

我离开中学以来一直抽烟。(我仍然抽烟。)

We have waited all day.

我们等了整整一天了。(现在仍在等。)

He has lived here all his life.

他一辈子都住在这里。(他还住这里。)

He has always worked for us.

他一直在为我们工作。(他现在仍在为我们工作。)

这种类型的动作可以用图解表示为: {ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461336T1.bmp}

可以把上述例句和下面例句相比: He was in the army for two years.

他在军队里呆了两年。(他现在不在军队里。)

I smoked for six months.

我抽了六个月烟。(然后戒了烟。)

He lived here all his life.

他一辈子都住在这里。(可能他现已去世。)

以上三个例句都与已完时段有关: {ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461336T2.bmp}

所以要用一般过去时。(参见第 117 节 B。)

B 但是现在完成时有时可以用来表示一个开始于过去而正巧在说话时刻结束的动作: Ann(on meeting someone): I haven't seen you for ages.

安(遇见了某人): 我很久没见到你了。(但现在看到了你)

This room hasn't been cleaned for months.

这房间已有好几个月没有清扫了。(但我们现在正在打扫)

It has been very cold lately but it's just beginning to get warmer.

近来天气一直很冷, 但现在开始暖和了。

这种类型的动作可以用图解表示为: {ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461337T1.bmp}

C 表示知道、相信和理解等的动词不能用于现在完成时,只有上文 A 中所述的情况例外: I have known him for a long time.

我已经认识他很长时间了。

I have never believed their theories.

我从来就不信他们的理论。

因此,最近的动作即使未指明时间,也必须用一般过去时来表示: Did you know that he was going to be married?

你知道他要结婚了吗? (这里不能用 Have you known)

Hello! I didn't know you were in London. How long have you been here?

你好!我本不知道你在伦敦。你在这里多久了?

但 think 和 wonder 可以按第 185 节 D 中的用法使用: I have sometimes thought that I should have emigrated.

我有时想我早该移居国外。

I have often wondered why he didn't marry her.

我常常纳闷他为什么不娶她。

D 注意以下问答: —How long have you been here?

- —I' ve been here six months.
- 一你到这里多久了?
- 一我到这里已经六个月了。

{ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461337T2.bmp}

继这种回答之后,一般常用现在完成时对已提到的这一时期之内的动作进行提问。这一段时期可以认为是未终结的时间段,用下图来表示:因为停留、存在等动作都还没有结束: Have

you been to the zoo / the theatre / the museums / the casino?

你夫过动物园/戏院/博物馆/娱乐场吗?

Have you enrolled in a school / found a job / met many people?

你已经入学/找到工作/见许多人了吗?

如果未提到时间,回答也用同一时态,否则就要用一般过去时: Yes, I have (been to the zoo etc.) / Yes, I went there last week.

对,我去过了。/对,我上周去了。

No, I haven't enrolled yet. / Yes, I enrolled on Monday / this morning.

不,还没有。/对,周一/今早入的学。

187 与 for 和 since 连用

A for 与表示一段时间的短语连用: for six days 六天

for a long time 很久

for 与一般过去时连用,表示一段终结了的时间: We lived there for ten years.

我们在那里住过十年。(但我们现在不住那里了)

for 与现在完成时连用表示延续到现在的一段时间: We have lived in London for ten years.

我们在伦敦已经住了十年。(并且还住在那里)

for 有时可以省略,特别是在 be,live 和 wait 之后: We've been here an hour / two days. 我们在这里已经呆了一小时 / 两天了。

表示时间的 for 不能用于以 all 开头的短语的前面: They' ve worked all night.

他们整整干了一晚上。

B since 与某一时刻连用,表示从那一时刻到说话时为止。除下文 D 与第 188 节所述外,它总是与完成时态连用。

She has been here since six o' clock.

从6点钟起她一直在这里。(并且现在还在这里)

We' ve been friends since our schooldays.

从上学的时候起我们就是好朋友了。

C 注意: last 和 the last 之间存在着差别。

比较: (a) I have been here since last week (month, year etc.).

我从上周(上月、去年等)起一直在这里。

(b) I have been here for the last week.

过去一周内我一直在这里。

第一句里 last week 意指大约七天前的某一时刻,而第二句的 the last week 却意指刚刚结束的七天长的时间。

D since+从句也可表示相同的意思: I' ve worked here since I left school.

离开学校后我就一直在这里工作。

ever since 作副词用: He had a bad fall last year and has been off work ever since.

他去年摔伤了, 从那以后就没工作过。

188 it is+一段时间+since+一般过去时或现在完成时

下面的不同说法都是可以的: It is three years since I (last) saw Bill.

自从我(上次)和比尔见面到现在已经三年了。

It is three years since I have seen Bill.

自我和比尔那次见面以来已经有三年了。

I last saw Bill three years ago.

我最后一次见到比尔是在三年以前。

I haven't seen Bill for three years.

我已经有三年没见到过比尔了。

It is two months since Tom (last) smoked a cigarette.

汤姆最后一次抽烟到现在已有两个月了。

It is two months since Tom has smoked a cigarette.

汤姆已经两个月没抽烟了。

He last smoked a cigarette two months ago.

他最后一次抽烟是两个月以前。

He hasn't smoked a cigarette for two months.

他已经有两个月没有抽烟了。

我们可以用 it is… since 结构,不带副词 last: It is two years since he left the country. 他离开这个国家已经两年了。

然而,如果想换用一个别的句式,则只能用下面的办法: He left the country two years ago. 他两年前离开了这个国家。

在这里不能像上面有关比尔的句子那样用现在完成时的否定形式。He hasn't been(living) in this country for the last two years(这两年他没有在这个国家住过)是可以的,但与 He left two years ago(他离开两年了)意思不完全等同。这种结构可以用于一般过去时:He invited me to go riding with him. But it was two years since I had ridden a horse.

他邀请我和他一起去骑马。但那时我已经两年没有骑马了。(在他邀请我之前,我已经有两年没有骑马了,所以我不知道自己是否还能骑得开心。)

189 现在完成时和一般过去时

A Tom (visiting Philip for the first time): I didn't know you lived in a houseboat.

汤姆(第一次走访菲利普): 我原来不知道你住在船屋里。

Philip: I' ve always lived in a houseboat. I was born in one.

菲利普: 我一直住在船屋里。我出生在船上。

- —I thought you were still on holiday. When did you get back?
- —I came back last week.
- —Has your term started yet?
- —Yes, it started on Monday.
- 一我以为你还在休假。你是什么时候回来的?
- 一我是上周回来的。
- 一学校开学了吗?
- 一是的,是星期一开学的。

B 注意:关于过去的动作的对话常常用现在完成时的问答开始,但是通常会以一般过去时继续下去,即使没有指明时间。这是因为在开头一句中提到的动作这时在说话人的脑子里已经确定了:一Where have you been?

—I' ve been to the cinema.

- —What did you see? / What was the film?
- (I saw) ' Amadeus'.
- —Did you like it?
- 一你去哪儿了?
- 一我看电影去了。
- 一看的什么电影? / 电影的内容是什么?
- 一《莫扎特传》。
- 一你喜欢这电影吗?

Husband: Where have you been?

丈夫: 你去哪儿了?

Wife: I' ve been at the sales.

妻子: 商店大减价, 我去买东西去了。

Husband: What have you bought? / What did you buy? 丈夫: 你买了什么东西?

Wife: I have bought / I bought you some yellow pyjamas.

妻子: 我给你买了一套黄色的睡衣睡裤。

Husband: Why did you buy yellow? I hate yellow.

丈夫: 你为什么买黄色的? 我讨厌黄颜色。

C 现在完成时常常用于报纸和广播中,用于开头,说起某项活动,接着就用一般过去时进行描述。事情发生的时间常常在第二句里点出来: Thirty thousand pounds' worth of jewellery has been stolen from Jonathan Wild and,Company,the jewellers. The thieves broke into the flat above some time during Sunday night and entered the shop by cutting a hole in the ceiling.

珠宝商店乔纳森·威尔德公司价值三万英镑的珠宝被盗。窃贼约在星期日夜间某时潜入楼上的一套房子,然后在商店的天花板上挖洞进入商店。

即使未指明动作的时间,在第二句里也通常用一般过去时: Two prisoners have escaped from Dartmoor. They used a ladder which had been left behind by some workmen, climbed a twenty-foot wall and got away in a stolen car.

两个囚犯从达特姆尔监狱逃走。他们用了工人丢下的梯子,爬上 20 英尺高的围墙,然后乘偷来的汽车逃走了。

D 现在完成时常用于书信中: I am sorry I haven't written before but I've been very busy lately as Tom has been away.

很抱歉,在这之前没给你写信。因为汤姆外出了,我最近一直很忙。

We have carefully considered the report which you sent us on 26 April, and have decided to take the following action.

我们已经仔细地考虑了你于4月26日寄来的报告,并已决定采取以下行动。

现在完成进行时

190 形式

这种时态由动词 be 的现在完成时形式+现在分词构成: 肯定式: I have been working, he has been working 等

否定式: I have not / haven't been working等

疑问式: have I been working? 等

否定疑问式: have I not / haven't I been working?等

191 用法

现在完成进行时表示一个过去开始、现仍在继续中的动作: {ewc $MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461343T1.bmp}$

或一个过去开始、现在刚刚结束的动作: {ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461343T2.bmp}

I' ve been waiting for an hour and he still hasn't turned up.

我等了一小时了, 可他还没来。

I'm so sorry I'm late. Have you been waiting long?

真对不起,我迟到了。你等了很久了吗?

必请记住,许多动词一般情况下不能用进行时(参见第 168 节),但其中有些动词在某些场合可以用进行时(参见第 169 节至第 171 节)。因此可以说: Tom has been seeing about a work permit for you.

汤姆一直在想办法给你弄一个工作许可证。

She has been having a tooth out.

她(刚才)正让医生给她拔牙呢。

I' ve been thinking it over.

我一直在考虑这件事。

I' ve been hearing all about his operation.

我一直在听人讲他动手术的全部情况。

此外,动词 want 常用于这种时态,wish 也可以这样用: Thank you so much for the binoculars. I' ve been wanting a pair for ages.

我非常感谢你送给我望远镜。我一直想要一副。

现在完成进行时没有被动语态。They have been repairing theroad(他们这一阵一直在修 这条路)的最近似的被动形式通常是 The road has been repaired lately(这条路最近修过)。这是现在完成时的被动语态,但是这两个句子并不完全相同。

192 现在完成时的一般式与进行式的比较

A 在表达一个在过去开始而现在仍在继续或刚刚结束的动作时,某些动词既可以用现在完成时,也可以用现在完成进行时。这样的动词有 expect,hope,learn,lie,live,look,rain,sleep,sit,snow,stand,stay,study,teach,wait,want,work 等: How long have you learnt English?

你学习英语多久了?

How long have you been learning English?

(译文同上。)

He has slept for ten hours.

他已经睡了十个小时了。

He has been sleeping for ten hours.

(译文同上。)

It has snowed for a long time.

雪下了好长时间了。

It has been snowing for a long time.

(译文同上。)

没有进行式的动词不可能有这样的用法(参见第 168 节),即现在完成进行时不能代替以下例句中的现在完成时: They' ve always had a big garden.

他们一直有一座大花园。

How long have you known that?

你知道这事多久了?

He's been in hospital since his accident.

他从发生事故之后,一直在医院里。

注意:现在完成进行时可以和时间短语连用,也可以不连用,这一点就有别于现在完成时,因为后者与像 for six days,since June,never等一些时间短语连用才能表示这类动作。不用这些时间状语时,现在完成时指的是完成了的一个动作。

B 用现在完成时表示的反复的动作,有时可以作为连续的动作用现在完成进行时表示: I' ve written six letters since breakfast.

早饭后我已经写了六封信。

I' ve been writing letters since breakfast.

早饭后我一直在写信。

I have knocked five times. I don't think anyone's in.

我敲了五次门。我想屋里没有人。

I' ve been knocking. I don't think anybody's in.

我一直在敲门。我想屋里没有人。

注意:现在完成进行时表示一种看来似乎是不间断的动作,所以提到做一件事的次数或一共做了多少事情时,不能用现在完成进行时。

C 用现在完成时表达的单一动作和用现在完成进行时表达的动作是有区别的: (a) I' ve polished the car.

我擦了车。

意指这件事已经结束了。

(b) I' ve been polishing the car.

我在擦车来着。

意指过去一小时我就是这样度过的,而不一定指动作已结束。注意:用现在完成进行时表示单一动作时,这一动作持续到说话的时间或者接近这一时间为止:He's been taking photos.他一直在拍照。(他大概手里正拿着照相机。)

He has taken photos.

他拍过相片。(这件事可能是也可能不是最近发生的。)

193 进一步举例

- A: I haven't seen your brother lately. Has be gone away?
- 甲: 我近来一直没有见到过你的兄弟。他是不是到别的地方去了?
- B: Yes, he's / he has been sent to America.
- 乙: 是的, 他被派到美国去了。
- A: When did he go?
- 甲: 他什么时候走的?

- B: He went last month.
- 乙: 他是上个月走的。
- A: Have you had any letters from him?
- 甲: 你收到他的来信了吗?
- B: I haven' to but his wife has been hearing from him regularly.
- 乙: 我没有收到,但他的妻子常收到他的来信。
- A: Does she intend to go out and join him?
- 甲: 她想出去跟他团聚吗?
- B: They' ve been thinking about it but haven't quite decided yet. Unfortu—nately they' ve had a lot of expense lately and perhaps haven't got themoney for her fare.
- 乙:他们正在考虑这件事,可还没有最后决定。但是不巧得很,最近他们开销很大,也许没有钱给她买票。

Tom: What have you done with my knife?

汤姆: 你怎么动我的小刀了? (你把我的小刀放在哪里了?)

Ann: I put it back in your drawer.

安: 我把它放回你的抽屉里了。

Tom (taking it out): But what have you been doing with it? The blade's alltwisted! Have you been using it to open tins?

汤姆(拿出小刀):可你用这刀子干什么来着?刃都卷了!你用它开罐头了吧?

- A: Do you see those people on that little sandy island? They' ve been wav—ing handkerchiefs for the last half hour. I wonder why.
- 甲: 你看见小沙洲上的那些人了吗? 半小时了, 他们一直挥舞着手绢。我不知是怎么回事。
- B: They need help. The tide's coming in and very soon that little islandwill be under water. Have you been sitting here calmly and doing noth—ing to help them?
- 乙:他们需要救援。潮水正在上涨,不一会儿那小岛就要被淹没。你难道一直在这里无动于衷地坐视不救吗?
- A: I' ve never been here before. I didn't know about the tides.
- 甲: 我以前从来没来过这里。我不了解潮水的情况。

过去完成时?

194 形式和用法

A 形式

过去完成时由 had+过去分词构成,因此无人称变化:肯定式: I had / I'd worked 等

否定式: I had not / hadn't worked 等

疑问式: had I worked? 等

否定疑问式: had I not / hadn't I worked?等

B 用法

1 过去完成时是与现在完成时相当的过去式。

现在完成时: Ann has just left. If you hurry you'll catch her.

安刚刚走。如果你快一点,就能追上她。(参见第183节。)

过去完成时: When I arrived Ann had just left.

我到的时候, 安刚刚离开。

现在完成时: I' ve lost my case.

我的手提箱丢了。(参见第 184 节。)

过去完成时: He had lost his case and had to borrow Tom's pyjamas.

他的手提箱丢了,不得不去向汤姆借睡衣睡裤。

但是,过去完成时不像现在完成时那样限于表达未指明时间的动作,因此可以说: He had left his case on the 4:40 train.

他把手提箱丢在4点40分的火车上了。

- 2 现在完成时可以和 since / for / always 等词连用,表示一个开始于过去并仍在继续或刚刚结束的动作。(参见第 186 节。)与此同理,过去完成时也可以用来表示在所说的过去某一时刻之前就已开始的动作,这一动作:(a)在该时刻仍然在继续;或
- (b) 在该时刻停止或刚刚停止。

但应注意,过去完成时还可以用来表示:(c)在所说时刻之前某一时候停止的动作。

(a),(b),(c)这三种类型的例句分别列举如下: (a)Bill was in uniform when I met him. He had been a soldier for tenyears / since he was seventeen,and planned to stay in the army till hewas thirty.

我遇到比尔的时候,他身穿军服。那时他已经当了十年兵了 / 他 从 17 岁就当兵,并且还计划在军队里呆到 30 岁。

Ann had lived in a cottage for sixty years / ever since she was born, andhad no wish to move to a tower block.

安在小屋里已经住了 60 年 / 安出生以来就一直住在小屋,也不想搬到塔楼去住。(这里也可以用过去完成进行时形式 had beeniiving。)

(b) The old oak tree, which had stood in the churchyard for 300 years / since before the church was built, suddenly crashed to the ground.

屹立在教堂墓地上已 300 百年之久的老橡树 / 在教堂建造之前就屹立着的老橡树突然间哗啦一声巨响倒在地上。(这里也可以用过去完成进行时形式 had been standing。)

Peter, who had waited for an hour / since ten o'clock, was very angrywith his sister when she eventually turned up.

彼得等了一小时 / 从 10 点钟起就等着,他妹妹终于来到时他非常生气。(也可以用 had been waiting。)

(c) He had served in the army for ten years; then he retired and married.

His children were now at school.

他在军队里服役十年,后来退伍并结了婚。他的孩子现在已上学了。

这里既不能用 since 也不能用过去完成进行时。还要注意到,这里的过去完成时没有与之相当的现在完成时。如果把句中最后一个动词变成现在时,其他动词时态都要变成一般过去时。

He served in the army for ten years; then retired and married.

His chil—dren are now at school.

他在军队里服役十年,然后退伍并结了婚。他的孩子现在都在上学。这些结构以图解形式分别表示如下,直线 AB 表示过去完成时的动作,TS 表示过去说话的某一时刻:{ewc MVIMAGE, MVIMAGE, !461350T1.bmp}

(另参见第196节关于间接引语中过去完成时的用法。)

3 过去完成时也是一般过去时的过去时,用来表示叙述者或主语在过去的某一时刻回顾更早的动作: Tom was 23 when our story begins. His father had died five years beforeand since then Tom had lived alone. His father had advised him not to getmarried till he was 35, and Tom intended to follow this advice.

我们的故事开始时汤姆 23 岁。他父亲五年以前就已去世,打那以后汤姆一直独自生活。他 父亲劝告过他不到 35 岁不要结婚,汤姆打算遵从这个忠言。

I had just poured myself a glass of beer when the phone rang. When Icame back form

answering it the glass was empty. Somebody had drunkthe beer or thrown it away.

我刚刚给自己倒了一杯啤酒,电话铃就响了。我接电话回来时,啤酒杯空了。一定有人喝掉了啤酒或者把它泼掉了。

He met her in Paris in 1977. He had last seen her ten years before. Herhair had been grey then: now it was white.

1977 年他在巴黎遇见了她。他上一次见到她是十年之前。那时她的头发是灰白的,这时已 经全白了。

He met her in 1967 and again ten years later. Her hair, which had beengrey at their first meeting, was now white

他 1967 年见到过她,十年以后又见到了她。她的头发在他们第一次见面时还是灰白的,这时已经全白了。

但是如果只是依次叙述先后发生的事件,就不需要用过去完成时: Tom's father died when Tom was eighteen. Before he died he advisedTom not to marry till he was 35, and Tom at 23 still intended to followthis advice.

汤姆的父亲在汤姆 18 岁那一年去世了。在他去世之前,他劝告汤姆要到 35 岁再结婚。汤姆到了 23 岁仍然打算遵从父亲的忠言。

He met her first in 1967 when her hair was grey. He met her again in1977. / He didn't meet her again till 1977. Her hair was now white.

1967 年他第一次遇见她,那时她的头发是灰白色。**1977** 年他再次遇见她。/直到 **1977** 年 才再次遇见她。这时她的头发全白了。

上述两个例句中,都没有从过去某时刻去回顾过去,因此就没有理由用过去完成时。

注意以下例句含义上的区别: She heard voices and realized that there were three people in the nextroom.

她听到了说话的声音,知道隔壁房间里有三个人。

She saw empty glasses and cups and realized that three people had been inthe room.

她看到了空玻璃杯子和茶杯,知道房间里曾来过三个人。(他们已经不在那里了。)

He arrived at 2:30 and was told to wait in the VIP lounge.

他在两点半到达并被告知在贵宾休息室等候。

He arrived at 2:30. He had been told to wait in the VIP lounge.

他在两点半到达。来之前已被告知在贵宾休息室等候。

在倒数第二句中,他在抵达后才接到指示;在最后一句中,他

是在抵达之前就接到指示的,可能在出发之前就已接到。

195 时间从句中的一般过去时与过去完成时

A 由 when 连接的从句

一个过去的动作紧接另一动作时: He called her a liar.

他骂她撒谎。

She smacked his face.

她打了他一个耳光。

可以用 when 把这两个一般过去时的句子连接起来。连接的条件是,从意思上可以明显看出后一动作跟随前一动作,二者并不是同时发生的: When he called her a liar she smacked his face.

他骂她撒谎时,她打了他一个耳光。

两个过去时这样用时,通常存在这样的概念:第一个动作导致第二个动作,而后者是紧接前者发生的: When he opened the window the bird flew out.

他一打开窗户鸟就飞出去了。

When the play ended the audience went home.

剧结束后, 观众就回家了。

When he died he was given a state funeral.

他去世后, 为他举行了国葬。

过去完成时用于 when 之后,是为了避免使用两个一般过去时可能给人造成两个动作同时发生的印象: When he had shut the window we opened the door of the cage.

他关了窗户之后,我们把笼门打开了。(我们等他关紧了窗户才打开笼门。)

When she had sung her song she sat down.

她唱完歌之后坐了下来。(如写成 When she sang her song she satdown,可能造成她是坐着唱歌的印象。)

When he had seen all the pictures he said he was ready to leave.

他看了所有的画之后说他要走了。(在他看完画之后……) 试和下句相比较: When he saw all the pictures he expressed amazement that one manshould have painted so many.

他看见所有的画时,表示十分惊奇,一个人竟然画了这么多画。(他一看见画就这么说。) 过去完成时同样可以与 as soon as,the moment,immediately 连用。(关于 as 作为表示时 间的连词的用法,参见第 332 节。)

B 过去完成时可以与 till / until 和 before 连用,强调一个动作结束或预期将结束,但要注意在 till / until+过去完成时+一般过去时结构中,表示一般过去时的动作可以位于表示过去完成时的动作之前,而在 before+过去完成时+一般过去时结构中表示一般过去时的动作总是位于表示过去完成时的动作之前: He refused to go till he had seen all the pictures. 他在看完所有的画之后才同意走。

He did not wait till we had finished our meal.

他没等到我们吃完饭就走了。

Before we had finished our meal he ordered us back to work.

没等我们吃完饭, 他就命令我们回去干活。

Before we had walked ten miles he complained of sore feet.

我们还没走出十英里路, 他就抱怨脚痛了。

也可以在表示时间的从句中和主句中都用过去完成时: It was a very expensive town. Before we had been here a week we hadspent all our money.

那是一个物价很贵的地方。我们到这儿还不到一星期,就花光了所有的钱。

C 在 after 之后一般用过去完成时态: After the will had been read there were angry exclamations.

遗嘱宣读完之后,激起了一片愤怒的喊声。

D 第 194 节中已经讲过,在过去某一时刻回顾更为过去的动作时,要用过去完成时。如果有两个这样的动作: He had beento school but he had learnt nothing there, so was now illiterate(他上过学但什么也没学到,因此现在还是个文盲),而又想用时间连词把它们连接起来,就可以用 when 等连词连接两个过去完成时: When he had been at school he had learnt nothing, so he was now illiter—ate.

他上学的时候什么也没学到,所以现在还是个文盲。

但更常见的情况是,这里时间从句中的动词用一般过去时: When he was at school he had learnt nothing,

(译文同上。)

类似的例句还有: He had stayed in his father's firm till his father died. Then he had startedhis own business and was now a very successful man.

他在父亲的公司里一直呆到父亲去世。之后他便自己开业,其时已成为一个事业有成的商人。 E 表示认识、理解等的动词一般在时间从句中不用过去完成时,除非有时间修饰: When she had known me for a year she invited me to tea.

她认识了我一年之后,邀请我吃茶点。

When I knew the work of one department thoroughly I was moved to thenext department.

在我完全熟悉了一个部门的工作之后,又被调到另一部门。相当于: As soon as I knew... 试与下句比较: When I had learnt the work of one department I was moved.

我学会一个部门的工作之后,就被调走了。

F 带有过去完成时的时间从句可以和条件时态连用,但这主要见于间接引语,例句见下。

196 过去完成时在间接引语中的用法

A 引导动词如果是一般过去时,直接引语中的现在完成时在间接引语中要变成过去完成时: He said, 'I' ve been in England for ten years.'

他说:"我已经在英国住了十年了。"相当于: He said that he had been in England for ten years.

他说他在英国已经住了十年。

He said, 'When you' ve worked for a year you' ll get a rise.'

他说:"你工作一年之后,会加工资。"相当于: He said that when I'd worked for a year I'd get a rise.

他说我工作一年之后会加工资。

She said, 'I' ll lend you the book as soon as I have read it myself.'

她说:"我一看完这本书就借给你。"相当于: She said she'd lend me the book as soon as she'd read it herself.

她说她一看完那本书就借给我。

B 直接引语中的一般过去时通常也作同样的变化: He said, 'I knew her well.'

他说:"我过去很了解她。"相当于: He said that he had known her well.

他说他过去很了解她。

但在许多情况下一般过去时保持不变。(参见第 309 节至第 310 节。)(关于条件句中 if 后的过去完成时,参见第 223 节; wish 和 only 之后的过去完成时,参见第 300 节; 关于 as if 和 asthough 之后的过去完成时,参见第 292 节。)

过去完成进行时?

197 形式与用法

A 形式

过去完成进行时是由 had been+现在分词构成,因此无人称变化: I had / I'd been working they had not / hadn't been working

had you been working?

had you not / hadn't you been working?

凡不能用于进行时的动词均不能有这种时态,但动词 want (有时还有 wish) 除外: The boy was delighted with his new knife. He had been wanting one fora long time.

男孩对新小刀很高兴。他早就想要一把了。

注意:这一时态没有被动语态,像 They had been picking ap—ples(他们一直在摘苹果)这样的句子,最近似的被动式是 Ap—ples had been picked(苹果已摘完),实际上这两种说法意思并不相同。(参见下面 B3。)

B 用法

过去完成进行时与过去完成时之间的关系,同现在完成进行时与现在完成时之间的关系相同。(参见第 192 节。)

1 表示动作在所说的过去某一时刻之前就已开始并持续到那一时刻或者在那一时刻之前刚刚停止时,常常可以用两个时态中的任一个(参见第 192 节 A):It was now six and he was tired because he had worked since dawn.

已经 6 点了,他感到很累,因为他从天亮起一直工作到现在。相当于: It was now six and he was tired because he had been working since dawn.

那时正是6点,他因从一大早就干活而累了。

2 用过去完成时表示的反复的动作,有时可以作为一种连续的动作用过去完成进行时表示 (参见第 192 节 B): he had tried five times to get her on the phone.

他曾试着打了五次电话要找她。

He had been trying to get her on the phone.

他一直在试着打电话找她。

3 一个用过去完成时表达的单一动作和一个用过去完成进行时表达的动作不同(参见第 192 节 C): By six o' clock he had repaired the engine.

到6点钟时他已经修好发动机了。(这项工作已经完成。)

但 He had been repairing the engine(他一直在修理发动机)仅告诉我们他在前面的时间 / 前半小时里做什么,而并不告诉我们这项工作是否完成。

另一个区别是,由过去完成进行时表示的动作常持续进行直到或甚至超过说话的时间(这个时间是在过去)。而由过去完成时表示的动作虽可以发生在这一说话时间之前不久,但动作与说话之间可以有较长的时间间隔: He had been painting the door.

他当时一直在油漆门。(油漆大概还未干。)

He had painted the door.

他油漆了门。(可能是最近,也可能是一段时间之前。)

第十九章 将来时态

198 表示将来的各种形式

英语中有多种方法表示将来。现在把这些形式列举如下,后文中将依照列举的顺序予以讲述。 学生应当照这一顺序学习,否则它们之间的关系就不易弄清楚。

- (a) 一般现在时(参见第 199 节。)
- (b) will+不带 to 的不定式(用来表示意图,参见第 201 节。)
- (c) 现在进行时(参见第 202 节。)
- (d) be going to 结构(参见第 203 节至第 206 节。)
- (e) 一般将来时 will / shall + 动词原形 (参见第 207 节至第 210 节。)
- (f) 将来进行时(参见第 211 节至第 214 节。)
- (g) 将来完成时(参见第 216 节 A。)

(h) 将来完成进行时(参见第 216 节 B。)

关于 be+不定式用于表示将来的计划,参见第 114 节。

关于 be about + 不定式和 be on the point of + 动名词表示将来,参见第 144 节 C。

注意:大多数助动词都放在第十一章至第十六章中讲述,但 will + 动词原形是将来时不可缺少的部分,所以把它放到这里讲。把它和一般将来时分开来讲述看似奇怪,但是从逻辑上看,把它放在现在进行时和 be going to 形式之前似乎是最适当的。

199 一般现在时用来表示将来

这种时态可以和一个时间短语连用以表示已确定的、对将来的安排: The boys start school on Monday.

男孩们星期一开学。

I leave tonight.

我今天晚上动身。

这一用法代替了较常用的现在进行时态(参见第 202 节):The bys are starting school on Monday.

男孩儿们星期一就要开学了。

I' m leaving tonight.

我今天晚上就动身。

这两种时态之间的差别是:(a)一般现在时比现在进行时具有的个人色彩更少: I' m leav — ing tonight 通常可能含有我决定离开的意思,但 I leave

tonight 可指这是计划的一部分,但计划不一定是我订的。

- (b) 一般现在时要比现在进行时听起来更为正式。计划开办一个新分店的百货商店很可能说 Our new branch opens nextweek(本店新设分店下周开业),而不说 Our new branch is opening next week。
- (c) 有时,现在进行时显得累赘的地方就用一般现在时,例如在谈到像旅程安排那样的一系列预定的将来的动作时,可以

这样说: We leave at six, arrive in Dublin at ten and take the plane on…

我们 6 点出发, 10 点到达都柏林, 并在……乘飞机……

而不说: We are leaving at six,arriving in Dublin at ten and taking the plane on 然而要注意,在像 My train leaves at six(我常乘坐的火车 6 点开)这样的句子中,用一般现在时表示习惯性动作,这里就不能用现在进行时来代替。

200 解释含有意图的将来

说一种形式表示含有意图的将来,指的是它表示说话人将按照他的意图进行行动。will+动词原形和 be going to+动词原形都可以这样用。

说一种形式表示不含意图的将来,仅仅指的是某一动作将要发生。我们不知道该行动是否经过主语或其他人计划安排,也不知道主语对此是怎么想的。一般现在时和将来进行时都可以用于表达这种情况。

现在进行时用于第二或第三人称时,不表达任何意图,虽然它用于第一人称时可能具有一点意图的含义。

一般将来时(第201节与第205节所阐述的will的用法除外)通常不表示任何意图的概念,

201 will+动词原形表示做出决断时的意图

(另参见第 205 节 E2 和 E3。)

- (a) —The phone is ringing.
- —I'll answer it.
- 一电话铃在响。
- 一我去接。
- (b) Bill (to waiter): I'll have a steak, please.

比尔(对侍者): 我要牛排。(也可以用 would like,参见第 201 节 B。)

(c) Ann: I' d better order a taxi for tonight.

安: 今晚我最好预订一辆出租汽车。

Tom: Don't bother. I'll drive you.

汤姆: 不用你操心,我用车送你。

(d) Mary (looking at a pile of letters): I' ll answer them tonight.

玛丽 (看着一堆信件): 今晚我要回这些信。

(e) Paul (who is getting fat and tired of paying parking fines): I knowwhat to do. I' ll sell my car and buy a bike.

保罗(变得越来越胖并对于支付违章停车罚款感到厌烦): 我知道该怎么办了。我要把汽车 卖掉而买一辆自行车。

(f) Alan (on receiving a telegram saying his father is ill): I'll go hometonight. /I'll leave tonight.

埃伦(在收到父亲得病的电报时):今晚我要回家。/我今晚要走。对于未经过预先计划或考虑的行动(如上述各例),必须用 will。它通常缩略为'll。但要注意:如果在决定之后,说话人再次提到该行动时,就不要用 will,而用 be going to 或现在进行时。(be going to 总是可用的,而现在进行时的用法更受限制,参见第 202 节。)

如在上述例句(b)中,在比尔要的菜没有送来之前他的朋友汤姆来和他坐在一起:Tom:

What are you having / going to have?

汤姆: 你要吃/你打算吃什么?

Bill: I' m having / going to have a steak.

比尔: 我要吃/我打算吃牛排。

同样: 在上面的例句(c)中,安稍后可以说: Tom is driving me / going to drive me to the airport tonight.

汤姆今晚用车送我 / 打算用车送我去机场。

然而在例句(d)中,玛丽只能这样说: I'm going to answer these letters tonight.

我打算今晚回这些信。(她并没有和其他人安排过。)

在例句(e)中,同样保罗可以这样说: I'm going to sell the car.

我准备把车卖掉。

当他找到一个买主的时候,他就可以这样说: I'm selling the car.

我要把车卖掉。

但在例句(f)中,埃伦可以这样说: I'm going home tonight.

今晚我要回家。

即使这还只是一个决定。(参见第 202 节 B, D。)

202 现在进行时用来表示将来

注意:时间必须指出或在前文中已经指出,不然就可能造成现在时与将来时之间的混淆。 A 现在进行时可以表示对最近的将来的确定的安排: I'm taking an exam in October. 我将在 10 月份参加考试。

这句意指我已报名了。

Bob and Bill are meeting tonight.

鲍勃和比尔今晚要会面。

这句意指鲍勃和比尔已作了会面的安排。如仅仅表示意图,如在第 **201** 节(**d**)和(**e**)中 所示,则要用 **be going to** 形式。

B 但是,表示从一个地方运动到另一个地方的动词如 arrive, come, drive, fly, go, leave, start, travel, 表示位置的动词如 stay, remain 和动词 do 与 have (表示吃、喝), 它们的现在进行时形式的用法就比较广泛,可以表示没有具体安排好细节的决定或计划。因此在第201节(f)中埃伦即使还未作出旅程的安排,也可以这样说: I'm going home tonight / leaving tonight。

同时请注意以下的句子: What are you doing next Saturday?

下星期六你准备做什么? (这是通常询问别人计划的说法。)

可能的回答有: I' m going to the seaside.

我打算到海滨去。(自己去或和别人一起去。)

The neighbours are coming in to watch television.

邻居要来看电视。

I'm not doing anything. I'm staying at home. I'm going to write letters.

我不准备干什么。我准备呆在家里。我准备写信。(不能用 I'm writing…)

C 这种表示将来的方法不能用于通常没有进行时的动词。(参见第 **168** 节。)这些动词应当用将来时(will / shall): I am meeting him tonight.

今天晚上我跟他见面。

但是说: I will / shall know tonight.

今天晚上我会知道的。

They are coming tomorrow.

他们明天来。

但是说: They will be here tomorrow.

他们明天来这里。

We'll think it over.

我们将仔细考虑一下。

然而,要注意当 see 用于表示有意识的活动(如 see to / about,

see someone out / off / home 等中 see 意指约见) 时都可以用进行

时态 (参见第 170 节): I'm seeing him tomorrow.

明天我去见他。(我和他有约会。)

be 构成被动态动词的一部分时,可以用进行时态: He is being met at the station tonight. 今晚有人去车站迎接他。

Our new piano is being delivered this afternoon.

我们的新钢琴今天下午送到。

D 在做出决定的时刻用的 will+动词原形(参见第 201 节)与表示将来的现在进行时连用的进一步举例: Travel agent: Now, how do you want to go to Rome, sir? By air or bytrain? 旅游商: 先生,您想怎样去罗马?坐飞机还是火车?

Traveller (making up his mind): The trains are too slow. I' ll fly.

游客(下了决心):火车太慢了。我坐飞机走。

但事后谈到他的旅程计划时,这个游客会说: I'm flying to Rome next week.

下周我坐飞机去罗马。

Ann: I'll have to pay \pounds 150 rent at the end of this month and I don' tknow where to find the money.

安: 月底我必须付 150 英镑的房租,可我不知道到哪里去弄这笔钱。Tom: Don't worry. I'll lend you £ 150.

汤姆:别着急。我借给你150英镑。

后来,在汤姆实际借给她钱之前,安会这么说: Tom is lending me £150.

汤姆要借给我 150 英镑。

Tom: Would you like to come to the opera tonight?

汤姆: 你今天晚上想来看歌剧吗?

Ann: I' d love to. Shall I meet you there?

安: 我很愿意去。我们是不是在那里碰头?

Tom: No, I' ll call for you. About seven?

汤姆:不,我来接你。大约7点钟,好吗? Ann: OK.

安: 好吧。

后来,安把这计划告诉一个朋友时说: Tom is taking me to the opera tonight. He's calling for me at seven.

汤姆今晚邀我看歌剧。他7点钟来接我。

(在上述例句中, be going to 可以代替进行时。)

203 be going to 形式

A 形式

动词 go 的现在进行时十带 to 的不定式: I'm going to buy a bicycle.

我打算买一辆自行车。

She is not going to be there.

她不会到那里去。

Is he going to lecture in English?

他准备用英语演讲吗?

B 这个形式用来: (a) 表示意图。(参见第 204 节。)

(b) 表示预测。(参见第 206 节。)

204 be going to 形式表示意图

be going to 表示主语进行某一将来行动的打算。这种打算常经过预先考虑并含有已做好某些准备的意思,因此通常认为用 be going to 表达的行动很可能会见诸实施,虽然不具有现在进行时所表示的对将来的确定的安排的概念。

请注意以下几点: 1 如前所述,be going to 结构带时间状语可以用来表示最近将来的行动。在这种情况下,它可用来代替现在进行时。可以说: I' m / I am meeting Tom at the station at six.

我6点钟到车站接汤姆。

I' m / I am going to meet Tom at the station at six.

我打算6点钟到车站接汤姆。

注意: I' m meeting Tom 含有和汤姆约好的意思,而 I' m goingto meet Tom 则没有,我去后汤姆可能会感到意外。

2 想强调主语的意图时,be going to 结构可以与时间从句连用: He is going to be a dentist when he grows up.

他长大以后打算当牙医。

What are you going to do when you get your degree?

你取得学位以后打算干什么?

然而,通常是一般将来时(shall/will)和时间从句连用。

3 be going to 结构可以不和时间连用: I' m going to play you a Bach fugue.

我要给你演奏巴赫的一首赋格曲。

He is going to lend me his bicycle.

他要把他的自行车借给我。

这里通常指的是即将进行或在最近将来进行的动作。

4 如上面 2 中所看到的,be going to 结构可以与动词 be 连用。有时也跟通常不能用进行时的动词连用:I am going to think about it.

我准备考虑一下。

I' m sure I' m going to like it.

我肯定会喜欢它的。

但总的看来,这里用一般将来时要更有把握些。

5 注意: 一般不常把动词 go 和 come 用于 be going to 结构中,而常用现在进行时来代替 be going to 结构,即通常不用 I'm going to go 而用 I am going,不用 I am going to come 而用 I am coming。

注意:可以用 will+动词原形表示意图。第 202 节中把这种结构与 be going to 结构进行比较。

205 表示意图的 be going to 和 will+动词原形的比较

在许多情况下既可以用 be going to 结构又可以用 will+动词原形,但是它们之间是有差别的,因此有些场合只能用其中之一。

其主要差别是: A be going to 结构总是表示经过预先思考的意图,常常是等于意图+计划。will+动词原形只表示意图,这意图通常是未经过预先思考的,虽然并不尽然。

因此,如果已经为这一行动做了准备,就必须用 be going to: I have bought some bricks and I'm going to build a garage.

我已经买了砖,打算盖一个汽车库。

如果意图明显地未经过预先思考,就必须用 will: —There is somebody at the hall door.

- ─I' ll go and open it.
- 一有人在大厅门外面。
- 一我去开门。

(参见本节 E 中所举的例子。)

如果没有明显迹象表明意图是否经过思考,则 be going to 或 will 都可以使用: I will / am going to climb that mountain one day.

总有一天我要爬那座山。

I won't / am not going to tell you my age.

我不会告诉你我的年龄。

但 will 是表示决心的最好形式: I ′ will help you.

我会帮助你。(在 will 上有重音。) 相当于: I definitely intend to help you.

我肯定打算帮助你。

下面谈一谈两者间的其他差别: B 如我们已经注意到的, will+动词原形的肯定式几乎全部用于第一人称, 因此第二、第三人称的意图用 be going to 结构来表示: He is going to resign. 他打算辞职。

Are you going to leave without paying?

你打算不付钱就走吗?

C 但否定式 won't 可以用于所有人称,所以可以这样说: He isn't going to resign. 他不打算辞职。

He won't resign.

他拒绝辞职。

但要注意用于表示否定的意图时,won't 通常的含义是拒绝: He won't resign. 相当于: He refuses to resign.

他拒绝辞职。

He isn't going to resign 通常指 He doesn't intend to resign (他不打算辞职)。

D 如已经讲到的那样, be going to 通常指的是相当近的将来, will 既可以指最近的将来, 也可以指比较遥远的将来。

E 下面再举 be going to 和 will 的一些例子: 1 be going to 表示意图的例子: —What are you doing with that spade?

- —I am going to plant some apple trees.
- 一你要用那铁锹干什么?
- 一我想栽几棵苹果树。

She has bought some wool; she is going to knit a jumper.

她买了一些毛线,打算织一件套头衫。

- —Why are you taking down all the pictures?
- —I am going to repaper the room.
- 一你为什么把所有的画都取下来?
- 一我准备重新贴墙纸。

Some workmen arrived today with a roller. I think they are going to re—pair our road. 今天有些工人带着一台压路机来了。我想他们准备修我们这条路。—Why is he carrying his guitar?

- —He is going to play it in the underground.
- 一他为什么带着吉他?
- 一他要在地铁车站弹吉他。

注意: 在以上所有的例句中,都不能用 will 来代替 be going to, 因为每个例句都含有预先计划的明显证据。

2 will+动词原形的例句(参见第 201 节): —This is a terribly heavy box.

- —I' ll help you to carry it.
- 一 这个箱子太沉了。
- 一我来帮你搬。
- —I' ve left my watch upstairs.
- —I' ll go and get it for you.
- 一我把表忘在楼上了。
- 一我去给你拿。
- —Who will post this letter for me?
- —I will.
- 一谁给我邮信?
- 一我去。
- —Will you lend me £100?
- —No, I won't.
- 一请你借我 100 镑好吗?
- 一不,我不借给你。

3 be going to 与 will 的一些比较

在回答汤姆的话 There aren't any matches in the house(家里没有火柴了)时,安可能回答说: I'm going to get some today.

我打算今天去买。(预先考虑的决定)

I'll get some today.

我今天去买。(未经预先考虑的决定)

第一句可能意指在谈话之前,她就知道没有火柴了,并已决定去买一些。第二句则意指她过去还未决定买火柴,但此刻汤姆提出之后她马上决定去买。

又如: Ann: Where is the telephone book?

安: 电话本在哪里?

Tom: I'll get it for you.

汤姆: 我给你拿。

这里,汤姆表达了在安的问话后他马上做出的一个决定,但是如果他说 I'm going to get it (我正想去拿它),则意指在安说话之前他已经决定这样做(可能因为他已预料到安会需要电话本,或者他自己需要)。

4 注意: 当 will / won't 如第 209 节 A—E 所提到的那样,用做一般将来时 will / shall 的组成部分时,它们没有任何意图的含义。因此,He won't resign 可以意指他拒绝辞职或我想他不会辞职的;在 If he hurries he'll catch up with her(如果他赶紧点就会赶上她)这句中,will 不含有任何意图的意思,仅仅是对事实的陈述。

206 be going to 形式用于预测

A be going to 结构可以表示说话人确信如此。虽然通常不指出时间,但是说话人预期所说的动作不久或马上就要发生: Look at those clouds! It's going to rain.

瞧那些乌云!快要下雨了。

Listen to the wind. We're going to have a rough crossing.

听这风声。我们横渡时一定很难。

be going to 结构在动词 be sure / afraid, believe, think 之后都可以这样用: How pale that girl is! I am sure / I believe / I think she is going to faint.

那女孩的脸色多苍白!我敢肯定/我相信/我想她就要昏倒了。

B 表示预测的 be going to 和表示将来可能性的 will 之间的比较 will 是最常用的表示说话

人认为、相信、希望、假定、害怕要发生的事情的方法(参见第 209 节 A): It will probably be cold. / I expect it will be cold.

天气很可能冷。/我想天气会冷的。

Tomatoes will be expensive this year. / I' m sure tomatoes will be expen—sive.

今年西红柿会很贵。/我敢肯定西红柿会很贵。

因此 will 和 be going to 很相似,常常两者都可使用: It will take a long time to photocopy all the documents. 相当于: It is going to take a long time to photocopy all the documents.

影印所有这些文件要花很长时间。

但二者之间存在以下两点区别: 1 be going to 意指有迹象表明某件事将要发生, will 则意指说话人认为 / 相信某件事将要发生。

2 be going to 通常用来表示马上就要发生或相当快就要发生的事情;而 will 不指明任何具体时间,可以指遥远的将来。如 The lift is going to break down(电梯就要出故障了)意指电梯正在发出奇怪的声音或运行失常,我们最好在下一层楼就下电梯。The lift will break down(电梯将会发生故障)意指将来某一时刻电梯要出故障(也许因为我们老是让它超载,或因为这是某一公司的电梯,不耐用)。同样情况下说到一个病人时,He is going to get better(他的病就要好起来)意指有恢复健康的迹象,也许他的体温下降了。He will get better(他的病会好起来的)意指对他的医生或对治疗有信心,是说他最终会恢复健康,而不是马上就恢复健康。

207 一般将来时

形式

现代英语中严格说没有将来时态,但为了方便常把 will / shall+不带 to 的不定式称为一般将来时。

208 第一人称 will 和 shall

A 在前面的章节中,will 专用来表示意图: I will wait for you. 相当于: I intend to wait for you.

我会等你。

在不存在任何意图的场合用 shall,即 shall 用于不牵涉到主语愿望的动作: I shall be 25 next week.

下星期我就25岁了。

We shall know the result next week.

下周我们就会知道结果了。(因为结果将在报纸上公布。)

Unless the taxi comes soon we shall miss our plane.

出租汽车要是不快点来,我们就要误飞机了。

I'm sure I shan't lose my way.

我肯定不会迷路的。

I shall see Tom tomorrow.

明天我会见到汤姆的。(也许我们坐同一列火车上班。)

现在, shall 的以上用法在较正式的英语中仍可见到, 但在口语中已不再常见了。相反, 通

常用 will: I will be 25 next week.

下星期我25岁了。

We'll know the result tomorrow.

明天我们就会知道结果了。"

Unless the taxi comes soon we'll miss the plane.

出租汽车要是不快点来的话,我们就要误飞机了。

I'm sure I won't lose my way.

我肯定不会迷路的。

但是,有时 will 可能改变句子的意思。如果在 I shall see Tom tomorrow 这个句子中用 will 代替 shall,就会变成 I will see Tom tomorrow。这个句子可能表示明天我要见汤姆的意图。为避免这种模棱两可的情况就用将来进行时:I'll be seeing Tom tomorrow.

明天我会见汤姆。(参见第211节至第214节。)

然而, shall 在疑问句中仍可使用。

shall 常用在 let's 后面的附加疑问中: Let's go, shall we?

咱们走,好吗?

用于建议: Shall we take a taxi?

我们乘出租汽车,好吗?

用于请求对方下命令或作指示: What shall I do with your mail?

我应该怎么处理您的信件?

用于推测: Where shall we be this time next year?

明年的这个时候我们会在什么地方? (虽然这里也可以用 will。)

B shall 表示决心

在前面已经讲到,通常是由 will 表示决心(参见第 201 节与第 205 节)。但是,人们有时感到为了表示决心应当用另外一个"较重的"、通常不大用的词,因此就用 shall:(in a speech)We shall fight and we shall win.

(在演说中) 我们决心战斗, 我们定会赢得胜利。

We will fight and we shall win 也一样可用。

有时 shall 这样用表示许诺,就像第二人称 shall 所表示的那样: You shall have a sweet.

你会吃到一块糖。相当于: I promise you a sweet.

我答应给你一块糖。(参见第 234 节 A。)

We shall win 这个句子中,说话人在保证能取得胜利。shall 在日常会话中可以这样用: I shall be there, I promise you.

我会在那里的,我向你保证。

但这里 will 也一样可用,对学生来说用 will 可减少麻烦。在对于究竟应当用 shall 还是用 will 存有疑问的时候要用 will。

209 一般将来时的用法

A 表示说话人对于将来的看法、假定和推测的句子中常由动词 assume, be afraid, be / feel sure, believe, daresay, doubt, expect, hope, know, suppose, think, wonder 等来引导或与副词 per—

haps,possibly,probably,surely 等连用,但也可以不用这些副词: (I' m sure) he'll come back.

(我肯定)他会回来。

(I suppose) they'll sell the house.

(我想)他们要卖房子。

(Perhaps) we'll find him at the hotel.

(也许) 我们会在旅馆里找到他。

They'll (probably) wait for us.

他们(很可能)要等我们。

一般将来时可以与时间连用,也可以不连用。这里有时也可以用 be going to,但后一种用法使动作的可能性显得更大些,而且如果没有时间时动作可能会发生得更快些。

He'll build a house (他要盖房子) 仅意指这是我的看法而不含有什么时候开始盖房子的概念。

但 He's going to build a house (他打算盖房子)则意指他已经做出决定,很可能不久将着手盖。

B 同样,一般将来时用来表示通常认为将要有的习惯性动作: Spring will come again. 春天将重返人间。

Birds will build nests.

鸟要筑巢。

People will make plans.

人们将制订计划。

Other men will climb these stairs and sit at my desk.

其他人会爬上这些楼梯,坐在我的桌旁。

(以上各句中也可分别用 will be coming / building / making / climbing / sitting。)

C 一般将来时常用在带条件从句、时间从句的句子中,有时用在带目的从句的句子中: If I drop this glass it will break.

如果我把这个杯子掉到地上,它就会摔碎。(参见第221节。)

When it gets warmer the snow will start to melt.

天气变暖时,雪开始融化。(参见第342节。)

I'm putting this letter on top of the pile so that he'll read it first.

我把这封信放在那堆上面,这样他就会先看它。(参见第 336 节。)注意:在 if 从句或时间从句中,即使句子是指将来,也不用将来时:He will probably be late.

他很可能要迟到。

但是说: If he is late...

如果他迟到 ……

It will get warmer soon.

天气很快会变得暖和起来。

但是说: When it gets warmer...

在天气变暖和的时候……

D 各助动词及表示感觉、感情、思想以及占有等概念的动词一般不能用进行时态。(参见第168节。)它们通常用一般将来时表示将来,虽然有时也可以用 be going to 形式。这些动词自然也不用现在进行时表示将来: He'll be here at six.

他将在6点钟到这里。

You'll have time for tea.

你会有时间吃茶点的。

She'll wonder where you are.

她会纳闷你在什么地方。

They'll know tonight.

今晚他们会知道。

E 一般将来时也用于关于将来计划的正式宣布及天气预报。这主要用于报纸和新闻广播中。在会话中这种陈述常会用现在进行时或 be going to 结构来表示: Newspaper: The President will open the new heliport tomorrow.

新闻:明天总统将主持新直升机机场的开幕典礼。

The fog will persist in all areas.

各地区仍将持续有雾。

但一般读者及听者自己会这样说: The President is going to open / is opening… 总统将主持……

The fog is going to persist / continue...

大雾仍将持续 / 延续 ······

F won't 可以与各种人称连用,表示否定的意向。所以 He won't pay(他不会付钱)可能是下面两种意思中的任何一种:他拒绝付钱或我认为他不会付钱。

I / we will 可表达肯定的意向(参见第 201 节),但是 he / you / they will 一般不表示意向。在下面这种句子中它们有时可能表示意向,如 My son / brother / husband etc. will help you (我的儿子 / 兄弟 / 丈夫等会帮助你的)。但这种意图是说话人的,而不是主语的。

210 will 同 want / wish / would like 的比较

A 请务必不要把 will 和 want / wish / would like 互相混淆。will 表示一个意图+实现该意图的决心: I will buy it. 相当于: I intend to buy it. / I' m going to buy it.

我要买它。/我准备买它。

want / wish / would like 仅仅表示一种愿望,它并不提供任何有关打算怎么做的信息。(参见第 296 与第 299 节。)

B 然而要注意 I'd like 常可以代替 I'll have / take: Customer (in a shop): I'd like / I'll have a pound of peas, please.

顾客(在商店里):我想要/我要买一磅豌豆。

Diner (in a restaurant): I' d like / I' ll have the soup, please.

顾客(在餐馆里):请给我来份这种汤。

would like 和 will 都可以用于表示邀请: Would you like a drink? / Will you have a drink? if 您喝一杯好吗?

当表示接受邀请时,两种形式都可使用: I'd like / I'll have a sherry, please. 请给我来一杯雪利酒。

但在否定句中,这两种形式不能互换。因此,如果拒绝邀请就必须说: I won't have anything, thanks. / I don't want anything, thanks.

谢谢,我什么也不要。

wouldn't like 意指不喜欢。因此,这里不能用 wouldn't like。

211 将来进行时

A 形式

这种时态由 be 的将来时形式+现在分词构成。如主语为第一人称,除在疑问句外 will 要比

shall 更常用。

肯定式: I / we will / shall be working

he / she / it / you / they will be working

否定式: I / we will / shall not be working

he / she / it / you / they will not be working

疑问式: shall / will I / we be working?

will he / she / it / you / they working?

缩略式:参见第207节

否定疑问式: ?will he not / won't he be working? 等

B 用法

这种时态有两种用法:可用做一般进行时;也可表示不含意图又未发生的动作。

212 将来进行时用做一般的进行时态

像其他进行时态一样,这样的将来进行时通常和某一时刻连用,表示一个动作在该时刻之前 开始并且很可能在该时刻之后仍然继续。这种用法最好通过实例来了解。设想一个班的学生 上午 9 点半在做什么,然后可以这样表达: Now they are sitting in their classroom. They are listening to a tape. This time tomorrow they will be sitting in the cinema. They will be watching a film. On Saturday there is no class. So on Saturday they will not be sitting in the classroom. They will be doing other things. Bill will be playing tennis. Ann will be shopping. George will still be having breakfast.

现在他们正坐在教室里。他们在听录音。明天这个时候他们会坐在电影院里看电影。星期六没有课。因此,星期六这时候他们不在教室里。他们会做别的事情。比尔会在打网球,安会去买东西,乔治会还在吃早饭。

进行时态也可以和一般现在时连用: Peter has been invited to dinner with Ann and Tom. He was asked to come at eight but tells another friend that he intends to arrive at seven. The friend tries to dissuade him, 'When you arrive they'll still be cookingthe meal!'

彼得应邀与安和汤姆一起吃饭。他们要彼得 8 点到,但彼得却告诉另一位朋友说他自己想在 7 点到。那位朋友劝阻他说:"你到的时候,他们还在做饭呢!"

213 将来进行时用来表示不含意图又未发生的动作

I will be helping Mary tomorrow.

明天我帮玛丽干活。

这不表示说话人已安排好要帮助玛丽或者想帮助她。这个句子仅仅说明这一动作将要发生。将来进行时的这种用法有些像表示将来的现在进行时,但有以下几点不同之处。

现在进行时表示一种经过考虑的、将来要进行的动作,而将来进行时通常表示正常过程中会发生的动作,因此将来进行时不如现在进行时那样肯定,比后者偶然性要大一些: I am seeing Tom tomorrow.

明天我要和汤姆见面。

I'll be seeing Tom tomorrow.

明天我会见到汤姆。

第一句意指汤姆或说话人已经特意安排了这次会面,而第二句则意指汤姆和说话人将在通常进程中见面(也许他们在一起工作)。不过这种差别并不是在任何情况下都很重要,而且常常两者都可以使用。可以这样说: He'll be taking his exam next week.

他下周要参加考试。

也可以这样说: He is taking his exam next week.

(译文同上。)

He won't be coming to the party.

他不参加这次聚会。

也可以这样说: He isn't coming to the party.

(译文同上。)

现在进行时用于表示最近将来的动作时,必须有确定的时间,而将来进行时可以和确定的时间状语连用,也可以不连用。

它既可以表示最近将来的动作,也可以表示较远将来的动作。可以说: I am meeting him tomorrow.

我明天和他会面。

但是说: I'll be meeting him tomorrow / next year / some time / .

我明天/明年/某时将与他会面。

214 将来进行时与 will +动词原形的比较

A will+动词原形和将来进行时之间的差别与 will+动词原形和现在进行时之间的差别基本上相同。will+动词原形表示将来的意图。将来进行时表示未经过考虑将来便要进行的动作: I'll write to Mr Pitt and tell him about Tom's new house.

我要写信告诉皮特先生关于汤姆的新房子的事。

在这个例句中黑体的动词表示意图,说话人根据自己的意愿宣布一个经过考虑的、将来要进行的动作。但在下面这句中: I'll be writing to Mr Pitt and I'll tell him about Tom's new house.

我会写信给皮特先生并告诉他关于汤姆的新房子的事。

黑体的动词并不表示意图,仅仅是对事实的陈述,意味着写这封信给皮特先生是例行公事,或者这信是因与汤姆的新房子无关的原因而写的。

类似的情况有: Tom won't cut the grass 意指汤姆拒绝割草。

而 Tom won't be cutting the grass (汤姆不会去割草) 仅陈述这一事实,并未说明汤姆的想法。也许汤姆已外出,或者生病了,或者要做其他工作。

B will+动词原形可以表示邀请: Will you have a cigarette?

请抽烟。(参见第 210 节。)

或表示有礼貌的请求: Will you help me to lift the piano?

请你帮我抬一下钢琴,好吗? (参见第284节。)

或者发出命令: You will work in this room.

你在这个房间里工作。(参见第282节。)

而将来进行时则无上述这些含义: —Will you please bring the piano in here?

- —Yes, sir. / Ok.
- 一请你把钢琴搬进这里来,好吗?
- 一好, 先生。 / 好的。

但 Will you be bringing the piano in here? (你会不会把钢琴搬到这里来?)仅是关于将

来的动作的问句,不含请求或命令的意思。

Yes, I think I will. / No, I think I'll put it upstairs.

是的,我想是的。/不,我想把它放在楼上。

You will work in this office.

你在这个办公室工作。(命令)

但是说: You will be working here.

你将在这里工作。(仅陈述一件事实)

和前面一样,这里也可以用现在进行时而不用将来进行时,但必须加上一个确指将来时间的状语。

215 各种将来时态

A 设想要询问一下五个人他们下星期六的计划如何。可以问: What are you doing / going to do on Saturday?

星期六你们准备干什么?

(a) 彼得已经和乔治约好打高尔夫球,所以他要这样说: I'm playing / going to play golf with George.

我打算和乔治打高尔夫球。

(b) 玛丽已经决定呆在家里做果酱,所以她要这样说: I'm staying / going to stay at home. I'm going to make jam.

我要呆在家里。我打算做果酱。

(c)安德鲁的计划要随天气而定,因此他可能这样说: If it's fine I'll work / I'm going to work in the garden.

如果天气好的话, 我准备在花园里干活。

(d) 安还没有什么打算,所以她可能说: Perhaps I'll take / I expect I'll take / I'll probably take / I suppose I'll take my children for a walk.

也许我会带/我想我会带/我很可能会带/我设想我会带孩子们去散步。

(e) 比尔在星期六必须工作,所以他要说: Oh, I'll be working as usual.

哦,我将照常工作。(其他形式都不能确切表示这种含义。)

B 有关意图的问句

你打算做什么果酱?

这种有关将来的问句通常由现在进行时、be going to 结构或将来进行时表示。将来进行时对于疑问式尤其有用,因为通常认为这种时态比其余的更礼貌些。因此如果继续询问那五个人,可能这么说:(a)Where are you playing / are you going to play / will you be playing golf?

你准备在什么地方打高尔夫球?

(b) What kind of jam are you going to make / will you be making?

will you+动词原形的结构不如其他形式那么常用,很少位于句首。(这是为了避免混淆,因为 will you+动词原形位于句首时通常引导一个表示请求的句子。)然而在条件句中以及在说话人表示要给人某物或请求对方做出决定的时候,可以把它放在句首: What will you do if he is not on the plane?

如果他不在飞机上你打算怎么办?

Will you have a drink?

喝点酒好吗?

Will you have your meal now or later?

你准备现在吃饭还是晚一会儿吃?

再举一些问句的例子,仍以上述 A 中句子为基础:(c)如果向安德鲁提问题,很可能这样问: What are you going to do / What will you be doing in the garden?

你准备在花园里干什么?(虽然也可以用: What will you do?)

Are you going to cut / Will you be cutting the grass?

你打算割草吗? (Will you cut the grass? 听起来更像一个要求。)

(d) 对玛丽可能这样问: If you take them where will you go?

如果你带他们去,你们要去哪儿? (虽然也可以说: Where will you begoing?)

(e) 对比尔可以问: Will you be working all day?

你整天都要工作吗?

如果想表示比尔星期六工作是因为这是照例行事而不是出于主观意愿,就只能这样说。

注意:像 What will you be doing this time next week? (下周这个时候你要做什么?)这种类型的问句,无论是否含有主观意图都必须用将来进行时。(参见第 212 节。)

216 将来完成时和将来完成进行时

A 将来完成时

形式

will / shall+完成式用于第一人称, will+完成式用于其他人称。

用法

它常与表示时间的短语连用,而后者常以 by 开头: by then 到那时

by that time 到那时

by the 24th 到 24 号那天

By the end of next month he will have been here for ten years.

到下月底,他在这儿就够十年了。

这一时态用来表示在将来的一个特定时刻将成为过去的动作或在该时刻刚刚结束的动作。假设现在是 12 月 3 日,大卫对他将参加的 12 月 13 日的考试很担心。

某个筹划举办聚会的人可能说: We'd better wait till 14 December. David will have had his exam by then, so he'll be able to enjoy himself.

我们最好还是等到12月14日。到那时大卫就考完试了,这样他就能够玩得痛快。

同时请注意以下句子: I save £ 50 a month and I started in January. So by the end of the year I will / shall have saved £ 600.

我每月储蓄50英镑,是从1月份开始的。这样的话,到年底我就有600英镑的存款了。

Bill (looking at Tom's cellar): You've got over 400 bottles. How long will that last you? Two years?

比尔(瞧着汤姆的地下室): 你有四百多瓶酒。够你喝多久?两年?

Tom: Not a hope. I drink eight bottles a week. I'll have drunk all these by the end of this year.

汤姆:不可能。我每星期喝八瓶。到今年年底我就会把所有这些酒都喝完了。

B 将来完成进行时

形式

will / shall have been+现在分词用于第一人称,而 will have been+现在分词用于其他人称。

用法

正如将来完成时一样,它通常与一个以 by 开头的时间短语连用: By the end of this year he'll have been acting for thirty years.

到今年年底他当演员就满30年了。

将来完成进行时与将来完成时的关系和现在完成进行时与现在完成时的关系一样。即在以下情况下可以用将来完成进行时而不用将来完成时:1 动作本身就是连续的: By the end of the month he will have been living / working / studying here for ten years.

到了月底他在这里居住/工作/学习就满十年了。

2 一种经常进行的动作被表示为连续的动作: By the end of this month he will have been training horses / climbing mountains for twenty years.

到了这个月底他驯马/登山就满 20年了。

但是如果提到所驯马匹或所攀登的山峰的数目,或用任何方式把动作分割为一次又一次的动作,就必须用将来完成时: By the end of the month he will have trained 600 horses / climbed 50 mountains.

到本月底, 他驯服的马就有600匹/攀登的山峰就有50座了。

第二十章 时态的呼应

217 从句

一个句子可以包含一个主句和一个或多个从句。从句是含有主语和谓语的一组词,它同时又是构成一个句子的组成部分: We knew that the bridge was unsafe.

He gave it to me because he trusted me.

因为他信任我,才把它交给我的。

He ran faster than we did.

我们知道那座桥不安全。

他比我们跑得快。

This is the picture that I bought in Rome.

这就是我在罗马买的那幅画。

(在以上各个例句中,黑体的是从句。第218节同此。)

其他的从句的例子见条件句、关系代词以及目的从句、比较从句、时间从句、结果从句、让 步从句等有关章节。学生不需要详细研究各种从句,甚至也不必做到能辨认各种从句,但必 须学会识别哪些动词是主句中的主要动词,因为这关系到下面这个重要规则。

218 时态的呼应

如果主句的主要动词是过去时态,从句的主要动词也必须是过去时态:注意动词不定式和动名词不受以上规则影响: He wants to go to Lyons. 他想去里昂。

He wanted to go to Lyons.

他那时想去里昂。

He likes riding.

他喜欢骑马。

He liked riding.

他过去喜欢骑马。

引导间接引语的动词如是过去时态,时态呼应的规则也适用。(参见第三十一章。)

第二十一章 条件语气、条件时态

219 条件现在时

A 条件现在时由 would / should+动词原形构成(用于第一人称),或由 would+动词原形构成(用于其他人称)。

肯定式: I would / I' d work / I should work

you would / you'd work 等

否定式: I would not / wouldn't work 或

I should not / shouldn't work

you would not / wouldn't work等

疑问式: would / should I work?

would you work? 等

否定疑问式: ?should I not / shouldn't I work?

would you not / wouldn't you work? 等

- B 这种形式用于: (a) 条件句中。(参见第 221 节至第 229 节。)
- (b) would 和 should 的特殊用法中。(参见第二十二章。)
- (c) 过去将来时。当主句的主要动词是过去时的时候,从句中就必须用 would / should 而不用 will / shall: I hope(that) I will / shall succeed.

我希望我会成功。

I hoped (that) I would / should succeed.

我曾希望我会成功。

I know (that) he will be in time.

我知道他会赶得上的。

I knew (that) he would be in time.

我当时知道他会赶得上的。

He thinks (that) they will give him a visa.

他想他们会给他签证。

He thought (that) they would give him a visa.

他本想他们会给他签证。

I expect (that) the plane will be diverted.

我料想飞机会改变航线。

I expected (that) the plane would be diverted.

我本料想飞机会改变航线。

(关于 will / shall, would / should 在间接引语中的用法,参见第三十一章。)

220 条件完成时

A 这种时态由 would / should+完成式构成: 肯定式: I would / should have worked you would have worked 等

否定式: I would not / should not have worked 等

疑问式: would / should I have worked? 等

否定疑问式: ?should I not have / shouldn't I have worked?

would you not have / wouldn't you have worked?

等其他缩略形式参见第 219 节。

- B 这种形式用于: (a) 条件句中。(参见第 221 节至第 229 节。)
- (b) would 和 should 的特殊用法中。(参见第 230 节至第节。)
- (c) 过去时中,相当于将来完成时: I hope he will have finished before we get back. 我希望在我们回来之前他已经做完。

I hoped he would have finished before we got back.

我曾经希望在我们回来之前他已经做完。?

条件句

条件句由两部分组成: if 从句+主句: If it rains I shall stay at home.

如果下雨我就呆在家里。

If it rains 是 if 从句, I shall stay at home 是主句。条件句有三种,每种所含的一对时态都不一样。每种条件句内还可能有某些变化,但初学条件句者可不必理会这些变化,而把注意力放在条件句的基本形式上。

221 条件句类型 1

A if 从句中的动词是一般现在时,主句的动词是一般将来时。主句和从句的先后次序无关紧要。

If he runs he'll get there in time.

如果他跑步去就会及时赶到那里。

The cat will scratch you if you pull her tail.

如果你拉猫的尾巴, 它会抓你。

这种类型的句子意味着 if 从句中的动作很可能发生。

注意:这里的含义是现在或将来,但 if 从句中的动词是一般现在时而不是一般将来时。if+will / would 只能用于表示某些特殊含义时。(参见第 224 节。)

B 基本形式可能的变化形式

1 主句的变化

除 if+一般现在时+一般将来时外,可能是:(a) if+一般现在时+may / might (可能性)

If the fog gets thicker the plane may / might be diverted.

如果雾再大,飞机就可能改飞别的机场降落。(也许飞机确实会改飞别的机场降落。)

(b) if+一般现在时+ may(允许) / can(允许或能力)

If your documents are in order you may / can leave at once.

如果你的证明文件都齐备了你可以马上就走。(允许)

If it stops snowing we can go out.

如果雪停了我们就可以出去了。(允许或能力)

(c) if+一般现在时+must, should 或任何表示命令、请求或劝告的形式: If you want to lose weight you must / should eat less bread.

如果你想减轻体重,你必须/应该少吃面包。

If you want to lose weight you had better eat less bread.

如果你想减轻体重,最好少吃面包。

If you want to lose weight eat less bread.

如果你想减轻体重,少吃面包。

If you see Tom tomorrow could you ask him to ring me?

如果你明天见到汤姆,你能让他给我打个电话吗?

(d) if+一般现在时+一般现在时

if+两个一般现在时可以用来表示自动产生或照例会产生的结果: If you heat ice it turns to water.

如果把冰加热,它就化成水。(也可以用 will turn。)

If there is a shortage of any product prices of that product go up.

如果某种产品短缺, 那种产品的价格就上涨。

- (e) 当 if 用来表示 as / since (参见第 338 节 A) 时,主句中就可能使用多种不同时态:
- —Ann hates London.
- —If she hates it why does she live there? / she ought to move out.
- 一安讨厌伦敦。
- 一既然她讨厌伦敦,她为什么还住在那里? / 她应当搬走。(If she hates it 可用 If so 来代替。)

当然这已不是一个真正的条件句了。

2 if 从句的各种变化形式

if+一般现在时可能用下列时态替代以表示条件:(a)if+现在进行时,表示现在的动作或将来的安排: If you are waiting for a bus you'd better join the queue.

如果你是在等公共汽车,你最好排队。(现在的动作)

If you are looking for Peter you'll find him upstairs.

如果你是在找彼得,到楼上就会找到他。(现在的动作)

If you are staying for another night I'll ask the manager to give you a bet—ter room.

如果你还要住一夜,我就请经理给你安排一个好一点的房间。(将来的安排)

(b) if+现在完成时: If you have finished dinner I'll ask the waiter for the bill.

如果你吃完了,我就叫侍者来算帐。

If he has written the letter I'll post it.

如果他写完了信,我就把它寄走。

If they haven't seen the museum we'd better go there today.

如果他们没参观过那个博物馆, 我们今天最好去那里。

222 条件句类型 2

A if 从句中的动词用一般过去时,主句中的动词用条件时态: If I had a map I would lend it to you.

我要有地图就借给你。(但我没有地图。句子的含义是指现在。)

If someone tried to blackmail me I would tell the police.

如果有人企图敲诈我,我就向警察告发。(但我想不会有人敲诈我。句子的含义是指将来。)

第一类和第二类条件句之间并不存在时间上的差别。像第一类条件句一样,第二类指的是现在或将来; if 从句中的过去时不是真正的过去时,只是一种虚拟语气,表示不真实(如上述第一个例子)或不大可能(如上述第二个例子)。

B 类型 2 有以下用法: 1 所假设的事与已知的事实相反时: If I lived near my office I'd be in time for work.

要是我住的离办公楼近,我上班就不会迟到。(但我不住在办公楼附近。)

If I were you I' d plant some trees round the house.

如果我是你的话,我就会在房子周围种一些树。(但我不是你。)

2 说话人认为从句中的动作不会发生时: If a burglar came into my room at night I'd scream.

要是半夜三更窃贼闯进我的房间,我就会拼命叫喊。(但我不认为会有窃贼闯入我的房间。) If I dyed my hair blue everyone would laugh at me.

要是我把头发染成蓝色,大家就要笑我了。(但我不想染它。)

有些 if 从句可以有上述两种含义中的一种: If he left his bicycle outside someone would steal it.

要是他把自行车放在外面,会有人把它偷走。

If he left his bicycle 可以意指可他没有(如上述 1 中的用法,指的是现在)或他没这么打算(如上述 2 中的用法,指的是将来)。但真正的含义通常从上下文中可以看清楚。

这种语义混淆可以通过使用 were / was+不定式而不用上述类型 2 中的一般过去时来避免。

if he / she / it were 可以代替 if he / she / it was, 而且被认为是更正确的形式: If he were to resign…相当于: If he resigned...

他万一(果真)要辞职的话……

If I were to succeed…相当于: If I succeeded...

我竟然(果真)会成功的话……

were 的这种用法主要见于相当正式的句子里。

if he / she / it was+不定式在日常口语中是可以的,但是如上例所示那样使用过去时态更为常见。

- 3 有时类型 2 可以用做类型 1 的替代形式,表示完全有可能实现的计划和建议。这种用法颇易引起混淆: —Will Mary be in time if she gets the ten o' clock bus?
- —No, but she'd be in time if she go the nine—thirty bus. / No, but she'll be in time if she gets the nine—thirty bus.
- 一如果玛丽赶上 10 点钟的公共汽车, 她会及时到达吗?
- 一不会的,但是如果她赶上9点30分的汽车,她就会及时到达。
- —We'll never save £ 100!
- —If we each saved \pounds 10 a week we'd do it in ten weeks. / If we each save \pounds 10 a week we'll do it in ten weeks.
- 一我们永远攒不了 100 英镑!
- 一要是我们每人每周储蓄十英镑,我们在十周后就会做到。

以类型 2 的形式表示建议要比以类型 1 的形式有礼貌些,就如同用 would you 表示要求要比 will you 更有礼貌一样。但学生不必在类型 2 的这种用法上花过多工夫。

C 基本形式可能的变化形式

- 1 主句的变化
- (a) 可以用 might 或 could 而不用 would: If you tried again you would succeed. 要是你再试一试,你会成功的。(可靠的结果)

If you tried again you might succeed.

要是你再试一试,可能会成功。(可能的结果)

If I knew her number I could ring her up.

要是我知道她的号码,就能给她打电话。(能力)

If he had a permit he could get a job.

要是他有许可证的话,就可以找到工作。(能力或允许)

- (b)可以用条件时态中的进行时而不用其一般时: —Peter is on holiday; he is touring Italy.
- —If I were on holiday I would / might be touring Italy too.
- 一彼得在休假,他在意大利旅游。
- 一如果我在休假,我也会(可能)在意大利旅游。
- (c)希望表达过去自动的或习惯性的反应时,可以在 if+过去时后再跟一个过去时。可以与第 221 节 B1 (d) 所提到 if+两个现在时态相比较。注意:这里的过去时具有过去的含义: If anyone interrupted him he got angry.

如果有人打扰他,他就会生气。(每当有人打扰他时)

If there was a scarcity of anything, prices of that thing went up.

如果什么物品短缺,那种物品的价格就会上涨。

- (d) 当 if 用来表示 as 或 since 的时候,主句中可能用各种时态。这里 if+过去时态具有过去的含义。这种句子并不是真正的条件句。
- —The pills made him dizzy. All the same he bought / has bought / is buy—ing some more.
- —If they made him dizzy why did he buy / has he bought / is he buying more?
- 一那种药使他头晕。尽管如此,他还是又买了一些/又再买了一些/还要再买一些。
- 一如果那些药使他头晕,那他为什么还买了/买/还准备再买?
- —I knew she was short of money.
- —If you knew she was short of money you should have lent her some. / why didn't you lend her some?
- 一我知道她缺钱。
- 一如果你知道她缺钱,你应该借给她一些。/你为什么不借给她一些?
- 2 if 从句的各种变化

有时不用 if+一般过去时,而可以用下列各种时态:(a) if+过去进行时

(We're going by air and) I hate flying. If we were going by boat I'd feel much happier.

(我们准备乘飞机去而) 我讨厌乘飞机。要是我们乘船去的话我会感到愉快得多。

If my car was working I would / could drive you to the station.

要不是我的车坏了,我会开车送你去车站的。

(b) if+过去完成时

If he had taken my advice he would have heen a rich man now.

如果他听了我的劝告,他现在会是一个有钱人了。(这是类型 2 和类型 3 的混合用法。第 223 节中将再举一些这种例子。)

(关于 if+would, 参见第 224 节。)

223 条件句类型 3

A if 从句中的动词用过去完成时,主句中的动词用条件完成时。这种句子所指的时间是过去; 所提出的条件是不可能实现的,因为 if 从句中的动作在过去并未发生。 If I had known that you were coming I would have met you at the air—port.

要是我早知道你要来的话,我就会在机场接你了。(但我不知道,所以我也没去。)

If he had tried to leave the country he would have been stopped at the frontier.

要是他当时试图离开这个国家,他就会在边界被阻拦。(但他并未这样做。)

B 基本形式可能的变化形式

1 可以用 could 或 might 而不用 would: If we had found him earlier we could have saved his life.

要是我们那时早点找到他的话,我们会把他救活的。(能力)

If we had found him earlier we might have saved his life.

要是我们那时早点找到他的话,我们可能会把他救活的。(可能性)

If our documents had been in order we could have left at once.

要是我们的证明文件都齐备的话,我们那时就能够马上走。(能力或允许)

2 可以用条件完成进行时: At the time of the accident I was sitting in the back of the car, because Tom's little boy was sitting beside him in front. If Tom's boy had not been there I would have been sitting in front.

事故发生的时候,我坐在车子的后座,因为汤姆的小儿子坐在前边他的身旁。要是汤姆的孩子没坐在那里的话,我就会坐在前面了。

3 可以在 if 从句中用过去完成进行时: I was wearing a seat belt. If I hadn't been wearing one I'd have been seriously injured.

我当时系了安全带。要是没有系上的话,我就会受重伤了。

4 可以把类型 2 和类型 3 结合起来: The plane I intended to catch crashed and everyone was killed. If I had caught that plane I would be dead now / I would have been killed. 我原想赶乘的那架飞机坠毁了,所有乘客都遇难身亡。要是我赶上了那架飞机,我也就没命了 / 我就会摔死了。(类型 3)

If I had worked harder at school I would be sitting in a comfortable office now; I wouldn't be sweeping the streets.

要是在上学时学习再努力一些,我现在就会坐在舒适的办公室里,而不会是在扫大街了。(但我上学时不努力,因而我现在在扫大街。)

5 had 可以位于句首并省略 if: If you had obeyed orders this disaster would not have happened. 相当于: Had you obeyed orders this disaster would not have happened. 要是你当时服从了命令,这场灾难就不会发生了。

224 if 从句中的 will / would 和 should

通常这些助动词不用于条件句中的 if 之后, 然而以下情况例外。

A if you will / would 常用于有礼貌的请求中,此时可用更有礼貌的形式 would。

If you will / would wait a moment I'll see if Mr Jones is free.

请您稍候片刻,我看看琼斯先生是否有空。(请等候)

I would be very grateful if you would make the arrangements for me.

如果您能为我安排一下, 我将不胜感激。

假如这种要求在当时的情况下通常都会提出,已成为套话, if you would+动词原形就常常单独使用。这表示说话人认为对方理所当然会照办。

If you'd fill up this form.

请填好这张表。

(in a hotel) If you'd just sign the register.

(在旅馆中)请在登记簿上签名。

(in a shop) If you'd put your address on the back of the cheque.

(在商店里)请在支票的背面写下你的地址。

(in a classroom) If you'd open your books.

(在教室里)请打开你们的书。

B 表示愿意的 if+will / would 适用于所有人称: If he'll listen to me I'll be able to help him.

如果他听我说,我就会帮助他。(如果他乐意听……)

If Tom would tell me what he wants for his dinner I' d cook it for him.

如果汤姆愿意告诉我他晚饭要吃什么,我就会做给他吃。(说话人的意思是说汤姆不愿告诉她。)如在这里使用 won't 时,则意味着拒绝: If he won't listen to me I can't help him. 如果他不肯听我的话,我就不能帮他的忙。(如果他不愿听/如果他拒绝听······)

If they won't accept a cheque we'll have to pay cash.

如果他们不愿接受支票我们就只能付现金。(如果他们拒收 ……)

C Will 可以用来表示执意坚持 (参见第 230 节 B): If you will play the drums all night no wonder the neighbours complain.

如果你一定要整夜敲鼓的话,那就难怪邻居抱怨。(要是你执意敲的话……)

D if+would like / care 可以用来代替 if+want / wish,而且比后者有礼貌: If you would like to come I'll get a ticket for you.

如果你想来,我就给你弄一张票。

If you'd care to see the photographs I'll bring them round

如果你有兴趣看那些照片,我就带来。

If he' d like to leave his car here he can.

如果他想把车停放在这里,他可以这样做。

但是,如果改写一下句子,使 would like 没有宾语,就可以省掉 would:

If you like I'll get a ticket for you.

如果你喜欢,我就给你弄一张票。

但是说: If you'd like a ticket I'll get one for you.

(译文同上。)

If he likes he can leave his car here.

如果他愿意,他可以把车停放在这里。

但是说: If he'd like to leave his car here he can. / He can leave it here

if he'd like to. (译文同上。)

E if+should 可以用于条件句类型 1,用来表示动作虽有可能实现但可能性不很大。它常和 祈使句结合使用,而且主要用于 书面的说明中: If you should have any difficulty in getting spare parts ring this number.

万一你买备件时遇到什么困难,请打这个电话号码。

If these biscuits should arrive in a damaged condition please inform the factory at once. 饼干运到时如有损坏,请立即通知本厂。

should 可以位于句首而省略掉 if: Should these biscuits arrive...

(译文同上。)

(参见第 225 节 B。)

225 if + were 以及主语和助动词的倒装

A 用 if+were 而不用 if+was 的情况

1 通常两种形式都可以用,were 更适合较正式的英语: If she was / were offered the job she'd take it.

如果给她提供那份工作,她就会接受。(两者都可用。)

If Tom was / were here he' d know what to do.

如果汤姆在这里,他会知道该怎么办。

2 If I were / was you I would / should····是一种表示劝告的方式,were 要比 was 用得普遍些: 'If I were you I would wait a bit,' he said.

他说:"我要是你的话,就再等一会儿。"(参见第 287 节 C。)

were 用于带 to 的不定式结构的情况更为常见: If Peter were / was to apply for the post he'd get it.

要是彼得申请这个职务,他会得到的。(参见第222节B。)

3 以助动词置于主语前而构成条件句时,则只用 were 而不用 was: Were I Tom I would refuse.

如果我是汤姆,我会拒绝的。(参见下面 B。)

if 意为 since (由于, 既然, 参见第 222 节 C) 时, was 不能由 were 代替; 在 if only (参见第 228 节) 和 wish (参见第 300 节) 之后, were 可以由 was 来代替。

B 在正式的英语中, if + 主语 + 助动词结构中可以省略 if,同时使助动词位于主语前面: If I were in his shoes…相当于: Were I in his shoes…

如果我处于他的地位……

If you should require anything… 相当于: Should you require anything...

你需要什么的话……

If he had known… 相当于: Had he known...

要是他当时知道的话……

226 if, even if, whether, unless, but for,

otherwise, provided, suppose

A even if (=even though 即便)

请比较下面两个例句: You must go tomorrow if you are ready.

如果你准备好了, 明天你必须走。

You must go tomorrow even if you aren't ready.

哪怕你没有准备好,明天你也得走。

B whether…or (=if…or 是否)

You must go tomorrow whether you are ready or not.

无论你明天是否准备好了, 你都必须走。

C unless+肯定动词(=if+否定动词除非)

Unless you start at once you'll be late. 相当于: If you don't start at once you'll be late. 除非你立即动身,否则你就会迟到。

Unless you had a permit you couldn't get a job. 相当于: If you hadn't a permit you couldn't get a job.

除非你有执照, 否则你就找不到工作。

注意下面两个例句间的区别: (a) Don't call 'me if you need help.

如果你需要帮助的话,别打电话找我。

(b) Don't call me unless you need help.

除非你需要帮助否则别打电话找我。

在例句(a)中,即使在对方需要帮助的时候,说话人也不愿意去帮助对方。在例句(b)中,在对方需要帮助的时候,说话人愿意帮助对方,但说话人不愿意对方在不要紧的时候打电话找自己。

unless + he'd / you'd like / prefer 等通常可用来代替 if he / you wouldn't like 等: I'll ask Tom,unless you'd prefer me to ask / unless you'd rather I asked Bill.

我去问汤姆,除非你宁愿叫我去问比尔。

D but for (=if it were not for / if it hadn't been for 不然)

My father pays me fees. But for that I wouldn't be here.

我父亲给我一笔补贴费。不然我就不会在这里了。

The car broke down. But for that we would have been in time.

汽车出毛病了。要不是那个我们会及时赶到的。

E otherwise (=if this doesn' t happen / didn' t happen / hadn' t happened 否则)

We must be back before midnight; otherwise we'll be locked out.

我们必须在午夜之前赶回去,否则我们就会被锁在门外。相当于: If we are not back by midnight we'll be locked out.

如果我们不在午夜之前赶回去,我们就会被锁在门外。

Her father pays her fees; otherwise she wouldn't be here.

她的费用是她的父亲付的,否则她就不会在这里。相当于: If her father didn't pay her fees she wouldn't be here.

要是她的父亲不付她的费用,她就不会在这里了。

I used my calculator; otherwise I'd have taken longer.

我用了计算器,不然我花的时间就会更多。相当于: If I hadn't used my calculator I'd have taken longer.

要是我没用计算器, 我花的时间就会更多。

F 在日常英语中 or (+else) 可以代替 otherwise: We must be early or (else) we won't get a seat.

我们必须早去,否则就不会有座位了。

G 存在强烈的限制或约束的意思时,provided(that)可以代替 if。它主要用来表示允许: You can camp here provided you leave no mess.

你们如果保持整洁的话,可以在这里宿营。

H suppose / supposing…? (=what if…? 假如)

Suppose the plane is late? 相当于: What if / What will happen if the plane is late? 假如飞机误点的话,将会出现什么情况?

Suppose no one had been there? 相当于: What if no one had been there?

假如没有人去过那里的话,会怎么样?

suppose 也可以引出建议: Suppose you ask him? / Why don't you ask him? 假如你问一问他呢? / 你为什么不问一问他呢?

227 if 和 in case

A in case 后接一般现在时、一般过去时或 should。(参见第节。)它看上去与 if 的用法相似而且常常和 if 相混淆,但两者完全不同。

in case 引导的从句为主句的动作提供理由: Some cyclists carry repair outfits in case they have a puncture.

有些骑自行车的人携带修理工具,以备万一车胎被扎破。相当于: Some cyclists carry repair outfits because they may have / because it is pos- sible they will have a puncture.

有些骑自行车的人携带修理工具,因为他们的车胎可能会被扎破。

I always slept by the phone in case he rang during the night.

我总是睡在电话机旁边,惟恐他夜间打电话来。相当于: I always slept by the phone because (I knew) he might ring during the night.

我总是睡在电话机旁, 因为我知道他可能夜间打电话来。

in case 从句可以省掉而不改变主句的含义。然而在条件句中,主句的动作依赖于 if 从句的动作,如果省掉 if 从句主句的含义就变了。

请比较以下句子: (a) Bill: I'll come tomorrow in case Ann wants me.

比尔:明天我要来,以备安找我。

(b) Tom: I'll come tomorrow if Ann wants me.

汤姆:如果安找我,我明天就来。

在句子(a)中,安也许要找比尔,也许不找。但比尔无论如何要来。他的行动不取决于安的动作,因此可以把 in case Ann wants me 省掉而不改变主句的含义。

句子(b)是一个条件句,汤姆的到来是以安的要求为条件的。他的动作取决于安的动作。 不能省掉 if Ann wants me 而又不改变主句的含义。

B in case 从句通常位于主句之后而不是之前。

但要注意 in case of +名词等于 if there is a / an +名词: In case of accident phone 999. 相 当于: If there is an accident phone 999.

如果发生事故,请拨电话999。

if 从句和 in case 从句之间的混淆可能是由此引起的。

228 if only

only 可以用在 if 之后,按照和它连用的不同时态分别表示希望、愿望或遗憾。

A if only+现在时 / will 表示希望: If only he comes in time.

但愿他能及时来到。相当于: We hope he will come in time.

我们希望他会及时来。

If only he will listen to her.

但愿他愿意听她的话。相当于: We hope he will be willing to listen to her.

我们希望他愿意听她的话。

B if only+一般过去时 / 过去完成时表示遗憾(参见第 300 节 wish+一般过去时或过去完成时): If only he didn't smoke!

要是他不吸烟该多好! 相当于: We wish he didn't smoke. / We are sorry he smokes. 我们希望他不吸烟。 / 他吸烟我们感到遗憾。

If only (=I / We wish) Tom were here!

汤姆要是在这里就好了!

If only you hadn't said, 'Liar'!

要是你没说"你撒谎"就好了。相当于: We wish you hadn't said, 'Liar'/ We are sorry you said, 'Liar.'

拳颐窍M 忝凰怠澳闳龌选薄# 闼盗恕澳闳龌选保 颐歉械揭藕丁?

C if only+would 表示对于现在的动作的遗憾,可以作为 if only +一般过去时的替代说法,它具有 wish+would 的含义: If only he would drive more slowly!

要是他肯开得慢一些就好了! 相当于: We are sorry that he isn't willing to drive more slowly.

他不愿意开得慢一些, 我们感到遗憾。

if only+would 也可以表示没有多大希望实现的关于将来的愿望: If only(=I / We wish) the rain would stop!

要是雨能停该多好!(我/我们希望雨停,但我们想雨会继续下个不停。)(参见第 300 节与第 301 节有关 wish 部分。)

if only 从句如上所述可以单独使用,也可以作为一个完整的条件句的组成部分。

229 间接引语中的条件句

A 条件句类型 1 的基本形式在这里时态的变化遵循通常的规律: He said, 'If I catch the plane I'll be home by five.'

他说:"我如果能赶上这班飞机,5点钟以前就可以到家了。"相当于: He said that if he caught the plane he would be home by five.

他说他如果能赶上那班飞机,5点钟以前就可以到家了。

条件句类型 2 的基本形式在这里时态不变: 'If I had a permit I could get a job,' he said. 他说:"如果我有许可证就能找到工作。"相当于: He said that if he had a permit he could get a job.

他说如果他有许可证就能找到工作。

条件句类型 3 的基本形式在这里时态不变: 'If she had loved Tom,' he said, 'she wouldn' t have left him.'

他说:"如果她喜欢汤姆,就不会离开他。"相当于: He said that if she had loved Tom she wouldn't have left him.

他说如果她喜欢汤姆的话就不会离开他。

B 关于 if 从句+命令或者要求在间接引语中的例句(参见第 320 节与第 321 节)。He said, 'If you have time wash the floor.'

他说:"如果你有时间,擦一擦地板。"

He said, 'If you have time would you wash the floor?'

他说: "如果你有时间,你能擦一擦地板吗?"相当于: He told / asked me to wash the floor if I had time.

他叫/要我有时间的话擦一擦地板。

He said that if I had time I was to wash the floor.

他说如果我有时间的话就擦一擦地板。

'If you see Ann ask her to ring me,' he said.

他说:"如果你遇到安,叫她给我打个电话。"相当于: He said that if I saw Ann I was to ask

her to ring him.

他说如果我看到安,告诉她给他打个电话。(这里如用 ask+不定式结构就变得很拗口,也不十分清楚。)

Peter (on phone): If you miss the last bus get a taxi.

彼得(在打电话):如果你们误了末班车,就雇一辆出租汽车。

Peter says that if we miss the last bus we are to get a taxi.

彼得说如果我们误了末班车就雇一辆出租汽车。

(关于 if you would···表示要求,参见第 284 节 F。)

C 关于在间接引语中的 if 从句+劝告的表示法: 'If you feel ill,' she said, 'why don't you go to bed?' / '…you'd bet— ter go to bed.'

她说:"如果你感到不舒服为什么不躺一下?"/…你最好上床休息。

She advised me to go to bed if I felt ill.

她劝我,如果感到不舒服了就上床休息。

She said that if I felt ill I'd better / I should go to bed.

她说如果我感到不舒服了我最好 / 应当上床休息。

'If I were you I' d stop taking pills,' she said.

她说:"如果我是你的话,我就停止吃药。"相当于: She advised me to stop taking pills. 她劝我停止吃药。

D if 从句+疑问句结构在间接引语中通常把 if 从句置于句末: 'If the baby is a girl what will they call her?' he wondered.

他心里想:"如果生的是个女孩,他们会给她取个什么名字?"相当于: He wondered what they would call the baby if it was a girl.

他心里想,如果生的是个女孩,他们会给她取个什么名字。

' If the door is locked what shall I do?' she asked.

她问道:"如果门锁了我该怎么办?"相当于: She asked what she would do if the door was locked.

她问如果门锁了她该怎么办。

第二十二章 will / would, shall / should 的其他用法

关于表示命令的 will / shall 参见第 282 节。

关于表示请求的 will / would 参见第 284 节。

关于表示邀请的 will / would 参见第 286 节。

关于 would / should 与 like, prefer, wish 等连用参见第二十九章。

230 用 will, would 表示习惯

A 现在的习惯性动作通常用一般现在时表示,但如果想要强调施动者的特征而非动作本身,则可用 will+不带 to 的不定式(即动词原形)结构。这主要用于一般陈述句: An Englishman will usually show you the way in the street.

英国人通常是会在街上给你指路的。(英国人这样表现是正常的。)这并非 will 的一种很重要的用法,它的过去时 would 的用处要广泛得多。我们描述过去例行的活动时,可以用 would 代替 used to:

On Sundays he used to / would get up early and go fishing. He used to / would spend the whole day by the river and in the evening used to / would come home with marvellous stories of the fish he had nearly caught.

星期天他总是早起钓鱼去。他整天都在河边钓鱼,晚间才回到家里,总要讲一些奇妙的故事,说他差一点儿就钓到多大的鱼。

但要注意 used to 表示已经不再有的习惯时,不能用 would 来代替。(参见第 162 节。) 这样用的 will 和 would 可以有缩略形式。

B will 还可以表示执意坚持,通常是习惯性的: If you' will keep your watch half an hour slow it is hardly surprising that you are late for your appointments.

如果你一定要让你的表慢半个小时,你约会时迟到就不足为怪了。

在有关过去的事中使用 would: We all tried to stop him smoking in bed but he would do it.

我们都劝他不要躺在床上吸烟,可他老是要这样做。

这里 will 和 would 不能缩略,而且要加强重读。

C would 可表示某人的一种典型的动作,一般这种动作使说话人讨厌: —Bill objects / objected.

- —He' would! / He' would object!
- 一比尔反对。
- 一他总是反对!

231 should / would think+that 从句或 so / not

(关于 so / not 用于代替从句参见第 347 节。)

A —Will it be expensive?

- —I should / would think so. / I should think it would. I shouldn't think it would. / I shouldn't / wouldn't think so. / I should / would think not.
- 一这个会很贵吗?
- 一我想是的。/我想不。

回答这一类问题时,回答人暗示他并不确实知道,只是凭印象而言。 I should / would think 表示的语气没有 I think 那么肯定。

should / would think 引导一个附加评论时,一般不能用 so / not。这时必须使用 that 从句:

- —He's an astrologer, looking for work.
- —I shouldn't / wouldn't think that he'd find it easy to get work.
- 一他是一个星相家,正在找工作。
- 一我想他大概不会感到找到一份工作是容易的。
- B 如果评论发生在过去的动作,可以用 should / would have thought:
- —He actually got a job as an astrologer.
- —I shouldn't / wouldn't have thought that it was possibe to do that.
- 一他真的以星相家的身份找了一份工作。
- 一我本来认为那是不可能的。

C should / would have expected + 不定式结构 / that 从句也是可行的。有时非人称代词 you 可代替 I: — She has emigrated.

- —Has she? You' d / I' d have expected her to stay in this country.
- 一她移居国外了。

232 would 表示过去的意图

如已经提到的那样,如果 will 用来表示一般将来时,would 就是 will 的过去式: He knows he will be late.

他知道他会迟到的。

He knew he would be late.

他当时知道他会迟到。

would 也同样可视为表示意图的 will 的过去式 (参见第 201 节): I said, 'I will help him.'我说:"我要帮助他。"相当于: I said that I would help him.

我说过我要帮助他。

He said, 'I won' t lend you a penny.'

他说:"我一便士都不愿借给你。"相当于: He said that he wouldn't lend me a penny. 他说过他一便士都不愿借给我。

但要注意,表示将来或意图的 would,像在上述例句中那样,只限用于从句中,而 wouldn't 表示否定的意图时则可以单独使用: He won't help me today.

他今天不愿帮助我。(他拒绝帮助。)

He wouldn't help me yesterday.

他昨天不愿帮助我。(他拒绝帮助。)

与此相反 would 不能这样用。因此如要把 I will help him to— day 变为过去时,就必须用另一个动词来代替 will:

I wanted / intended / offered to help him yesterday.

我昨天要/想/主动提出帮助他。

233 shall I / we? 用于请求给予指示或表示

意见、主动提供帮助、提出建议等

请求给予指示: How shall I cook it?

我该怎么煮这东西?

Where shall we put this?

我们该把这东西放在哪里?

如果这种请求只是请别人对某事提出意见, shall 或 should 均可用: Which one shall I buy? / Which one should I buy?

我应该买哪一个?

主动提供帮助: Shall I wait for you?

我要不要等你?

Shall I help you to pack?

要不要我来帮你打点行李?

主动提供建议: Shall we meet at the theatre?

我们是否在剧院见面?

Let's meet at the theatre, shall we?

我们在剧院见面,好吗?

(参见第 318 节关于 shall I / we? 在间接引语中的用法部分。)

234 shall 用于第二、第三人称

shall A 表示说话者想要完成某一动作或要别人来完成该动作的意图; B 表示命令。这两种

用法显得老式,语气比较正式,在现代英语口语中一般已不使用。

A shall 用于表示说话者意图的例子: You shall have a sweet.

你会得到 / 得到一块糖。相当于: I'll give you a sweet. / I'll see that you get a sweet. 我要给你一块糖。 / 我负责让你得到一块糖。

He shan't come here.

他不能来。相当于: I won't let him come here.

我不让他来。

They shall not pass.

他们不能通过。相当于: We won't let them pass.

我们不会让他们通过的。

在过去时中,即在间接引语中,通常改变用词: He said, 'You shall have a sweet.'

他说:"你会得到一块糖的。"相当于: He promised me a sweet.

他答应给我一块糖。

B shall 用于表示命令的例子: Yachts shall go round the course, passing the marks in the correct order.

帆船必须跑完全程,按正确的顺序驶过各个标志。(帆船比赛规则)

Members shall enter the names of their guests in the book provided.

会员必须把所邀客人的名字登记在提供的本子上。(俱乐部规则)

这类句型结构主要用在规章制度和法律文件中。在不那么正

式的英语中,上述句子中的 shall 就可用 must 或 are to 代替。

(参见第 282 节。)

C shall you? 这种句型比较老式,但有时仍见于某些小说中,可能

因为这种结构比将来进行时简练: Shall you go?

你去吗? 相当于: Will you be going?

你会去吗?

235 某些动词之后的 that…should 结构

在某些动词之后, that+主语+should 结构可以代替动名词或不定式结构。

that…should 结构在被动语态中是非常有用的形式,有时是被动式的唯一可能的形式。

that···should 结构要比动名词和不定式结构更正式一些,常表示忠告者/组织者等人与应当有所行动的人之间的接触不太直接。

下列动词可与 that…should 结构连用: advise, agree, ar— range, ask, beg, command, decide, demand, determine, insist, order, propose, recommend, request, stipulate, sug- gest, urge。注意还有 be anxious, be determined。

She advised that we should keep the gate locked.

她忠告我们要把门锁好。

She advised that the gate should be kept locked.

她忠告我们应当锁好门。

She advised keeping the gate locked / advised us to keep it locked.

(译文同上。)

(参见第 267 节。)

上述例句中的 advise 可用 recommend 来代替,这样语气也较正式一些。

They agreed / decided that the roof should be repaired.

他们同意 / 决定屋顶必须修补。

They agreed / decided to repair the roof.

他们同意 / 决定修补屋顶。

He arranged that I should go abroad.

他安排我去国外。

He arranged for me to go abroad.

他安排我去国外。

They arranged that the minister should be met at the airport.

他们安排在机场迎接这位部长。

They arranged for the minister to be met at the airport.

他们安排在机场迎接这位部长。

be anxious(=wish;参见第 27 节 C)后面与 arrange 所跟的结构相同:He is anxious that classes should start / should be started at once.

他急于马上开始课程。

He is anxious for classes to start / to be started at once.

(译文同上。)

They asked / begged / urged that relief work should be given priority.

他们要求/请求/敦促将救济工作放在优先位置。

They asked / begged / urged the authorities to give relief work priority. 他们要求 / 请求 / 催促当局将救济工作放在优先位置。

(参见第 243 节。)

He commanded that the army should advance.

他命令部队前进。(他不一定与部队在一起。)

He commanded the army to advance.

他命令部队前进。(他很可能跟部队在一起。)

She determined / was determined that he should study music.

她下决心要他学习音乐。

She determined / was determined to let him / make him study music.

她下决心要让他学习音乐。

She insisted that he should study music / insisted on his studying music.

她坚持他必须学习音乐。(参见第262节。)

He ordered that Ann should go.

他命令安必须走。(他大概是要某人转告安。)

He ordered Ann to go.

他命令安走开。(他大概是直接告诉她的。)(参见第320节。)

He ordered that the goods should be sent by air.

他命令货物得空运。

He ordered the goods to be sent by air.

他命令把货物空运。

He proposed / suggested that we should try homeopathic remedies.

他推荐/建议我们应该试一试顺势疗法。(参见第289节。)

He proposed / suggested that homeopathic remedies should be tried.

他推荐/建议说顺势疗法应该试一试的。

He proposed / suggested (our) trying homeopathic remedies.

他推荐/建议(我们)试一试顺势疗法。

They stipulated that the best materials should be used.

他们指定要求用最好的材料。

They stipulated for the best materials to be used.

他们指定,要将最好的材料用上。

有时 be 前面的 should 可省略。(参见第 291 节 C。)

236 it is / was+形容词+ that… should 结构

A that…should 结构可以用于 it is / was advisable, better, de— sirable, essential, imperative, important, natural, necessary 之后;也可用于 fair(=just),just,right 之后(这几个词前面常

加 only) 以及 reasonable 之后,以代替 for+不定式结构: It is advisable that everyone should have a map.

最好每一个人都有一张地图。

It is better for him to hear it from you.

让他从你那儿得知消息(对他)更好些。

It is better that he should hear it from you.

最好让他从你那儿得知这个消息。

It is essential for him to be prepared for this.

有必要让他对此有所准备。

It is essential that he should be prepared for this.

(译文同上。)

It is only right that she should have a share.

应该有她一份才对。

有时 should 在 be 之前可省略: It is essential that he be prepared.

B that…should 结构可以用在 it is / was absurd, amazing, an— noying, ludicrous, odd, ridiculous, strange, surprising 之类的形容词后面,以代替 that+现在时态 / 过去 时态结构: It is ridiculous that we should be(=that we are) short of water in a country where it is always raining,

在经常下雨的国家里我们竟然会缺水,这简直是荒谬。

说过去的事情时有时用不定式的完成式: It is amazing that she should have said(=that she said) nothing about the murder.

令人惊奇的是她对这桩凶杀案竟然不置一词。

237 should 的其他用法

A 当说话人对某种设想是否合理或正当提出疑问时,可把

should 用于 can't hink why / don't know why / see no reason why: 等后面: I don't know why you should think that I did it.

我真不知道你凭什么竟会认为这件事是我干的。

I see no reason why you should interfere in their quarrel.

我不明白你有什么理由竟然会介入他们的争吵。

当这种设想与过去的事情有关时则用完成式: I can't think why he should have said that it was my fault.

我真不明白他怎么能说这是我的过错。

B 作为一种惯用表达法,should 与 what,where,who 连用以形象生动地表达惊奇的感情: What should I find but an enormous spider!

怎么也想不到我看见的竟是一只巨大的蜘蛛!

这种惊奇经常掺杂着令人为难的因素: Who should come in but his first wife!

怎么也想不到进来的竟是他的前妻!

C should 用在 lest 后面,有时也用在 in case 后面: 1 在书面语中,lest…should 结构有时放在表示惧怕或担心的词后面: He was terrified lest he should slip on the icy rocks. 他害怕在结冰的石块上滑倒。

对过去的动作表示担心时用 should+完成式: She began to be worried lest he should have met with some accident.

她开始担心他出了什么事。

2 lest 也可用于目的从句,表示 for fear that (惟恐): He dared not spend the money lest someone should ask where he had got it.

他不敢花这笔钱,怕有人问他钱是从哪儿来的。

如上所示这是一种书面形式。

在这种情况下 in case 较 lest 更常用,后面可跟 should 或一般现在时或一般过去时: in case someone should ask / someone asked

惟恐万一有人问起(另参见第227节与第337节。)

D should 有时用于目的从句以代替 would / could:

He wore a mask so that no one should recognize him.

他戴了一个面罩,好让别人认不出他来。(参见第336节。)

E 在条件句中用 should 代替现在时态: If the pain should return take another of these pills.

疼痛复发时,可再吃一片这些药。(参见第224节。)

F should 还用于颇为正式的间接命令,这种命令不一定是向对方直接发出的: He ordered that Tom should leave the house.

他下命令叫汤姆离开这所房子。(参见第 321 节 B。)

与下面一句比较一下: He ordered Tom to leave.

他命令汤姆离开。(他亲自告诉汤姆。)

第二十三章 不定式

238 形式

A 动词不定式各种形式的举例

不定式的现在式: to work, to do

不定式的现在进行式: ?to be working

to be doing

不定式的完成式: to have worked,

to have done

定式的完成进行式: ?to have been working

to have been doing

不定式的现在式的被动形式: ?to be done

不定式的完成式的被动形式: ?to have been done

B 不定式的整个形式包括两个字: to+动词,如上所示;但在一些特定的动词和表达方法之后用不带 to 的不定式形式(参见第 246 节): You had better say nothing.

你最好什么也不说。(参见第 120 节。)

- C 一般不官在 to 与动词之间置入别的字: 但有时有人这样用, 见第 248 节分裂不定式。
- D 为了避免重复,有时不定式的 to 可代替整个不定式: Do you smoke?
- —No, but I used to (smoke).
- 一你吸烟吗?
- 一不,但我以前吸烟。(参见第247节。)

239 用法

A 不定式可以单独使用,如 We began to walk (我们开始走了);或作为不定式短语的一部分,如 We began to walk down the road (我们开始沿路步行)。

B 不定式可作句子的主语。(参见第 240 节。)

C 不定式可作表语: His plan is to keep the affair secret.

他的计划是将这件事保密。

D 不定式可作动词的宾语或宾语的一部分,直接跟在动词之后: He wants to pay(他想要付钱)。(参见第 241 节与第 243 节。)或跟在动词+ how, what 等结构之后。(参见第 242 节。)或跟在动词+宾语之后: He wants me to pay(他想要我付钱)。(参见第 243 节与第 244 节。)

E be+不定式可表示命令或指示。(参见第 114 节。)

F 不定式可表示目的。(参见第 334 节。)

G 不定式可用于某些形容词之后: angry glad happy sorry (参见第 26 节。)

fortunate likely lucky (参见第 27 节。)

H 不定式可连接从句。(参见第 249 节。)

I 不定式有时可代替关系从句。(参见第 77 节与第 250 节。) J 不定式可用于某些名词之后。(参见第 251 节。)

K 不定式可与 too / enough 以及某些特定的形容词 / 副词连用。(参见第 252 节。)

L 某些不定式短语如 to tell the truth, to cut a long story short 等可置于句首或句末。(参见第 253 节。)

240 作主语

A 不定式或不定式短语可作动词 appear, be, seem 的主语,这时不定式可位于句首: To compromise appears advisable.

看来以妥协为好。

To lean out of the window is dangerous.

身探出窗外很危险。

To save money now seems impossible.

现在好像不可能存钱。

B 但更经常的做法是将代词 it 置于句首,而将不定式或不定式短语移至句末: It appears advisable to compromise.

It is dangerous to lean out of the window.

It seemed impossible to save money.

在这里的 it 称为先行主语。注意它在疑问句中使用的情况: Would it be safe to camp here? 在这里宿营安全吗?

Wouldn't it be better to go on?

继续走下去不是更好吗?

这里必须用 it 结构,否则会产生 Would+to camp 和 Wouldn't+to go on 那样的语序,而那样是不可以的。

C 通常这一类不定式结构由 it+be+形容词+不定式组成。

(参见第 26 节与第 27 节。)

但有时也可用名词代替形容词: It would be a crime / a mistake / a pity to cut down any more trees.

再砍伐树木将是一种犯罪 / 是一个错误 / 是个遗憾。

It is an offence to drop litter in the street.

在马路上乱丢废物是违章的。

D cost / take+宾语+不定式(主语)也是可行的: It would cost millions / take years to rebuild the castle.

重建这座城堡需要花数百万元 / 许多年的时间。

E 从一般的角度考虑一种动作时,可用动名词而不用不定式,但用不定式更为保险。但我们想要指特定的一次时,必须用不定式: He said, 'Do come.' It was impossible to refuse. 他说: "一定来。"不可能拒绝他的要求。

但是说: It is not always easy to refuse invitations.

别人的邀请往往无法轻易拒绝。

It is not always easy to refuse invitations 可以用 Refusing invi一 tations is not always easy 来代替。在这里这一动作是从一般的角度考虑的,所以动名词和不定式都可以。(另参见第 258 节。)

F it+不定式结构可位于 believe / consider / discover / expect / find / think (that) 和 wonder (if) 之后: He thought (that) it would be safer to go by train.

他认为乘火车去较安全。

这样用的 find 之后可省略 that+动词 be:

He found (that) it was easy to earn extra money. / He found it easy to earn extra money.

他发现赚点外快很容易。

He will find(that) it is hard to make friends. / He will find it hard to make friends. 他会感觉到交朋友困难。

有时 think 也可这样用: He thought it safer to go.

他认为去更安全一些。

在其他动词之后仍以不省略 be 为好。(关于类似的动名词结构,参见第 258 节。)

G 不定式的完成式也可作句子的主语: To have made the same mistake twice was unforgivable.

两次犯同样的错误是不可原谅的。

这里同样也可用 it 作为先行主语: It is better to have loved and lost than never to have loved at all.

爱过而后失去了爱, 比从未爱过要好。

241 作宾语和作表语

A 后面直接跟动词不定式的动词

agree * * be determined * * pretend *

aim ?endeavour ?proceed

appear * fail ?promise *

arrange * * ?forget * ?prove *

ask * * guarantee * refuse

attempthappen * remember *

bother(否定) ?hesitate ?resolve * *

care(否定) hope seem *

chooselearn *?swear*

claim * * long?tend

condescend?manage threaten*

consent ?neglect ?trouble (否定)

decide * * offer try (=attempt)

declineplan?undertake *

demand * * prepare ?volunteer

determine * * ?be prepared ?vow

* 参见 D。

** 参见 F。

助动词

be?dare ?have?must ought ?will

can ?do may?need ?zhall used

(关于动词后接宾语+不定式,参见第 **244** 节。关于动词后接不定式或动名词,参见第二十 五章。)

B 后面也可接不定式的短语

be about

be able+afford

do one's best /

do what one can

make an / every effort

make up one's mind* (=decide)

it+occur*+to+宾语(否定式或疑问式)

set out

take the trouble

turn out * (=prove to be)

* 参见 D。

CA和B的例句

She agreed to pay £ 50.

她同意付50英镑。

Two men failed to return from the expedition.

探险队有两个人未能返回。

I managed to put the fire out.

我好歹把火扑灭了。

They are preparing (= getting ready) to evacuate the area.

他们正准备从这一地区撤离。

We are not prepared (=willing) to wait any longer.

我们不准备再等了。

The tenants refused to leave.

房客拒绝搬出。

Prices always tend to go up.

物价总是趋于上涨。

She volunteered to help with Meals on Wheels.

她自愿帮助给老、弱、病、残送饭上门。

He is just about to leave.

他正要离开。(参见第 114 节 C。)

We can't afford to live in the centre.

在市中心生活,费用我们负担不起。

He didn't bother / trouble to answer personally.

他嫌麻烦不愿亲自回答。

与上面相反的例子: He took the trouble to answer personally.

他不嫌麻烦亲自回答。

D 上面标有星号的词或短语也可以与 that 从句连用(参见第 346 节): I promise to wait. 相当于: I promise that I will wait.

我答应等候。

He pretended to be angry. 相当于: He pretended that he was angry.

他假装生气。

occur to+宾语+ that 用于肯定式、否定式和疑问式。注意这个结构跟 occur+不定式在意义上的区别: It didn't occur to me to ask him for proof of his identity.

我没有想到向他要身份证明。(我没有想到要这样做。)

It occurred to me that he was trying to conceal something.

我突然想到他是在想法隐瞒什么。(这念头出现在我的脑中。)

appear, happen, seem, turn out 与 that 结构连用时,要求用 it 作句子的先行主语: It turned out that his 'country cottage' was an enormous bungalow.

他的"乡下的小房"原来是一座极大的平房。

请与不定式结构比较一下: His 'country cottage' turned out to be an enormous bungalow. (译文同上。)

E 但动词+不定式结构的意思并不一定与同一动词+ that 从句结构的意思相同。在 learn, forget, occur (参见上面 D) 和 remember 后面, 这两种结构的意思不同: He learnt to look after himself.

他学会照料自己。

He learnt (=was told) that it would cost £ 100.

他听说那会花去 100 英镑。

He forgot to leave the car keys on the table.

他忘了把汽车钥匙留在桌上。(他没有留下。)

He forgot that his brother wanted to use the car.

他忘了他的兄弟要用汽车。

remember 后面的两种结构同样可以有不同的意思。

agree / decide+不定式表示意图。

agree that… 表示同意一种观点。

decide that… 表示一种结论或决定,但并不一定会将之付诸行动。

F 上面带两个星号的动词后面可接不定式,也可接 that… should 结构。that…should 结构 在被动语态中尤其常用(参见第 302 节):They decided / agreed to divide the profits equally.

他们决定/同意平均分配利润。

They decided that the profits should be divided equally.

他们决定利润平分。

I arranged to meet / for Tom to meet them.

我安排夫接/安排汤姆夫接他们。

I arranged that Tom should meet them.

我安排好叫汤姆去接他们。

I arranged that they should be met.

我安排人去接他们。

G 不定式的进行式常常用在 appear, happen, pretend 和 seem 等动词之后: I happened to be looking out of the window when they arrived.

他们到达时我碰巧正向窗外望去。

He seems to be following us.

他似乎在跟着我们。

不定式的进行式也可用在 agree, arrange, decide, determine, hope, manage, plan 之后和助动词之后。(参见第 **254** 节。)

H 不定式的完成式可以用在 appear, hope, pretend, seem 等之后和助动词之后。(参见 第 255 节。)

242 动词+ how / what / when /

where / which / why+不定式

A 这类动词中最常用的有 ask, decide, discover, find out, for— get,know, learn, remember, see (= understand / perceive), show+宾语, think, understand, want to know, wonder:

He discovered how to open the safe.

他发现了打开保险柜的方法。

I found out where to buy fruit cheaply.

我找到了买便官水果的地方。

I didn't know when to switch the machine off.

我不知道什么时候关掉机器。

I showed her which button to press.

我告诉她应该按哪一个按钮。

She couldn't think what to asy.

她想不出说什么。

(注意:这种结构不常用于动词 think 的现在式和过去式之后,但可以用于 think 的其他形式之后,或者如上面最后一个例句那样,用于前面还有一个助动词的 think 之后。)

B whether+不定式同样可以用于 want to know, wonder 之后: I wonder / wondered whether to write or phone.

我不知道应该写信还是应该打电话。

这种结构还可以用于表示否定意义或疑问意义的 decide, know, remember 和 think 后面: You needn't decide yet whether to study arts or science.

你现在不必决定学习文科还是理科。

He couldn't remember whether to turn left or right.

他没记住向左拐还是向右拐。

C ask, decide, forget, learn, remember 等词后也可以直接跟不定式。(参见第 241 节。) 但其含义并不一定相同。

learn how+不定式(=acquire a skill 学会技能): She learnt how to make lace. 她学会了怎样做花边。

如果是相当普通的技能,通常就不用 how: She learnt to drive a car.

她学会了开汽车。

learn+不定式(不带 how)可以有另一种含义: She learnt to trust nobody.

她信不过任何人。相当于: She found from experience that it was better to trust nobody. 经验告诉她,谁都不可靠。

同时注意: I decided to do it.

我决定要做这件事。相当于: I said to myself, 'I' ll do it.'

我心里想:"我要做这件事。"

I decided how to do it.

我决定了如何去做这件事。相当于: I said to myself, 'I'll do it this way.'

我心里想:"我要这样做。"

I remembered to get a ticket.

我没忘了弄一张票。(我弄到一张票。)

I remembered where to get a ticket.

我记得到哪儿买票。(我记得可以从音乐节办公室买到票。)

243 动词或动词+宾语之后的不定式

A 这类动词中最重要的有 ask, beg, expect, would hate, help, intend, like (=think wise / right), would like (=enjoy), would love, mean, prefer, want, wish: He likes to eat well.

他喜欢吃得好一点。

He likes his staff to eat well.

他喜欢要他的工作人员吃得好一点儿。

I want to ride. I want you to ride too.

我想骑马。我想要你去骑马。

B ask 和 beg

ask+不定式的含义与 ask+宾语+不定式不同: I asked to speak to Mrs Jones.

我要找琼斯太太谈话。相当于: I said, 'Could I speak to Mrs Jones?'

我说:"我能跟琼斯太太讲话吗?"

但是: I asked Bill to speak to her.

我要比尔找她谈一谈。

I said, 'Bill, would you speak to her?'

我说:"比尔,请你找她谈一谈好吗?"

beg 也是同样情况,尽管 beg 之后通常不直接跟不定式: I begged (to be allowed) to go.

我请他允许我去。相当于: I said, 'Please let me go.'

我说:"请让我去。"

I begged him to go.

我要求他去。相当于: I said, 'Please go.'

我说:"请你去吧。"

ask 和 beg 后面可接 that…should 结构。(参见第 235 节。)

C expect+不定式和 expect+宾语+不定式可有相同含义: I expect to arrive tomorrow.

我预计明天到达。相当于: I think it is likely that I will arrive tomorrow.

我想我很可能明天到达。

I expect him to arrive tomorrow.

我预计他明天到达。相当于: I think it is likely that he will arrive tomorrow.

我想他很可能明天到达。

但 expect+宾语+不定式常常含有义务的意思: He expects his wife to bring him breakfast in bed at weekends.

他指望他妻子在周末把早饭送到床边。(他认为他妻子有义务这样做。)

expect 后面也可跟 that+主语+动词结构,这时不含有义务的意思。

D 关于 care, hate, like, love 和 prefer 与不定式或动名词连用的例句请参见第 294 至第 298 节。intend, mean 和 want 后面也可接动名词。(参见第 266 节。)

244 动词+宾语之后的不定式

A 这类动词中最重要的有: advise ?forbid?make(b) ?show how

allow ?force oblige ?teach / teach how

bribe ?hear (b) ordertell / tell how

commandimplore ?permit tempt

compel induce persuade ?train

enable ?instructremind?urge

encourageinvite request?warn

entitlelet (b) ?see (b) watch (b)

feel (b)

(b) 意指 "不带 to 的不定式"。(参见第 246 节。)

advise, allow 和 permit 也可以与动名词连用。

(关于表示知道和思想一类意思的动词,参见第245节。)

B 动词+宾语+不定式举例如下: These glasses will enable you to see in the dark.

这眼镜能使你在黑暗中也能看到东西。

She encouraged me to try again.

她鼓励我再试一遍。

They forbade her to leave the house. / She was forbidden to leave the house. (较常用) 他们不允许她离开房间。 / 不许她离开房间。

Nothing would induce me to do business with them.

什么也不能诱使我同他们打交道。

They persuaded us to go with them.

他们说服我们同他们一起走。

They are training these dogs to sniff out drugs.

他们正在训练这些狗嗅出毒品。

C show / teach / tell+how

show 与不定式连用时要加 how:

He showed me how to change a fuse.

他给我示范怎样换保险丝。

tell how +不定式 (= instruct 教): He told me how to replace a fuse.

他教我怎样换保险丝。(他给我必要的知识或说明。)

tell+宾语+不定式 (= order 命令): He told me to change the fuse.

他叫我换保险丝。相当于: He said, 'Change the fuse.

他说:"换一换保险丝。"

teach how (教······如何): 要表达教某人(如何)游泳、跳舞、打字、骑马等时可以说:

He taught me how to light a fire without matches.

他教我如何不用火柴就能点火。

对比较普通的技能提问时虽可以使用 how,但 how 常可以省略: He taught me to ride. 他教我骑马。

teach+宾语+不定式(不与how连用)也可以意指教导或训练某人以某一方式行事: He taught me to obey all commands without asking questions.

他教我毫无疑义地服从命令。

D remind, show, teach, tell 后面也可以接 that 结构: He reminded me that the road was dangerous.

他提醒我道路危险。

He showed me that it was quite easy.

他向我表明这是很容易的。

注意: tell+ that 从句的含义不同于 tell+不定式: He told (= ordered) me to go. 他叫我走。

He told (= informed) me that I was late.

他告诉我说我迟到了。

E request 后面也可以接 that+ should 结构,这主要用于被动语态: He requested that the matter should be kept secret.

他请求对这件事保密。

245 表示知道和思想等的动词之后的不定式

A 在 assume, believe, consider, feel, know, suppose, understand 等之后可接 宾语+ to be: I consider him to be the best candidate.

我认为他是最佳人选。

但 that+普通动词的结构比这常用得多: I consider that he is the best candidate.

(译文同上。)

宾语+不定式与 think, estimate 和 presume 等动词连用是极少见的。这种表达方法常用 that 从句来代替: I think that he is the best player.

我认为他是最好的演奏家/演员/运动员。

It is estimated that the vase is 2, 000 years old.

据估计这个花瓶有两千年历史。

B 然而,如果这些动词是以被动形式出现的,那么它们后面常常带不定式而不是带 that 结构: He is known to be honest. 相当于: It is known that he is honest.

众所周知,他是个老实人。

He is thought to be the best player 相当于: It is thought that he is...

人们认为他是最好的演奏家/演员/运动员。

This vase is estimated to be 2, 000 years old.

据估计这个花瓶有两千年历史。

C 注意 suppose 的被动态时往往有责任或义务之意: You are supposed to know the laws of your own country.

你应该懂得你们自己国家的法律。相当于: It is your duty to know / You are expected to know…

你有义务懂 / 人们认为你该懂……

D 在这些动词后面也可以用不定式的进行式: He is thought to be hiding in the woods.

人们以为他正躲在森林里。(人们认为他正躲着。)

He is supposed to be washing the car.

他应该在洗车。(他该正在洗它。)

E 如果想到的是早先发生过的动作,则用不定式的完成式: They are believed to have landed in America.

人们相信他们在美洲上了岸。(据信他们已登上了。)

supppose+不定式的完成式不一定有责任或义务之意。

They are supposed to have discovered America. 相当于: It is thought that they did. 人们认为是他们发现了美洲。

但 You are supposed to have read the instructions(你应已看过操作说明)通常意味着你本应看过。

(关于动词的被动式之后的不定式结构,另参见第306节。)

246 不带 to 的不定式

A can,do,may,must,shall,will 之后接不带 to 的不定式: They could do it today. 他们可以今天做这件事。

I may as well start at once.

我还不如马上就动身。

He will probably object.

他可能会反对。

B need 和 dare 之后也接不带 to 的不定式,但它们不作为情态动词而是同助动词 do / did 或 will / would 连用时除外: You needn't say anything.

你不必说什么。

但是说: You don't / won't need to say anything.

你不需要 / 将不需要说什么。

I dared not wake him.

我不敢叫醒他。

但是说: I didn't / wouldn't dare(to) wake him.

我没敢 / 不敢叫醒他。

理论上,在最后一个例句中要求用 to,但实际上常被省略。按语法规则来说,如果 dare 和 used 用为助动词,它们就像大多数助动词一样后面接不带 to 的不定式;如果它们用为普通 动词并与 do / did 等连用,就像普通动词一样后面接带 to 的不定式。

C feel, hear, see 和 watch: I heard him lock the door.

我听见他锁了门。

I saw / watched him drive off.

我看见他开车走了。

但 see 和 hear 在被动语态的句子中要与带 to 的不定式连用: He was seen to enter the office.

有人看见他进了办公室。

He was heard to say that...

有人听见他说过 ……

但 feel, hear, see 和 watch 经常是与现在分词连用: I heard them shouting.

我听到他们在大声喊叫。(参见第273节。)

D let 在主动语态和被动语态的句子中都与不带 to 的不定式连用。但 let 在被动语态的句子中常常被另一个词所代替: Theylet me know··· 在被动词态的句子中被 I was told··· 所代替,而 They let him see the documents 则被 He was allowed to see them 所代替。

let 之后的不定式 / 不定式短语有时为了避免重复而被省略: She wants to go out to work but he won't let her (go out to work).

她想要出去工作, 可他不让她去。

在下面的习语中, let 没有宾语: Live and let live.

宽己容人。

(关于 let us / let's 用于表示命令和建议,参见第 281 节与第 289 节。)

E make

make 在主动语态的句子中与不带 to 的不定式连用: He made me move my car. 他迫使我挪动我的汽车。

但在被动语态的句子中 make 与带 to 的不定式连用: I was made to move my car. 我被迫挪动了我的汽车。

为了避免重复,有时 make(主动语态)之后的不定式可省去:—Why did you tell him?

- —He made me (tell him)!
- 一你为什么要告诉他?
- 一是他迫使我(告诉他)的!

make(被动语态)之后的不定式可由 to 来代表: I was made to (tell him). 我是被迫(告诉他)的。

F would rather / sooner , rather / sooner than (参见第 297 与第 298 书): —Shall we go today?

- —I' d rather wait till tomorrow.
- 一我们今天去好吗?
- 一我宁可等到明天再去。

Rather / Sooner than risk a bad crossing, he postponed his journey.

他不愿冒大风险,推迟了横渡海峡的旅行。

G had better (参见第 120 节): 'You had better start at once,' he said.

他说:"你最好马上就动身。"

H help 后面接带 to 或不带 to 的不定式都可以:He helped us(to) push it. 他帮我们推它。

I 如果两个不定式由 and 连接在一起,通常可将第二个不定式的 to 省略: I intend to sit in the garden and write letters.

我打算坐在花园里并写些信。

I want you to stand beside me and hold the torch.

我要你站在我身边拿着手电筒。

J but 和 except 跟在 do+ anything / nothing / everything 后面时,可以与不带 to 的不定式连用: He does nothing but complain.

他只是一个劲地抱怨。

My dog does everything but speak.

我的狗除了不会说话以外什么都会。

Can't you do anything but ask silly questions?

你别一个劲地提愚蠢的问题好吗? (你除了提愚蠢的问题,难道不会干点别的?)

There's nothing to do but wait.

除了等候没有别的办法。

K 在下列句子中 to 可有可无: The only thing to do / we can do is(to) write to him. 唯一可做的事 / 我们唯一能做的事是给他写信。

All we can do is (to) write to him.

(译文同上。)

247 用 to 代表的不定式

为了避免重复,不定式可只用一个 to 来代表。这种用法主要用于下列动词之后: hate,hope, intend, would like / love,make(被动语态),mean, plan, try, want;也用于助动词如 have, need, ought 之后时以及与 used to, be able to 和 be go—ing to 结构连用时:—Would you like to come with me?

- —Yes, I' d love to.
- 一你愿意和我一起走吗?
- 一是的,我愿意。
- —Did you get a ticket?
- —No, I tried to, but there weren't any left. —你有票了吗?
- 一没有,我尽力找了,可一张也没有了。
- —Why did you take a taxi?
- —I had to (take one). I was late.
- 一你为什么坐出租汽车?
- 一我不得不坐。(因为)我晚了。
- —Do you ride?
- —Not now but I used to.
- 一你骑马吗?
- 一我现在不骑了,但以前骑。

He wanted to go but he wasn't able to.

他想去,但去不了。

- —Have you fed the dog?
- —No, but I'm just going to.
- 一你喂过狗了吗?
- 一没有,我这就要去呢。

248 分裂不定式

在 **to** 和动词原形之间插入另一个词,称为分裂不定式。这种用法过去常被认为是文字不通顺,但现在人们对它的看法比较宽容了。

在日常口语中 really 常常接在 to 之后而位于动词原形之前。

It would take ages to really master this subject.

这门学科需要许多年才能真正掌握。

这个地方如用 really to master, 反而显得过分正式。

其他一些程度副词如 completely, entirely, (un) duly 也可同样使用。可以说: (a) to completely cover the floor 完全铺满地板

而不说: (b) to cover the floor completely

(a) to unduly alarm people 过分使人们惊惶

而不说: (b) to alarm people unduly

但按照惯例,如上面(b)所示则较为安全。

249 可起连词作用的不定式

A 不定式用在 only 后面时,常表示一种令人失望的后果: He hurried to the house only to find that it was empty.

他急忙赶到那所房子,却发现空无一人。相当于: He hurried to the house and was disappointed when he found that it was empty.

他急忙赶到那所房子,但发现房子空无一人时感到大为失望。

he survived the crash only to die in the desert. 相当于: He survived the crash but died in the desert.

飞机坠毁时他幸免于难,后来却死在沙漠里。

B 不定式前不加 only 也可以起连接作用,并且不带有不幸的含义: He returned home to learn that his daughter had just become engaged.

他回到家里,得知女儿才订了婚。

但这类用法主要限于如 find, hear, learn,see, be told 这类动词,否则用于起连接作用的不定式就可能被错认为是表示目的的不定式。

250 可替代关系从句的不定式

A 不定式可用于 the first, the second 等如此类推及 the last, theonly 之后,有时也可用于最高级之后(参见第 77 节): He loves parties; he is always the first to come and the last to leave.

他喜欢参加社交聚会, 总是头一个来, 最后一个走。

She was the only one to survive the crash.

她是这次事故中唯一的幸存者。

这样使用的不定式代替了主格代词+动词结构。下面 B 中将它与不定式代替宾格代词+动词结构进行了比较。

注意这里不定式的含义是主动的。如果需要被动的含义则用不定式的被动式: He is the second man to be killed in this way.

他是第二个这样死于非命的人。

the best play to be performed that year 那年演出的最精彩的戏

试与下面短语比较: the best play to perform 一出最适合 / 最应当由你演出的戏

B1 不定式可以放在名词和代词后面以表示可以怎么使用或处置它们,有时也可表示主语的愿望(参见第 77 节): I have letters to write.

我有信要写。

Does he get enough to eat?

他吃得饱吗?

Have you anything to say?

你有话要说吗?

At the customs: I have nothing to declare.

在海关检查站: 我没有要报关的。

a house to let 待出租的房子

不定式+介词结构也可以这样使用: someone to talk to 可与交谈的人

a case to keep my records in 放我的磁带的盒子

cushions to sit on 坐垫

a glass to drink out of 喝水杯

a tool to open it with 用来打开这东西的工具

a table to write on 写字台

2 不定式被动式的类似用法

There is plenty to do.

- (a) 有不少事情可做。即可供自娱的事。
- (b) 有不少工作必须做。

there + be + 名词 / 代词 + 不定式结构如有"义务"的含义,如上面(b)所示,则可用不定式的被动形式: There is a lot to be done.

有大量的事要做。

但不定式的主动形式用得更多。

251 某些特定的名词之后的不定式

常用的可以直接跟不定式的名词有: abilitydemand failure request

ambition desire ?offer scheme

anxiety determinationplan?willingness

attempt eagerness?promisewish

decision?effort ?refusal

例句如: His ability to get on with people is his chief asset.

他与人融洽相处的能力是他的主要资本。

He made an attempt/effort to stand up.

他努力要站起来。

Failure to obey the regulations may result in disqualification.

若不遵守规章,就会被取消资格。

Their offer/plan / promise to rebuild the town was not taken seriously.

他们重新修建城镇的提议/计划/保证没有得到重视。

She was annoyed by his unwillingness to do his share of the work.

他不愿干他那一份工作,这使她很不高兴。

252 too, enough 以及 so…as 之后的不定式

A too+形容词 / 副词+不定式

1 too+形容词+不定式

(a) 不定式可以是指句子的主语而言,此时它具有主动含义: You are too young to understand.

你太年轻了没法懂得(这件事)。

He was too drunk to drive home.

他醉得太厉害了,没法开车回家。

(b) 不定式也可以指动词的宾语而言,此时它具有被动的含义: The plate was so hot that we couldn't touch it.

盘子太烫,碰不得。

可以表示为: The plate was too hot to touch.

盘子烫得没法碰。

注意:第一句中 touch 的宾语 it 在第二句的不定式结构里消失了,因为不定式虽然形式上是主动的,在含义上却是被动的。

有时,不定式的主动式或被动式都可用: This parcel is too heavy to send / to be sent by post.

这个包裹太重了,不能邮寄。

但并不是在任何情况下以上两种形式都可用,学生因此最好一律使用不定式的主动式。

该结构中不定式之前可以加上 for+名词 / 代词: The case was too heavy(for a child) to carry. 相当于: The case was too heavy to be carried by a child.

箱子太重了,孩子搬不动。

(c) 与此类似的情况是,不定式可以指介词的宾语而言: The grass was so wet that we couldn't sit on it.

草地湿得没法坐。

The grass was too wet (for us) to sit on.

草地太湿了,(我们)不能坐。

The light is so weak that we can't read by it.

光线太暗了, 我们无法看书。

The light is too weak to read by.

光线太暗,不能看书。

2 too+形容词+a+名词+不定式

He was too shrewd a businessman to accept the first offer. 相当于: As a businessman he was too shrewd to accept the first offer.

他是一个极为精明的生意人,不会接受第一次报价。

He is too experienced a conductor to mind what the critics say. 相当于: As a conductor he is too experienced to mind what the critics say.

他是一位经验非常丰富的指挥家,根本不会在乎评论家的意见。

如以上 A1 中那样,这里的不定式总是指主语而言。这里也可以用不定式的被动式: He was too experienced a conductor to be worried by what the critics said.

他是一位经验极为丰富的指挥家,不至于为批评家们的意见犯愁。

3 too+副词+不定式

It is too soon (for me) to say whether the scheme will succeed or not.

现在要我来说计划能否成功还为时过早。

He spoke too quickly for me to understand.

他说得太快了,我听不懂。(这里 for me 是必要的。)

She works too slowly to be much use to me.

她干活太慢,对我不会有多大帮助。

- B 形容词/副词+enough+不定式
- 1 形容词+enough+不定式
- (a) 如在 too 结构中一样,不定式可以指动词的主语而言: She is old enough to travel by herself.

她已经到了可以自己出门旅行的年龄了。

He was tall enough to see over the heads of the other people.

他身材高得可以从别人头顶上看过去。

(b) 这种结构还可以指动词的宾语而言: The case is light enough for me to carry. 相当于: The case is so light that I can carry it.

这箱子很轻,我搬得动。

After a few minutes the coffee was cool enough (for us) to drink.

几分钟后,咖啡凉了一些,(我们)可以喝了。

(c) 这种结构也可以指介词的宾语而言: The ice was thick enough to walk on.

冰厚得上面可以走人。

The light was strong enough to read by.

光线亮得足可以看书。

2 enough 既可作代词用,也可作形容词用: He doesn't earn enough (money) to live on. 他挣的钱不够过日子的。

We haven't enough time to do it properly.

我们没有足够的时间把这件事做好。

She had enough sense to turn off the gas.

她还有点脑筋,知道关掉煤气。

have+enough+抽象名词结构常常可以用 have+the+名词结构替代: She had the sense to turn off the gas.

她还有点脑筋,知道关掉煤气。

He had the courage to admit his mistake.

他有勇气承认自己的错误。

I hadn't the patience to listen to any more.

我没有耐心再听下去了。

但这里 time 之前的 the 可省略: We haven't(the)time to do it properly.

我们没有足够的时间把这件事做好。

3 副词+enough+不定式: He didn't jump high enough to win a prize.

他跳得不够高,没能得奖。

He spoke slowly enough for everyone to understand.

他说得很慢,每个人都听得懂。

C so+形容词+as+不定式: He was so foolish as to leave his car unlocked.

他真傻,车都没有锁。

这种说法可用来代替上面 B1 中的 enough 结构,但必须注意 He was foolish enough to leave his car unlocked 的含义既可以是他实际这样做了,也可以是他可能这样做,即他傻到竟会不知道锁车的地步:而 He was so foolish as to leave 则意指他实际上这样做了。

像上边讲的 so···as 结构的那种用法不常见,但它用为一种请求形式则是很常见的: Would you be so good as to forward my letters? 相当于: Would you be good enough to forward my letters?

劳驾把我的信件转给我,好吗?

这两种形式之间并无含义上的差别,但千万不要遗漏 as。(关于其他形容词+不定式结构参 见第 26 节与第 27 节。)

253 位于句首或句末的不定式短语

某些特定的不定式短语既可位于句首,有时也可位于句末。不定式的这种作用与修饰全句的状语相似(参见第 40 节): To be perfectly frank, you're a bad driver.

非常坦率地说, 你车开得不好。

To be honest, I just don't like him.

说老实话,我就是不喜欢他。

To be fair (to him), he wasn't entirely to blame.

说句公平话,这事不能都怪他一个人。

To cut a long story short, we said, 'No!'

长话短说吧, 我们没有同意。

To tell you the truth, I' ve never met him. /I' ve never met him, to tell you the truth.

给你说真的,我从没见过他。

254 不定式的进行式

A 形式

to be+现在分词: He seems to be following us.

他好像在跟着我们。

B 用法

不定式的进行式可用于: 1 助动词之后: They'll be wondering where you are. 他们会纳闷你在哪里。

- —He may / might be watching TV.
- —He can't / couldn't be watching TV.
- 一他可能在看电视。
- 一他不会在看电视。

There are no programmes today because of the strike.

由于罢工,今天没有节目。(否定的推论)

He must be coming by bus.

他一定是乘公共汽车来。(推论)

You shouldn't be reading a novel. You should be reading a textbook.

现在你不该看小说,你应该看课本。

2 appear,happen,pretend,seem 之后: He appears/seems to be living in the area. 相当于: It appears/seems that he is living in the area.

(看来)他似乎就住在这一带。

He appeared / seemed to be living in the area. 相当于: It appeared / seemed that he was living in the area.

当时(看来)他似乎就住在那一带。

I happened to be standing next to him when he collapsed. 相当于: It happened that I was standing next to him when he collapsed.

他倒下的时候我恰巧站在他旁边。

He pretended to be looking for a book. 相当于: He pretended that he was looking for a book.

他假装在找书。

3 hope 和 promise 之后,或 agree,arrange,decide,determine / be determined,plan,undertake 之后,但用于 hope 和 promise 后更常见: I hope / hoped to be earning my living in a year's time. 相当于: I hope I will / I hoped I would be earning…

我希望在一年内能自食其力。

determine/be determined,plan 等词可代替上面句子中的 hope,然而意思稍有不同: I promised to be waiting at the door when he came out.

我答应在门口一直等到他出来。

agree, arrange, decide, determine / be determined, plan, under—take 等词可代替上面句子中的 promise,意思各不相同。

4 在被动时态的 believe, consider, suppose, think 等之后: He is believed to be living in Mexico.

据信他现在住在墨西哥。(参见第306节。)

255 不定式的完成式

A 形式

to have+过去分词: to have worked

to have spoken

B 与助动词连用

1 与 was / were 连用表示未完成的计划或安排(参见第 114 节):The house was to have been ready today.

这座房子本应该今天竣工。(但现在还没有)

2 与 should, would, might 和 could 一起构成条件完成时(参见第 223 节): If I had seen her I should have invited her.

我当时要是看到她的话我本会邀请她的。

3 与 should 或 ought 连用表示没有履行的义务,或用于否定式表示错误的或愚蠢的行为(参见第 143 节): He should have helped her.

他本应该帮助她。(但他没有这样做)

I shouldn't / oughtn't to have lied to him.

我本不应该对他说谎话。(但我说了)

4 与 should / would like 连用表示未实现的愿望 (参见第 296 节 D): He would like to have seen it.

他本想看看它。(但没能看到)

这句也可写成: He would have liked to see it.

即可以把句子中两个动词的任一个变成不定式的完成式,而不改变句子的意思。

5 与 could 连用,表示过去没有利用的能力或过去的可能性: I could have made a lot of money.

我本来能够赚到许多钱。(但我没能赚到。)

He could / might have phoned her.

他可能给她打过电话。(也许他打过电话。)

(另参见第 134 节与第 138 节。)

6 与 might / could 连用表示说话人对于未办到某事感到不快或愤怒: He might / could have told me!

他本应告诉我!

I am annoyed that he didn't tell me.

他没告诉我,我很不高兴。(参见第 285 节 D。)

7 与 may / might 连用,表示推想发生在过去的动作:He may / might have left. 相当于:It is possible that he(has) left.

他可能已经走了。(参见第 133 节。)

You might / could have been killed!

(那时) 你可能会送了命的!

8 与 can' t / couldn' t 连用表示否定的推论(参见第 159 节)。He can' t / couldn' t have moved the piano himself.

这台钢琴不可能是他自己搬的。

We knew he couldn't have paid for it, because he had no money.

我们知道不可能是他付了这笔钱,因为他没钱。

9 与 must 连用表示肯定的推论 (参见第 156 节): He must have come this way; here are his footprints.

他一定是走这条路来的;这里还有他的脚印呢。

10 与 needn't 连用表示过去不必要的行为(另参见第 152 节与第 153 节): You needn't have hurried. Now we are too early.

你本不必那么着急。现在我们到得太早了。

You needn't have cooked it. We could have eaten it raw.

你本来不必把它烧熟。我们本可以吃生的。

C与某些别的动词连用

1 与 appear, happen, pretend, seem 连用

注意这里的不定式的一般式与完成式之间的差别: 不定式的一般式: He seems to be a great athlete.

他看来是一名优秀的运动员。相当于: It seems that he is...

我们的印象是他是 ……

He seemed to be a great athlete.

那时他看起来像一名优秀的运动员。相当于: It seemed that he was...

那时我们的印象是他是一名 ……

不定式的完成式: He seems to have been...

他看来曾经是····相当于: It seems that he was...

我们的印象是他曾经是……

He seemed to have been...

那时看来他曾经是······相当于: It seemed that he had been...

那时我们的印象是他曾经是……

这就是说,不定式的完成式表示的动作是一个更早的动作,它发生在主要动词所表示的动作之前。

其他例子如: I happened to have driven that kind of car before. 相当于: It happened that I had driven that kind of car before.

碰巧我过去曾开过那种汽车。

He pretended to have read the book. 相当于: He pretended that he had read it. 他假装曾经读过那本书。

2 与下列动词的被动式连用: acknowledge, believe, consider, find, know, report, say, suppose, think, understand: He is understood to have left the country.

据了解他已经离开了这个国家。(参见第306节。)

3 不定式的完成式可与 claim, expect, hope, promise 连用, 但不那么常见: He expects/hopes to have finished by June. 相当于: He expects/hopes that he will have finished by June.

他预期/希望到6月份能完成。

256 不定式的完成进行式

A 形式

to have been+现在分词: He seems to have been spying for both sides.

他似乎一直在为两方面搞秘密情报。

B 用法

主要用于助动词之后和 appear, seem 之后, 但也可以用在 happen, pretend 以及 believe, know, report, say, understand 的被动式之后: —He says he was talking to Tom.

- —He couldn't have been talking to Tom. Tom wasn't there.
- 一他说他当时在跟汤姆说话。
- 一他当时不可能在和汤姆说话。汤姆当时不在那里。
- —I was following Peter closely.
- —You shouldn't have been following him closely; you should have left a good space between the two cars.
- 一当时我正紧紧地跟着彼得。
- 一你不应该紧跟着他;而应该使两车之间保持相当的距离。

He appears to have been waiting a long time. 相当于: It appears that he has been waiting a long time.

看来他已经等了很久了。

He pretended to have been studying. 相当于: He pretended that he had been studying.

他假装一直在学习的样子。

第二十四章 动名词?

257 形式和用法

动名词的形式与现在分词完全相同: running?speaking?working 等 其用法如下: (a) 用做句子的主语(参见第 258 节): Dancing bored him. 他厌烦跳舞。

(b) 用做表语: Her hobby is painting.

她的业余爱好是画画。

- (c) 用在介词之后(参见第 **259** 节)**:** He was accused of smuggling. 他被指控走私。
- (d) 用在某些动词之后。(参见第 261 节与第 266 节。)
- (e) 用于构成复合的名词: a $^\prime$ diving board 跳板

这里的动名词要重读。(参见第16节。)

258 用做主语

如在第 **240** 节 **E** 中所示,从泛指的、一般的角度来考虑一个动作时,不定式和动名词都可用做主语。可以说: It is easier to read French than to speak it. / Reading French is easier than speaking it.

法语读比说容易。

动名词和不定式一样(参见第 **240** 节 **F**)可以作动词 believe, consider, discover, expect, find, think, wonder 等之后的从句的主语。

在 find 之后可以把 that 和动词 be 一起省略,因此可以说: He found that parking was difficult. / He found parking difficult.

他感到很难停放汽车。

但在其他动词之后,以不省略 be 为妥。

注意,这里动名词与不定式之间可能有意思上的区别: He found parking difficult 意指他通常或总是感到找地方停车较困难。

He found it difficult to park 常意指在某具体场合他发现找地方停车较困难。它也可能意指他总是感到困难,但后一概念常用动名词来表达。

动名词常用于简短的禁令中: No smoking.

禁止吸烟。

No waiting.

禁止停留。

No fishing.

禁止垂钓。

这类句子不能有宾语,因此禁令性的语言中如有宾语则常用祈使句表示: Do not touch these wires.

请勿接触电线!

Do not feed the lions.

请勿向狮子投喂食物!

在格言 Seeing is believing (眼见为实; 百闻不如一见) 中使用的就是动名词。

259 介词之后的动名词

(另参见第98节。)

A 如把动词直接放在介词后面,就必须用动名词形式: What can yon do besides typing? 除了打字你还会做什么?

I have no objection to hearing your story again.

再听一遍你的故事,我没有异议。

Touch your toes without bending your knees!

试着不屈膝去够你的脚趾!

He is good at diving.

他擅长跳水。

She is fond of climbing.

她喜欢爬山。

I'm not keen on gambling. I'm too afraid of losing.

我对赌博不感兴趣。我太怕输了。

He was fined for being drunk in charge of a car.

他因酒醉驾车被罚款。

I' m against saying anything. / I' m for saying nothing.

我反对说话。/我赞成什么都不说。

I' m tired of arguing. I' m fed up waiting.

我厌烦争辩了。我等得腻味极了。(口语)

This is a tool for opening tins.

这是一个开罐头的工具。

Do you feel like going out?

你想出去玩吗?

After swimming I felt cold.

游完泳我感到冷。

She disapproves of jogging.

她不赞成慢跑锻炼。

What about leaving it here and collecting it later?

先把它放在这里等一会儿再来取怎么样?

He is thinking of emigrating.

他正在考虑移居国外。

I'm sorry for keeping you waiting.

很抱歉, 让你久等了。

They escaped by sliding down a rope.

他们是从一根绳子上滑下来逃走的。

We had difficulty in finding a parking place.

我们费了很大劲才找到一个停车位。

You should be ashamed of yourself for behaving so badly.

你应该为你的行为无礼感到羞耻。

In spite of starting late, he arrived in time.

虽然他动身很晚, 却及时到了。

Aren't you interested in making money?

难道你对赚钱不感兴趣?

There's no point in waiting.

等待是毫无意义的。

B 某些动词+介词 / 副词(即短语动词)后面要求接动名词。最常用的这类组合有 be for / against, care for, give up, keep on, leave off, look forward to, put off, see about, take to。(go on 的用法参见第 363 节。)

I don't care for standing in queues.

我不喜欢排队。

Eventually the dogs left off barking.

狗终于不叫了。

I am looking forward to meeting her.

我渴望见到她。

He put off making a decision till he had more information.

他推迟到获得详情之后再决定。

He took to ringing us up in the middle of the night.

他开始习惯在半夜给我们打电话。

260 to

这个词由于既可当做不定式的一部分(参见 A),又可用做介词(参见 B),因此时常引起混淆。

A 置于助动词 be, have, ought, used 后面和 going 后面(如在 be going to 这类短语中)的 to 是后面的动词不定式的组成部分,放上 to 只是为了提醒学生前面的动词要求跟完整的不定式,即带 to 的不定式。

to 也经常置于 hate, hope, intend, would like / love, mean,plan,try,want 等 动词及其他一些动词后面(参见第 **247** 节),以避免重复已经提到的动词不定式**:** — Did you buy cheese?

- —No, I meant to (buy some) but the shop was shut.
- 一你买奶酪了吗?
- 一没有,我本来想买,但是商店已经关门了。

B 除此以外,放在动词后面的 to 很有可能是介词,后面应当跟名词 / 代词或动名词。尤其要注意下列短语动词: look for-ward to, take to, be accustomed to, be used to: I am looking forward to my holidays/to next weekend / to it.

我盼望着假期 / 下个周末 / 它到来。

I am looking forward to seeing you.

我期待着见到你。

I am used to heat/hard work / bad food / noise / dust.

我已习惯于炎热/艰苦的工作/粗劣的食物/嘈杂的声音/尘土。

I am used to standing in queues / to it.

我已习惯排队 / 它了。

必须注意不要弄混 I used to/he used to 等和 I am used to/he is used to 等的不同含义。前者表示过去的习惯或惯例(如 They used to burn coal; now they burn fuel oil only 〈他们过去一直烧煤,而现在只烧油式的燃料了〉)。而后者则指现在的习惯,相当于 I am / he is accustomed to(习惯于) / familiar with(熟悉······): I am used to the cold.

我已习惯了寒冷。(我不怕寒冷了。)

He is used to working at night.

他习惯在夜里工作。(他对夜里工作并不在乎。)(参见第 162 节。)区别句子中的 to 究竟是介词还是不定式的一部分的好办法之是看它后面能否放置一个名词或代词,例如在 I am accustomed to 后面就可放置一个名词或代词: I am accustomed to it I the dark.

我对此/黑暗已习惯了。

因此这里的 to 为介词,它后面跟的动词必须是动名词。

261 后面可以跟动名词的动词

A 其中较重要的词有: admit * dread

anticipate * enjoy

appreciate escape

avoid ?excuse

consider* fancy* (=imagine)

defer ?finish

delay ?forgive

deny *?imagine*

detest involve

dislike?keep (=continue)

loathe recollect*

mean* (=involve) remember* (=recollect)

mind (=object) resent

missresist

pardon risk

postpone ?save (sb the trouble of)

practise ?stop (=cease)

prevent suggest *

propose * (=suggest) understand*

*参见 B。

动名词也用于下列词组如 can't stand (= endure), can't help (=prevent/avoid), it is no use / good 以及形容词 worth 后面。

B 上面这些动词的其他结构带有星号的词也可与 that 从句连用。(参见第 346 节。)

关于 suggest 和 propose (=suggest), 参见第 289 节。

关于 mean / propose (=intend) 与不定式连用,参见第 269 节。

关于 hate, like, love, prefer, 参见第 295 节。

关于其他动词与动名词或不定式连用,参见第二十五章。

dread+不定式的用法如: I dread to think what this will cost.

我不敢想像这要付出多大的代价。

C 动词+动名词句子的举例如下: He admitted taking the money.

他承认他拿了那笔钱。

Avoid over-eating.

要避免暴饮暴食。

Would you consider selling the property?

你愿考虑卖出这产业吗?

He detests writing letters.

他讨厌写信。

She dreads getting old.

她害怕变老。

Do you enjoy teaching?

你喜欢教书吗?

He narrowly escaped being run over.

他差点儿被车压死。

Fancy meeting you!

真想不到会碰见你!

Putting in a new window will involve cutting away part of the roof.

要开一个新窗户,就得拆除部分房顶。

He kept complaining.

他无休止地抱怨。

He didn't want to risk getting wet.

他不愿冒被淋湿的危险。

If we buy plenty of food now it will save shopping later in the week.

如果我们现在买许多食物,就可以省得本周过后去采购了。

I can't understand his/him leaving his wife.

我不明白他为什么离开妻子。

I couldn't help laughing.

我忍不住笑了起来。

It is no good / use arguing.

争辩是没有用的。

Is there anything here worth buying?

这里有什么值得买的东西吗?

262 动词+所有格形容词 / 宾格代词+动名词

A 如果动词或动词+介词后面直接跟动名词,则动名词所表示的动作应是由动词的主语所做出的: Tom insisted on reading the letter.

汤姆坚持要看信。(汤姆看了信。)

如果把所有格形容词或代词置于动名词之前,则动名词所表示的动作应是由所有格形容词或代词所表明的人做出的: He insisted on my / me reading it.

他坚持要我读一读。(我不得不读。)

B 可以与上述两种结构中的任何一种连用的动词及短语有: dislike ?propose understand dread recollect ?approve/disapprove of

fancy remember ?insist on

involveresent?it's no good/use

like (否定) ?save ?object to

mean?stop ?there' sno point in

mind?suggest what' sthe point of

例句如: He disliked working late.

他不喜欢工作到很晚。

He disliked me / my working late.

他不喜欢我工作到很晚。

I object to paying twice for the same thing.

我不赞成为一件东西付两次钱。

I object to his / him making private calls on this phone.

我不赞成他为私事使用这部电话。

He resented being passed over for promotion.

他因提升时把他隔过去了而不满。

He resented my / me being promoted before him.

他对我早于他被提升感到不满。

(关于 mind 参见第 263 节, 关于 suggest 和 propose 参见第 289 节。)

C excuse, forgive, pardon 和 prevent 后面不能直接跟动名词,而要跟所有格形容词 / 代词(宾格)+动名词或代词(宾格)+介词+动名词: Forgive my / me ringing you up so early. 请原谅我这么早给你打电话。

Forgive me for ringing you up so early.

(译文同上。)

You can't prevent his/him spending his own money.

你不能阻止他花自己的钱。

You can't prevent him from spending his own money. (译文同上。)

在 appreciate 后面常常需要跟一个所有格形容词或动名词的被动形式: I appreciate your giving me so much of your time.

真感激你为我花了这么多时间。

I appreciate being given this opportunity.

非常感谢给了我这个机会。

D 所有格形容词与宾格代词的比较

在正式英语中,动名词与所有格形容词连用;但在口语或不那么正式的英语中,常常使用代词而不用所有格形容词。因此学生在用法上可以有所选择,但以使用代词为佳。

当 stop 意指 prevent(防止)时,代词要比所有格形容词更为常用: I can't stop him writing to the papers.

我无法阻止他给报纸写信。

E名词与动名词连用

在非常正式的英语中,名词后面带动名词时,要用名词所有格形式: I don't remember my mother's complaining about it.

我不记得我母亲为此抱怨过。

但更常见得多的用法是省略's: I do not remember my mother complaining.

我不记得我母亲抱怨过。

263 动词 mind

A 这一动词主要用于疑问句和否定句: Would you mind waiting a moment?

请等一会儿,好吗?

I don't mind walking.

我不在乎走路。

B 它后面可直接用动名词,也可用名词、代词或所有格形容词+动名词: I don't mind living here.(I live here and don't object to it.)

我对住在这里没意见。(我住在这里,而且对此并不表示反对。)

I don't mind his/him living here.

我对他住在这里没意见。(他住在这里,而且对此我也并不表示反对。)

He didn't mind leaving home.

他不为要离开家而烦恼。(他愉快地离开了家。)

He didn't mind Ann leaving home.

他不对安离开家感到不快。(安离开了家,而他对此很高兴。)

(关于名词的所有格的用法,参见第 262 节 E。)

C would you mind? 是最常用的表示请求的说法之一: Would you mind not smoking? 请不要吸烟,可以吗? (请别抽烟。)

Would you mind moving your car?

请你把你的汽车移动一下,好吗? (请挪动它。)

如在动名词前加一个所有格形容词,要注意其含义的变化: Would you mind my moving your car? 相当于: Would you object if I moved your car?

我想把你的汽车移动一下,行吗? (这里已经不是请求,而只是一种有礼貌的询问。) 也可用 Do you mind if I move it?(如果我把它移动一下,你有意见吗?)来代替 Would you mind my moving it? 这一句。但 Do you mind my moving it? (我把它移动一下你有意见 吗?)有可能意味着动作已经开始。

D mind 后面绝不能用不定式。

E 人称代词的宾格可代替所有格形容词而与动名词连用。(参见第 262 节 D。)

264 动名词的完成式

如果我们提到的是过去的行为,可用这一形式而不用动名词的一般式(working, speaking 等): He was accused of deserting his ship. / He was accused of having deserted his ship. 他被控弃船逃跑。

在 deny 后常用动名词的完成式: He denied having been there.

他否认曾经到过那儿。

在其他动词后面一般式更为常用。

265 动名词的被动式

一般式: being written

过去式: having been written

He was punished by being sent to bed without any supper.

他被罚不让吃晚饭就去睡觉。

I remember being taken to Paris as a small child.

我记得我在儿时被带到巴黎过。

The safe showed no signs of having been touched.

保险箱没有被人动过的痕迹。

第二十五章 不定式结构与动名词结构?

266 既可与不定式也可与动名词连用的动词

advise (参见第 267 节。) need (参见第 267 节。)

agree (参见第 269 节。)?permit (参见第 267 节。)

allow (参见第 267 节。)?prefer (参见第 295 节。)

begin (参见第 267 节。)?propose (参见第 269 节。)

can / could bear (参见第 267 节。) ?recommend (参见第 267 节。)

cease (参见第 267 节。)?regret (参见第 268 节。)

continue (参见第 267 节。) ?remember (参见第 268 节。)

forget (参见第 268 节。) require (参见第 267 节。)

hate (参见第 295 节。) ?start (参见第 267 节。)

intend (参见第 267 节。) ?stop (参见第 270 B 节。)

like (参见第 295 节。) try (参见第 270 C 节。)

love (参见第 295 节。) ?used to (参见第 270 D 节。)

mean (参见第 269 节。) want (参见第 267 节。)

注意:还有 be ashamed (of) / afraid (of) / sorry (for),参见第 271 节; care (for), 参见第 294 节与第 295 节; go on,参见第 270 节。

267 可与不定式或动名词连用而不改变含义的动词

- (a) begin, start, continue, cease
- (b) can't bear
- (c) intend
- (d) advise, allow, permit, recommend
- (e) it needs / requires / wants

A 动词 begin,start,continue,cease 既可与不定式也可与动名词连用,二者并无含义上的差别,但表示知道或理解的动词以及动词 matter 后面用不定式更普遍些: I began working. / I began to work.

我开始工作了。

He continued living / to live above the shop.

他仍然住在商店的楼上。

I am beginning to understand / see / realize why he acted as he did.

我现在刚刚开始懂得/看出/明白他为什么那样做。

It ceased to matter whether or not he sold his work.

他是否卖掉他的作品,这已无关紧要了。

She never ceased complaining / to complain about prices.

她没完没了地抱怨物价。

B 在 can / could bear 之后(主要用于否定式)动名词和不定式都可使用: I can't bear waiting / to wait.

我不想等了。

但不定式所指的是经过思考而做的动作时,则这一否定的不定式结构表示说话人的感情使他未能做出这一动作: I couldn't bear to tell him.

我不忍心告诉他。(所以我没告诉他。)

C intend 之后接不定式: I intend to sell it.

我打算把它卖了。

这比后面跟动名词要普遍: I intend selling it.

(译文同上。)

用 intend+宾语结构时,后面如带动词一定要带不定式。这种结构只用于正式英语中: I intend him to take over the department.

我打算让他接过这个部门。

D 不定式或动名词与 advise, allow, permit, recommend 连用时如果提到了有关的人,则用不定式较为妥当: He advised me to apply at once.

他建议我立即提出申请。

She recommends housewives to buy the big tins.

她推荐家庭主妇们买大号罐头。

They don't allow us to park here.

他们不准我们在这里停放汽车。

但是如果未提到有关的人,就用动名词: He advised applying at once.

他劝告立即提出申请。

She recommends buying the big tins.

她推荐买大号罐头。

They don't allow parking.

他们不准停放汽车。

在 allow 和 permit 后面的动名词不能带宾语; 因此如果用 al-low / permit+动词+宾语结构, 就必须用不定式并提到有关的人: They allowed their tenants to use the garage. 他们准许房客使用车库。

E it needs / requires / wants 后面既可接动名词,也可接不定式的被动式,而以动名词更为常用: The grass wants cutting. /The grass needs to be cut. 草坪需要修剪了。

268 regret, remember, forget

A 其他动作发生在前,regret,remember,forget 所表示的动作发生在后时,这三个动词则要带动名词: I regret spending so much money. 相当于: I'm sorry I spent so much money.

我很后悔花了这么多钱。(spending 发生在前, regret 发生在后。)

I remember reading about the earthquake in the papers.

我记得在报纸上看到过关于这次地震的消息。(reading 发生在前,remember 发生在后。) remember 后可以接所有格形容词/宾语(名词或宾格代词)+ 动名词: I remember his/him telling me about it.

我记得他告诉过我这件事。

I remember my father ('s) telling me about it.

我记得我父亲告诉过我这件事。

forget+动名词结构只有在 forget 是否定式时才可用。

它常常用在 will never forget 结构中: I'll never forget waiting for bombs to fall.

我永远不会忘记等着炸弹掉下来的时刻。相当于: I'll always remember waiting for bombs to fall.

我将永远记住等着炸弹掉下来的时刻。

B 当 regret, remember, forget 本身表示发生在前的动作时, 后面接不定式: I regret to say that you have failed your exam.

我很遗憾地告诉你,你考试不及格。(regret 是发生在前的动作,say 是发生在后的动作。) 这里 regret 后面通常接 say,inform,tell,并只用于现在时。

remember 可用于任何时态: I'll remember to ring Bill.

我会记着给比尔去电话的。(remember 是发生在前的动作。)

forget 有同样用法: I often forget to sign my cheques.

我常常忘记在支票上签名。

I remembered to lock/I didn't forget to lock the door.

我记住了锁门/我没忘了锁门。(我锁门了。)

相反的情况: I didn't remember/I forgot to lock it.

我没记住/我忘了锁门。(我没锁门。)

C 在 regret, remember, forget 后面也可接名词/代词或 that 从句。

在 remember 和 forget 之后还可接以 how,why,when,where,who 等词开头的名词从句: I can't remember when I saw him last.

我记不得上一次见到他是什么时候了。

I' ve forgotten where I put it.

我忘了把它放在哪儿了。

269 agree/agree to, mean, propose

A agree 和 agree to (介词)

agree 与不定式连用。它的意思同 refuse+不定式正相反: When I asked them to wait, Tom agreed to wait a week but Bill refusedto wait another day.

我请他们等等时,汤姆同意等一个星期,可比尔多一天都不愿等。

agree 不能与名词或宾格代词连用。表示同 refuse+ 宾语相反的意思时不用 agree,而用 accept+宾语: He refused any reward.

他拒绝接受任何报酬。

She accepted the post.

她接受了职务。

agree to (介词) 后面可以接所有格形容词+ 动名词: He agreed to my leaving early on Friday.

他同意我星期五一早走。(我问我是否可以星期五一早走,他说可以。He wouldn't agree to my leaving early 这句表示与它相反的意思。)

agree to 后面可以接名词或宾格代词: He aareed to the change of plan/to this/to that. 他同意计划的变动/这个意见/那个意见。

B 意指 intend(打算)的 mean 与不定式连用: I mean to get to the top by sunrise. 我打算在日出时到达山顶。

意指 involve(涉及)的 mean(只能与非人称主语连用)与动名词连用:He is determined to get a seat even if it means standing in a queue allnight.

即使要整夜排队,他也决心要买到票。

C 意指 intend(打算)的 propose 后面通常用不定式: I propose to start tomorrow. 我打算明天动身。

意指 suggest (建议) 的 propose 后面通常要跟动名词: I propose waiting till the police get here.

我建议等到警察来这儿。

(关于 propose+ that… should 结构,参见第 289 节。)

270 go on, stop, try, used (to)

A go on 意指 continue (继续) 时后边通常跟动名词。但当说话人虽继续谈论同一话题但转到另一个方面时,它通常与 ex-plain,talk,tell 等的不定式连用: He began by showing us where the island was and went on to tell us aboutits climate.

他先给我们指出那个岛的位置,接着就讲起岛上的气候来。

比较以下两个句子: He went on talking about his accident(他接着谈他的意外事故)这个句子意指他一直在谈这一事故。但如说 He went on to talk about his accident(他接着就谈起了事故的事),则暗示他很可能先谈的是他自己或他的旅途情况,

但事故却是第一次讲到。

B stop 意指 cease (停止) 时后接动名词: Stop talking.

不要说话了。

stop 后也可以接宾语+ 动名词: I can't stop him talking to the press.

我无法阻止他对报界发表谈话。

这里可以用所有格形容词, 但这种情况不多。

stop 意指 halt(止步)时后可以接表示目的的不定式: I stopped to ask the way.

我停下来问路。(我停下来以便问路。)

C try 通常表示 attempt (试图) 时后面跟不定式: They tried to put wire netting all round the garden.

他们想用铁丝网把花园全围起来。(他们试图这样做。)

这个句子并未告诉我们他们是否做成了。

try 也可以表示 make the experiment(试验),这时后面要跟动名词: They tried putting wire netting all round the garden.

他们试着用铁丝网把花园全围了起来。

这个句子表示他们已用铁丝网把花园全围起来了,看看是否能解决问题(他们可能是在企图挡住野兔或狐狸)。我们知道他们已经完成了想做的事;我们所不知道的是这种动作是否达到预期效果,即是否挡住了狐狸。

D 主语+ used+ 不定式表示过去的习惯或例行活动: I used to swim all the year round. 过去我曾经一年四季都游泳。(我一度整年都游泳。)(参见第 162 节。)

但主语+ be/become/get+used+to(介词)结构后面接名词、代词或动名词则意指be/become/get accustomed(to)(已习惯于······): I am used to heat/to living in a hot climate.

我对炎热的气候已经习惯了。(我已经在炎热的气候中生活了一段时间,因此我不怕热。)(参见第 163 节。)

271 be afraid (of), be sorry (for),

be ashamed (of)

A be afraid of+ 动名词或动名词+ 名词/代词。这里动名词常常表示主语担心发生的事情。 这些常常是无意让发生的动作: He never swam far out. He was afraid of getting cramp. 他从来不游得很远。他怕抽筋。

She avoids lonely streets. She is afraid of being mugged.

她避免在没人的马路上行走。她怕遭抢劫。

She didn't tell him because she was afraid of upsetting him.

她没有告诉他, 因为怕他不安。

be afraid+不定式表示主语非常害怕,以致不敢采取某一动作。这些通常是有意让发生的动作: He was afraid to jump.

他不敢跳。(他没跳。)

She was afraid to protest.

她不敢提出异议。(她保持沉默。)

be afraid 后面也可以跟 that 从句,表示担心: I'm afraid (that) he'll blame me for this.

我担心他会把这事怪在我头上。

但是,特别是用于第一人称中时,它可表示(相当轻度的)抱歉: I'm afraid(that) we haven't any tickets left.

恐怕没有剩余票了。

(关于 I'm afraid so/not,参见第 347 节。)

B be sorry for+ 动名词意指道歉/表示遗憾。动名词所表示的动作常是以前发生的,但也可以是即将发生的: I'm sorry for making such a noise last night.

昨晚我太吵了,很对不起。

I'm sorry for disturbing you.

对不起,打搅您一下。(现在)

但这里 I'm sorry to disturb you 的说法更为普遍。

be sorry+不定式可以表示抱歉或悲伤: I'm sorry to hear that you've been ill.

听说你生病了,我很难受。(另参见第 26 节 F。)

如果由不定式表示的是无意让发生的动作,这两个动作则是同时发生的: I was sorry to see him looking so ill.

看他病成这副样子我很难过。

如不定式表示一个无意让发生的动作时,be sorry 又发生在先,这时它与 regret 的用法相同(参见第 268 节 B): I'm sorry to inform you that there has been an accident.

告诉你一件不幸的事,发生了意外事故。

be sorry that…结构也是可以的。注意: I'm sorry that 表示十分真诚的道歉, I'm sorry to say that 或 I'm afraid that 这类表示抱歉的方法与其相比就显得程度非常轻,甚至于是敷衍的。

C be ashamed of+ 动名词或 be ashamed of yourself 等, for+ 动名词

这里的动名词表示发生在先的动作: You should be ashamed of lying to him. /You should be ashamed of your- self for lying to him.

你应当为对他说谎而感到羞耻。

be ashamed+不定式中的不定式通常表示发生在后的行为: I' m ashamed to tell you what this carpet cost.

我真不好意思告诉你买这块地毯花了多少钱。

would be ashamed+不定式常表示说话人的感情(意志)使其不能进行这一动作: I'd be ashamed to ask for help.

要我请别人帮忙,我羞于启齿。(因此我不会去求人。)

第二十六章 分词

272 现在(或称主动)分词

A 形式

动词原形+ ing: working loving ?sitting

B 用法

1 构成进行时态 (参见第 164 节与第 178 节等): He is working. 他正在工作。

You' ve been dreaming.

你一直在做梦。

2 用做形容词 (参见第 17 节): running water 自来水

floating wreckage 漂浮着的残骸

dripping taps 滴着水的水龙头

leaking pipes 漏水的管道

这里名词和分词都要重读。请与在动名词+名词结构中重读的情况比较。(参见第16节。)

3 位于 have+ 宾语之后 (参见第 121 节): He had me swimming in a week.

他一个星期就教会我游泳了。

We have people standing on our steps all day.

我们的台阶上整天站着人。

I won't have him cleaning his bike in the kitchen.

我不能让他在厨房里擦洗他的自行车。

4 有时用来代替关系代词+ 动词(参见第 77 节): a map that marks/marked political boundaries=a map marking politicalboundaries

一张标明行政疆域的地图

people who wish/wished to visit the caves= people wishing to visit thecaves 希望去参观岩洞的人们

children who need/needed medical attention= children needing medicalattention 需要医疗护理的孩子们

5 用来构成现在分词/分词短语(如 adding/pointing out/remind-ing/warning 等)可以用在间接引语中引入陈述句: He told me to start early, reminding me that the roads would be crowded.

他让我早点动身, 提醒我说晚了路上会拥挤。

(参见第 324 节 C。)

上述各种用法已经在本书前文中讨论过。现在分词还可以有下列各种用法: 6 位于表示感觉的动词之后。(参见第 273 节。)

7 位于 catch/find/leave+宾语之后。(参见第 274 节。)

8 位于 go, come, spend, waste, be busy 之后。(参见第 275 节。)

9 除在上述的各种主句或从句中使用以外,有时可在其他类型的主句或从句中代替主语+动词。(参见第 276 与第 277 节。)

273 位于表示感觉的动词之后

A 这类表示感觉的动词主要有 see, hear, feel, smell 以及 listen (to), notice 和 watch。它们可与宾语+ 现在分词连用: I see him passing my house every day. 我每天看见他从我房前走过。

Didn't you hear the clock striking?

你没听见时钟响了吗?

I felt the car skidding.

我感觉到汽车在打滑。

She smelt something burning and saw smoke rising.

她闻到有东西着了,还看见烟在冒。

I watched them rehearsing the play.

我看着他们排练那场戏。

由现在分词表示的动作可以是到目前已结束的,也可以是仍在进行的。I saw him changing the wheel(我看见他换轮子)可以指看见了动作的整个过程,也可指只看见动作的一部分。B see,hear,feel 以及 listen(to),notice 和 watch 后面也可接宾语+ 不带 to 的不定式: We saw him leave the house.

我们看见他离开了家。

I heard him make arrangements for his journey.

我听见他安排他的旅行。

这里的不定式含有整个动作结束了的意思,I saw him changethe wheel 意指我看到了动作的全过程。

C 两种形式的比较

由于现在分词既可表示动作到目前为止已结束,也可表示仍在进行之中,所以它的用法较为普遍。但意欲强调这一动作到目前为止已经结束时,要用不带 to 的不定式。此外,表达一连串的动作时它比分词形式在形式上要简练些: I saw him enter the room, unlock a drawer, take out a document, photo-graph it and put it back.

我看见他进了屋, 打开抽屉, 拿出文件, 拍完照又放了回去。

D 在被动语态中,句子的动词之后要用带 to 的不定式: He was heard to say that the minister had been bribed.

人家听见他说部长受贿了。

274 catch,find,leave+宾语+现在分词

A catch/find: I caught them stealing my apples.

我撞见他们正在偷我的苹果。(我发现他们正在干这件事。)

If she catches you reading her diary, she'll be furious.

如果她撞见你正在偷看她的日记,她一定会发火的。

这一动词后由现在分词表示的动作总是使主语感到不愉快。如果与 find 连用就没有不愉快的感觉: I found him standing at the door.

我发现他正站在门口。相当于: I saw him standing/He was standing at the door when I arrived.

我看见他正站在门口/我到的时候他正站在门口。

与 find 连用时,宾语可以是无生命的东西: He found a tree lying across the road.

他发现一棵树横倒在马路上。

B leave 可与现在分词连用: I left him talking to Bob. 相当于: He was talking to Bob when I left.

我走时他正在和鲍勃说话呢。

275 go, come, spend, waste, be busy

A go 和 come

go 和 come 后面可以跟表示物理运动的动词的现在分词形式以及动词 shop 的现在分词形

式: They are going riding/skiing/sailing.

他们要去骑马/滑雪/航行了。

Come dancing. 来跳舞。

I'm going shopping this afternoon.

今天下午我要去购物。

(关于 go 和 come 后面跟表示目的的不定式,参见第 335 节。)B spend/waste+ 一个表示时间或金钱的名词或短语+ 现在分词:He spends two hours(a day) travelling.

他(每天)往返途中要花两小时。

He doesn't spend much time preparing his lessons.

他不花多少时间准备功课。

We wasted a whole afternoon trying to repair the car.

我们浪费了整整一下午的时间想把汽车修理好。

He spent a lot of money modernizing the house.

他在把房子搞成现代化的方面花了许多钱。

C be busy+ 现在分词: She is/was busy packing. 她忙着收拾行李。

276 代替主句的现在分词短语

下面A和B中的现在分词结构主要用于书面英语。

A 如主语同时做出两个动作时,通常其中的一个动作可以由现在分词来表示,这时分词既可以放在动词不定式之前,也可以放在之后: He rode away. He whistled as he went.

他骑马走了。他一边走一边吹着口哨。相当于: He rode away whistling.

他吹着口哨骑马走了。

He holds the rope with one hand and stretches out the other to the boy in the water. $\sharp \pm$: Holding the rope with one hand, he stretches...

他一只手拉着绳子,把另一只手伸给水中的男孩。

B 如主语所做的一个动作紧接着所做的另一个动作,第一个动作常常用现在分词来表示,而且分词必须放在前面: He opened the drawer and took out a revolver. 相当于: Opening the drawer he took out a revolver.

他打开抽屉,拿出了一把左轮手枪。

She raised the trapdoor and pointed to a flight of steps. 相当于: Raising the trapdoor she pointed to a flight of steps.

她把翻板活门拉开,指着一段台阶。

We take off our shoes and creep cautiously along the passage. 相当于: Taking off our shoes we creep cautiously along the passage.

我们脱了鞋,小心地、偷偷地沿着走廊走过去.

这里好像用现在分词的完成式更合乎逻辑,如 Having opened, Having raised, Having taken off 等。但除了使用现在分词的一般式可能使意思含混不清的时候以外,不必要使用完成式。举一个必须使用分词完成式的例子: Eating his dinner herushed out of the house 会给人这样一种印象,好像他手里还拿着菜盘子就走出了房子。因此,这里最好用 Having eaten hisdinner···形式。

C 第二个动作构成第一个动作的一部分时或第二个动作是第一个动作的结果时,可以用现在分词表示第二个动作: She went out, slamming the door.

她出去后,砰地关上门。

He fired, wounding one of the bandits.

他开了枪, 打伤了其中一个匪徒。

I fell, striking my head against the door and cutting it.

我摔了个跟头,头撞在了门上,划了个口子。(这个句子中有三个动作,后面的两个动作是用分词来表示的。)

这样使用的现在分词的主语并不一定要同前面的动词的主语相同。它可以有自己的主语:

The plane crashed, its bombs exploding at it hit the ground.

飞机坠毁了,它携带的炸弹在它触地的同时爆炸了。

277 代替从句的现在分词短语

这种结构主要用于书面英语。

现在分词可代替 as/since/because+ 主语+ 动词,即分词可

帮助解释其后面所发生的动作: Knowing that he wouldn't be able to buy food on his journey he tooklarge supplies with him. 相当于: As he know...

他知道路上买不到食物,就带了很多食物。

Fearing that the police would recognize him he never went out in day-light. 相当于: As he feared...

因为害怕警察认出他来, 他从不白天出门。

注意: 当 being 位于句首时,通常意为 as he is 或 as he was (由于他是……): Being a student he was naturally interested in museums. 相当于: Because/As he was a student... 他作为一个学生,自然对博物馆感兴趣。

这里 being a student 的意思并不是 while he was a student (在他学生时代)。

这样使用的分词的主语并不一定要与跟在后面的动词的主语相同。它可以带有自己的主语: The day being fine, we decided to go swimming.

天气好, 我们决定去游泳。

在这种情况下分词必须跟在作其主语的名词/代词之后。Be-ing fine the day, we decided…是错误的。但是 Being athletic, Tom found the climb quite easy(作为运动员,汤姆觉得这次爬山比较容易)是正确的,因为汤姆同时是 found 和后面跟着的 climb 的主语。

同一个句子中可以连着用两个或两个以上的现在分词: Realizing that he hadn't enough money and not wanting to borrow from father, he decided to pawn his watch.

知道自己钱不够,又不想从父亲那里借钱,他决定把手表当掉。

Not knowing the language and having no friends in the town, he found ithard to get a piece of work.

既不懂当地语言, 在此城又没有朋友, 他发现自己很难找到一份工作。

278 分词的完成式(主动语态)

A 形式

having+ 过去分词: having done ?having seen

B用法

分词的完成式可代替现在分词,如第 276 节 B 中所举的例子所示(即同一个主语的一个动

作紧接着另一个动作): Tying one end of the rope to his bed,he threw the other end out of thewindow. 相当于: Having tied one end of the rope to his bed,he threw the other end out of the window.

他把绳子的一头系在床上,另一头扔出窗外。

分词的完成式强调第一个动作在第二个动作开始前就已经完成,但除非使用现在分词的一般式可能使意思混淆不清外,一般不必要使用这种结构。下面是造成混淆的一个例子: Read-ing the instructions,he snatched up the fire extinguisher。这句话给人的印象好像是两个动作同时发生的。因此在这里用分词的完成式比较合适: Having read the instructions,he snatched up the fire extinguisher.

看完了说明书之后,他迅速拿起了灭火器。

如果两个动作之间有一段间隔,则必须用分词的完成式: Having failed twice, he didn't want to try again.

已经失败了两次, 他不想再试了。

如第一个动作持续一段时间时,也必须用分词的完成式: Having been his own boss for such a long time,he found it hard to acceptorders from another.

自己当老板已经这么久了,他觉得难以听从别人的差遣。

279 过去分词(被动语态)及分词的完成式(被动语态)

A 形式

规则动词的过去分词由不定式加 ed 或 d 构成: worked ?loved 不规则动词的过去分词参见第 39 节。

B 用法

1 用做形容词: stolen money 偷来的钱

a written report 一份书面报告

fallen trees 倒了的树木

broken glass 碎玻璃

tired drivers 筋疲力尽的司机

blocked roads 堵塞了的马路

2 用来构成完成时态、不定式的完成式、分词的完成式以及被动语态: he has seen

to have loved

it was broken

3 正如现在分词可以用来代替主语+ 主动态动词结构一样,过去分词可以代替主语+ 被动态动词结构: She enters. She is accompanied by her mother. 相当于: She enters, accompanied by her mother.

她由母亲陪着走了进来。

He was aroused by the crash and leapt to his feet. 相当于: Aroused by the crash, he leapt to his feet.

他被撞击声惊醒, 一跃而起。

The bridge had been weakened by successive storms and was no longersafe. 相当于: Weakened by successive storms,the bridge was no longer safe.

Having been weakened...

这座桥遭到接二连三的暴风雨的破坏,已经不安全了。(请看下面)

As he was convinced that they were trying to poison him, he refused toeat anything. 相

当于: Convinced that they were trying to poison him, he refused to eat any-thing. 因确信他们正企图毒死他,他拒绝进食。

C 当有必要强调分词表示的动作发生在其后一个动词表示的动作之前时,应当用分词的被动完成式(having been+ 过去分词): Having been warned about the bandits,he left his valuables at home.

听到关于强盗出没的警告,他把贵重物品都留在家里了。

Having been bitten twice, the postman refused to deliver our letters unlesswe chained our dog up.

邮递员被狗咬了两次之后要我们把狗拴起来,不然就不给我们送信了。

280 误连分词

通常认为分词是说明它前面的名词或代词: Tom, horrified at what he had done, could at first say nothing.

汤姆被自己所做的事吓坏了,一开始都说不出话来了。

Romeo, believing that Juliet was dead, decided to kill himself.

罗密欧相信朱丽叶已死, 就决定自杀。

A man carrying a large parcel got out of the bus.

一个拿着一大包东西的男人下了公共汽车。

但要注意分词也可被主要动词把它跟所说明的名词或代词隔开: Jones and Smith came in, followed by their wives.

琼斯和史密斯进来了,他们的妻子跟在后边。

She rushed past the policeman,hoping he wouldn't ask what she had inher suitcase. 她赶紧从警察身边走过去,希望他不会问起手提箱里有什么。

如果在分词前面没有名词或代词,则认为分词是说明后面主要动词的主语的: Stunned by the blow, Peter fell heavily.

彼得被这一击打昏了,重重地倒了下去。(彼得被击晕了。)

Believing that he is alone, the villain expresses his thoughts aloud.

那恶棍相信他身边没别人了, 出声说出了自己的想法。

如果不遵守上述法则,就会造成混乱。 Waiting for a bus abrick fell on my head 的意思似乎是说砖头在等候公共汽车,那岂非笑话。分词与名词或代词被这样错误地连接时就叫做误连分词。上述句子应改写成: As I was waiting for a bus a brick fell on my head.

在我等公共汽车时一块砖头落到了我的头上。

下面再举几个误连分词的例子: (误) When using this machine it must be remembered…

(正) When using this machine you must remember…

使用这台机器时(你)必须记住 ……

- (误) Believing that I was the only person who knew about this beach, the sight of someone else on it annoyed me very much.
- (正) As I believed I was the only person/Believing that I was the only per-son on the beach, I was annoyed by the sight of someone else.

因我自以为是唯一一个在这海滩上的人,看到有别人在这里时所以心里很不高兴。

第二十七章 命令、请求、邀请、劝告及建议

281 祈使句表示命令

A 第二人称祈使句

1 它与不带 to 的不定式形式相同: Hurry!

赶快!

Wait!

等一等!

Stop!

停止!

在构成否定式时,要在动词之前加上 do not/don't: Don't hurry!

不要太急!

2 所命令的对方的名字常常不提,但可由一个置于句末的名词来表示: Eat your dinner,

boys.

男孩子们,吃饭吧。

Be guiet, Tom.

汤姆,安静点儿。

这些名词也可以置于动词之前,但这种用法不那么普遍。除非说话人有意表示无礼,或想要有所区别,否则很少使用代词 you: You go on; I'll wait.

你们先走,我等着。

3 表示肯定意义的祈使句之前可以用 do: Do hurry.

快一点儿吧!

Do be quiet.

安静点儿吧!

do 可以使句子具有劝说的口气,但也可以表示厌烦。

B 第一人称祈使句

形式

let us/let's+不带 to 的不定式: Let us stand together in this emergency.

在这紧急关头, 让我们团结一致。

构成否定式时,一般要在不定式之前放一个 not: Let us not be alarmed by rumours.

我们不要因小道消息而惊慌。

但在日常口语中,可以把 don't 放在 let's 之前: Don't let's be alarmed by rumours. (译文同上。)

通过 let us/let's 说话人可以催促对方以某种方式行事,或者宣布希望对方接受的某一决定,或者表示一种建议。(另参见第 289 节。)

C 第三人称祈使句

形式

let him/her/it/them+不带 to 的不定式 (另参见第 322 节): Let them go by train.

叫他们坐火车去吧。

但这在现代英语中并不是很普遍的形式。下面这种说法要普遍些: They are to go/must go by train.

他们应该/必须坐火车去。

这一祈使句的否定式 let him/her/them+ 不定式的否定式不用于现代英语中,应当用 must not 或 is/are not to 来代替: They must not/are not to go by air. 他们不能乘飞机走。

282 其他表示命令的方式

A 对第三人称的命令用主语 + shall 结构 (用在书面英语中) shall 可用于非常正式的规章文书中,这种规章通常在一定时期内有效。这类结构常常用被动形式 (参见第 234 节): The Chairman, Secretary, and Treasurer shall be elected annually.

主席、秘书和司库应每年改选一次。(俱乐部规章)

A record shall be kept of the number of students attending each class.

每次上课的学生人数均应予以记录。(大学条例)

B 主语+will 主要用于对第三人称的命令: When the alarm rings passengers and crew will assemble at their boat sta-tions.

警报响时,旅客与船员必须在各自的位置上集合。(船上的通告)

这是一种正式的、不带个人感情色彩的、断然的命令。这样用的 will 表明发出命令的人确信他的命令将受到遵循。它主要用于由具有权威的人,如船长、各军种的军官、学校校长、运动队教练等发出的书面指示: The team will report to the gymnasium for weight-lifting training.

队员应到健身房报到参加举重训练。

注意:如果把 Will 挪到主语前面,就把命令变为请求了。在口头命令中可以使用 you will: You will not mention this meeting to anyone.

你不得向别人提及这次会议。

用 must 较普遍而且有礼貌: You must not mention this meeting to anyone.

你不能向别人提及这次会议。

C 命令常由 must 表示,意思是某一动作是对方的义务: You must not smoke in the petrol store.

你不能在汽油库里抽烟。

Passengers must cross the line by the footbridge.

旅客必须从天桥过马路。

Dogs must be kept on leads in this area.

本区内的狗必须拴起来。

D 指示或命令可以由 be+不定式结构来表示: You are to report for duty immediately. 你必须立即去报到接受任务。

The switchboard is to be manned at all times.

任何时候电话总机那儿都应有专人在岗负责。

E 在书面指示中可以用 may not 表示禁令: Candidates may not bring textbooks into the examination room.

考生不得携带教科书进入考场。

283 can/could/may/might I/we? 表示请求

A can/could/may/might I/we+have+名词/代词

在这些形式中 can 是最口语化的:(a)'Can I have a sweet?' said the little boy. "我可以吃一粒糖果吗?"小男孩问。

成人用 can I/we? 时比用 could I/we? 的语气更自信。

could I/we? 是最普遍使用的形式: (b) Could I have a cup of tea?

我能喝一杯茶吗?

Could I have two tickets, please?

请给我两张票,好吗?

may 和 might 要比 could 更正规一些, 但在日常口语和书面英语中都可使用: (c) May/Might I have a copy of the letter?

是否可以给我这封信的一份副本?

用间接引语表示这类请求时,常用 ask(+间接宾语)+for+宾语: The little boy asked(me)for a sweet.

小男孩(向我)要一块糖。

He asked for a copy of the letter.

他要这封信的一份副本。

但上面的(c)也可用下面这种方式表示为间接引语: He asked if he might have a copy of the letter.

B can/could/may/might I/we+动词

关于它们之间的区别请见上述 A。

它们可表示请求允许(参见第 131 节),但如与特定的动词如 see, speak(to)与 talk(to)连用时,也可表示一般的要求: May/Could I see Mr Jones?

我能见见琼斯先生吗?相当于: I would like to see Mr Jones.

我想见见琼斯先生。

用间接引语表示这一类的请求时,可用 ask to see/to speak to 等: I asked to see Mr Jones. 我要求见琼斯先生。

但不能在 ask 之后再加名词/代词,这样会造成含义上的变化。(参见第 243 B。)

在日常口语中也可以说 ask for+ 姓名等。特别是用于转述一次电话交谈时: Caller: Could I speak to the secretary, please?

打电话者: 劳驾, 我找秘书讲话。相当于: She asked for the secretary/to speak to the secretary.

她找秘书/要跟秘书说话。

C do you think/I wonder (ed) /was wondering if 可位于 could/ might I/we 之前。有了这一类前缀成分,语气变得更谦恭或缺少自信: I wonder/was wondering if I could have tomorrow off?

我不知道能不能明天请个假?

Do you think I could speak to the secretary?

我是不是可以和秘书谈谈了?

请注意,动词由疑问语序变成了陈述语序。(参见第104节。)

284 could/will/would you? 等表示请求

带有星号的各形式请见下面K中的注释。

A could you? * 是一种非常有用的表示请求的形式: Could you please show me the way? 请您给我指一指路,好吗?

加上 possibly 则可以表示说话人的要求是有所逾越的: Could you possibly lend me £500? 你能否借给我 500 英镑?

couldn't表示说话人希望得到比对方刚才表示的较为有利一些的回答: 一I can't wait.

- —Couldn't you wait five minutes?
- 一我不能等了。
- 一你不能等五分钟吗?

you couldn't···could you? 可用来表示一种成功希望不大的请求: You couldn't wait five minutes,could you?

你不能再等五分钟,是吗?

You couldn't give me a hand with this, could you?

这事你帮不了我, 是吗?

(在以上两种情况说话人并不真的预期能得到满意的回答。)

B will/would you * (please)? 形式: Will/Would you please count your change? 请点一点找给你的钱好吗?

would you (please)与 could you 的意思是同样的。

will you 有命令的含义,因此不够礼貌。

will/would you 可位于一个短语之后: Shut the door, will you?

把门关上,好吗?

但这种形式只能用于非常友好、随便的场所。否则就会显得很无礼。

will/would 也可用于对第三人称的请求: Would Mrs Jones, passenger to Leeds, please come to the Enquiry Desk?

去往利兹的旅客琼斯夫人请到问讯处来,好吗?

Will anyone who saw the accident please phone this number...

目睹事故发生者请拨这个电话号码……(警方通告)

C you'll…won't you? 是一种劝导性的请求, 主要用于亲朋好友之间: You'll write to me, won't you?

你会给我写信的,是吗?

D would you mind* +动名词(参见第 263 节): Would you mind moving your car? 请您移动一下您的车,您不会介意吧?

E perhaps you would 表示说话人自信另一方将答应其请求。它通常不用于谈话或信件的开头,但可以在稍后使用: Perhaps you would let me know when your new stock arrives. 相当于: Please let me know when your new stock arrives.

新货到达时请通知我。

F if you would····是一种非常有用的请求形式。这是英语口语中一种例行的纯属礼貌性质的请求,说话人确信他的请求会得到答应: If you'd fill up this form/take a seat/wait a few minutes.

请填写这份表格/坐/等几分钟。(在办公室)

If you'd sign the register/follow the porter.

请在登记本上签名/跟服务员走。(在旅馆里)

这种请求中常加上 just 用来表示所要求做的事是很简单、容易的: If you'd just put your address on the back of the cheque.

请在支票背面写下你的地址就可以了。(在商店)

G would you like to…? 也是一种表示请求的形式: Would you like to take a seat? 相当于: Please take a seat.

请坐!

H I should/would be very grateful if you would…是一种王要用于信函中的正式的请求形式;也可用于口语中: I should be very grateful if you would let me know if you have any vacan-cies.

如能通知我是否有空缺我将十分感谢。

I Would you be good/kind enough to keep me informed?

请随时告诉我一些情况,好吗?

Would you be so kind as to keep me informed?

(译文同上。)

J I wish you would 也是一种表示请求的形式,有时含有说话人认为对方本应该已经帮助他或本应已提出要给予帮助的意思(参见第 301 节): I wish you'd give me a hand. 我希望你能帮我一下。

K 带有星号的 would 和 could 形式可由短语如 do you think? 或

I wonder (ed) if 或 I was wondering if 等引导 (参见第 104 节): Do you think you could lend me $\,$ £500?

你借我 500 英镑行吗?

285 might 表示请求

A you might 表示一种较随便的请求: You might post these for me.

请你帮我把这些寄出去。

但这种请求只能用于友好、随便的场合,否则就会显得生硬无礼。

B 用某一种声调,并把重音落在某一重要的字上, might 就可表示一种带有责备口气的请求: You might 'help me (你该能帮我一把)中重音落在 help 上时,有你为什么不帮我或你本应该帮我的含义。

C might 与其他人称连用表示某种不满: He might ' pay us!(他总该付钱给我们吧!)中重音落在 pay 上,意为他没有付钱,我们很生气。

D might+ 完成式表示对以前未做某事表示不满或责备: Youmight have 'told us (你当时本 应该告诉我们) 中重音落在 told 上,意为你应该告诉我们。

286 邀请

A will you have/would you like+ 名词: Will you have a drink?

您想喝点什么吗? (有时缩略为 Have a drink。)

Would you like a coffee?

您想喝杯咖啡吗?

注意: do you want 不含有邀请的意思。

(关于 want 和 would like, 参见第 296 节。)

在间接引语中用 offer+ 间接宾语(=被邀请者)+ 名词结构: She offered me a drink/a coffee.

她请我喝了一杯/咖啡。

B will/would/could you? 及 would you like to? 形式 Will you have lunch with me tomorrow? (明天同我一起吃午饭好吗?)是一种非正式邀请,但 Would/Could you have

lunchwith me? /Would you like to have lunch with me? (能和我一起吃午饭吗?/愿意和我一起吃午饭吗?)这种邀请既可用于正式场合,也可用于非正式场合。

转述这种邀请时用 invite/ask+ 间接宾语 +to+ 名词结构,或 invite/ask+ 间接宾语+ 不定式结构: He invited me to lunch/to have lunch with him.

他邀请我同他一起吃午饭。

C对邀请的回答

对请喝一杯/请抽一支烟等邀请的答语: Yes, please.

好吧。

No, thank you.

不,谢谢。

对 would you/could you/would you like 等表示的邀请的答语: I'd like to very much. /I'd love to.

我非常愿意。

I' d like to very much but I' m afraid I can' t.

我非常愿意,但是恐怕不行。

这里当然不能说 wouldn't like。

邀请及答语可以用间接引语来转述。一般用下列方法: He invited us to dinner/to a party/to spend the weekend with him and weaccepted/but we refused/but we had to refuse because...

他邀请我们和他一起吃晚饭/参加聚会/度周末,我们答应了/我们谢绝了/我们不得不谢绝 因为······

D 当邀请人并不真指望他的邀请会被接受时,可以说: You wouldn't like another drink, would you?

你不想再喝一杯了吧? (大概说话人自己还想喝一杯,因此想找个借口,然而并不指望他的朋友会接受他的邀请。)

You wouldn't like to come with me, would you?

你不会和我一起去吧? (同样,他不指望他的邀请会被接受。)

287 劝告的形式

A must,ought to 和 should 可用来表示劝告: You must read this book. It's marvellous. 你该读一读这本书。这本书非常好。

You should grow your own vegetables.

你应该自己种菜吃。

You ought to plant some trees.

你应当种几棵树。

在间接引语中 must, ought to 和 should 可以不发生变化,或用 advise+ 宾语结构来转述: He advised me to plant trees.

他劝我种树。

B you had better +不带 to 的不定式(参见第 120 节): You'd better take off your wet shoes. 你最好把湿鞋子脱掉。

You'd better not wait any longer.

你最好不要再等了。

had better 可用于第三人称: He'd better stop taking those pills.

他最好别再服用那些药片。

C if I were you I should/would: If I were you I' d buy a car.

如果我是你,我就买一辆汽车了。

这种形式常常被缩略为 I should/would, I 稍加重音: ' I' d buy a car.

(译文同上。)

在间接引语中 If I were you I should/would····由 advise+宾语结构来转述: He advised me to buy a car.

他劝我买辆汽车。

D I advise/would advise you+不定式: I (would) advise you to apply at once.

(你要是问我的意见的话)我劝你马上去申请。

I advise/would advise+动名词: I('d) advise applying at once.

(译文同上。)

E why don't you…? 可表示劝告或建议: Why don't you learn to play your guitar? 你为什么不学弹吉它?

Why don't you take a holiday?

你为什么不休假?

表示劝告时,可由 advise+宾语结构转述: He advised me to take a holiday.

他劝我去度假。

Fit is time you + 过去时态: It is time you bought a new coat.

你该买一件新外衣了。(参见第293节。)

可用下列方法表示转述: He said it was time I bought a new coat.

他说我该买一件新外衣了。

288 may/might as well+动词原形表示劝告

这种结构表示一种口气非常轻的劝告: You may/might as well ask him.

你不妨问问他。相当于: It would do no harm to ask him.

你问问他没坏处。

She said I might as well ask him.

她说我不妨问问他。

这种结构可用于第三人称: He may as well come with me.

他还不如跟我一起来。

也可以用于第一人称来谈论自己: As there isn't anything more to do, I may as well go home early.

既然这里没有别的事要做, 我还不如早点回家。

289 建议

A 用 let's 或 shall I/we 来表示对第一人称的建议

let's +动词原形: Let's paint it ourselves.

我们自己来刷漆。

有时可加上 shall we: Let's get the paint today, shall we?

我们今天把油漆弄来,好吗?

shall I/we+动词原形: Shall we invite Bill?

我们邀请比尔好吗?

对 let's 或 shall we 表示的建议的肯定答语中可以用 yes 或 let's。

let's not 可用做带玩笑口气的否定回答: —Let's take the tent.

- —Let' s not!
- 一我们把帐篷带上吧。
- 一可别!

或引导一个否定的建议: Let's not start too early.

我们别出发得太早。

这里也可以用 don't let's: Don't let's start too early.

(译文同上。)

B 表示第一人称和第二人称的建议

why don't we/you +动词原形或 why not +动词原形/表示时间或地点的短语: Why don't we meet and discuss it?

我们碰个头讨论一下这件事不行吗?

Why not meet and discuss it?

(译文同上。)

- —Where shall we meet?
- —Why not here? /Why not at the hotel?
- 一我们在哪儿见面?
- 一就在这儿不行吗? /在饭店不行吗?

在日常口语中也可用 what's wrong with/what's the matterwith+名词: What's wrong with the hotel?

饭店有什么不好吗?

what/how about +动名词/名词: Where shall we sleep?

我们睡在哪儿?

What about renting a caravan?

租一辆旅行拖车怎么样?

What about a bed and breakfast place?

那么住在"供应住宿和早餐"服务的小客店怎么样?

suppose I/we/you +一般现在时/一般过去时: Suppose you offer/offered to pay him? 要是你提出付给他钱会怎么样?

C 由 suggest 或 propose 表示的第一、第二和第三人称的建议用 suggest (+所有格形容词)+动名词或 suggest that +主语+ 现在时态/ should。

propose 的用法与 suggest 完全相同,但只是比 suggest 稍稍正式一点。

在主动语态中,suggest +should+不定式要比 suggest+ 现在时态或过去时态更为正式。 I suggest (your) selling it.

我建议(你)买下它。

We suggest that you should sell it. (正式)

我们建议你应该买下它。

I propose that the secretary sends in/should send in a report. (正式)

我建议秘书必须把报告送上来。

I propose that a report (should) be sent in. (正式)

我建议(必须)送上一份报告来。

在被动语态中,必须使用 that…should 结构。

should be 用于正式英语中时,可省略 should,只留下 be。见上面例句。

D 用间接引语表示的建议

转述建议的间接引语中可使用下列各种形式: suggest/suggested (+ 所有格形容词) + 动名词

suggest that+主语+现在时态/should

suggested that+主语+过去时态/should

suggest (任何时态) + 名词/ 代词: Tom suggests/suggested (our) having a meeting. 汤姆建议(我们)开个会。

Ann suggests that he sells/should sell his house.

安建议他把房子卖了。

Ann suggested that he sold/should sell it.

安建议他把它卖掉。

Mr Jones suggested a meeting.

琼斯先生建议开个会。

(关于用 let's 表示的建议,参见第 322 节。)

第二十八章 虚拟语气

290 形式

A 虚拟现在时形式与不带 to 的不定式完全相同;因此 be 的虚拟现在时形式不分人称均为 be,所有其他动词的虚拟现在时其形式均与其一般现在时形式相同,只是第三人称单数不加 s: The queen lives here.

女王住在这里。(一般现在时)

Long live the queen!

女王万岁!(虚拟语气)

B 除 be 动词之外,虚拟过去时形式与一般过去时形式完全相同,而 be 的虚拟过去时形式为 I/he/she/it was 或 I/he/she/itwere。表示怀疑或不真实的结构中,常常用 were 而不用 was: He behaves as though he were the owner.

他表现得就好像他是主人。(其实他不是。)

在日常口语中,常常用 was 来代替 were。(参见第 225 节。)虚拟的过去常常被称为"不真实的过去"。

291 虚拟现在时的用法

A 虚拟现在时常用在某些惊叹句中,表示一种祝愿或希望,时常是牵涉到某种超自然的力量: (God) bless you!

愿上帝保佑你!

God save the gueen!

愿上帝保佑女王!

Heaven help us!

老天保佑我们!

Curse this fog!

这该死的雾!

Come what may, we'll stand by you!

不管发生什么事,我们都将站在你一边!

请注意 if need be 这一短语的用法,它的含义相当于 if it isnecessary (如果有必要的话): If need be we can always bring another car.

如果有必要的话我们还可以再开一辆车来。

B 虚拟现在时有时用在诗歌中,或者表示某种愿望,或者用在条件从句或让步从句中:

Stevenson: Fair the day shine as it shone in my childhood.

史蒂文森: 但愿阳光就像我童年时代那么灿烂。

Shakespeare: If this be error, and upon me proved...

莎士比亚:倘若这是个错误,在我身上得到证明……

Byron: Though the heart be still as loving...

拜伦: 虽说此心热恋如初 ……

C 如在第 235 节中所述,某些动词后面常使用 should+ 动词原形。如是 be,则 should 有时可被省略: He suggested that a petition(should) be drawn up.

他建议起草一份请愿书。

这样剩下一个不带 to 的不定式,就构成虚拟语气。

292 as if/as though+ 虚拟过去时

虚拟过去时也可用在 as if/as though 之后,以表示当前不真实、不大可能或有疑问的事情 (as if 和 as though 之间没有什么区别): He behaves as if he owned the place.

他的所作所为好像他是这个地方的主人。(其实他并不是这儿的主人,或很可能他不是主人,或我们并不知道他是不是主人。)

He talks as though he knew where she was.

他说话的神气就好像他知道她的下落似的。(其实他并不知道,或很可能不知道,或我们并不知道他是否知道。)

He orders me about as if I were his wife.

他对我指东指西的,就好像我是他的妻子似的。(其实我不是。)

as if/as though 前面的动词也可用一般过去时而不用改变后面虚拟语气的时态: He talks/talked as though he knew where she was.

如果指的是过去不真实的或设想的动作,则应在 as if/asthough 后面用过去完成时: He talks about Rome as though he had been there himself.

他谈论起罗马来就好像他去过那里似的。(其实他没去过,或很可能没去过,或我们并不知道他去过没有。)

这里 as if/as though 前面的动词也可变成一般过去时,而不用改变后面虚拟语气的时态:

He looks/looked as though he hadn't had a decent meal for a month.

他看起来好像已有一个月没有吃过一顿像样的饭了。

293 it is time+ 虚拟过去时

it is time 后面跟不定式: It's time to start. 是动身的时候了。

或者与 for+ 宾语+ 不定式连用: It is time for us to go.

我们该走了。

或者与主语+ 虚拟过去时或过去进行时连用: It is time we went.

我们该动身了。

It is time we were leaving.

(译文同上。)

这些形式之间在含义上稍有区别。

it is time+ 不定式仅表示做某一件事的适当的时间到了。

it is time+ 主语+ 虚拟过去时意味着已经稍迟于预定时间。可以在句中加上 high 以强调这一含义: It's high time we left.

我们早该动身了。

it is time+ I/he/she/it 后面不能接 were,而要接 was: It's time I was going. 我该走了。

(关于条件句中的虚拟过去时/不真实的过去,参见第 222 节;关于位于 would rather/sooner 之后的虚拟过去时,参见第 297 节;关于位于 wish+ 主语之后的虚拟过去时,参见第 300 节;关于间接引语中的不真实的过去,参见第 310 节。)

第二十九章 care, like, love,hate,prefer,wish

294 care 和 like

care 主要用于否定式与疑问式中。

A care for+ 名词/动名词与 like+ 名词/ 动名词的含义非常接近。

可以说:(a) Does/Did Tom care for living in the country? /Does/Did Tom likeliving in the country?

汤姆愿意住在乡下吗?

(b) You don't care for science fiction, do you? /You don't like sciencefiction, do you? 你不喜欢科学幻想小说,是吗?

对上面(b)的回答可以是: I don't care for it. /I don't like it much. /Oh yes, I like it.

我不喜欢它。/我不太喜欢它。/噢!不,我喜欢它。(最后一个回答中不能用 care。)

care 在疑问式中有时暗示一丝怀疑或犹豫: Does Ann care for horror movies?

安喜欢看恐怖影片吗? (说话人认为她大概不喜欢,或说话人因为她竟好像喜欢看恐怖电影而感到惊讶。)

如用 would you care (for) …? 时,怀疑或犹豫的色彩表现得更明显。

B would care 和 would like

would care for+ 名词或 would care+ 不定式与 would like+ 名词/不定式相似。但是 would care (for) 通常不用于肯定的陈述句。用 would you care (for) …? 表示的建议不如用 would you like…? 表示的建议那样自信。

(a) Tom: Would you care for a lift, Ann?

汤姆:安,你愿意搭我的车吗?(可能汤姆的车子不太舒服,而她又喜欢舒服。)

(b) Tom: Would you care to see my photos, Ann?

汤姆:安,你想看看我的照片吗?(他不敢肯定她是否愿意看。)

对(b)最好的回答方式是: I'd like to see them very much.

我很愿意看。

同在肯定句中一样,这里用 would like 代替 would care。

在否定句中,用法也是相同的: —I wouldn't care to live on the 35th floor.

—Oh, I' d rather like it.

一我不在乎住在35层楼上。

一噢,我挺愿意的。

would care for/would like 有时可与动名词连用。(参见第 295 节 B。)

C would have cared (for) 和 would have liked

二者在此都指并未发生的动作: Ann: I'd have liked to go with Tom.

安: 我本倒愿意和汤姆一起走。(我想和汤姆一起走,可没能如愿以偿。参见第 296 节 D,这里不能用 care。)

Bill: But he walked all the way! You wouldn't have cared for/have likedthat, would you? /Would you have cared for/have liked that?

比尔: 但他是一直走了去的! 你总不愿意那样做吧?

D 请不要将 care 的上述用法与 care for 和 care (about) 混淆: 1 care for (=look after 照顾) 主要用于被动语态: The old people were cared for by their families. 老年人受家庭照顾。

2 care (about) (=feel concerned 关注,在乎)主要用于否定式与疑问式。

I don't care (about) 与 I don't mind 意思相似。因此常可用 Idon't mind 代替 I don't care: —It will be very expensive.

—I don't care/mind. /I don't care about/mind the expense. /I don't care/mind what it costs.

一这会很贵的。

一我不在乎。/我不乎花多少钱。/我不在乎要花多少钱。

但请注意 I don't care (about) 意指 I am indifferent (to)(我满不在乎,漠不关心)而 I don't mind 意指 I don't object(to)(我不反对),如 He/It dosen't worry/upset/annoy me (他/这不使我发愁/心绪烦乱/烦恼)。

I don't mind 远远比 I don't care 更有礼貌,而且 I don't care

常常令人听起来感到妄自尊大和自私。在否定疑问式中两者都可以使用: Don't you care/mind what happens to him?

你难道不关心他出什么事吗?

Didn't you care/mind what happened?

当时出什么事你竟然不关心吗?

但在一般疑问句中这两者有较大的区别: Do you care? 相当于: Are you concerned? /Do you feel concern?

你关心吗? /你在乎吗?

而 Do you mind? 常常是 Do you object? (你反对吗?) 的意思。 (另参见第 263 节。)

295 care, like, love, hate, prefer

A 用于条件句中时,这些动词之后常常接带 to 的不定式: Would you care/like to come with me?

你愿意和我一起去吗?

I' d like to (come) very much. /I' d love to (come).

我非常高兴去。

I' d hate to spend Christmas alone.

要我一个人过圣诞节,我会很不高兴的。

这里我们想的是将来的特定的动作。

B 但是,如果没有想到一个特定的动作而是谈及主语的一般喜好,则在 would care for, would like 后面接动名词。注意这里的 would care for/would like 可由 would enjoy 代替: She would like/would enjoy riding if she could ride better.

她要是骑马能骑得好一点, 她会喜欢骑马的。

I wonder if Tom would care for/would enjoy hang-gliding.

我不知道汤姆是否会喜欢三角翼滑翔。

hate 和 prefer 同样可以这样使用,但是比较少见。

C 如果 care for, like (=enjoy), love, hate 和 prefer 用于现在时和过去时,后面一般接动名词: He doesn't/didn't care for dancing.

他不喜欢跳舞。

They love/loved wind-surfing.

他喜欢冲浪运动。

He prefers/preferred walking to cycling.

他喜欢散步, 不喜欢骑自行车。

但这里也可以用不定式,而且在美国英语中特别普遍: They love/loved to run on the sands. 他们喜欢在沙滩上跑步。

D 请注意 like 也有认为是明智的或正确的的意思。这时 like 后常常可接不定式: She likes them to play in the garden.

她愿意让他们在院子里玩。(她认为他们在那里玩是安全的。)

I like to go to the dentist twice a year.

我总爱每年去看两次牙医。(我认为这样是明智的。)

上面一句与 I like going to the dentist 比较,后者含有我喜欢去看牙医的意思。同样: I don't like to go(我不想去)常常意指 I don't think it right to go(我认为去是不正确的)及 Idon't like going(我不喜欢去)。

注意这两个否定式之间还有一个区别。I don't like to go 常常意指 I don't go because I don't think it right (我不去是因为我认为不该去)。I don't like going 常常意指 I go, although I

don't enjoy it (尽管我不愿意去,我还是去)。同样: I didn't

like to open the letter (我不想拆信) 意为 I didn't open it be-cause I didn't think it right to do so (我没拆开信,因为我认为不该这么做)。但 I didn't like opening the letter 意为 I openedit reluctantly (我不情愿地拆开了信)。

E 在 enjoy 和 dislike 之后常常接名词/代词或动名词。

296 would like 和 want

A 在下列情况下,这两个词可以互换使用: 1 用于请求或有关请求的问句中(但这里不使用 would not like,参见下面 B1):Customer: I'd like some raspberries,please. /I want some raspberries,please.

顾客:请给我拿点儿木莓。

Greengrocer: I' m afraid I haven' t any. Would you like somestrawberries?

蔬菜水果商:对不起,我没有木莓了。您来点草莓怎么样?

Customer: No, I don't want any strawberries, thanks.

顾客:不,谢谢,我不想要草莓。(这里不能用 wouldn't like。)

I would like 常常要比 I want 更有礼貌。

would you like? 要比 do you want? 更有礼貌,也更殷勤。

would you like?可以含有愿意满足别人的希望的意思。do youwant?则不含有这种意思。因此,与顾客或客人打交道时,通常用 would you like?: Caller: I'd like to/I want to speak to Mr X, please.

打电话者: 我想找 X 先生说话。

Telephonist: Mr X is out. Would you like to speak to Mr Y?

话务员: X 先生出去了。您跟 Y 先生说行吗?

2 如果不是提出请求而只是谈到愿望时,可以随意用 would like 或 want 的肯定式、疑问式或否定式。它们的意思没有区别,然而,I want 要比 I would like 显得更自信。 I want 通常不用于表示不可实现的愿望: I would like to live on Mars.

但愿我能住到火星上去。

B would like 和 want 在下列用法中不能互换: 1 表示邀请时用 would you like? 结构,而不能用 do you want? 结构: Would you like a cup of coffee?

您想喝一杯咖啡吗?

Would you like to come to the theatre?

您想来剧院看戏吗?

do you want? 用于此处只表示一种询问,不含有邀请的意思。

2 wouldn't like 和 don't want 是有区别的。

don't want 表示没有某种愿望; wouldn't like 表示不喜欢。因此,wouldn't like 不能用来回答邀请或提议,因为在这种回答中 wouldn't like 的口气将是不礼貌的。在这里常用 don'twant 或其他形式来代替 wouldn't like: —Would you like some more coffee?

- —No, I don't want any more, thanks. /No, thanks.
- 一您再来点儿咖啡吗?
- 一不,不要了,谢谢。

C 在过去时中这两种形式的变化不同。在间接引语中 want 变为 wanted,而 would like 不起变化: Tom said,'I would like/want to see it.'

汤姆说:"我想看看它"。相当于: Tom said he would like/wanted to see it. 汤姆说他想看看它。

但如果不用间接引语的结构来表示, 只能说: Tom wanted tosee it (这里我们不能用 would like 因为 Tom would like to seeit 的意思是指现在或将来)。

D would like 有两个过去形式: would like+ 不定式的完成式或 would like+ 不定式/名词/代词。这些形式只能表示未能实现的愿望: I'd like to have gone skiing. /I'd have liked

a day's skiing.

我本想去滑雪的。(但我未能实现我的愿望。)

297 would rather/sooner 和 prefer/would prefer

would rather 和 would sooner 之间没有区别,但经常听到的是 would rather。

A would rather/sooner 的主语与后面的动作的主语相同时,would rather/sooner 之后常常接不带 to 的不定式: Tom would rather read than talk.

汤姆宁可读书而不愿谈天。

1 would rather/sooner+不带 to 的不定式可用来表示现在的动作,以代替 prefer+动名词: Tom prefers reading to talking.

汤姆喜欢读书而不喜欢谈天。

注意: would rather 后跟不带 to 的不定式+than+不带 to 的不定式,而 prefer 后跟动名词+to+动名词。

prefer 后面也可跟名词,而在 would rather 之后要求只带动词原形: He prefers wine to beer. 相当于: He would rather drink wine than beer.

他喜欢喝红葡萄酒而不喜欢喝啤酒。

I prefer tennis to golf. 相当于: I' d rather play tennis than golf.

我喜欢打网球而不喜欢打高尔夫球。

某些 prefer+ 名词的情况不能用 would rather 完全确切地表达出来: He prefers dogs to cats(他喜欢狗而不喜欢猫)和 Hewould rather have dogs than cats(他宁可养狗而不愿养猫)意思并不完全相同。

2 would rather+ 不带 to 的不定式不能表示过去的偏爱。所以与 Tom would rather read than talk 相当的过去形式为 Tompreferred reading to talking/liked reading better than talking。(参见下面 4。)

3 would rather+ 不带 to 的不定式可代替 would prefer+带 to 的不定式: I' d rather fly than go by sea. /I' d prefer to fly.

我宁愿乘飞机也不愿乘船。

注意:用 would prefer 时,只提到你愿意做的这件事,而不提另外一件你不愿做的事,如上所述。因此,如想把愿意和不愿意的两个动作都提到,则要用 would rather。

这两个结构后面带名词时情况也一样: —Would you like some gin?

- —I' d prefer a coffee. /I' d rather have coffee than gin.
- 一您想喝点杜松子酒吗?
- 一我想喝点咖啡。/我想喝点咖啡,不想喝杜松子酒。

4 would rather/sooner 和 would prefer 后面都可跟完成式,但后者带 to: We went by sea but I'd rather have gone by air/I'd prefer to have goneby air.

我们是乘船去的,可我本想乘飞机去。(我愿意乘飞机去,可我的愿望未能实现。)

这和 would like+ 不定式的完成式有点相似, would like+带 to 的不定式的完成式也表示未能实现的愿望。(参见第 296 节 D。)

B 如句子的两个主语不相同,可用主语+ would rather/sooner 后面跟主语+ 过去时(虚拟语气)结构: —Shall I give you a cheque?

- —I' d rather you paid cash.
- 一我付给您支票行吗?
- 一我想您最好付现金。

注意: 用 would rather+主语+didn't 表示带否定意义的偏爱: —Would you like him to paint it?

- —No, I' d rather he didn't (paint it).
- 一您想让他给它上油漆吗?
- 一不,我希望他不要这么做。

Ann wants to tell Tom, but I' d rather she didn't (tell him).

安想告诉汤姆,但我不想让她告诉他。

然而,prefer 与 like 相同,后面都跟宾语+带 to 的不定式: I'd prefer you to pay cash. 我想你最好付现金。

I' d prefer him not to paint it.

我不想让他给它上油漆。

I' d prefer her not to tell Tom.

我不想让她告诉汤姆。

298 表示偏爱的另一些例句

A I like hot weather better than cold. 相当于: I prefer hot weather to cold.

I' d rather/sooner have hot weather than cold.

我喜欢热天,不喜欢冷天。

I like skiing better than skating. 相当于: I prefer skiing to skating.

I' d rather/sooner ski than skate.

我喜欢滑雪胜于滑冰。

B I liked playing in matches better than watching them. 相当于: I preferred playing matches to watching them.

我喜欢参加比赛而不喜欢观看比赛。(这里不能用 would rather/soon-er。)

- C —Would you like to start today or would you rather wait/would you pre-fer to wait till tomorrow?
- —I' d rather go today (than wait till tomorrow). I' d rather not wait. / I' d prefer to stary today. I' d prefer not to wait.
- 一你愿意今天动身呢,还是宁愿等到明天?
- 一我宁愿今天动身(而不愿等到明天)。我不想等了。
- I' d rather deliver it by hand than post it.

这东西我宁愿亲手递交也不想邮寄。

He says he' d rather go to prison than pay the fine.

他说他宁愿蹲监狱也不肯交罚款。

I' d rather pay his fine for him than let him go to prison.

我宁愿替他交罚款,也不愿让他蹲监狱。

rather than… would+不带 to 的不定式可用于较正式的英语中: Rather than let him go to prison, I would pay his fine myself.

我宁肯自己代他付罚款, 也不愿让他蹲监狱。

D prefer 与 rather 的一些例句: —Do you want Ann to repair it herself?

- —I' d prefer her to ring/I' d rather she rang the electrician. /I' d rather she didn' t try to repair it herself.
- 一您想让安自己来修吗?

一我想还是让她打电话给电工更好。/我不想让她自己修。

They want to camp in my garden but I' d rather they didn't. I' d rather they camped by the river.

他们想要在我的园子里露营,不过我不想让他们在我的园子里露营。

我宁愿他们在河边露营。

He usually has a pub lunch, but she'd prefer him to come home for ameal/she'd rather he came home for lunch. She'd rather he didn't spend money in pubs.

他一般在小酒馆里吃午饭,但她宁愿他回家吃饭/她宁愿他回家吃午饭。她不愿他把钱花在小酒馆里。

299 wish, want 和 would like

wish, want 和 would like 都表示愿望。

wish 是最正式的说法, 关于 want 和 would like 参见第 296 节。

A wish 之后可以直接跟不定式或宾语+ 不定式: —Why do/did you wish to see the manager?

- —I wish/wished to make a complaint.
- 一为什么你要见经理?
- 一我要投诉。

The government does not wish Dr Jekyll Hyde to accept a professorship ata foreign university.

政府不想让杰基尔•海德博士接受某一外国大学的教授职务。

在不太正式的话语中可用 want 或 would like: I would like/want to speak to Ann. 我想跟安说话。

I wanted to speak to Ann.

我想跟安说话。

She doesn' t/didn' t want the children to stay up later.

她不想让孩子们睡觉太迟。(如果在这里用 like 来代替 want,则意为她不赞成孩子们太迟去睡觉。话中表示了不喜欢的意思。)

B want 和 would like 之后可直接跟名词: I want/would like a single room.

我想要单人房间。

He wanted a single room.

他想要单人房间。

wish 的用法较为受限制一些: 可以用 wish 来表示祝愿某人幸运/成功/圣诞快乐等: He said,

'Good luck!'

他说: "祝你好运!" 相当于: He wished me luck.

他祝我运气好。

也可在写信时说向某人致以好的/最好的愿望: With all good wishes, yours Bill 祝你万事如意! 你的比尔(写于信的末尾)

Best wishes for the New Year

致以新年的美好祝愿!(写于贺年卡上)

除这一类的祝愿语之外,wish之后一般不接名词作宾语。

wish+for 之后可跟名词/代词,但通常含义是主语对自己的愿望得以实现不抱太大的希望。 这主要用于感叹句中: How he wished for a drink!

他多希望能有点东西喝!(大概他能得到点喝的这件事是没有希望的事。)

What he chiefly wished for was a chance to explain.

他主要希望能有一个解释的机会。(好像他不大可能有这个机会。)

300 wish+ 主语+ 虚拟过去时

A wish(that)+ 主语+ 过去时(虚拟语气;参见第 290 节 B)这一结构用于对目前的情况表示遗憾: I wish I knew his address.

但愿我知道他的地址就好了。相当于: I'm sorry I don't know his address.

很遗憾,我不知道他的地址。

I wish you could drive a car.

我真希望你会开车。相当于: I'm sorry you can't drive a car.

真可惜你不会开车。

I wish hs was coming with us.

我多希望他能跟我们一起来。相当于: I'm sorry he isn't coming with us.

真遗憾他不能跟我们一起来。

wish 可用在过去时中而不改变虚拟的意思: He wished he knew the address.

他多希望他知道那个地址。相当于: He was sorry he didn't know the address.

他感到遗憾他不知道那个地址。

在间接引语中,虚拟过去时形式不用变化: 'I wish I lived nearer my work,'he said.

"但愿我住得离工作地再近点,"他说。相当于: He said he wished he lived nearer his work. 他说但愿他能住得离工作地再近点。

B wish (that) + 主语+ 过去完成时 (虚拟语气) 表示对过去的情况表示遗憾: I wish (that) I hadn't spent so much money.

但愿我没花掉这么多钱就好了。相当于: I'm sorry I spent so much money.

真后悔我花去了这么多钱。

I wish you had written to him.

但愿你给他写过信就好了。相当于: I'm sorry you didn't write to him.

真遗憾你没有给他写信。

wished 可代替 wish 而不改变虚拟的意思: I wished I hadn't spent so much money. 相当于: I was sorry I had spent so much money.

(译文同上。)

变为间接引语时,这些动词不用变化: 'I wished I had taken his advice,' she said.

"但愿我当时听了他的劝告就好了,"她说。相当于: She (said she) wished she had taken his advice.

她(说她)但愿当时听了他的劝告就好了。

C if only 的用法与此完全相同。它的意思与 wish 相同,只是比 wish 更生动: If only we knew where to look for him!

如果我们知道上哪里去找他就好了!

If only she had asked someone's advice!

假如她早请教别人一下就好了!

301 wish (that) +主语+would

A wish+主语+过去时态可以表示对现在的情况表示遗憾,如上面第 300 节所示: I wish that he wrote more regularly.

我多希望他能勤来信。相当于: I'm sorry he doesn't write more regularly. 我很遗憾他来信不勒。

B wish+ 主语+ would 的意思与上面所说的相似,但是它所表示的动作是从句的主语所能控制的。即:只要某人愿意,这种动作是可以改变的。wish+ would 可表示主语现在愿意或不愿意进行某个动作,这常常是一种习惯性动作。

I wish he would write more often.

我多希望他肯常写信来。相当于: I'm sorry he isn't willing to write more often. 很遗憾,他不愿意常写信来。

I wish he would wear a coat.

我多希望他肯穿件外衣。相当于: I'm sorry he refused to wear a coat.

可惜他不想穿外衣。

wish 与 would 不能使用同一个主语,否则句子就会不符合逻辑。

因此不能出现 I wish+ I would 这种结构。

C wish+ 主语+would 也可表示对目前情况的不满以及希望能有所改变: I wish he would answer my letter.

但愿他能给我写回信。(我等他的回信已经很久了。)

I wish they would change the menu.

我希望他们的饭菜能变变花样。(我吃香肠吃腻了。)

I wish they would stop making bombs.

我希望他们能停止制造炸弹。

但说话人通常是对发生他所要求的变化不抱有多大希望。上面的第三个例句表示完全没有希望。如同在上面 B 中一样,wish+主语+ would 在这里限于表示有可能事情有所改变。wish 和 would 同样不能使用同一个主语。

如果从句的主语是人,动作应该能受主语控制,句中仍然存在着愿意或不愿意的意思。但有时 wish+主语+would 结构中从句的主语不是指人而是指物。这时就不能表示愿意或不愿意: I wish it would stop raining.

我希望雨停下来。

I wish the sun would come out.

我希望出太阳。

I wish prices would come down.

我希望物价能降下来。

I wish the train would come.

我希望火车会来。

wish+主语+would 在这里与 would like 非常相似。但 wouldlike 不限于表示事情有可能改变,也不含有对目前情况不满的意思。同时,would like 结构也不暗示没有希望: I would like Jack to study art.

我想让杰克学艺术。(我让他学艺术。/我希望他今后学习艺术。)

I wish Peter would study art.

我多希望彼得肯学习艺术。(彼得大概已拒绝学习艺术。)

D I wish you would 也可以用来表示请求。这里不表示说话人已感到对方会拒绝请求,但它暗示对方在某个方面使说话人感到恼火或失望。I wish you would help me 常含有你本该已提出帮我的意思。I wish you would stop humming/interrupting/ asking silly questions 表示说话人为哼歌曲声/打断/所问的愚蠢的问题而恼火。但是 I wish you would 结构可用来表示对别人主动提出的帮助做出的反应,这时不含有不满意的意思:

- —Shall I help you check the accounts?
- —I wish you would.
- 一我帮你查对账目好吗?
- 一我希望你能这样做。(你要能帮我,我会非常高兴。)

E if only+ would 在上文 B 及 C 中可代替 wish+ would, 但不能用来代替 D 中的请求。 if only 比 wish 更有戏剧性: If only he would join our party!

他要是肯来参加我们的聚会,那该有多么好!

第三十章 被动语态

302 形式

A 把主动态动词变成被动态,是把助动词 be 变为主动态动词原来的时态,再加上主要动词的过去分词。主动态动词的主语这时变为被动态动词的施动者。这个施动者常常不被提到。若要提到,可置于 by 之后或放在从句的后面: This tree was planted by my grandfather. 这棵树是我祖父种的。

B 被动语态的现在、过去及完成时态的例句: 主动态: We keep the butter here. 我们把黄油放在这儿。

被动态: The butter is kept here.

黄油在这里放着。

主动态: They broke the window.

他们把玻璃窗打碎了。

被动态: The window was broken.

玻璃窗被打碎了。

主动态: People have seen wolves in the streets.

人们在街上见到过狼。

被动态: Wolves have been seen in the streets.

在街上看到过狼。

C 各个进行时态的被动态要求用 be 的进行式加上主要动词的过去分词, be 的这种进行时形式在其他方面很少使用: 主动态: They are repairing the bridge.

他们正在修桥。

被动态: The bridge is being repaired.

桥正在修理。

主动态: They were carrying the injured player off the field.

当时,他们正把受伤的选手抬出比赛场地。

被动态: The injured player was being carried off the field.

当时, 受伤的选手正被抬出比赛场地。

在被动句中,除现在及过去进行时外,其他进行进态用得非常少。因此像下列这类句子通常不能用被动态: They have/had been repairing the road.

他们一直在修理这条路。

They will/would be repairing the road.

他们将要修理这条路。

D 助动词+动词原形结构可借助于被动式来构成被动语态: 主动态: ?You must/should shut these doors.

?你必须把这些门关上。

被动态: ?These doors must/should be shut.

这些门必须关上。

主动态: ?They should/ought to have told him.

他们本该告诉他才是。(不定式的完成主动式)

被动态: ?He should/ought to have been told.

?本应该告诉他才是。(不定式的完成被动式)

E 其他不定式结构

表示喜欢、热爱、希望、想要及与其相似意义的动词+宾语+不定式,由不定式的被动式构成其被动语态: 主动态: ?He wants someone to take photographs.

他想找个人来照些相。

被动态: ?He wants photographs to be taken.

?(译文同上。)

表示命令/请求/劝告/邀请的动词+间接宾语+不定式,可用主动词的被动式来构成被动语态: 主动态: He invited me to go.

他邀请我去。

被动态: ?I was invited to go.

我被邀请去。

但是, 如是 advise/beg/order/recommend/urge+间接宾语+不定式+宾语的结构,则可构成两种被动语态:或如上所述将主要动词变为被动语态,或用 advise 等+that… should+被动式:主动态: He urged the Council to reduce the rates.

他敦请市议会减轻捐税。

被动态: The Council was/were urged to reduce the rates.

市议会被敦请减轻捐税。

He urged that the rates should be reduced.

他敦请减轻捐税。

至于 agree/be anxious/arrange/be determined/determine/de-cide/demand+不定式+宾语,则通常用 that… should 结构来表示被动语态,与上面所述的第二种方式相同: 主动态: He decided to sell the house.

他决定把房子卖了。

被动态: He decided that the house should be sold.

他决定,房子必须得卖掉。(参见第235节。)

F 动名词结构

如是 advise/insist/propose/recommend/suggest+动名词+宾语结构,通常由 that…should 结构来表示被动语态,与上面所述相同: 主动态: He recommended using bullet-proof glass.

他建议用防弹玻璃。

被动态: He recommended that bullet-proof glass should be used.

他建议该使用防弹玻璃。(参见第235节。)

F动名词结构

如是 it/they+need+动名词结构,也可用 it/they+need+被动式结构来表示,两种结构在意思上都是被动语态。其他动名词结构的被动态由动名词的被动式来表示:主动态: I remember them taking me to the Zoo.

我记得他们曾带我去过动物园。

被动态: I remember being taken to the Zoo.

我记得被带到动物园去过。

303 主动和被动时态对照表 A 时态 / 动词形式/主动态/被动态

B 在口语化的话语中,有时用 get 代替 be: The eggs got(=were) broken. 鸡蛋破了。

You'll get (=be) sacked if you take any more time off.

你要是再溜号不上班, 就会被炒鱿鱼了。

C 注意: 从理论上讲,句子如含有一个直接宾语和一个间接宾语时,可以有两种被动态形式: Someone gave her a bulldog.

有人送给她一只牛头狗。

She was given a bulldog.

有人送给她一只牛头狗。

A bulldog was given to her.

(译文同上。)

第一种形式远较第二种形式更为常用,即应把间接宾语(而不是直接宾语)变成被动态动词的主语。(参见第 302 节 E, F。) D 对主动态动词的主语是谁(或是什么)提问时,常用陈述语序(参见第 55 节): What delayed you?

什么事耽误了你?

Which team won?

哪个队赢了?

同样,对被动态动词主语是谁(或是什么)提问时,也常用陈述语序: —Something was done.

- —What was done?
- 一干了一些事。
- 一干了什么事?
- —One of them was sold.
- —Which of them was sold?
- 一其中的一个被卖掉了。
- 一其中的哪一个被卖了?

主动态问句中的疑问动词可以变为被动态问句中的肯定动词: What did they steal? (主动语态,疑问动词)

他们偷走了什么?

What was stolen? (被动语态,肯定动词)

什么东西被偷走了?

不过,如问句针对被动态动词的施动者,则必须使用疑问动词: Who painted it? (主动语态,肯定动词)

这是谁画的?

Who was it painted by? (被动语态,疑问动词)这是谁画的?

在其他类型的问句中,无论是用了主动语态还是用了被动语态,均使用疑问动词: When /

Where / Why did he patit it? (主动语态)

他在何时 / 何地 / 为何画这个?

When / Where / why was it painted? (被动语态)

它是在何时 / 何地 / 为何画出来的?

304 被动态的各种用法

被动态用于以下各种情况: A 动作的施动者很明显,没有必要提到时: The rubbish hasn't been collected.

垃圾没有清走。

The streets are swept every day.

马路每天都清扫。

Your hand will be X-rayed.

你的手要照X片。

B 不知道、不确切知道或忘记了谁是施动者时: The minister was murdered.

部长被谋杀了。

My car has been moved!

我的汽车被挪动过了!

You'll be met at the station.

有人会到车站去接你。

I' ve been told that...

有人告诉我说……

C 主动动词的主语是人们时: He is suspected of receiving stolen goods.

他被怀疑接受了赃物。(人们怀疑他……)

They are supposed to be living in New York.

据猜测他们现在住在纽约。(人们猜测他们住在……)

(关于不定式结构与被动动词,参见第245节与第306节。)

D 主动句的主语是不定代词 one 时,如 One sees this sort of ad—vertisement everywhere (这样的广告到处可见),通常可以表示为: This sort of advertisement is seen everywhere. 这样的广告到处可见。

在很口语化的话语中可用不定代词 you(参见第 68 节)和主动动词: You see this sort of advertisement everywhere.

你在任何地方都可以见到这种广告。

但较正式的英语要求用 one+主动动词或用通常的被动形式。E 对所做的事比对做事的人更感兴趣时: The house next door has been bought (by a Mr Jones).

隔壁的房子被(一个叫琼斯的先生的人)买下了。

如果认识琼斯先生,就会使用主动态: Your father's friend, Mr Jones, has bought the house next door.

你父亲的朋友琼斯先生买下了隔壁的房子。

同样: A new public library is being built (by our local council).

正在(由我们地方议会)兴建一个新公共图书馆。

然而在不太正式的英语中,可用不定代词 they(参见第节)和主动动词: They are building a new public library.

他们正在修建一个新的公共图书馆。

而地方议会成员当然也可以说: We are / The council is building…

我们/地方议会正在修建……

F 使用被动语态可避免说出别扭或不合语法的句子时。这样做通常可避免改换主语: When he arrived home a detective arrested him.

他回到家时, 一名侦探逮捕了他。

最好表示为: When he arrived home he was arrested (by a detective).

他回到家就被(一名侦探)逮捕了。

When their mother was ill neighbours looked after the children.

孩子们的母亲生病时, 邻居们照顾他们。

最好表示为: When their mother was ill the children were looked after by neighbours. 孩子们的母亲生病时,他们由邻居们照顾。

G 有时为了心理学上的原因而选择使用被动态动词。说话人可能用这个办法来表示他对自己所宣布的令人不快的事情不负有责任: Employer: Overtime rates are being reduced / will have to be reduced.

雇主:加班工资将调低/将必须调低。

如果宣布令人高兴的事项,则当然会使用主动态动词: I / We are going to increase overtime rates.

我/我们将调高加班工资。

有时说话人可能知道动作是谁做的,但不希望提到他的名字。如汤姆怀疑比尔私拆他的信件,他可能会策略地说 This letter has been opened (这封信有人拆过了)而不说 You've opened this letter (你把我的信拆开了)。

H 关于 have+宾语+过去分词结构的用法,如 I had the car resprayed (我找人把汽车重新喷了漆),参见第 119 节。

305 介词与被动态动词连用

A 正如已经提到过的,要提到被动态动词的施动者时,前面须用 by 引导:

主动态: Dufy painted this picture.

达菲画的这幅画。

被动态: This picture was painted by Dufy.

这幅画是达菲画的。

主动态: What makes these holes?

是什么东西弄出这些破洞的?

被动态: What are these holes made by?

这些破洞是什么东西弄的?

注意下列句子: Smoke filled the room.

房间里烟雾弥漫。

Paint covered the lock.

油漆涂遍了锁上。

它们的被动形式应当是: The room was filled with smoke.

The lock was covered with paint.

这里针对的只是所涉及的物质而不是施动者本人。

B 动词+介词+宾语这一结构变成被动态时,介词应直接跟在动词之后: 主动态: We must write to him.

我们必须给他写信。

被动态: He must be written to.

必须给他写信。

主动态: You can play with these cubs quite safely.

你和这些熊崽子玩不会有危险。

被动态: ?These cubs can be played with quite safely.

拳驼庑一茚套油娌换嵊形O铡?

对动词+介词 / 副词结构, 也应同样处理: 主动态: They threw away the old newspapers. 他们把旧报纸扔了。

被动态: The old newspapers were thrown away.

旧报纸给扔了。

主动态: He looked after the children well.

他对孩子们照顾得很好。

被动态: The children were well looked after.

孩子们被照顾得很好。

306 被动态动词后的不定式结构

A 不定式结构用在 acknowledge,assume,believe,claim,consider,estimate,feel,find,know,presume,report,say,think,under- stand 等动词之后。(参见第 245 节。)People consider / know / think 等 that he is…这类句子有两种被动形式:It is considered / known / thought etc. that he is…

He is considered / known / thought etc. to be...

同样: People said that he was jealous of her.

人们说他妒忌她。相当于: It was said that he was...

He was said to be jealous of her.

据说他妒忌她。

在这两种结构中,用不定式的后一结构比较简洁。它主要用于 be,尽管有时其他动词的不定式也可以这样用: He is thought to have information which will be useful to the police. 人们认为他掌握了对警察有用的情况。

如句中所想到的内容涉及到以前的动作,则使用不定式的完成式,因此: People believed that he was…相当于: It was believed that he was / He was believed to have been…

People know that he was…相当于: It is known that he was / He is known to have been… 这种结构可与任何动词的不定式的完成式连用。

B 不定式结构用在 suppose 后

1 suppose 的被动态之后可以接任何动词的不定式的一般式,但这种结构通常都含有这是一种责任、义务的意思,因此并不是同 suppose 的主动态 (常意为"推测") 完全对应的形式: You are supposed to know how to drive.

你本该会开车。相当于: It is your duty to know / You should know how to drive.

会开车是你的责任。/你该知道怎么开车。

但 He is supposed to be in Paris 既可能意思是他应该在那里,也可能是指人们猜想他在那里。

2 suppose 的被动态后面同样可以跟任何动词的不定式的完成式。这种结构可以有责任和义务的含义,但也常常没有这种含义: You are supposed to have finished. 相当于: You should have finished.

你早就应该完成了。

但是: He is supposed to have escaped disguised as a woman. 相当于: People suppose that he escaped...

据猜测他是乔装打扮成女人逃跑的。

C 用在被动态动词后面的不定式通常是带 to 的不定式,尽管主动态动词后面可能带的是不带 to 的不定式: 主动态: We saw them go out.

我们看见他们出去了。

被动态: They were seen to go out.

有人看见他们出去了。

主动态: He made us work.

他强迫我们干活。

被动态: We were made to work.

我们被迫干活。

然而,惟独 let 的被动态后面的不定式不带 to: 主动态: They let us go.

他们让我们走了。

被动态: We were let go.

我们被允许走开。

D 不定式的进行式可用于如下动词的被动式之后: believe, know, report, say, suppose, think, understand 等。

He is believed / known / said / supposed / thought to be living abroad. 相当于: People believe / know / say / suppose / think that he is living abroad.

据信/据知/据说/据猜测/据认为他住在国外。

You are supposed to be working. 相当于: You should be working.

你本应在工作。

在这里也可用不定式的完成进行式: He is believed to have been waiting for a message. 相 当于: People believed that he was waiting for a message.

据信他当时一直在等待消息。

You are supposed to have been working. 相当于: You should have been working. 你那时本该一直在工作。

第三十一章 间接引语

307 直接引语和间接引语

可以用两种方法重述人们说的话: 直接引语和间接引语。

直接引语重述说话人的原话: He said, 'I have lost my umbrella.'

他说:"我把伞丢了。"

这样被复述的话要放在引号之间,而在原话之前有一个逗号或冒号。直接引语一般用在书本的对话中,或用在剧本以及引文中。间接引语能准确传达原话的内容,但不一定要全部照搬原话: He said(that)he had lost his umbrella.

他说他丢了伞。

表间接引语的动词 say 之后没有逗号,在 say 和 tell+宾语之后的 that 也可以省略。但在 complain, explain, object, point out, protest 等动词之后, that 不能省略。口头复述对话时,常多使用间接引语,但有时也可使用直接引语以产生更为生动的效果。

把直接引语变为间接引语时,常需对原句作某些改变。可以对陈述句、疑问句和祈使句分别 加以研究,以求更好地弄清这些变化。

308 间接引语中的陈述句时态须作必要的改变

A 间接引语可以由用现在时态的动词引导: He says that…

这种用法常用于下列情况:(a)复述仍在进行中的对话;

- (b) 读信件并转述信中的内容:
- (c) 读指示命令并转述其内容;
- (d) 复述某人经常说的话。

Tom says that he'll never get married.

汤姆说他永远不结婚。

引述的动词如是一般现在时、现在完成时或一般将来时,在转述直接引语过程中可以不作任何时态改变: Paul (phoning from the station): I' m trying to get a taxi.

保罗(从车站打电话来): 我正在设法雇出租汽车。

Ann (to Mary, who is standing beside her): Paul says he is trying to get a taxi.

安(对站在身旁的玛丽说): 保罗说他正在设法雇出租汽车。

B 通常间接引语都是由用过去时态的动词引导的。这时直接引语中的动词必须变成相应的过去时态。这些变化列表如下(在后五个例句中省去了 that):

C 注意 I / we shall / should 的用法

I / we shall 通常在间接引语中变为 he / she / they would: 'I shall be 21 tomorrow,' said Bill.

比尔说: "明天我就 21 岁了。"相当于: Bill said he would be 21 the following day.

比尔说第二天他就满 21 周岁了。

如果句子是由原说话人复述的, I/we shall 就既可以变成 I/we

should, 也可以变成 I / we would, 但 would 用得更为普遍。

同样,I / we should 在间接引语中通常变成 he / she / they would: 'If I had the instruction manual I should / would know what to do,' said Bill.

比尔说:"如果我有说明书,我就知道该怎么弄了。"相当于: Bill said that if he had the instruction manual he would know what to do.

比尔说如果他有说明书他就知道该怎么弄了。

但是如果句子由原说话人复述,I / we should 既可以保持不变也可以由 would 来代替。请见 B 中最后一个例句。

309 过去时态有时保持不变

A 从理论上讲,间接引语中一般过去时应当变成过去完成时,但在口语中,如果不至于使人对于动作发生的相对时间产生混淆,则常保持不变。

例如: He said,'I loved her'(他说:"我爱过她")必须变成 He said he had loved her(他说他爱过她),否则句子的意思就会不一样了。但 He said,'Ann arrived on Monday'(他说:"安是星期一到的")可以转述为 He said Ann arrived / had arrived on Monday(他说安是星期一到的 / 他说安已于星期一到达)。

B 从理论上讲,过去进行时应当变成过去完成进行时,但实际上除非所指的是已完成的动作,否则一般都不变: She said, 'We were thinking of selling the house but we have decided not to.'

她说:"我们曾想卖掉这所房子,但现在已经决定不卖了。"相当于: She said that they had been thinking of selling the house but had decided not to.

她说他们曾想卖掉这所房子, 但现在已经决定不卖了。

但是: He said, 'When I saw them they were playing tennis.'

他说:"我看到他们时,他们在打网球。"相当于: He said that when he saw them they were playing tennis.

他说他看到他们时,他们在打网球。

C 英语书面语中,一般过去时在间接引语中固然常常变成过去完成时,但也有以下几种例外情况: 1 时间从句中的一般过去时及过去进行时常不需改变: He said, 'When we were living / lived in Paris…'

他说:"我们住在巴黎的时候······"相当于: He said that when they were living in Paris... 他说他们住在巴黎的时候······

这类间接引语的主句中的主要动词既可保持不变,也可以变成过去完成时: He said, 'When we were living / lived in Paris we often saw Paul.'

他说:"我们住在巴黎时,常常看到保罗。"相当于: He said that when they were living / lived in Paris they often saw / had of — ten seen Paul.

他说他们住在巴黎时,常常看到保罗。

2 如一般过去时被用来叙述转述时仍继续存在的情况,则在间接引语中保持不变: She said, 'I decided not to buy the house because it was on a main road.'

她说:"我决定不买这座房子了,因为它在交通要道上。"相当于: She said that she had decided not to buy the house because it was on amain road.

她说她决定不买这座房子了, 因为它在交通要道上。

310 间接引语中的虚拟过去时

A 虚拟过去时如位于 wish, would rather / sooner 和 it is time 等

之后,在间接引语中保持不变: 'we wish we didn't have to take exams,' said the children.

孩子们说: "我们不考试就好了。" 相当于: The children said they wished they didn't have to take exams.

孩子们说他们不考试就好了。

'Bill wants to go alone,' said Ann, 'but I' d rather he went with a group.

"比尔想一个人去,"安说,"但是我宁愿他跟一大群人一起去。"相当于: Ann said that Bill wanted to go alone but that she'd rather he went with a group

安说比尔想一个人去,但她宁愿他跟一大群人一起去。

It's time we began planning our holidays,' he said.

他说:"我们该开始计划我们休假的事了。"相当于: He said that it was time they began planning their holidays.

他说他们该开始计划他们休假的事了。

B I / he / she / we / they had better 在间接引语里保持不变。 you had better 可以保持不变,或者用 advise+宾语+不定式结构进行转述(参见第 120 节): 'The children had better go to bed early,' said Tom.

汤姆说:"孩子们最好早点睡觉。"相当于: Tom said that the children had better go to bed early.

汤姆说孩子们最好早睡觉。

to

'You' d better not drink the water,' she said.

她说:"你最好不要喝这水。"相当于: She advised / warned us not to drink the water. 她劝告(或告诫)我们不要喝这水。

C 条件句类型 2 和类型 3 在间接引语里保持不变(参见第 229 节): 'If my children were older I would emigrate,' he said.

他说: "如果我的孩子们再大点的话,我就会移居国外。" 相当于: He said that if his children were older he would emigrate.

他说如果他的孩子们再大点的话他就会移居国外。

311 间接陈述中的 might, ought to, should, would, used

might 除用于表示请求的意思外,在间接引语里保持不变: He said, 'Ann might ring today.' 他说:"安今天可能会打电话来。"相当于: He said that Ann might ring(that day). 他说安(那天)可能会打电话。相当于: 但是: 'You might post these for me,' he said. 他说:"你可以帮我把这些寄出去。"相当于: He asked me to post them for him. 他让我替他把那些寄出去。

(关于各种请求的表示法,参见第285节。)

B ought to / should 表示"义务、责任"的意思时,在间接引语中保持不变: 'They ought to / should widen this road,' I said.

我说:"他们应当拓宽这条路。"相当于: I said that they ought to / should widen the road. 我说他们应当拓宽这条路。

I said, 'I should be back by six.'

我说:"我在 6 点钟该能返回来了。"(我设想我会)相当于: I said I should be back by six. 我说我在 6 点钟该能返回来了。

C 但当 you ought to / you should 表示劝告而不表示义务的意思时,可由 advise+宾语+不定式的结构来转述。you must 也可表示劝告,也用同样的方法来转述: 'You ought to / should / must read the instructions,'said Ann.

安说: "你应该 / 必须看看说明书。" 相当于: Ann advised / urged / warned me to read the instructions.

安劝告/敦促/提醒我看看说明书。

D 由 If I were you I should / would····表示劝告的形式,通常可由 advise+宾语+不定式结构来转述: 'If I were you I'd wait,'I said.

我说:"如果我是你的话,我会等的。"相当于: I advised him to wait. 我劝他等待。

E 由 I should / would be (very) grateful if you would…表示请求的形式,通常由 ask+宾语+不定式结构来转述: 'I'd be very grateful if you'd keep me informed,'

he said 他说: "如果您能随时把有关情况告诉我,我会很感激的。" 相当于: He asked me to keep him informed.

他让我随时把有关情况告诉他。

F would 用于陈述时在间接引语中保持不变。但请参见第 284 节关于 would 用于请求等。 G used to 在间接引语中保持不变: 'I know the place well because I used to live here,'

he explained.

他解释说:"我熟悉那个地方,因为我以前住在那里。"相当于: He explained that he knew the place well because he used to live there.

他解释说他熟悉那个地方,因为他以前曾住在那里。

(关于 could, 参见第 312 节; 关于 must, 参见第 325 节。)

312 could 用于间接引语(关于 could 的疑问形式,参见第 283 与第 284 节。)

A could 表示能力

1 could 表示目前的能力时在间接引语中保持不变: 'I can't / couldn't stand on my head,'he said.

他说:"我不能做三点倒立。"相当于: He said he couldn't stand on his head. 他说他不能做三点倒立。

2 could 表示将来的能力时,在间接引语中可以保持不变,或由 would be able 结构来转述: He said, 'I could do it tomorrow.'

他说:"我明天能做这事。"相当于: He said he could do it / would be able to do it the next day.

他说他第二天能做这事。

3 条件句类型 2 中,主句中的 could 与 A2 中的变化相同: 'If I had the tools I could mend it,' he said.

他说:"如果我有工具的话,我就能修补它。"相当于: He said that if he had the tools he could / would be able to mend it.

他说如果他有工具的话, 他就能修补它。

would be able 在这里暗指所假设的情况有可能实现(可能他可以借到工具。)

4 条件句类型 3 中, could 被转述时保持不变。

5 could 表示过去的能力时,在间接引语里保持不变,或用 had been able 结构转述: 'I could read when I was three!' she boasted.

她吹嘘说:"我三岁时就能看书了!"相当于: She boasted that she could / had been able to read when she was three.

她吹嘘说她三岁时就能看书了。

B could 表示允许

1 条件句类型 2 中的 could 在间接引语中可保持不变,或由 would be allowed to 转述: 'If I paid my fine I could walk out of prison today,' he said.

他说:"如果我交了罚款,我今天就能走出牢门了。"相当于: He said that if he paid his fine he could / would be allowed to walk…

他说如果他交了罚款他会被允许走……

2 表示过去时态的 could 在间接引语中可保持不变,或用 was / were allowed to 或 had been allowed to 结构来转述: He said, 'When I was a boy I could stay up as long as I liked.'

他说:"我小时候,我可以想呆到多晚睡觉就呆到多晚。"相当于: He said that when he was a boy he could / was allowed to stay up. / He said that as a boy he was / had been allowed etc.

他说他小时候,可以/被允许爱呆到多晚睡觉就呆到多晚。

313 其中的代词与形容词

A 代词和所有格形容词一般由第一人称或第二人称转化为第三人称,除非说话者转述的就是自己的话: He said, 'I' ve forgotten the combination of my safe.'

他说:"我忘了我保险柜的密码了。"相当于: He said that he had forgotten the combination of his safe.

他说他忘记了他保险柜的密码了。

I said, 'I like my new house.'

我说:"我喜欢我的新房子。"相当于: I said that I liked my new house.

我说我喜欢我的新房子。(说话者转述的是自己的话)

有时为避免意义上的混淆不清,必须将代词改变成名词: Tom said, 'He came in through the window'(汤姆说: "他是从窗户进来的")这句话一般不能像下面那样转述: Tom said he hadcome in through the window(汤姆说他是从窗户进来的)。 这种转述方法意思可能指汤姆自己是通过窗户进来的。如果在这里将代词改变为相应的一个名词,就不会混淆了: Tom said that the man / burglar / cat etc. had come in…(汤姆说那个男人 / 入室窃贼 / 猫等是从……进来的)。

代词的变化会引起动词的变化: He says, 'I know her.'

他说:"我认识她。"相当于: He says he knows her.

他说他认识她。

He says, 'I shall be there.'

他说: "我将在那里。" 相当于: He says that he will be there.

他说他将在那里。

B this 和 these

this 如用于表示时间,通常转述为 that: He said, 'She is coming this week.'

他说:"她这个星期来。"相当于: He said that she was coming that week.

他说她那个星期来。

但是, this 和 that 不表示时间而当形容词用时, 转述时用 the:

He said, 'I bought this pearl / these pearls for my mother.'

他说:"这颗 / 这些珍珠是给我母亲买的。"相当于: He said that he had bought the pearl / pearls for his mother.

他说这颗/这些珍珠是给他母亲买的。

this, these 作代词用时可转述为 it, they / them: He showed me two bullets. 'I found these embedded in the panelling,' he said.

他把两颗子弹头拿给我看。"我发现这两颗子弹头嵌在护壁板里,"他说。相当于: He said he had found them embedded in the panelling.

他说他发现这两颗子弹嵌在护壁板里。

He said, 'We will discuss this tomorrow.'

他说: "我们明天讨论这件事。" 相当于: He said that they would discuss it / the matter the next day.

他说他们要在第二天讨论它 / 那件事。

this,these(形容词或代词)可以用于表明选择,或用于把一些东西与另一些东西区别开来。这时用 the one (s) near him 等来转述,或可以把话换一个方法说清楚:'I'll have this (one),'he said to me.

他对我说:"我要这个。"相当于: He said he would have the one near him. / He pointed to / touched / showed me the one he wanted.

他说他要靠近他的那一个。/他把他想要的那个指/摸/拿给我看。

314 其中的时间及地点表达法

A 表示时间的副词及副词短语的变化: 例句如: 'I saw her the day before yesterday,' he said.

他说:"我是前天看到她的。"相当于: He said he'd seen her two days before. 他说他是两天前看到她的。

'I' ll do it tomorrow,' he promised.

他答应道:"这件事我明天就做。"相当于: He promised that he would do it the next day. 他答应第二天就做这件事。

'I' m starting the day after tomorrow, mother,' he said.

他说:"妈妈,我后天动身。"相当于: He told his mother that he was starting in two days / time.

他告诉他妈妈他两天后动身。

She said, 'My father died a year ago.'

她说:"我爸爸一年前去世了。"相当于: She said that her father had died a year before / the previous year.

她说他父亲在前一年去世了。

B 但如果说话和转述发生在同一天,则不必作时间上的改变: At breakfast this morning he said, 'I'll be very busy today.'

今天早餐时他说:"今天我会很忙。"相当于: At breakfast this morning he said that he would be very busy today.

今天早餐时, 他说他今天会很忙。

C 如果在说话的一两天之后才转述,当然要作合乎逻辑的修正。如星期一杰克对汤姆说: I m leaving the day after tomorrow.

我打算后天动身。

如果汤姆在第二天(星期二)转述这句话,他会说: Jack said he was leaving tomorrow. 杰克说他打算明天动身。

如果汤姆在星期三转述这句话,他可能会说: Jack said he was leaving today. 杰克说他打算今天动身。

D here 可能转述为 there, 但所指的是什么地方必须要很清楚才可这样用: At the station he said, 'I'll be here again tomorrow.'

在火车站他说: "我明天还会来这儿。" 相当于: He said that he $^\prime$ d be there again the next day.

他说他第二天会再到那儿去。

通常 here 需用某种适当的短语来代替: She said, 'You can sit here, Tom.'

她说:"汤姆,你可以坐在这里。"相当于: She told Tom that he could sit beside her etc. 她告诉汤姆他可以坐在她的旁边等等。

但是 He said,'Come here,boys'(他说:"到这儿来,孩子们")一般转述为: He called the boys.

他叫孩子们来。

315 其中的不定式和动名词结构

A agree / refuse / offer / promise / threaten+不定式有时可用来代替 say (that) ···: Ann: Would you wait half an hour?

安: 你能等半个小时吗?

Tom: All right.

汤姆: 好的。相当于: Tom agreed to wait. / Tom said he would wait.

汤姆同意等。 / 汤姆说他会等候的。

Ann: Would you lend me another £50?

安: 你能再借给我 50 镑吗?

Tom: No, I won't lend you any more money.

汤姆:不,我不再借钱给你了。相当于: Tom refused to lend her any more money. 汤姆拒绝再借钱给她。

Tom said that he wouldn' t lend…

汤姆说他再也不借 ……

Paul: I' ll help you if you like, Ann.

保罗:安,如果你愿意,我可以帮你。相当于: Paul offered to help her.

保罗表示乐意帮助她。

Paul said that he' d help her.

保罗说他愿意帮助她。(另参见第 318 节 shall I? 部分。)

Ann: I' ll pay you back next week. Really I will.

安:下星期我就还钱给你,我一定还。

Ann promised to pay him back the following week. / Ann said that she would pay him back.

安答应在下一周把钱还给他。/安说她会把钱还给他的。

Ann assured him that she would pay him back.

安向他保证她会还给他钱的。

Kidnappers: If you don't pay the ransom at once we'll kill your daugh—ter.

绑架者:如果你不马上交赎金,我们将杀死你女儿。相当于: The kidnappers threatened to kill his daughter if he didn't pay the ran—som at once.

绑架者恐吓道,如果他不马上交赎金就把他女儿杀死。

The kidnappers said that they would kill...

绑架者说他们要杀死 ……

(关于宾语+不定式结构,参见第320节。)

B accuse…of / admit / apologize for / deny / insist on+动名词这一类结构有时可代替 say (that…): 'You took the money!'

"你拿了这钱!"

可转述为: He accused me of taking the money.

他指责我拿了钱。

'I stole / didn' t steal it.'

"我偷了/没偷。"

可转述为: I admitted / denied stealing it.

我承认 / 否认偷了。

'I' m sorry I' m late, ' he said.

他说:"抱歉,我来晚了。"

可转述为: He apologized for being late.

他为迟到表示抱歉。

He said / he was sorry he was late.

他说他很抱歉自己迟到了。

Bill: Let me pay for myself.

比尔: 让我自己来付我的那份钱。

Tom: Certainly not! I' ll pay!

汤姆: 这不行! 我来付!

可转述为: Tom insisted on paying.

汤姆坚持要付钱。

316 say, tell 及其他可替代使用的引导动词

A say 和 tell 与直接引语连用

1 say 可放在陈述句之前,也可以位于陈述句之后: Tom said, 'I' ve just heard the news.' / 'I' ve just heard the news,' Tom said.

汤姆说:"我刚刚听说这个消息。"

say 位于陈述之后时,say 和充当主语的名词可用倒装语序: 'I' ve just heard the news,' said Tom.

say+to+说话的对方这种结构是可以用的,但它必须跟在直接引语的后面,而不能放在直接引语的前面: 'I' m leaving at once,' Tom said to me.

汤姆对我说:"我马上就动身。"

这里不能用倒装语序。

2 tell 要求说出说话的对方: Tell me.

告诉我。

He told us.

是他告诉我们的。

I' ll tell Tom.

我会告诉汤姆的。

不过,在 tell lies / stories / the truth 这些结构中不一定要提到说话的对方: He told (me) lies.

他(跟我)撒谎。

I' ll tell (you) a story.

我会给(你)讲故事的。

tell 和直接引语连用时,必须位于陈述之后:'I'm leaving at once,'Tom told me.

汤姆告诉我说:"我马上就要动身。"

tell 和主语不能用倒装语序。

B say 和 tell 与间接引语连用

间接陈述常位于 say 或 tell+宾语结构之后。say+to+宾语结构在这里是可以用的,但不如 tell+宾语这一结构普遍:He said he'd just heard the news.

他说他刚刚听到这个消息。

He told me that he' d just heard the news.

他告诉我他刚刚听到这个消息。

请注意 tell···how / about 这一结构: He told us how he had crossed the mountains.

他告诉我们他是怎样翻越那些大山的。

He told us about crossing the mountains.

他告诉我们关于翻越那些大山的事。

He told us about his journeys.

他告诉我们他的旅途经历。

(关于 say 和 tell 用于表示间接命令,参见第 320 节与第 321 节。)

C 其他常用的引导陈述话语的动词有: add*?complain*?point out

admit*?deny*?promise*

answer*explain * ?protest*?

argue*?grumble* remark*

assure+宾语 object* ?remind+宾语

boast*?observe* reply*

这些动词都可以与直接引语以及间接引语连用。

与直接引语连用时,它们位于直接陈述之后: 'It won't cost more,' Tom assured us. 汤姆向我们保证说:"不会多花钱。"

主语是名词时,上表中带有星号的动词都可以放在主语之前: 'But it will take longer,' Bill objected / objected Bill.

"但需要更长的时间,"比尔提出反对意见说。

'It' ll cost too much,' Jack grumbled / grumbled Jack.

"这会花去太多的钱,"杰克嘟嚷着。

它们都可以引导间接陈述。

动词之后必须加 that: Tom assured us that it wouldn't cost more. But Bill objected / pointed out that it would take longer.

汤姆向我们保证不会花更多的钱。但比尔提出反对意见说,那样会需要更长的时间。

D murmur, mutter, shout, stammer, whisper 既可位于直接引语的陈述句或疑问句之前, 也可位于其后, 并也如上面所示那样, 作主语的名词可放在动词之后: 'You're late,' whispered Tom / Tom whispered.

汤姆低声耳语说:"你们迟到了。"

这些动词可引导间接引语,通常需要加上 that: Tom whispered that we were late.

汤姆低声耳语说我们迟到了。

当然,还有许多其他描写声音或音调的动词,如: bark, growl, roar, scream, shriek, snarl, sneer, yell 等。但这些动词引导直接引语的情况要多于引导间接引语的情况。

317 间接引语中的问句

直接问句: He said, 'Where is she going?'

他说:"她要上哪儿去?"

间接问句: He asked where she was going.

他问她要上哪儿去。

A 把直接问句变为间接问句时,需作下列改变: 时态、代词、所有格形容词、时间副词和地点副词的变化与陈述句中的变化相同。

动词的疑问式变成陈述式; 在间接问句中不加问号(?): He said, 'Where does she live?'他说:"她住在什么地方?"相当于: He asked where she lived.

他问她住在什么地方。

如直接问句针对主语提问,则此种变化显然是没有必要的(参见第 55 节): 'Who lives next door?'he said.

他说:"谁住在隔壁?"相当于: He asked who lived next door.

他问谁住在隔壁。

'What happened?' she said.

她说:"发生了什么事?"相当于: She asked what had happened.

她问发生了什么事。

B 如果引导动词是 say,则必须换为表示询问的动词,如 ask,in— quire,wonder,want to know 等: He said 'Where is the station?'

他说:"车站在哪里?"相当于: He asked where the station was.

他问车站在什么地方。

ask, inquire, wonder 也可用在直接引语中, 但这时通常位于句尾: 'Where is the station?' he inquired.

"车站在什么地方?"他问道。

C ask 之后可以接说话的对方(间接宾语):He asked,'What have you got in your bag?'他说:"你的包里装的是什么?"相当于:He asked(me) what I had got in my bag. 他问(我)我的包里装的是什么。

但在 inquire, wonder, want to know 之后不能有间接宾语。因此,如想要转述提及说话对方的问句时就必须用 ask: He said, 'Mary, when is the next train?'

他说:"玛丽,下一班火车是几点的?"

He asked Mary when the next train was.

他问玛丽下一班火车是几点的。

如果我们用 inquire, wonder 或 want to know, 就必须省去间接宾语 Mary。

D 如果直接问句是由(when, where, who, how, why 等)疑问词开头的,则必须在间接引语中重复这些疑问词: He said, 'Why didn't you put on the brake?'

他说:"你怎么没刹车呢?"相当于: He asked(her)why she hadn't put on the brake. 他问(她)怎么没刹车。

She said, 'What do you want?'

她说:"你们想要什么?"相当于: She asked (them) what they wanted.

她问他们想要什么。

E 如果没有疑问词,则必须用 if 或 whether: 'Is anyone there?' he asked.

他问道:"那儿有人吗?"相当于: He asked if / whether anyone was there.

他问那儿是否有人。

1 通常这两个词都可以用,但 if 要比 whether 更普遍些: 'Do you know Bill?'he said. 他说:"你认识比尔吗?"相当于: He asked if / whether I knew Bill. 他问我是否认识比尔。

'Did you see the accident?' the policeman asked.

警察问: "你看到那起事故了吗?"相当于: The policeman asked if / whether I had seen the accident.

警察问我是否看到那起事故了。

2 whether 可用于强调对某事必须做出选择: 'Do you want to go by air or sea? 'the travel agent asked.

旅游商问:"你想乘飞机走,还是想乘船走?"相当于: The travel agent asked whether I wanted to go by air or by sea.

旅游商问我是想乘飞机走,还是想乘船走。

请注意 whether or not 的用法: 'Do you want to insure your luggage or not?' he asked. 他问:"你的行李要保险吗?"相当于: He asked whether or not I wanted to insure my luggage. / He asked if I wanted to insure my luggage or not.

他问我是否要给行李保险。

3 whether+不定式结构可位于 wonder, want to know 之后: 'Shall / Should I wait for them or go on?' he wondered.

他问自己:"我是等等他们呢还是继续往前走呢?"相当于: He wondered whether to wait for them or go on. / He wondered whether

he should wait for them or go on.

他问自己是要等等他们还是继续往前走。

inquire+whether+不定式结构是可以的,但不常见。

(关于 whether+不定式, 另参见第 242 节 B。)

4 如果问句含有条件从句时,用 whether 就比较清楚,否则就会出现两个 if: 'If you get the job will you move to York?' Bill asked.

比尔问: "如果你得到那份工作,你会迁到约克去吗?"相当于: Bill asked whether, if I got the job, I'd move to York.

比尔问如果我得到那份工作我是否会迁到约克去。

318 以 shall I / we? 开头的问句变为间接引语

以 shall I / we? 开头的问句有四种类型: A 对未来事件的推测或查询: 'Shall I ever see them again? he wondered.

他问自己:"我还能再见到他们吗?"

'When shall I know the result of the test?' she asked.

她问:"我什么时候才能知道考试的结果?"

这种句子适用 shall / will 的一般规则。表示猜测时,通常由 wonder 引导句子: He wondered if he would ever see them again.

他心里想他是否还能再见到他们。

She asked when she would know the result of the test.

她问什么时候她才能知道考试的结果。

B 请求指示或征求意见: 'What shall I do with it?'

"我拿它怎么办呢?"相当于: 'Tell me what to do with it.

"告诉我该拿它怎么办。"

在间接引语中这种请求可以用 ask,inquire 等动词加 should 结构或 be+不定式结构表达。 对征求意见的转述一般用 should: 'Shall we post it,sir?'he said.

他说: "先生,要不要把这东西寄了?"相当于: He asked the customer if they were to post / if they should post it.

他问顾客是否要把这东西寄了。

'what whall I say, mother?' she said.

她说:"妈妈,我该说点什么呢?"相当于: She asked her mother what she should say. 她问母亲她该说点什么。(征求意见)

当需要就某事做出选择时,在间接引语中一般用 whether,有时也可用 whether+不定式(参见第 317 节 E): 'Shall I lock the car or leave it unlocked?' he said.

他说:"我该把汽车锁上呢,还是不锁?"相当于: He asked whether he should / was to lock the car or leave it unlocked. / He asked whether to lock the car...

他问是否该把汽车锁上,还是不用锁。

C 主动提出为对方做一件事或提供某物: 'Shall I bring you some tea?'

"我给你端点儿茶来好吗?"

可转述为: He offered to bring me some tea.

他主动要给我端茶来。

请注意'Would you like me to bring you some tea?'("要不要我给你端点儿茶来?")和'I'll bring you some tea if you like'("如果你愿意的话,我给你端点儿茶来")这两个句子也可用 offer 来转述。

D 提出建议: 'Shall we meet at the theatre?'

"我们在剧院见面好吗?"

可转述为: He suggested meeting at the theatre.

他建议在剧院见面。

319 以 will you? / would you? / could you?

开头的问句

这些问句可能是一般问句,但也可能表示请求、邀请。偶然也可表示命令(参见第 284 节、第 286 节与第 320 节): He said, 'Will you be there tomorrow?'

他说:"你明天在那里吗?"(一般问句)相当于: He asked if she would be there the next day.

他问她第二天是否在那里。

'Will you stand still!' he shouted.

他大喊: "站住,别动行不行!"相当于: He shouted at me to stand still. / He told / ordered me to stand still.

他对我大喊,要我别动。/他要/命令我站着别动。

'Would you like to live in New York?' he asked.

他说:"你愿意住在纽约吗?"相当于: He asked if I would like to live in New York.

他问我是否愿意住在纽约。

'Will / Would you file these letters, please? ' he said.

他说:"请把这些信件存档好吗?"相当于: He asked / told me to file the letters. 他让 / 告诉我把这些信件存档。

'Would vou like a lift?' said Ann.

安说:"你想搭便车吗?"相当于: Ann offered me a lift. 安邀请我搭便车。

'Would you like to come round/Could you come round for a drink?' he said.

他说:"到我家来喝点酒好吗?"相当于: He invited me(to come)round for a drink. 他邀请我去他家喝点酒。

'Could you live on £25 a week?' he asked

他问:"一星期 25 英镑你够维持生活吗?"相当于: He asked if I could live on £25 a week. 他问我一星期 25 英镑是否够维持生活。

'Could / Would you give me a hand?' she said.

她说:"请帮我一下好吗?"相当于: She asked us to give her a hand. 她请我们帮她一下。

'Could / Would you show me the photos?' she said.

她说:"你能给我看看照片吗?"相当于: She asked me to show her the photos. / She asked to see the photos.

她问我能否给她看看照片。

(关于 can / could / may / might+I / we? 参见第 283 节。关于征求意见参见第 131 节。)

320 间接引语中的命令、请求、劝告

直接命令: He said, 'Lie down, Tom.'

他说:"躺下,汤姆。"

间接命令: He told Tom to lie down.

他叫汤姆躺下。

间接命令、请求及劝告通常由表示命令、请求、劝告的动词+ 宾语+不定式(=宾语+不定式结构)来表示。

A 可用下列动词: advise, ask, beg, command, encourage, en— treat, forbid, implore, invite, order, recommend, remind, re— quest, tell, urge, warn。

(注意: say 不包括在这些动词中,关于用 say 转述的间接命令 / 请求,参见第 321 节。)He said,'Get your coat,Tom!'

他说:"汤姆,去穿你的外衣!"相当于: He told Tom to get his coat. 他叫汤姆去穿外衣。

'You had better hurry, Bill!' she said.

她说:"比尔,你最好快点!"相当于: She advised Bill to hurry. 她劝比尔快点。

B 否定意义的命令、请求等通常用 not+不定式转述: 'Don't swim out too far, boys,' I said.

我说:"孩子们,不要游出太远。"相当于: I warned / told the boys not to swim out too far. 我警告孩子们,叫他们不要游出太远。

forbid 也可用来表示禁止,但多用于被动语态,不太用于主动语态。

C 上面所示动词要求加宾语+不定式,即它们后面必须直接跟说话的对方,不带介词。(另参见第89节。)在直接命令、请求等中常不提及说话的对方: He said, 'Go away!'

他说:"走开!"

当转述这样的命令或请求时,必须加上名词或代词: He told me / him / her / us / them / the children to go away.

他叫我/他/她/我们/他们/孩子们走开。

ask 与上述 A 所示的动词有点差别,ask 的后面也可直接跟某些动词(如 see, speak to, talk to)的带 to 的不定式: He said, 'Could I see Tom, please?'

他说:"我可以见汤姆吗?"相当于: He asked to see Tom.

他要求见汤姆。(参见第283节。)

但这和 ask+宾语+不定式类型的请求有很大不同。

ask 和 beg 后面都可以跟不定式的被动式: 'Do, please, send me to a warm climate,' he asked / begged.

他要求 / 请求道:"请务必将我送到气候暖和的地方去。"相当于: e asked / begged us to send him to a warm climate.

他要求 / 请求我们将他送到气候暖和的地方去。

He asked / begged to be sent to a warm climate.

他要求 / 请求把他送到气候暖和的地方去。

D 表示间接命令、请求及劝告的例句

注意:直接命令通常用祈使句表示,但要求和忠告可用多种方法来表示(参见第 283 节至 第 287 节): 'If I were you, I'd stop taking tranquillizers,' I said.

我说:"如果我是你,我就停止眼用镇静药。"相当于: I advised him to stop taking tranquillizers.

我劝他停止服用镇静药。(参见第 311 节 D。)

'Why don' t you take off your coat?' he said.

他说:"为什么不脱下你的大衣?"相当于: He advised me to take off my coat. 他建议我脱下大衣。(参见第 **287** 节。)

'Would / Could you show me your passport, please?' he said.

他说:"请出示您的护照。"相当于: He asked me to show him my passport. 他要我向他出示护照。

He asked me for / He asked to see my passport.

他要求看我的护照。

'You might post some letters for me,' said my boss.

我的老板说: "不知你能否给我寄几封信?"相当于: My boss asked me to post some letters for him.

我的老板请我给他寄几封信。

'If you' d just sign the register,' said the receptionist.

接待员说:"请在登记本上签名。"相当于: The receptionist asked him to sign the register. 接待员要他在登记本上签名。

'Do sit down,' said my hostess.

我的女主人说:"请坐下。"相当于: My hostess asked / invited me to sit down. 我的女主人请我坐下。

'Please, please don' t take any risks,' said his wife.

他妻子说:"请千万别冒险。"相当于: His wife begged / implored him not to take any risks.

他妻子恳求他别冒险。

'Forget all about this young man,' said her parents, 'don' t see him again or answer his letters.'

"把那个男孩子全忘了吧,"她父母说,"别再见他,也别再回信了。" 相当于: Her parents ordered her to forget all about the young man and told her not to see him again or answer his letters.

她的父母要求她把那个男孩子全忘了,而且告诉她别再见他,也别再给他回信。

She was ordered to forget all about the young man and forbidden to see him again or answer his letters.

她被要求把那个男孩子全忘了,而且被禁止见那个男孩子或给他回信。(被动结构)

'Don' t forget to order the wine,' said Mrs Pitt.

皮特夫人说: "别忘了订购酒。" 相当于: Mrs Pitt reminded her husband to order the wine. 皮特夫人提醒她丈夫别忘了订购酒。

'Try again,' said Ann' s friends encouragingly.

安的朋友们鼓励地说:"再试试看。"相当于: Ann's friends encouraged her to try again. 安的朋友们鼓励她再试一次。

'Go on, apply for the job,' said Jack.

杰克说:"去申请这个工作吧。"相当于: Jack urged / encouraged me to apply for the job. 杰克敦促 / 鼓励我去申请这个工作。

'You had better not leave your car unlocked,' said my friends, 'there' s been a lot of stealing from cars.'

"你最好别忘了锁车门,"我的朋友说,"已经发生了许多起偷盗车内物品的事件了。"相当于: My friends warned me not to leave my car unlocked as there had been a lot of stealing from cars.

我的朋友警告我不要忘了锁车门,因为已发生了许多起车内物品被盗事件了。

will you...类型的句子通常被看做请求,因此可以用 ask 进行转述: 'Will all persons not travelling please go ashore,'he said. 他说:"不是随船旅行的人上岸。"相当于: He asked all persons not travelling to go ashore.

他要求所有不是随船旅行的人上岸。

但如果 will you 句式的句子是用严厉或烦躁的口气说出,而且

省略了 please,则可用 tell 或 order 进行转述: 'Will you be quiet! / Be quiet, will you!' he said.

他说:"请安静!/请安静,好吗?"相当于: He told / ordered us to be quiet. 他命令我们安静。

321 间接命令的其他表示方法

Asay / tell+宾语+be+不定式: He said / told me that I was to wait.

他说我得等着。

这种结构可以代替 tell+不定式结构,因此: He said, 'Don't open the door.'

他说:"别开门。"

可转述为: He told me not to open the door.

他让我别开门。

He said that I wasn't to open the door.

他叫我不要开门。

be+不定式结构特别常用于下列场合: 1 如命令是由动词现在式引导的: He says, 'Meet me at the station.'

他说: "在车站接我。" 相当于: He says that we are to meet him at the station.

他让我们到车站去接他。

(在这里使用 He tells us to meet him...形式的可能性要小得多。)

2 如命令前有一个从句时(一般为时间从句或条件从句): He said, 'If she leaves the house follow her.'

他说:"如果她离开这所房子,就跟着她。"

He said that if she left the house I was to follow her.

他说如果她离开这所房子, 我就得跟着她。

He told me to follow her if she left the house(他让我在她离开这所房子时跟着她)同样也是可以的。但需注意,如果在这里用 tell+不定式结构,就必须首先改变从句的位置,将命令部分放在前面。有时这会使一个句子变得不顺或难解。如一个表示请求的句子 If you see Ann tell her to ring me(如果你看见安,让她给我打个电话)可转述为 He told me to tell Ann to ring him if I saw her。但为了避免不顺或难解,这种表示请求的句子只能用 be+不定式结构来进行转述: He said that if I saw Ann I was to tell her to ring him.

他说如果我见到安, 我得告诉她给他打个电话。

B say / tell (+ that) +主语+should

1 ay / tell 与 should 结构连用,一般表示劝告而并不是命令: He said,'If your brakes are bad don't drive so fast.'

他说: "如果你的刹车不灵,就别开得这么快。" 相当于: He said / told me that if my brakes were bad I shouldn't drive so fast.

他嘱咐我如果我的刹车不灵, 就别开得那么快。

He advised me not to drive so fast if my brakes were bad.

他忠告我如果我的刹车不灵,就别开那么快。(注意:这里的从句位置的变化与上面 tell+不 定式结构相同。)

2 表示劝告也可以用 advise, recommend 和 urge+that…should 结构。这种结构的被动式形式用得更为广泛(参见第 302 节 E): 'I advise cancelling the meeting,'he said. 他说:"我建议取消会议。"

He advised that the meeting should be cancelled.

他建议会议应予取消。

3 command 和 order 也可以与 should 或被动式连用: 'Evacuate the area!' ordered the superintendent.

警务长命令说:"所有人员撤出这一地区!"相当于: The superintendent ordered that everyone should leave the area / ordered that the area should be evacuated / ordered the area to be evacuated.

警务长命令所有人员撤出该地区/撤出该地区。

4 注意: 如第 320 节所示,使用宾语+不定式结构表示间接命令时,通常是在对受命者直接发令。但像上面 A 中所示用 be+不定式结构,或像上面 B3 中所示用 should 结构来表示命令时,那么就不一定是对受命者直接发令了,可能是由第三者把命令传达给受命者。

322 let's, let us, let him / them 用于间接引语

A let's

1 let's 通常表示建议, 在间接引语中用动词 suggest 转述: He said, 'Let's leave the case at the station.'

他说:"我们把箱子存在车站吧!"

可转述为: He suggested leaving the case at the station. / He suggested that they / we should leave the case at the station.

他建议他们/我们把箱子存在车站。

(关于与 suggest 连用的结构,参见第 289 节。)

He said, 'Let' s stop now and finish it later.'

他说:"现在停下来,以后再完成它。"

可转述为: He suggested stopping then and finishing it later. / He suggested that they / we should stop then and finish it later.

他当时建议(他们/我们)那时先停下来,以后再来完成。

否定式也是这样: He said, 'Let' s not say anything about it till we hear the facts.'

他说: "在我们没有听到事情的真相之前,对这件事什么话也别说。" 相当于: He suggested not saying anything / saying nothing about it till they heard the facts. / He suggested that they shouldn't say anything till they heard the facts.

他建议他们在没有听到事实真相之前什么都别说。

但如果单独使用 let's not 对一个肯定的建议做出答复,那么在转述时常用下列短语: opposed the idea / was against it / ob – jected。因此: 'Let's sell the house,'said Tom. 汤姆说:"我们把这房子卖了吧。"

'Let' s not,' said Ann.

安说:"我们别卖。"

可转述为: Tom suggested selling the house but Ann was against it.

汤姆建议把房子卖了,但是安表示反对。

(关于其他表示建议的形式,参见第289节。)

2 let's / let us 有时表示对一种行动的号召,这时通常由 urge / ad - vise+宾语+不定式结构表示(另参见第 320 节): The strike leader said,'Let's show the bosses that we are united.'

罢工领导人说:"我们给老板看看我们是团结一致的。"相当于: The strike leader urged the workers to show the bosses that they were united.

罢工领导人鼓动工人们给老板们看看他们是团结一致的。

B let him / them

1 从理论上讲 let him / them 表示命令。但实际上说话人对受命人时常并没有发号施令的权威: 'It's not my business,' said the postman. 'Let the government do some—thing about it.'

"这事与我无关。"邮递员说,"叫政府去想办法吧。"

这里说话人并不是在发号施令,而只是表示责任在谁身上,因此这类句子通常由 ought / should 来转述: He said that it wasn't his business and that the government ought to / should do something about it.

他说这不关他的事,而是政府应该对这事想点办法。

2 但有时 let him / them 表示真正的命令,在转述时常用 say+be+不定式结构 (参见第 321 节): 'Let the boys clear up this mess,' said the headmaster.

校长说:"这些脏乱的东西该由男孩子们去收拾。"相当于: The headmaster said that the boys were to clear up the mess.

校长说那些脏乱的东西让男孩子们去收拾。

'Let the guards be armed,' he ordered.

他命令道:"警卫人员要佩带武器。"相当于: He odered that the guards should be armed. 他命令说警卫人员必须佩带武器。

3 有时 let him / them 更多地表示建议而不是表示命令。在这种情况下,常用 suggest 或 say + should 来转述 (参见第 289 节): She said, 'Let them go to their consul. He'll be able to help them.'

她说:"让他们去找他们的领事, 他会帮助他们的。"相当于: She suggested their/them going to their consul... / She suggested that they should go to their consul / She said that they should go to their con— sul...

她建议他们去找他们的领事……

4 let him / them 也可以表示说话人对某事不在乎: 'The neighbours will complain,' said Ann.

安说:"邻居会抱怨的。"

'Let them (complain),' said Tom.

汤姆说:"让他们(抱怨)去吧。"相当于: Tom expressed indifference.

汤姆满不在乎。

Tom said he didn't mind (if they complained).

汤姆说(要是他们抱怨)那他也不在乎。

C let there be

说话人这样说时可以表示命令、劝告、催促或请求: 'Let there be no reprisals,' said the widow of the murdered man.

害者的遗孀说:"千万不要搞复仇。"相当于: The widow urged / begged that there should be no reprisals.

遗孀敦促 / 祈求不要去搞复仇。

D let 也是一个普通动词,意为 allow / permit (允许): 'Let him come with us,mother; I'll take care of him,'I said.

我说: "妈妈,让他跟我们一起去吧,我会照顾他的。" 相当于: I asked my mother to let him come with us and promised to take care of him.

我请求妈妈让他和我们一起去,并保证我会照顾他的。

323 惊叹句及 yes 和 no 变为间接引语

A 惊叹句在间接引语中通常变为陈述句,这时应取消惊叹号。

- 1 由 What (a) …或 How…开头的惊叹句,通常由
- (a) exclaim / say that 来转述: He said, 'What a dreadful idea!' / 'How dreadful!' 他说:"多可怕的想法!" / "多可怕!"相当于: He exclaimed that it was a dreadful idea/was dreadful.

他大声说/惊叫道这想法太可怕了。

(b) 用 give an exclamation of delight / disgust / horror / relief / sur— prise (欢悦 / 厌

恶 / 恐惧 / 宽慰 / 惊讶地呼喊了一声) 等词语转述。

另外, 如在惊叹语句后面跟一个动作, 可用

- (c) with an exclamation of delight / disgust 等+he / she 等+ 动词结构。
- 2 其他类型的惊叹语,如: Good!(好的!) Marvellous!(太棒了!) Splendid!(好极了!) Heavens!(天哪!) Oh!(哦!) Ugh!(啊! 呸!)等,可用上面(b)或(c)来转述: 'Good!' he exclaimed.

他大声叫道:"太好了!"相当于: He gave an exclamation of pleasure/satisfaction. 他愉快 / 满意地叫了一声。

'Ugh!' she exclaimed, and turned the programme off.

她叫道: "呸!" 然后把电视机关了。相当于: With an exclamation of disgust she turned the programme off.

她厌恶地啐了一声,并把电视机关了。

3 注意下面的用法: He said, 'Thank you!'

他说:"感谢您!"相当于: He thanked me.

他向我表示感谢。

He said, 'Curse this fog!'

他说:"这该死的雾!"相当于: He cursed the fog.

他咒骂那该死的雾。

He said, 'Good luck!'

他说:"祝你好运!"相当于: He wished me luck.

他祝我运气好。

He said, 'Happy Christmas!'

他说: "圣诞快乐!" 相当于: He wished me a happy Christmas.

他祝我圣诞快乐。

He said, 'Congratulations!'

他说:"祝贺你!"相当于: He congratulated me.

他向我表示祝贺。

He said, 'Liar!'

他说: "你撒谎!" 相当于: He called me a liar.

他骂我撒谎。

He said, 'Damn!'

他说:"该死!"相当于: He swore. 他骂了声该死。

The notice said: WELCOME TO WALES!

标语上写着:欢迎到威尔士来!相当于: The notice welcomed visitors to Wales.

标语说欢迎游客到威尔士来。

B yes 和 no 在间接引语中用主语+适当的助动词结构来表示: He said, 'Can you swim?' and I said 'No.'

他说:"你会游泳吗?"我说:"不会。"相当于: He asked (me) if I could swim and I said I couldn't.

他问(我)是否会游泳,我说不会。

He said, 'Will you have time to do it?' and I said, 'Yes.'

他说: "你有时间做这事吗?" 我说: "有。" 相当于: He asked if I would have time to do it and I said that I would.

他问我是否有时间做这事, 我说有时间。

324 混合类句式的间接引语形式

有些直接引语可由陈述句+问句、问句+命令句、命令句+陈述句这三种结构组成,或兼有三种句式。

A 通常每一部分都要求有各自的引导动词: 'I don't know the way. Do you?'he asked. 他问:"我不知道路。你知道吗?"相当于: He said he didn't know the way and asked her if she did / if she knew it.

他说他不知道路并问她是否知道。

'Someone' s coming,' be said. 'Get behind the screen.'

"有人来了。"他说,"躲到屏风后面去!"相当于: He said that someone was coming and told me to get behind the screen.

他说有人来了, 让我躲到屏风后面去。

I'm going shopping. Can I get you anything?' she said.

她说:"我去买东西。给你捎点什么吗?"相当于: She said she was going shopping and asked if she could get me anything.

她说她去买东西,并问是否要为我捎点什么。

'I can hardly hear the radio,' he said. 'Could you turn it up?'

"我几乎听不见广播。"他说,"你能开大点儿声吗?"相当于: He said he could hardly hear the radio and asked her to turn it up.

他说他几乎听不见广播,还让她开大点儿声。

B 有时,后一个从句的内容有助于说明第一句。这里可以用 as 代替第二个引导动词: 'You'd better wear a coat. It's very cold out,'he said.

他说:"你最好穿件外衣。外面很冷。"相当于: He advised me to wear a coat as it was very cold out.

他劝我穿件外衣, 因为外面很冷。

'You' d better not walk across the park alone. People have been mugged there,' he said.

他说:"你最好不要单独一人从公园里穿行,已有人在那里被抢劫了。"相当于: He warnd her not to walk across the park alone as people had been muggd there.

他告诫她不要单独一人从公园里穿行。因为已经有人在那里被抢劫了。

C 有时第二个引导动词可以是分词: 'Please, please, don't drink too much! Remember that you'll have to drive home,' she said.

她说:"求你了,别喝太多了!别忘了你还得开车回家呢。"相当于: She begged him not to drink too much,reminding him that he'd have to drive home.

她恳求他别喝太多了,并提醒他还得开车回家。

'Let's shop on Friday. The supermarket will be very crowded on Satur— day,'she said. 她说:"星期五去采购吧,星期六超级市场人太多了。"相当于: She suggested shopping on Friday, pointing out that the supermarket would be very crowded on Saturday.

她建议星期五去采购,还指出星期六超级市场人太多。

(as 在以上两上例句中都可以使用。)

325 must 和 needn't

A must 用于表示推论、永久命令或禁令及意向时,在间接引语中保持不变。(关于 must 表示劝告,参见第 287 节 A。)

1 表示推论: She said, 'I' m always running into him; he must live near here!'

她说:"我常遇见他,他一定就住在这附近!"相当于: She said that…he must live in the area.

她说……他一定就住在这附近。

2 表示永久命令: He said, 'This door must be kept locked.'

他说:"这门一定要经常锁好。"相当于: He said that the door must be kept locked. 他说那门一定要经常锁好。

3 must 在随便的话语中可表示意向,在间接引语中也保持不变: He said, 'We must have a party to celebrate this.'

他说:"我们得开个联欢会来庆贺这事。"相当于: He said that they must have a party to celebrate it.

他说他们得开个联欢会庆贺那事。

B must 用于表示责任时,在间接引语中可保持不变,但也可用 would have to 或 had to 来 转述。

1 I / we must 可用 would have to 来转述 would have to 用于表示该责任取决于将来某事时或某事的完成看来很遥远或不能肯定。也就是说,在这种情况下 must 显然可用 will have to 替代: 'If the floods get worse we must (will have to) leave the house.' he said.

他说: "如果洪水涨得更高,我们只好离开这所房子。" 相当于: He said that if the floods got worse they would have to leave the house.

他说如果洪水涨得更高,他们就得离开那所房子。

'When it stops snowing we must start digging ourselves out,' I sald.

我说:"等雪一停,我们就得挖一条路出去。"相当于: I said that when it stoppd snowing we would have to start digging our—selves out.

我说等雪一停我们就得挖一条路出去。

'We must mend the roof properly next year,' he said.

他说:"明年我们得把屋顶好好修理修理。"相当于: He said that they would have to mend the roof properly the following year.

他说下一年他们得把屋顶好好修理修理。

'I have just received a letter,' he said. 'I must go home.'

"我刚刚收到一封信,"他说,"我必须回家去。" 相当于: He said that he had just received a letter and would have to go home.

他说他刚刚收到一封信,他得回家去。(如果他说话后立即回家了,则更常用 had to,因为 had to 的含义是他马上动身了。)

2 I / we must 可用 had to 转述

如已决定需要在某一时间完成某一动作,或已订好某一计划,或所承担的某种义务可以较快地履行完毕,或至少在转述为间接引语时已经完成了,则常用 had to 表示某一必需去做的事: He said, 'I must wash my hands.'

他说:"我得洗洗手。"(他很可能后来马上去洗手了。) 相当于: He said that he had to wash his hands.

他说他得去洗洗手。

Tom said, 'I must be there by nine tomorrow.'

汤姆说: "我明天 9 点以前必须在那里。" 相当于: Tom said that he had to be there by nine the next day.

汤姆说第二天9点以前他必须在那里。

在这里也可以用 would have to, 但这样就暗示必须做的事是

自己要求自己做的,而不牵涉任何外在的权威。而 had to 既可以表示一种外在的权威(即有人叫他到那儿去),也可以表示自己要求自己做的一种事。

当然,如果 must 保持不变,则一切有关用 had to 或 would have to 的困难都可以避免。 在上面两个例子中都可以用 must 代替 had to 或 would have to。

3 含有 you / he / they must 的句子,也用同样方法转述: He said, 'You must start at once.'

他说:"你必须马上出发。"相当于: He said that she must / had to / would have to start at once

他说她必须马上出发。

注意:间接引语中用 would have to 时,不表示说话人的权威,而只表示客观的必要。

Tom said, 'If you want to stay on here you must work harder.'

汤姆说:"你如果想继续留在这儿,就必须更努力地工作。"相当于: Tom said that if she wanted to stay on she must / would have to work harder.

汤姆说她如果想继续留在那儿, 就必须更努力地工作。

must 意味着汤姆本人坚持要她更努力地工作,而 would have to 仅仅意味这么做是必要的。 4 含有 must I / you / he? 的问句也可进行同样的变化,但因为在疑问句中 must 常常表示目前或不久将来发生的事、所以常变为 had to:

'Must you go so soon?' I said.

我说:"你必须走得这么急吗?"相当于: I asked him if he had to go so soon. 我问他是否必须走得那么急。

5 must not

I must not 常常保持不变。 you / he must not 或保持不变,或用否定意义的命令句表示 (参见第 320 与第 321 节): He said, 'You mustn't tell anyone.'

他说:"你绝对不能告诉任何人。"相当于: He said that she mustn't tell / wasn't to tell anyone.

他说她绝对不能告诉任何人。

He told her not to tell anyone.

他告诉她不要告诉任何人。

C needn't

needn't可以保持不变,在一般情况下都是这样做的。另外一个办法是将它改变为 didn't have to / wouldn't have to,正如将 must 改变为 had to / would have to 一样: He said, 'You needn't wait.'

他说:"你没必要等了。"相当于: He said that I needn't wait.

他说我没必要等了。

I said, 'If you can lend me the money I needn' t go to the bank.'

我说: "如果你能借给我钱,我就不必去银行了。"相当于: I said that if he could lend me the money I needn't / wouldn't have to go to the bank.

我说如果他能借给我钱我就不必去银行了。

He said, 'I needn' t be in the office till ten tomorrow morning.'

他说:"我明天上午不必在 10 点之前就到办公室。"相当于: He said that he needn' t / didn't have to be in the office till ten the next morning.

他说他第二天上午不必在10点之前到办公室。

need I / you / he? 的用法与 must I / you / he? 完全相同。即它常常变为 had to: 'Need I finish my pudding?' asked the small boy.

小男孩问道:"我一定得把布丁吃完吗?"相当于: The small boy asked if he had to finish his pudding.

小男孩问他是否一定得把布丁吃完。

第三十二章 连词

326 并列连词

and, but, both...and, or, either...or, neither...nor, not only…but also 这些连词把一对对的名词 / 形容词 / 副词 / 动词 / 短语 / 从句连在一起: He plays squash and rugby.

他玩壁球和英式橄榄球。

I make the payments and keep the accounts.

我管付款和记账。

He works quickly and / but accurately.

他做事快而准确无误。

He is small but strong.

他虽矮小, 但很结实。

She is intelligent but lazy.

她人聪明, 但懒惰。

We came in first but (we) didn't win the race.

我们是头一个到终点的, 但是没有赢得这次比赛。

Both men and women were drafted into the army.

男女都被征去当兵。

Ring Tom or Bill.

给汤姆或比尔打电话。

She doesn't smoke or drink.

她不抽烟也不喝酒。

He can't (either) read or write.

他既不认得字也不会写字。

You can (either) walk up or take the cable car.

你走上去或乘缆车上去都可以。

He can neither read nor write.

他既不认得字也不会写字。

Not only men but also women were chosen.

不仅仅是男的, 女的也有被选中的。

327 besides, however, nevertheless,

otherwise, so, therefore, still, yet, though

这些副词/连词可以连接两个从句或两个句子。此时它们被认为是"准连词"。除了 nevertheless 和 therefore 二者为连词外,它们也可有其他用法,有时用做其他词类。它们 在句中的位置取决于它们的用法。

A besides (介词) 意为"除······外又······"。它位于名词 / 代词 / 动名词之前: Besides doing the cooking I look after the garden.

除了做饭之外我还得管园子。

besides (副词) 意为"又,另外",通常位于它引导的从句之前,有时也可位于其后: I can't go now; I'm too busy. Besides,my passport is out of date.

我现在不能走,我太忙了。何况我的护照过期了。

在较正式的英语中,可以用 moreover 代替 besides。

在较非正式的英语中,也可用 anyway 或 in any case 代替这样使用的 besides: Anyway, my passport's out of date.

反正,我的护照过期了。

B however (程度副词,参见第 41 节) 可位于形容词 / 副词之前: You couldn't earn much, however hard you worked

无论你干得多卖力,你都挣不了多少钱。

however(连词)通常意为"但是",可位于它所引导的从句之前或之后,或位于第一个词或短语之后: I'll offer it to Tom. However,he may not want it. / He may not want it however, / Tom,however,may not want it. / If,however,he doesn't want it... 我将提出把这个给汤姆,然而他可能不要它。/ 而汤姆可能不要它。/ 然而,万一汤姆不要它的话……

但提到两句意义相反的话时, however 意为"但是 / 仍然 / 同样": They hadn't trained hard,but / however/nevertheless/all the same they won however / nevertheless / all the same.

他们并没有刻苦训练,但/无论如何/仍然/同样获胜了。

(另参见第 329 节。)

C otherwise (副词) 常常位于动词之后: It must be used in a well—ventilated room. Used otherwise it could be harmful.

必须在通风条件好的房间里使用。如不这样使用则可能是有害的。

otherwise (连词) 意为"要是不 / 否则": We must be early; otherwise we won't get a seat.

我们得早点去,否则我们就没有座位了。

在英语口语中,这里也可用 or: We must be early or (else) we won't get a seat. (译文同上。)

D so (程度副词)位于形容词/副词之前: It was so hot that...

天气太热了,因而……

They ran so fast that...

他们骑得太快了,因而……

so(连词)位于它所引导的从句之前: Our cases were heavy, so we took a taxi. 我们的箱子太重了,所以我们要了辆出租车。

E therefore (连词) 在正式英语中可用来代替 so。它可位于一个从句之前、该从句的第一个词或第一个短语之后、或该从句的主要动词之前: There is fog at Heathrow; the plane, therefore, has been diverted/the plane has therefore been diverted / therefore the plane has been diverted.

希思罗机场有雾; 因此飞机转飞别的机场了。

F still 和 yet 可作时间副词(参见第 37 节): The children are still up. They haven't had supper yet.

孩子们还没上床睡觉/醒着。他们还没吃晚饭呢。

still 和 yet (连词)位于它们所引导的从句之前。

still (连词) 意为"虽承认某事 / 尽管如此"。

yet (连词) 意为"不管,不顾/同样/尽管如此"。

You aren't rich; still you could do something to help him.

你虽然不富有,但你仍可以给予他帮助。

They are ugly and expensive; yet people buy them.

它们既难看又昂贵,但人们还是买。

G though / although 通常引导让步从句(参见第 340 节):Though / Although they're expensive, people buy them.

尽管/虽然它们很昂贵,人们还是买。

though 也可用于连接两个主句,但 although 不能这样用。

though 这么用时意为"但"或"还",有时位于句首,大多数情况下位于句末: He says he'll pay, though I don't think he will. / He says he'll pay; I don't think he will, though. 他说他要付钱,然而我认为他不会付的。

328 从属连词

if, that, though / although, unless, when 等

引导从属从句或名词从句的从属连词在有关从句的各章中均有所描述。条件从句参见第二十一章;目的从句参见第三十三章;理由、结果、让步、比较从句和时间从句参见第三十四章;名词从句参见第三十五章。某些连词有多种意思,可引导不同类型的从句。

有些连词容易与另一个连词或与几个其他词类混淆。下面就谈一谈这些连词。

329 though / although 和 in spite of

(介词短语), despite (介词)

两个相反的或对照的陈述语,如 He had no qualifications(他没有资格证明)和 He got the job(他得到了工作),可用下列方法合并到一个句子里: A 可如上面第 327 节所示,用 but,however 或 nevertheless: He had no qualifications but he got the job.

他没有资格证明, 但他却得到了这份工作。

He had no qualifications; however he got the job/he got the job, howev— er.

他没有资格证明, 但仍然得到了这份工作。

He had no qualifications; nevertheless he got the job.

他没有资格证明,然而他还是得到了这份工作。

B 可以使用 though / although: He got the job although he had no qualifications.

Although he had no qualifications he got the job.

尽管他没有资格证明, 他还是得到了这份工作。

C 可以使用 in spite of / despite+名词 / 代词 / 动名词: In spite of having no qualifications he got the job.

He got the job in spite of having no qualifications.

(译文同上。)

despite (= in spite of) 主要用于报刊和正规英语中: Despite the severe weather conditions all the cars completed the course.

牼| 芷 蛱跫 窳樱 谐盗径寂芡炅巳 獭?

D 注意 though / although 之后要求用主语+动词结构: Although it was windy...

尽管有风 ……

in spite of / despite 要求带名词 / 代词或动名词: In spite of the wind...

(译文同上。)

例句: Although it smelt horrible...

尽管味道很难闻······相当于: In spite of the horrible smell...

任凭味道多难闻 ……

Although it was dangerous...

尽管这很危险……相当于: In spite of the danger...

哪怕有危险 ……

Though he was inexperienced...

虽然他没有经验······相当于: In spite of his inexperience / his being inexperienced... 哪怕他没有经验······

330 for 和 because

这两个词的意思很相近,通常是可以互换使用的。为了安全起见,最好用 because 引导从句,因为同 because 引导的从句相比,for 引导的从句(英文中称为 for—clause)的用法要受到某些限制: 1 for 引导的从句不能位于它所解释的动词之前: Because it was wet he took a taxi.

因为下雨,他叫了一辆出租车。(这里不能用 for。)

2 for 引导的从句不能位于 not, but 或任何连词之后: He stole, not because he wanted the money but because he liked stealing.

他偷东西,并不是因为他想要钱,而是他有这种毛病。(这里不能用 for。)

- 3 for 引导的从句不能用于回答问题: —Why did you do it?
- —I did it because I was angry.
- 一你为什么这么做?
- 一因为我生气才这么做的。(这里不能用 for。)
- 4 for 引导的从句不能单单用来复述已讲过的话,而必须包括新的内容: He spoke in French. She was angry because he had spoken in French.

他讲法语。因为他讲法语,她生气了。(这里不能用 for。)

但是说: She was angry, for she didn't know French.

她生气了,因为她不懂法语。(这里用 for 是正确的,也可用 because。)之所以有这些用法上的限定,其理由是 for 引导的从句不能直

接说明某一特定动作发生的原因,而只能提供一些起帮助解释作用的附加说明。

例句如: The days were short, for it was now December.

天短了,现在已是12月了。

He took the food eagerly, for he has eaten nothing since dawn.

他狼吞虎咽地吃了起来, 因为他从天亮就没吃过东西。

When I saw her in the river I was frightened. For at that point thecurrents were dangerous.

我看见她在河里时,吓坏了。那个地方水流非常危险。

在口语中,for 从句前常稍停一下。在笔语中,在此处常有一个逗号。有时也用一个句号断开,如最后一个例子所示。上面三个例句中也可用 because,但用 for 更好些。

331 用于表示时间的 when, while, as

A when 常与一般时态连用: 1 用于表示一个动作与另一个动作在同一时间发生,或一个动作在另一动作所延续的时间范围之内发生: When it is wet the buses are crowded. 天下雨时公共汽车就很拥挤。

When we lived in town we often went to the theatre.

我们住在城里时常去剧院看戏。

2 一个动作紧接着另一个动作: When she pressed the button the lift stopped.

她按了按键, 电梯停住了。

B as 用于表示下列情况: 1 第二个动作发生在第一个动作结束之前: As I left the house I remembered the key.

正在我要离开家时,我想起了钥匙。

这意指在我离开家这个动作还没有完成时就想起了钥匙,很有可能我还在门口处。While I was leaving(我正要离开时)的意思与此相同。但是 When I left(当我离开后)意指离开的动作已完成,门已关上了。

2 两个动作同时发生: He sang as he worked.

他边走边唱。

3 两个动作同时进行: As the sun rose the fog dispersed.

太阳升起,浓雾散去。

As it grew darker it became colder. 相当于: The darker it grew, the colder it became. 天色越暗,天气越冷。

As she came to know him better she relied on him more.

随着她对他理解的加深,她也更加依赖他了。

As he became more competent he was given more interesting work.

随着他能力的增长,他被托付以更有意义的工作。

如果这里使用when,就会完全失去同时并进或比肩发展的意思。

他站在那儿时,看见了两个男人走进了酒吧。

as 在这里的用法没有特别的优越性,用 while 更为安全。

332 as 意为 when / while (当······时)

或 because / since (由于)

A as (=when / while) 的用法的限制

这里 as 主要与表示动作或发展过程的动词连用,一般情况下它不与第 168 节中所列的动词连用,除如上面 B3 所示有发展之意时例外。在一般情况下它也不与 live,stay,remain 这类动词连用。

B as 与上述动词或同类动词连用时,一般均表示 because / since (由于): As he was tired… 相当于: Because he was tired…

因为他太累了 ……

As he knew her well…相当于: Because he knew her well......

因为他了解她 ……

As it contains alcohd...相当于: Since/Because it contains alcohol......

因为它含有酒精……

As he lives near here…相当于: Since / Because he lives…

因为他住的地方离这儿很近 ……

C as 与多数动词连用时,可以是两种意思中的任一个意思: As/While he shaved he thought about the coming interview.

他边刮胡子, 边想着即将进行的面谈。

As / Because he shaved with a blunt razor he didn't make a very good job of it.

因为他用一把钝剃须刀刮胡子,所以刮得不好。

如果在这个问题上没有把握,最好用 while 或 because。

D as+名词时意为 when/while (当······时) 或 because/since (由于): As a student he had known great poverty. 相当于: When he was a student he had known great poverty. 他当学生时,经历过很贫困的生活。

As a student he gets/got in for half price. 相当于: Because he is / was a student be gets / got in...

由于是学生,他付半价就入场了。

As a married man, he has to think of his family. 相当于: Because / Since he is a married man...

作为一个有妇之夫, 他必须考虑他的家庭。

as 在这里意为 when / while 时,后面常跟完成时态。

as 意为 because / since 时,后面可跟任一时态。

333 as, when, while 意为 although (尽管),

but (但是), seeing that (鉴于)

A 只有在形容词+as+主语+to be / to seem / to appear 这一结构中, as 才意为 though / although (尽管):

Tired as he was he offered to carry her. 相当于: Though he was tired he offered to carry her.

尽管他很累了,他还主动提出要背着她。

Strong as he was, he couldn't lift it.

尽管他力气很大, 他仍提不起这个东西。

B while 可意为 but,用于表示强调对比: 'At sea' means 'on a ship',while 'at the sea' means 'at the seaside'.

"At sea" 意为"在船上", 而"at the sea" 意为"在海滩上"。

Some people waste food while others haven't enough.

一些人糟踏食物而另一些人却食不果腹。

while 可以意为 although,这时常放在句首: While I sympathize with your point of view I cannot accept it.

尽管我认同你的观点,但我不能接受它。

C when 可以意为 seeing that / although(鉴于)。因此它同 while 很相似,但主要用于引导使另一个动作显得不合理的陈述句。

它常用在一个问句里,但不是一定如此: How can you expect your children to be truthful when you yourself tell lies?

你自己都在撒谎,怎么能指望你的孩子们诚实?

It's not fair to expect her to do all the cooking when she has had no training or experience.

她没有受过烹调方面的训练,也没有这方面的经验,让她把做饭的事全部承担下来是不公平的.

D 请务必不要搞混 when 与 if 的用法。

When he comes (等他来了) 意为我们肯定他会来的。If he comes (如果他来了) 意为我们不能肯定他是否会来。

(关于 if 用于条件句,参见第二十一章。)

第三十三章 目的

334 不定式表示目的

表示目的时可以使用下列各种方法: A 单独的不定式: He went to France to learn French. 他去法国学习法语。

They stopped to ask the way.

他们停下来问路。

当主要动词之后有一个间接宾语时,不定式可能指这个间接宾语而不是指主语: He sent Tom to the shop to buy bread

他派汤姆到店里去买面包。(该由汤姆而不该由主语"他"去买面包。)

B in order / so as+不定式

in order+不定式意指主语想要做这一动作,或主语很希望这一动作发生。

so as+不定式仅指主语很希望某一动作发生。因此 in order +不定式比 so as+不定式更为普遍。

in order 或 so as 也常用于以下情况: 1 与否定不定式连用,表示否定性的目的: He left his gun outside in order / so as not to frighten us.

为了不使我们受到惊吓,他把枪放在了外面。

2 与 to be 和 to have 连用: She left work early in order/so as to be at home when he arrived.

为了在家等他到达,她提前下了班。

She gave up work in order/so as to have more time with the children.

为了能有更多的时间和孩子们相处,她放弃了工作。

3 表示不是近期能实现的目的: He is studying mathematics in order / so as to qualify for

a better job.

他学习数学是为了能有资格做更好的工作。

She learnt typing in order to help her husband with his work.

她学习打字是为了帮助她丈夫工作。

4 有时在较长的句子中,用于强调不定式表示目的: He was accused of misrepresenting the facts in order / so as to make the scheme seem feasible.

人们指责他为了使计划显得可行而没有如实地把真相说出来。

He took much more trouble over the figures than he usually did in order / so as to show his new boss what a careful worker he was.

为了向新老板显示他是工作非常细心的人,他在这些数字上费了比往常更多的力气。

(但是 in order / so as 并非必要,有时是可省略的。)

表示目的的不定式位于主要动词之前时,in order / so as 可位于句首: In order / So as to show his boss what a careful worker he was,he took ex— tra trouble over the figures. 为了向新老板显示他是个工作非常细心的人,他在这些数字上费了比平常更多的力气。(但这里的 in order / so as 也可以省略。)

5 句中有一个间接宾语而要想让不定式毫不含混地指主语时,可用 so as / in order:

He sent his sons to a boarding school in order / so as to have some peace.

为了图清静,他把他的儿子们送进了寄宿学校。(这里是指他要清静,而不是他的儿子们。) 比较: He sent his sons to a boarding school to learn to live in a community.

为了让儿子们学会在集体中生活,他把儿子们送进了寄宿学校。(是让他的儿子们学会在集体中生活,而不是他。)

但是 in order / so as 的这种用法不是很普遍,更常说: He sent his sons to a boarding school because he wanted to have some peace.

他把儿子们送进寄宿学校, 因为他想清静点儿。

C in order (不包括 so as) 可用于强调不定式所表示的是主语脑子里真正想要达到的目的:

- —He bought diamonds when he was in Amsterdam!
- —That wasn't surprising. He went to Amsterdam in order to buy dia—monds.
- 一他在阿姆斯特丹时竟买了一些钻石!
- 一这并不奇怪,他就是为了买钻石才去阿姆斯特丹的。(不是为了其他目的。)

另外也可用重读第一个动词而省略 in order 的方法来表示同样的意思: He' went to Amsterdam to buy diamonds.

他去阿姆斯特丹就是为了买钻石。

D 不定式+名词+介词: I want a case to keep my records in.

我想要一个盒子来保存我的唱片。

I need a corkscrew to open this bottle with.

我需要一个螺丝刀来打开瓶塞。

注意:这里谈论的是特指的目的。

关于泛指的目的可用 for+动名词结构来表示: This is a case for keeping records in. 这是用来保存唱片的盒子。

A corkscrew is a tool for opening bottles.

螺丝刀是用来开启瓶塞的工具。

335 用于 go 和 come 之后的目的不定式

一般在祈使语气或 go 和 come 的不定式之后不再使用目的不定式。常用 Go and find Bill(去

把比尔找来)来代替 Go to find Bill;用 Come and talk to Ann(来跟安说说话)来代替 Come to talk to Ann。即:两个祈使动词用 and 连接起来时可代替一个命令+目的不定式。

在一般情况下说: I must go and help my mother.

我必须去帮助我母亲。

I'll come and check the accounts.

我将来清理账目。

而不是说: I must go to help my mother.

I'll come to check the accounts.

即:用 and 连接两个不定式结构来代替不定式+目的不定式结构。(参见第 246 节 I。)但如 go 和 come 用做动名词或以任何现在时态和过去时态出现时,应带一个表示目的的不定式:I'm thinking of going to look for mushrooms. 我想去采蘑菇。

I went to help my mother.

我去帮助母亲了。

I' ve come to check the accounts.

我来查账来了。

I didn't come to talk to Bill: I came to talk to you.

我不是来跟比尔说话的:我是来跟你说话的。

336 目的从句

如目的所指的人与主句中的主语不同,或原主语再次被提到,则必须使用目的从句: Ships carry lifeboats so that the crew can escape if the ship sinks.

大船上带有救生艇, 万一船下沉船员可以逃生。

This knife has a cork handle so that it will float if it falls overboard.

这把刀的柄是用软木做的,万一从船上掉下去,它可以浮在水面上。

A 目的从句常由 so that + will / would 或 can / could + 动词原形结构来表示。

这里 can / could 意为 will / would be able to:

They make £ 10 notes a different size from £ 5 notes so that blind people can (=will be able to) tell the difference between them.

他们把十英镑的纸币和五英镑的纸币做成不同大小,以便使盲人可以区分开来。

They wrote the notices in several languages so that foreign tourists could (=would be able to) understand them.

他们把通知用几国文字写出来,以便让各国游客都能看得懂。

如句子的主要动词是一般现在时、一般完成时或一般将来时,则都可用 can 和 will。如主要动词是一般过去时,则使用 could 和 would。请看上面和下面这些例句: I light / am lighting / have lit / will light the fire so that the house will be warm when they return.

我点着 / 正在点着 / 已点着 / 将要点着炉子,以便等他们回来时屋子就暖和了。

I have given / will give him a key so that he can get into the house when— ever he likes. 我已经给 / 会给他一把钥匙,好让他能随时进来。

I pinned the note to his pillow so that he would be sure to see it.

我把纸条用针别在他的枕头上了,好让他一定能看得见。

There were telephone points every kilometre so that drivers whose cars had broken down would be able to / could summon help.

每公里都有求援电话点,以便汽车出了毛病时司机可随时呼唤帮助。

如果带 can / could 的目的从句中省去 that,那么这一目的性可能随之消失。He took my shoes so that I couldn't leave the house(他把我的鞋拿走了,好让我出不了门)意为 He took my shoes to prevent my leaving(他把鞋拿走是为了阻止我离开)。但是 He took my shoes,so I couldn't leave the house(他把鞋拿走了,我出不了门)意为 He took my shoes;therefore I wasn't able to leave(他把我的鞋拿走了,所以我不能够出门)。

B so that / in order that / that + may / might 或 shall / should + 不定式结构也可构成目的 从句。这种结构仅比上面 A 中所示的结构更为正规,在意思上是相同的。

注意: so that 之后可跟 will / can / may / shall 或它们的过去式。

in order that 或 that 之后只限跟 may / shall 或它们的过去式。

that 除在戏剧、诗歌及文章中外极少单独使用。

关于时态一致的规定与上文所述相同。下文的句子是很正式的: We carved their names on the stone so that / in order that future genera— tions should / might know what they had done.

我们把他们的名字刻在石头上,为的是让后代们知道他们的事迹。

These men risk their lives so that / in order that we may live more safely.

这些人甘冒生命危险, 为的是让我们生活更安全。

在一般现在时中 may 比 shall 更常见, shall 现已很少用。但在一般过去时中 might 或 should 都可使用。对上述形式要有所了解,但并不见得需要用,因为在一般情况下,用 so that + can / could 或 will / would 就足够了。

C 表示否定目的的从句由助动词(will / would 或 should)变为否定式构成: He wrote his diary in code so that his wife wouldn't be able to read it.

为了不让妻子看懂,他用密码写日记。

He changed his name so that his new friends wouldn't / shouldn't know that he had once been accused of murder.

为了不让新朋友们知道他曾被控犯有谋杀罪,他改了名字。

Criminals usually telephone from public telephone boxes so that the police won't be able to trace the call.

罪犯常在公用电话亭打电话,好让警察追查不到电话是从哪儿打来的。

表示否定目的的从句常可用 to prevent+名词 / 代词+动名词或 to avoid+动名词来代替: He dyed his beard so that we should't recognize him / to prevent us rec—ognizing him / to avoid being recognized.

他染了胡子,好让我们认不出/为了阻止/为了避免我们认出他。(被动态动名词)

She always shopped in another village so that she wouldn't meet her own neighbours / to avoid meeting her own neighbours.

她经常去另外一个村子购买东西,以免碰到她的邻居/为了避免碰到她的邻居。

与表示否定目的的从句相比, 人们更喜欢用这些不定式短语。

337 in case 和 lest

A in case

1 in case+主语+动词可跟在陈述句或命令句后面: I don't let him climb trees in case he tears his trousers.

我不让他爬树, 以免撕破裤子。

句子的第一个动作常常是为 if 从句中的动作所做的准备或是对它采取的预防措施。if 从句表示将来可能发生的动作。in case+一般现在时常意为 because this may happen / because perhaps this will happen / for fear that this may happen (因为这大概会发生 / 因为这也许将会发生 / 以免它会发生)。

in case+一般过去时常意为 because this might happen / be— cause perhaps this would happen / for fear that this would happen (因为这会发生 / 因为这将会发生 / 以免它会发生)。

在这里,无论现在时或过去时都可用 should+动词原形来代替。should 在此表示更小的可能性,但是这种结构不常见。

2 各种时态与 in case 连用

I' Il make a cake in case someone drops in at the weekend.

我将做个蛋糕以免有人周末来。

I carry a spare wheel in case I have / should have a puncture.

我带了个备用轮胎, 以免车胎被刺破。

I always keep candles in the house in case there is a power cut.

我家里常备有蜡烛, 以防断电。

I always kept candles in the house in case there was a power cut.

我家里以前常备有蜡烛,以防断电。

(另参见第 227 节。)

B lest 意为 for fear that (恐怕), 后面跟 should:

He doesn't / didn't dare to leave the house lest someone should recognize him.

他不敢出门, 怕有人认出他来。

lest 除在较正式的书面英语中出现外,一般不常用。

第三十四章 原因从句、结果从句、让步从句、比较从句、 时间从句?

338 原因从句和结果/原因从句

除了下面 A2, A3 中所示各种类型外,这两种从句均可由 as 或 because 来引导。但是用 as 引导原因从句较为稳妥(参见 A);用 because 引导结果/原因从句较为稳妥(参见 B)。A 原因从句

1 由 as / because / since 引导的原因从句: We camped there as / because / since it was too dark to go on.

我们在那里露宿是因为天太黑,不能再继续往前走了。

As / Because / Since it was too dark to go on, we camped there.

因为天太黑不能再继续往前走,我们就在那儿露宿了。

2 in view of the fact that 可用 as / since / seeing that 来表示,但不能用 because:

As / Since / Seeing that you are here, you may as well give me a hand.

既然你在这儿, 你就帮我个忙吧。

As / Since / Seeing that Tom knows French, he'd better do the talking. 既然汤姆懂法语,最好让他来谈。

3 在 as / since / seeing that 意指以前共知的或共知的陈述时,可用 if 来代替: As / Since / Seeing that / If you don't like Bill, why did you invite him?

既然/如果你不喜欢比尔,你为什么邀请了他?

注意: if so 的用法: —I hope Bill won't come.

- —If so (=If you hope he won't come), why did you invite him?
- 一我希望比尔别来。
- 一如果这样(=如果你希望他不来),你为什么邀请了他?

关于 if+so / not, 参见第 347 节。

B 结果从句(参见第 339 节)由 because 或 as 引导: The fuse blew because we had overloaded the circuit.

保险丝烧断了,因为我们使线路超载了。

He was angry because we were late.

他生气是因为我们来晚了。

As it froze hard that night there was ice everywhere next day.

因为那天晚上冷得厉害, 所以第二天到处都是冰。

As the soup was very salty we were thirsty afterwards.

因为这汤很咸,后来我们渴得厉害。

C 这种组合也可用 so 连接两个主句的形式来表示: It was too dark to go on, so we camped there.

天太黑了,不能继续往前走了,所以我们就在那儿露宿了。

You are here, so you may as well give me a hand.

你们既然在这儿,不如就帮我一下。

It froze hard that night, so there was ice everywhere next day.

那天夜里冷得厉害, 所以第二天到处都是冰。

也可以使用 therefore,但只限用于非常正式的句子中: The Finnish delegate has not yet arrived. We are therefore postponing / We have therefore decided to postpone / Therefore we are postponing the meeting.

芬兰代表还没有到达。我们因此要把会议推迟/因此我们已决定把会议推迟/因此我们要把会议推迟。(注意 therefore 可以放在几个不同的位置。)

339 such / so…that 引导的结果从句

A such 是形容词,用于形容词+名词结构之前: They had such a fierce dog that no one dared to go near their house.

他们有一条如此凶猛的狗, 以致没人敢靠近他们家。

He spoke for such a long time that people began to fall asleep.

他说了这么长时间,以致在座的人都犯困了。

B so 是副词,用于副词和不带名词的形容词之前:The snow fell so fast that our footsteps were soon covered up.

雪下得这么快,以致我们的脚印很快就被雪盖住了。

His speech went on for so long that people began to fall asleep.

他的讲话这么长,以致在座的人都开始犯困了。

Their dog was so fierce that no one dared come near it.

他们的狗太凶猛了, 所以没人敢靠近它。

但 such 不能用于 much 和 many 之前, 所以 so 可用于后跟名词的 much 和 many 之前: There was so much dust that we couldn't see what was happening.

灰尘太大了,使得我们看不清发生了什么事。

So many people complained that they took the programme off.

抱怨的人太多, 所以他们取消了那个节目。

C 注意: such+a+形容词+名词可由 so+形容词+a+名词来代替,所以 such a good man 可由 so good a man 来代替。这只能在名词前面有 a / an 的情况下使用。这种形式不常见,但有时出现在文学作品中。

有时为了表示强调,so 位于句首。这时后面跟动词的倒装形式(参见第 45 节)。So terrible was the storm that whole roofs were ripped off.

暴风真可怕,把整个的屋顶全都刮飞了。

340 让步从句

它们由下列词来引导: although, though(参见第 327 节与第 329 节), even though, even if, no matter, however(参见第 85 节)。有时也可以使用 whatever。as 也可以,但是只限于形容词十as+be 结构。

Although / Though / Even though / Even if you don't like him you can still be polite. 尽管 / 即使 / 纵然 / 即使你不喜欢他,你仍可有礼貌一些。

No matter what you do, don't touch this switch.

无论怎样,都别碰这个按钮。

However rich people are, they always seem anxious to make more mon— ey.

无论人们多么富有,他们似乎总还渴望赚到更多的钱。

However carefully you drive, you will probably have an accident eventual—ly.

无论你开车多小心,最后你大概还会出车祸。

Whatever you do, don't tell him that I told you this.

无论如何,别跟他说这件事是我告诉你的。

Patient as he was, he had no intention of waiting for three hours.

哪怕他再有耐心, 也不打算等上三个小时。

may+动词原形可用于假设情况: However frightened you may be yourself, you must remain outwardly calm.

无论你有多害怕,外表上你仍要保持冷静。

may 含有 I accept the fact that (我接受这一事实) 的意思: —But he's your brother!

- —He may be my brother but I don't trust him!
- 一可他是你的兄弟!
- 一尽管他是我的兄弟,可我不信任他!

但 may 这样用时,是另一主句的一部分,并不属于让步从句之列。should + 动词原形结构可用于 even if 之后,正如用于条件句的 if 之后一样,用来表示 should 后面的动词原形所指的动作不太可能发生: Even if he should find out he won't do anything about it. 即便他发现了,他也不会采取什么行动的。

341 比较从句

A 形容词和限定动词连用时的比较(另参见第 20 节至第 22 节)。It's darker today than it was yesterday.

今天比昨天天色昏暗。

He doesn't pay as much tax as we do / as us.

他没我们交的税款多。

He spends more than he earns.

他花的比挣的多。

注意: that+形容词是一种口语形式,表示"那么……": 一Will it cost £ 100?

- —No, it won't cost as much as (all) that. It won't be (all) that expen
- sive. / It won't be as expensive as that.
- 一要花 **100** 英镑吗?
- 一不,花不了那么多。没那么贵。

that+形容词结构有时用于口语中表示 very (很)的意思。

B 副词和限定动词连用时的比较(参见第 31 节至第 34 节): He didn't play as well as we expected / as well as you (did).

他打得不如我们预料的好 / 你打得好。

He sings more loudly than anyone I' ve ever heard / than anyone else (does).

他唱得比我听到的任何人唱得都响/比任何人都声音响。

You work harder than he does / than him / than I did at your age.

你比他干得卖劲/我在你这个年龄时干得卖劲。

C 形容词和不定式或动名词连用时的比较:通常两者都可使用,但动词不定式常常用于特定的动作,动名词则用于一般情况(参见下面 E): It's sometimes as cheap to buy a new one as (it is) (to) repair the old one.

Buying a new one is sometimes as cheap as repairing the old one.

有时买一个新的跟修理旧的一样便宜。

He found that lying on the beach was just as boring as sitting in his office.

He found lying on the beach just as boring as sitting etc.

他发现躺在沙滩上和坐在办公室里一样没趣 / 烦人。

He thinks it (is) safer to drive himself than (to) let me drive.

He thinks that driving himself is safer than letting me drive.

他认为自己开车要比让我开车更安全些。

It will soon be more difficult to get a visa than it is now.

Getting a visa will soon be more difficult than it is now.

不久之后,签证会比现在更难拿到。

D 上面 C 所述的这种比较句式中,如 as / than 前面用的是动词原形,则常在 as / than 后面用动词原形而不用动名词。与此相同,如 as / than 前面用的是动名词,则在其后面一般也使用动名词,而不用动词原形,见前面的例子。位于 as / than 之前的限定动词+this / that / which 后面多跟动名词,虽也可跟动词不定式: I'll deliver it by hand; this will be cheaper than posting it.

我自己送过去,这样比邮寄要便宜。

He cleaned his shoes, which was better than doing nothing.

他把自己的鞋擦了,这总比无事可做好。

E 动词原形与 would rather / sooner 连用 (参见第 297 与第 298 节): Most people would rather work than starve.

多数人宁可工作也不愿挨饿。

I would resign rather than accept him as a partner.

我宁可辞职也不愿接受他为合伙人。

342 时间从句

A 时间从句由下列表示时间的连词来引导: after ?immediately ?till / until

as?nosooner…than?when

as soon as?since whenever

before?the sooner ?while

hardly...when

时间从句也可由 the minute, the moment 来引导。

用 when, as, while 的例句, 参见第 331 节至第 333 节。

用 before 的例句,参见第 195 节 B。

B 请留意, 时间从句中不用将来时态或条件时态。

1 如将下列将来时态放入时间从句中,须将它变为一般时态。

一般将来时: You'll be back soon. I'll stay till then.

你会很快回来,我一直等到那时。相当于: I'll stay till you get back.

我一直等到你回来。

be going to <math>形式: The parachutist is going to jump. Soon after he jumps his parachute will open.

跳伞运动员要往下跳。他刚跳之后不久,降落伞就会打开。

现在进行时用做一般将来时和将来进行时: He's arriving / He'll be arriving at six. 他将在 6 点到。

但是: When he arrives he'll tell us all about the match.

等他到了,他会好好给我们讲讲那场比赛。

Before he arrives I'll give the children their tea.

在他来到之前,我会给孩子们吃茶点的。

如进行时态表示某一行动在继续,则其完全可以用在表示时间的从句中: Peter and John will be playing / are playing / are going to play tennis tonight. While they are playing (during this time) we'll go to the beach.

今晚彼得和约翰要去打网球。他们打球时,我们将去海滨。

2 在时间从句中,将来完成时变为现在完成时,将来完成进行时变为现在完成进行时:I' ll have finished in the bathroom in a few minutes.

我一会儿就用完浴室了。

The moment / As soon as I have finished I'll give you a call.

我一完事儿,就给你打电话。

3 在时间从句中,条件时态变为过去时态: We knew that he would arrive / would be arriving about six.

我们知道他将在六点钟左右到。

We knew that till he arrived nothing would be done.

我们知道在他到来之前,什么都干不了。

但是,如 when 引导的是一个名词从句,后面可跟将来时态或条件时态: He said, 'When will the train get in?'

他说:"火车什么时候进站?"相当于: He asked when the train would get in. 他问火车什么时候进站。

C since 从句(参见第 187 与第 188 节)

since 从句后面常跟完成时态(另参见第 188 节):They've moved house twice since they got married. / Since they gotmarried, they've moved house twice.

他们结婚后已搬了两次家。

He said he' d lived in a tent since his house burnt down.

他说自从他的房屋被烧毁后,他就一直住在帐篷里。

It's ages since I sailed / have sailed a boat.

我未驾驶帆船已有好多年了。

I haven't sailed a boat since I left college.

自从我大学毕业后就没再驾驶帆船了。

D after 从句

after 从句之后常跟完成时态: After / When he had rung off I remembered…

等他把电话挂断了之后,我才想起……

After / When you' ve finished with it, hang it up.

你用完了之后,请把它挂起来。

E hardly / scarcely… when, no sooner… than (另参见第 45 节): The performance had hardly begun when the lights went out.

Hardly had the performance begun when the lights went out.

演出刚开始就停电了。

这里可以用 scarcely 代替 hardly, 但不常见。

He had no sooner drunk the coffee than he began to feel drowsy.

No sooner had he drunk the coffee than he began to feel drowsy.

他喝了咖啡没多一会儿,就犯困了。

He no sooner earns any money than he spends it.

Immediately he earns any money he spends it.

他钱一挣到手,就花光了。

注意 the sooner…the sooner 的用法: The sooner we start,the sooner we'll be there. 我们动身得越早,到那儿就越早。

第三十五章 名词从句

名词从句常常由 that 引导,所以也被称做 that 从句。然而,名词从句并不全是由 that 引导的。

343 作主语的名词从句

A 以名词从句作主语的句子常常由 it 开头 (参见第 67 节 D): It is disappointing that Tom can't come.

汤姆不能来,真扫兴。(that Tom can't come 是主语。)

B 常见的结构是 it+be / seem+形容词+名词从句(参见第 26 节与第 27 节): It's splendid that you passed your exam.

你通过考试了, 真棒。

It's strange that there are no lights on.

真奇怪,没有一盏灯是开着的。

有些形容词需要或可以与 that…should 连用(参见第 236 节): It is essential that everybody knows / should know what to do.

重要的是,每个人都应知道该做什么。

C 另一种可代用的结构是 it+be / seem+a+名词+名词从句。

下列名词均可用于这种结构: mercy, miracle, nuisance, pity, shame, relief, wonder。 也可以使用 a good thing。

It's a great pity (that) they didn't get married.

他们没能结婚, 真是令人惋惜。

It's a wonder (that) you weren't killed.

你没死掉真是个奇迹。

It's a good thing (that) you were insured.

你保了险,这可是件好事。

344 位于某些形容词 / 分词之后的 that 从句

结构为主语+be+形容词 / 过去分词+名词从句: I am delighted that you passed your exam.

你考试通过了,我很高兴。

这一结构中可以使用

- (a) 表示感情的形容词: glad, pleased, relieved, sorry。(参见第 26 节 F。)
- (b) 表示渴望、信心等的形容词 / 分词: afraid, anxious, aware, certain, confident, conscious, convinced。(参见第 27 节。)

anxious 后面要求使用 that…should 结构。

I' m afraid that I can't come till next week.

恐怕我下星期才能来。

Are you certain tht this is the right road?

你肯定这条路对吗?

345 位于某些名词之后的 that 从句

许多抽象名词之后可以使用 that 从句。较常用的抽象名词有:allegation,announcement,belief,discovery,fact,fear, guarantee,hope,knowledge,promise,proposal,report,ru— mour,suggestion,suspicion。proposal 和 suggestion 后面要求使用 that…should 结构。

The announcement that a new airport was to be built nearby aroused im— mediate opposition.

说要在附近建造新机场的通告马上引起了反对。

The proposal / suggestion that shops should open on Sundays led to a heat — ed discussion.

关于商店星期日也应该营业的提议,引起了激烈的争论。

A report that the area was dangerous was ignored by the residents. 居民对这一地区有 危险的报告不予理采。

346 名词从句作动词宾语

A 许多主要是表示交流思想的动词之后可以使用 that 从句。下

面是一些较常用的这一类动词: acknowledge decide (wh) imply

admit?demandindicate (wh)

advise demonstrate ?inform

agree?determine?insist

allege?discover ?know (wh)

announce?doubt?learn

appear ?estimate (wh) make out (=state)

arrange (wh) ?expect ?mean

ask (wh) fear ?notice (wh)

assumefeelobserve

assure find (wh) occur to+宾语

begforget (wh) ?order

believe (wh) guarantee?perceive

command?happen ?presume

confesshear (wh) ?pretend

consider (wh) ?hope promise

declare ?magine (wh) ?propose

prove (wh) ?say (wh) think (wh)

realize (wh) see (wh) ?threaten

recognize?seem?turn out

recommendshow (wh) ?understand (wh)

remark ?state (wh) ?urge

remember (wh) ?stipulate vow

remind ?suggest (wh) warn

requestsuppose (wh) wish

resolve ?teach?wonder (wh)

reveal (wh) ?tell (wh)

此外,在其他一些表示交流的动词之后也可使用 that 从句,如 complain,deny,explain 等。(参见第 316 节 C。)

关于上面表中所注的 wh 见下面 E 节。

例句如: They alleged / made out that they had been unjustly dismissed.

他们声称 / 自称他们被不公平地解雇了。

He assumes that we agree with him.

他径自认为我们同意他了。

I can prove that she did it.

我能证明是她干的。

B 上面大多数动词可以与另一结构连用。(参见第二十三章至第二十六章。)

注意: 动词+that 从句并不一定与同一动词+不定式 / 动名词 / 现在分词意思相同: He saw her answering the letters (他看见她在写回信) 意为他看到她正在做这件事。但 He saw that she answered the letters 可有两种意思: 或者他注意到她做了这件事,或者他通过督促确实使她干了这件事。

C appear, happen, occur, seem, turn out 需用 it 作主语: It appears / seems that we have come on the wrong day.

好像我们来得不是时候。

It occurred to me that he might be lying.

我忽然想起他可能是在说谎。

It turned out that nobody remembered the address.

结果发现没人记得这地址。

D 在 agree,arrange,be anxious,beg,command,decide,de— mand,determine,be determined,order,resolve 和 urge 这些词之后可以用 that + 主语+ should 来代替不定式,并且在 insist 及 suggest 后面可用这一结构而不用动名词: They agreed / decided that a statue should be put up.

他们同意 / 决定要立起一座雕塑。

He urged that the matter should go to arbitration.

他极力主张这件事要提交仲裁。

He suggested that a reward should be offered.

他建议要悬赏。

(另参见第 235 节与第 302 节 E。)

EA中标有(wh)的动词后面也可以跟所谓 wh 词(即 what, when,where,who 与 why)或 how 开头的名词从句:He asked where he was to go.

他问他该去哪儿。

They'll believe whatever you tell them.

无论你告诉他们什么, 他们都会相信的。

I forget who told me this.

我忘了这是谁告诉我的。

Have you heard how he is getting on?

你听说他怎么样了吗?

I can't think why he left his wife.

我想不出他为什么会离开他的妻子。

I wonder when he will pay me back.

我不知道他什么时候会还钱给我。

347 so 和 not 可替代 that 从句

A 在 believe, expect, suppose, think 和 it appears / seems 之后,表示同意前面说过的话时可以用 so 代替: —Will Tom be at the party?

- —I expect so / suppose so / think so. / I think he will.
- 一汤姆会到联欢会去吗?
- 一我想会的。/我认为他会去的。

表示对前面说过的话加以否定时,可以用下列句式: 1 与 so 连用时,应当用动词的否定式:

- —Will the scheme be a success?
- —I don't believe so / expect so / suppose so / think so.
- 一计划会成功吗?
- 一我不相信/我不指望/我不认为/我想不会。
- —Are they making good progress?
- —It doesn't seem so.
- 一他们正在取得很大的进展吗?
- 一好像不是这样。
- 2 与 not 连用时,则用动词的肯定式:—It won't take long,will it?
- —No, I suppose not. / I don't suppose so.
- 一这用不了多长时间,是吗?
- 一是的,我想用不了多长时间。
- —The plane didn't land in Calcutta, did it?
- —I believe not. / I don't believe so.
- 一飞机没有在加尔各答降落,是吗?
- 一是的,我想不会。
- B 在 hope 和 be afraid(=be sorry to say)之后同样可以用 so 和 not:—Is Peter coming with us?
- —I hope so.
- 一彼得和我们一起去吗?
- 一我希望如此。
- —Will you have to pay duty on this?
- —I' m afraid so.
- 一这个你得上关税吗?
- 一恐怕要上关税。
- 这里的否定式是由动词的肯定形式+not 构成的: —Have you got a work permit?
- —I' m afraid not.
- 一你有工作许可证吗?
- 一对不起, 我没有。
- C 在 say 和 tell+宾语之后可用 so 和 not:
- —How do you know there is going to be a demonstration?
- —Jack said so. / Jack told me so.
- 一要举行示威游行的事你是怎么知道的?
- 一是杰克说的。 / 是杰克告诉我的。

I told you so! (我早就告诉你了!) 可意为我告诉过你事情就是这样的或我告诉过你会发生这样的事。这一般会使受话者不高兴。

关于 tell 的否定形式,只有否定式+so 这一种结构: Tom didn't tell me so.

汤姆没有这样告诉我。(汤姆没有对我这样说过。)

say 后面的简略从句的否定形式可以有两种,但意思不一样: Tom didn't say so.

汤姆没有这么说。相当于: Tom didn't say that there would be a demonstration.

犔滥访凰狄 傩惺就 涡小?

Tom said not.

汤姆说不会。相当于: Tom said there wouldn't be a demonstration.

汤姆说不会举行示威游行。

D if + so / not

so / not 在 if 之后可代替前面提到过的或已知而不必明白说出

的主语+动词结构: Will you be staying another night? If so (=If you are), we can give you a better room. If not (=If you aren't), could you be out of your room by 12: 00? 您要再呆一晚上吗?如果是这样(=如果您要再呆一夜),我们可以给您提供条件再好一点儿的房间。如果不是(=如果您不呆了),您能在 12 点离开这房间吗?

if so / not 通常如上述例句那样,代表了一个条件从句。但关于

if so, 另参见第 338 节 A。

第三十六章 数词、日期和度量衡?

348 基数词(形容词及代词)

1 one 21 twenty—one

2 two 22 twenty—two

3 three 23 twenty—three

4 four?24 twenty—four

5 five 25 twenty-five

6 six ?26 twenty—six

7 seven ?27 twenty—seven

8 eight?28 twenty—eight

9 nine 29 twenty-nine

10 ten?30 thirty

11 eleven ?31 thirty—one

12 twelve 40 forty

13 thirteen?50 fifty

14 fourteen 60 sixty

15 fifteen ?70 seventy

16 sixteen 80 eighty

17 seventeen90 ninety

18 eighteen 100 a hundred

19 nineteen 1, 000 a thousand

20 twenty 1, 000, 000 a million

400 four hundred

140 a / one hundred and forty

1, 006 a / one thousand and six

5, 000 five thousand

260, 127 two hundred and sixty thousand, one hundred and twenty-sev- en

349 基数词的几点注意事项

A 把数字读出来或拼写出来时,如数字在三位或三位以上,应在十位数之前加上 and, 如无十位数时,则在百位数与个位数之间加上 and:

713 seven hundred and thirteen

- 5, 102 five thousand, one hundred and two
- 6, 100 six thouand, one hundred (无十位数或个位数)

上述 and 的用法也适用于一千以上的数字,因为在英语中一万是 ten thousand,十万是 a hundred thousand:

320, 410 three hundred and twenty thousand, four hundred and ten

上述方法同样适用于一百万以上的数字:

303, 000, 000 three hundred and three million

B hundred,thousand,million 等单独使用或用于短语中,前面用 a 要比用 one 更常见: 100 a hundred

1, 000 a thousand

100, 000 a hundred thousand

我们也可以说 a hundred and one, a hundred and two 等及 a hundred and ninety—nine 和 a thousand and one 等,一直到 a thousand and ninety—nine 为止,或者用 one 而不用 a (参见上面),因此:1,040 a / one thousand and forty

但是: 1, 140 one thousand, one hundred and forty

C hundred,thousand,million 和 dozen 这些词用来指具体明确的数目时,不用复数形式: six hundred men 六百人

ten thousand pounds 一万磅

two dozen eggs 24 个鸡蛋

假如这些词用来指大致的计数,即只给人一个大致的概念时,必须用复数形式: hundreds of people 数以百计的人

thousands of birds 成千上万的鸟

dozens of times 数十次

注意: 在这种情况下,要在数词 hundreds, thousands 等之后加上介词 of。

of 不能用在明确的数字之后,但在 the / them / these / those 之前或所有格之前则例外: six of the blue ones 六个蓝色的

ten of these 这些中的十个

four of Tom's brothers 汤姆兄弟中的四个

D 由四个或四个以上的数码构成的数目,如上所示,是分成三位一组读写的,小数点(.) 读为 "point":

10.92 ten point nine two

小数点后的零读为 "nought":

8.04 eight point nought four

但这个零也可读为 "o" / +u / 或 "zero"。

350 序数词(形容词及代词)

first fifth

second sixth

third seventh

fourth eighth

ninth twenty—fifth

tenth twenty-sixth

eleventh twenty—seventh

twelfth twenty-eighth

thirteenth twenty-ninth

fourteenth thirtieth

fifteenth thirty-first

sixteenth fortieth

seventeenth fiftieth

eighteenth sixtieth

nineteenth seventieth

twentieth eightieth

twenty-first ninetieth

twenty-second hundredth

twenty-third thousandth

twenty-fourthmillionth

在写或读分数时(1/2 和 1/4 除外),我们用基数词和序数词的组合(即分子用基数词,分母用序数词):(这里 a 比 one 更常用)

由一个整数+一个分数构成的数后面可直接跟一个名词的复数形式: 加上 of:

half a second 半秒种(无 a)

a guarter of a second 四分之一秒(有 a)

(另参见第2节E。)

half+of 也可使用,但是 of 可省略: Half(of) my earnings go in tax. 我挣到的钱有一半要纳税。

351 序数词的几点注意事项

A 注意 fifth, eighth, ninth 和 twelfth 等词的不规则拼写法。B 序数词用数字表示时,需在数字后面加上书写形式的最后两个字母(表示日期时除外): first=1st

second=2nd

third=3rd

fourth=4th

twenty-first=21st

forty-second=42nd

sixty-third=63rd

eightieth=80th

C 在复合序数词中,and 的用法与在基数词中的用法相同: 101st=the hundred and first 序数词之前通常要用定冠词 the: the sixtieth day 第 60 天

the fortieth visitor 第 40 位来访者

国王等的多少"世",要用罗马数字来表示: Charles V查理五世

James III詹姆斯三世

Elizabeth II 伊丽莎白二世

但在口语中用序数词时,需在前面加上定冠词 the,读做: Charles the Fifth

James the Third

Elizabeth the Second

352 日期

Α

上表中括号内是简略形式。

一周的每天和12个月份的名称的头一个字母必须要大写。

日期要用序数词来表示,所以在口语中说: March the tenth / the tenth of March 3 月 10 日

另外,它们有许多种写法,如 March the tenth 可写成: March 10 10 March ?10th of March March 10th 10th March ?March the 10th

B 公元的纪年

在读或写公元的纪年时,用 hundred 作单位而不用 thousand。

1987 年可读做 nineteen hundred and eighty—seven 或略去 hun- dred 而读做 nineteen eighty—seven。

在公元前的纪年后面加 BC(=Before Christ 基督降生前)。公元以后的纪年有时可以在前面加上 AD(=Anno Domini,inthe year of the Lord 耶稣纪元或公元)。一般读法有两种: 1500 BC 可读做 one thousand five hundred BC 或 fifteen hun- dred BC。

353 度量衡

A 重量单位

英国的重量单位列表如下: 16 ounces (oz.)(盎司,英两) =1 pound (lb.)(磅)

14 pounds (磅) =1stone (st.) (石)

8stone(石) =1hundredweight (cwt.) (英担)

20 hundredweight (英担) =1 ton (吨)

1 pound (磅) ?=0.454 kilogram (kg) (公斤)

2.2 pounds (磅) ?=1 kilogram (公斤)

2, 204.6 lbs (磅) ?=1 metric tonne (公吨)

复数形式

ounce, pound 和 ton 当名词用时,复数形式可加 s。但 stone 和 hundredweight 的复数形式不加 s。如我们既可说 six poundof sugar,也可说 six pounds of sugar(六磅糖)。但是,ten hundredweight of coal(十英担煤)只有这一种说法。这些词作为复合形容词的组成部分时不加 s: a ten—ton lorry —辆载重十吨的货车

kilo 或 kilogram 当名词用时,复数形式常加 s: two kilos of apples / two kilograms of apples 两公斤苹果

B 长度单位

英国的长度单位列表如下: 12 inches (in.) (英寸) ?=1 foot (ft.) (英尺)

3 feet (英尺) =1 vard (vd.)(码)

1,760 yards (码) =1 mile (m.) (英里)

1 inch (英寸) ?=2.54 centimetres (cm) (厘米)

1 yard (码) ?=0.914 metre (m) (米)

1 mile (英里) =1.609 kilometres (km) (公里)

复数形式不止一英寸/英里/厘米时,通常用它们的复数形式: one inch 一英寸

ten inches 十英寸

one mile 一英里

four miles 四英里

one centimetre 一厘米

five centimetres 五厘米

不止一英尺时,既可用 foot,也可用 feet。但在计量高度时,通常用 feet: six foot tall / six feet tall 六英尺高

two foot long / two feet long 两英尺长

作为复合形容词的一部分时,以上这些词一概不用复数形式: a two-mile walk 两英里的步行

a six-inch ruler 六英寸长的尺子

C容量单位

2 pints (pt.) (品脱) ?=1 quart (qt.) (夸脱)

1 pint (品脱) =0.568 litre (1) (公升)

4 guarts (夸脱)?=1 gallon (gal.) (加仑)

1 gallon (加仑) ?=4.55 litres (公升)

D 英国传统的度量单位是 ounce (盎司), inch (英寸), pint (品脱)等。

但目前有逐渐改用公制的趋向。

第三十七章 拼写规则

关于名词的复数,参见第12节。

关于动词的形式,参见第 165 节、第 172 节与第 175 节。

354 引语

元音字母: a e i o u

辅音字母: bcdfghjklmnpqrstvwxyz

后缀是加在一个词尾的一组字母,如: beauty, beautiful (ful 是后缀)

355 辅音字母的双写

A 只有一个元音字母并以单一个辅音字母结尾的单音节词,如果后面接以元音字母开头的后缀,则首先要双写该辅音字母,然后再加后缀: hit+ing=hitting

knit+ed=knitted

run+er=runner

但是: keept keeping (两个元音字母)

help, helped (两个辅音字母)

love, lover(以元音字母结尾)

qu 这时相当于一个辅音字母: quit, quitting

一个词如以w、x或y等辅音字母结尾,加后缀时不用双写该字母:row+ed=rowed

box+ing=boxing

B 含有两个或三个音节的词,如是以单一辅音字母结尾的,而该辅音字母前只有一个元音字母、重音又在最后一个音节时,加后缀时应双写该辅音字母。例如(重读音节用黑体字):

acquit+ed=acquitted

begin+er=beginner

deter+ed=deterred

recur+ing=recurring

但是: murmur+ed=murmured

answer+er=answerer

orbit+ing=orbiting

focus+ed 写成 focused 或 focussed 均可,而 bias+ed 可写成 biased 或 biassed。

C handicap,kidnap,worship 等词末尾的辅音字母也要双写:handicap, handicapped worship, worshipped

kidnap, kidnapped

D 以字母 l 结尾的词,如果 l 前面是单独一个元音字母或两个单独发音的元音字母,加后缀时则要双写字母 l: appal, appalled

duel, duellist

repel, repellent

cruel, cruelly

model, modelling

quarrel, quarrelling

dial, dialled

refuel, refuelled

signal, signalled

distil, distiller

356 末尾字母 e 的省略

A 以 e 结尾的词, 如 e 前面为辅音字母, 要加上以元音字母开头的后缀时, 先省略 e: believe + er= believer

love +ing=loving

move+able=movable

但是 dye 和 singe 加后缀 ing 时其末尾的 e 不能省略,以免与 die 和 sing 搞混: dye, dyeing singe, singeing

age 加后缀 ing 时其末尾字母 e 也不省略,但在美国英语中要省略 e: age,ageing(英) / aging(美)

likable 也可写成 likeable。

以 ce 或 ge 结尾的词,有时要保留字母 e。参见第 357 节。

B 后缀如以辅音字母开头时,单词末尾字母 e 可以保留: engage, engagement

fortunate, fortunately

hope, hopeful

immediate, immediately

sincere, sincerely

但是以 able/ible 结尾的形容词变为副词形式时,其末尾字母 e 要省略: comfortable, comfortably

incredible, incredibly

下列词中的末尾字母 e 也要去掉: argue, argument

due, duly

judge, judgement / judgment

true, tryly

whole, wholly (注意这里双写字母 L)

C 以 ee 结尾的词加后缀时不省略字母 e: agree, agreed, agreeing, agreement

foresee, foreseeing, foreseeable

357 以 ce 和 ge 结尾的词

A 以 ce 和 ge 结尾的词后接以 a 或。开头的后缀时,要保留字母 e: courage,courageous peace,peaceable

manage, manageable

replace, replaceable

outrage, outrageous

trace, traceable

这样做是为了避免读音上的变化,因为 c 和 g 一般在 e 和 i 之前弱读,在 a 或 o 之前则重读。

B 以 ce 结尾的词,加后缀 ous 时要将 e 变为 i: grace, gracious

space, spacious

malice, malicious

vice, vicious

358 后缀 ful

一个词后面加上后缀 full 时,第二个 l 要去掉: beauty+full=beautiful(但是要注意副词形式为 beautifully)

use+full=useful(但是要注意副词形式为 usefully)如果需要加后缀的词本身也是以 ll 结尾,那么这一词的第二个 l 也要省略: skill+full=skilful

注意: full+fill=fulfil

359 以字母 y 结尾的词

以字母 y 结尾的词,如果字母 y 前为辅音字母,加后缀时需先将字母 y 变为 i,但接后缀 ing 时除外: carry+ed=carried

happy+ly=happily

sunny+er=sunnier

但是: carry+ing=carrying

hurry+ing=hurrying 如果 y 前面的字母为元音, y 则保持不变: obey+ed=obeyed play+er=player 关于名词的复数形式参见第 12 节。

360 ie 和 ei

一般规则是字母 i 在 e 前面,但在 c 之后除外: believe sieve 但是: deceive receipt 下面这些词例外,都拼写为 ei: beige ?feint ?heirreign their counterfeit?foreign?inveigh ?rein veil deign ?forfeit inveigle ?seize vein eiderdown?freight leisure skein weigh eight ?heifer ?neigh sleigh?weight either height ?neighbour?sleight weir feign ?heinous neither surfeit weird

361 连字号

A 复合词是将两个或两上以上的词连起来组成的一个词。这种复合词有下列几种写法: (a) 作为一个词: bystander 旁观者

hairdresser 美容师

teacup 茶杯

- (b) 作为两个或更多的词: amusement arcade 游乐厅 post office 邮局
- (C) 写成带有连字号的词: launching—pad 发射台

lav-bv 马路旁可停车之处

tooth-brush 牙刷

不可能对如何使用连字号的方法订出一个在任何情况下均适用的固定的规则。有时在复合词使用已久且为人所熟知时,连字号可省去,如 layby,toothbrush。但这并不是一成不变的,连英国作者也有时会将几种形式混用,例如:他在不同场合可能把牙刷写成 toothbrush,tooth brush 或 tooth—brush 三种形式。

如果复合词是由几个单音节词组成的,则写成一个单一的词的可能性更大。不能判断时,最好的办法或是不用连字号,或是查词典。

B 必须有连字号的情况: (a) 如没有连字号会引起发音和意思上的变化时: co-operate 合作

re-cover (=cover again) 又盖住

- (b) 如复合词是为句子的需要临时组合的: a do—it-yourself shop 提供自己动手的用具的商店
- a go-as-you-please railway ticket 不限定时间与车次的火车票,通用票
- (c)用于形容词短语中表达年龄、大小、重量和时间的长短等:a five—year-old child 五岁的孩子
- a ten-ton vehicle 十吨卡车

a six-foot wall 六英尺高的墙

a five-minute interval 五分钟休息

注意:复合词没有复数形式,不加 s。

副词与分词用在复合形容词中时,之间常用连字号,特别是在有被误解的危险时更要加连字号: low—flying aircraft 低飞的飞机

quick—dissolving sugar 速溶白糖

C 连字号还用以将一行最后一个词分开,单词的前一部分留在上一行,后一部分移到下一行。一定要在词的自然可分处分,如在两个音节之间: dis—couragedlook-ing inter-val 单音节词不能分行写。

第三十八章 短语动词

362 引言

A 在现代英语中,常常将介词或副词置于某一动词之后,以便能够表达多种不同的意思: give away 送给某人

give up 放弃,停止(一种习惯或某种努力)

look after 照顾

look for 寻找, 寻求

look out 小心,注意

学生没有必要去区分这些短语动词究竟是由动词+介词还是由动词+副词组成的,但必须要把这些习惯用法看做是一个整体。

同时,要掌握每一短语动词是及物的(即需要有宾语)或是不及物的(即不需要宾语)。这很重要。

look for 是及物短语动词: I am looking for my passport.

我在找我的护照。

look out 是不及物短语动词: look out! This ice isn't safe!

当心! 这冰危险!

本章后文中的每一短语动词都标有"tr"(transitive,及物)或"intr"(intransitive,不及物)符号。每一短语动词的用法举例将有助于表明二者之间的差别。

注意:一个短语动词可能有两种或两种以上的不同的意思,也可能其中一个或几个是及物的,另外一个或几个是不及物的。如 take off 可意为"拿掉",所以它是及物的: He took off his hat.

他摘下他的帽子。

take off 也可意为"起飞"(用于飞机)。这时它是不及物的: The plane took off at ten o' clock.

飞机是 10 点钟起飞的。

B 及物短语动词: 宾语的位置

作宾语的名词通常位于及物短语动词之后: I am looking for my glasses.

我正在找我的眼镜。

作宾语的名词与某些短语动词连用时,可位于句末,也可以紧跟在动词之后,即用于小品词前。可以说: He took off his coat. / He took his coat off. 他脱掉外衣。

宾格代词有时位于短语动词之后: I am looking for them.

我正在找他们。

但宾格代词在大多数情况下紧跟在动词之后: He took it off.

他把它脱掉了。

宾格代词常位于下列小品词之前: up, down, in, out, away, off 和 on (词组 call on 拜访除外)。

每一习语下表明用法的例句将以下列方法标明作宾语的名词或代词的各种可能的位置: I' ll give this old coat away. (give away this old coat / give it away) 我将把这件旧外衣送掉。

即,在使用这一短语动词时,作宾语的名词既可位于 away 之前,也可位于其后;而宾格代词只可位于 away 之前。在只给出一个例句时,读者可以推定宾格代词的位置与作宾语的名词位置相同。

C 这些短语动词后面的宾语如果是动词,则应使用动词的动名词形式: He kept on blowing his horn.

他不断地吹喇叭。

通常使用动名词之处,将举例说明。

请注意,某些短语动词后面应带动词不定式: It is up to yon to decide this for yourself. 这事全由你自己决定。

Some of the younger members called on the minister to resign.

某些较年轻的议员要求部长辞职。

The lecturer set out to show that most illnesses were avoldable.

讲师开始表明多数疾病是可以预防的。

go on 既可以带不定式,也可以带动名词,但二者的意义有相当大的不同。参见第 270 节 A。

363 动词+介词 / 副词的组合

account

account for(tr)(为某事)给出充分的理由,圆满地解释(某种行为或某项支出),做出交代: A treasurer must account for the money he spends.

财务负责人必须对他支付的款项做出交代。

He has behavd in the most extraordinary way; I can't account for hisactions at all / I can't account for his behaving like that.

他的行为极为奇怪,我完全无法解释他的行动/我无法为他那样的举动做出解释。 allow

allow for (tr) 预先为某事留有余地,考虑到(常指某种额外的需要、支出、耽搁等): — It is 800 kilometres and I drive at 100 k. p. h., so I'll be there in eighthours.

- —But you'll have to allow for delays going through towns and for stopsfor refuelling.
- 一距离是800公里,而我的车速是每小时100公里,因此我八小时后可以到那里。
- 一可是你得把通过市镇和停车加油所耽搁的时间考虑进去。

Allowing for depreciation your car should be worth £2, 000 this timenext year.

如果考虑到折旧,你的车明年此时应当值2,000英镑。

answer

answer back(intr), answer somebody back 反驳别人的责难, 回嘴顶撞: Father: Why were you so late last night? You weren't in till 2a. m.

父亲: 你昨晚回家为什么这么晚? 你直到凌晨两点钟才回来。

Son: You should have been asleep.

儿子: 那时候你本该睡着了。

Father: Don't answer me back. Answer my question.

父亲: 别跟我顶嘴。回答我的问题。

ask

ask after/for somebody 探询有关……的信息,(向第三者) 问某人健康如何: I met Tom at the party; he asked after you.

我在聚会上遇见了汤姆;他问你好。(问你健康如何/问你过得怎么样)

(a) 寻找某人并想和他 / 她说话,要求见到某人: Go to the office and ask for my secretary.

到办公室去, 找我的秘书。

(b) 要求, 索要: The men asked for more pay and shorter hours.

工人们要求增加工资,减少工时。

ask someone in (宾语在 in 之前) 请某人进来: He didn't ask me in; he kept me standing at the door while he read the message.

他没有让我进去;他径自看那张条子,让我站在门口等着。

ask someone out (宾语在 out 之前) 请某人出去参加娱乐活动或吃饭(特别是在公众地方吃饭): She had a lot of friends and was usually asked out in the evenings,so she seldom spent an evening at home.

她有很多朋友,晚上常被邀请外出,因此她晚上很少在家里呆着。

back

back away(intr)慢慢地退回去(因为遇到某种危险或不愉快的事): When he took a gun out everyone backd away nervously.

他拿出枪来时,大家都紧张地向后退去。

back out(intr)退出(某事先已同意的联合行动),停止或拒绝给予所允诺的帮助或支持: He agreed to help but backed out when he found how difficult it was.

他本来同意给予帮助的,但在发现事情有多么困难之后就打退堂鼓了。

back somebody up 从道义上或行动上支持: The headmaster never backed up his staff. (backed them up) If a parentcomplained about a teacher he assumed that the teacher was in thewrong.

校长从来不给教员们撑腰。凡是有家长给老师提意见时,他总是认为一定是老师不对。

he

be against (tr) 反对 (常带动名词): I' m for doing nothing till the police arrive. / I' m against doing anythingtill the police arrive.

我赞成在警察来到以前不采取行动。/我反对在警察到来以前采取任何行动。

be away (intr) (至少有一个晚上) 不在家,不在某地

be back (intr) 在长期或短暂地离开之后回到原地: —I want to see Mrs Pitt. Is she in?

- —No, I'm afraid she's out at the moment. / No, I'm afraid she's awayfor the weekend.
- —When will she be back?
- —She'll be back in half an hour/next week.
- 一我想见皮特夫人。她在吗?
- 一不,恐怕她现在不在。/不,我想她外出度周末了。

- 一她什么时候回来?
- 一她半小时后 / 下周回来。

be for (tr) 赞成(常带动名词)

be in (intr) 在家或在某个建筑物内

be in for (tr) 将要遇上 (常跟某种令人不愉快的事): Did you listen to the weather forecast? I' m afraid we' re in for a bumpyflight.

你听气象预报没有?恐怕我们这次航班要很颠簸。

If you think that the work is going to be easy you' re in for a shock.

如果你以为这工作将容易,那么你可要大吃一惊了。

be out (intr) 短时间不在家 / 不在某个建筑物里, 但并不在外过夜

be over (intr) 结束: The storm is over now; we can go on.

暴风雨过去了;我们可以继续走了。

be up (intr) 起床了: Don't expect her to answer the doorbell at eight o'clock on Sundaymorning. She won't be up.

星期日早上8点钟时,别指望她听见门铃响会来开门。她那时还没有起床呢。

be up to (tr) 体力或智力足以······ (宾语常用 it, 但也可用动名词): After his illness the Minister continued in office though he was no longerup to the work/up to doing the work.

部长生病后继续任职,但他已力不胜任了。

be up to something / some mischief / some trick / no good 从事或忙于某种调皮的、不正 道的或有害的事 / 捣鬼: Don't trust him; he is up to something / some trick.

别信他;他在搞鬼/在耍诡计。

The boys are very quiet. I wonder what they are up to.

男孩子们无声无息了。我不知他们在捣什么鬼。

注意: 这里 up to 的宾语常是某一很不确定的词语,如上面例句所示。这个习语从来不与某一具体明确的事连用。

it is up to someone(常带动词不定式)此事是某人的职责: It is up to the government to take action on violence.

采取行动对付暴力行为,是政府职责所在。

I have helped you as much as I can. Now it is up to you.

我已尽我所能地帮助你了。现在该看你自己了。(你得靠自己的努力干下去。)

bear

bear out (tr) 证实,提供证明: This report bears out my theory. (bears my theory out / bears it out)

这报告证实了我的理论。

bear up(intr)听到坏消息仍能勇敢支撑,掩饰感情或忧伤: The news of her death was a great shock to him but he bore up bravely and none of us realized how much he felt it. 她故去的消息对他来讲是个打击,但他勇敢地支撑着,我们谁也没意识到他的感受该有多么强烈。

blow

blow out(tr)吹熄: The wind blew out the candle. (blew the candle out / blew it out) 风吹灭了蜡烛。

blow up (tr / intr)

(a) 用爆炸的方法毁灭, 爆炸, 被毁: They blew up the bridges so that the enemy couldn'

t follow them. (blew the bridges up / blew them up)

他们炸毁了桥,好让敌人不能追上他们。

Just as we got to the bridge it blew up.

我们刚到桥头,桥就炸掉了。

(b) 充气,打气,使膨胀: The children blew up their balloons and threw them into the air. (blew the balloons up / blew them up)

孩子们把气球吹鼓了, 扔向空中。

boil

boil away(intr)(液体)因沸腾而挥发完,熬干: I put the kettle on the gas ring and then went away and forgot about it.

When I returned, the water had all boiled away and the flame had burnta hole in the kettle.

我把壶放在煤气灶上,然后就走开把这事忘掉了。我回来时,水都烧干了,火把壶底烧出了一个窟窿。

boil over (intr) (液体因沸腾而) 溢到容器外面: The milk boiled over and there was a horrible smell of burning.

牛奶潽了,烧糊的味道极为难闻。

break

break down a door etc. 用强力敲破或撞破: The firemen had to break down the door to get into the burning house.

(break the door down/break it down)

消防员不得不破门而入以便到着火的房子里边去。

break down figures 将一数目分别列在不同项目下以作进一步说明: You say that 10,000 people use this library. Could you break that downinto age-groups?

你说有 10,000 人使用这所图书馆。你能否按年龄组将数字分解一下? (即说出有多少人是 25 岁以下的,有多少人是 50 岁以上的等等)

break down(intr)由于有缺陷或强度不够而坏掉或不再正常运作:(a)常指人暂时感情支持不住: He broke down when telling me about his son's tragic death.

他向我谈到他儿子惨死的事时,不能自己了。(他失声痛哭了。)

(b) 指丧失精神上的抵抗力: At first he refused to admit his guilt but when he was shown the evidencehe broke down and confessed.

起初他否认有罪,但给他看证据时,他招架不住而供认了。

(c) 指身体健康状况严重恶化: After years of overwork his health broke down and he had to retire.

在多年劳累之后,他的身体垮了,只好退休。

(d) 常指机器坏了: The car broke down when we were driving through the desert and it tookus two days to repair it.

我们驾车横越沙漠时,汽车坏了,花了两天才修好。

(e) 指交涉或谈判的破裂: The negotiations broke down because neither side would compromise.

因为双方都不肯妥协, 谈判破裂了。

break in (intr), break into (tr)

(a) 用暴力强行进入: Thieves broke in and stole the silver.

窃贼破门而入,偷走了银器。

The house was broken into when the owner was on holiday.

屋主外出度假时,有贼破门而入。

(b) 突然说话打断别人: I was telling them about my travels when he broke in with a story of hisown.

我正在告诉他们我旅途中的事,他忽然插嘴讲起他自己的故事来。

在没有把马训练好以前,不管骑它还是用它驾车都是不安全的。

break off(tr/intr)解开,破开,使分裂开或自己破裂开: He took a bar of chocolate and broke off a bit.(broke a bit off/broke itoff)

他拿出一板巧克力,掰下了一小块。

A piece of rock broke off and fell into the pool at the foot of the cliff.

一块岩石断裂开,掉到悬崖脚下的池塘里。

break off(tr)终止,停止,取消(常跟协议、协商或谈判等): Ann has broken off her engagement to Tom.(broken her engagement off/broken it off)

安已经取消了同汤姆的婚约。

break off(intr)突然停止说话,突然住口: They were in the middle of an argument but broke off when someonecame into the room.

他们正争吵不休,但有人进屋时他们突然住口了。

break out (intr)

- (a) 开始, 爆发(常用于诸如战争、流行病、火灾等不好的事): War broke out on 4 Angust. 战争于 8 月 4 日爆发。
- (b) 用暴力方法从监狱等地逃出: They locked him up in a room but he broke out.

他们把他锁在一间屋里,可是他强行逃出了。(砸开门跑掉了)

The police are looking for two men who broke out of prison last night.

警方正在搜捕昨天晚上越狱逃跑的两名男子。

break up(tr / intr)(使) 瓦解,(使) 解体: If that ship stays there she will break up / she will be broken up by thewaves.

那艘船如果停泊在那里,就会破的/会被浪头打散的。

The old ship was towed away to be broken up and sold as scrap.

那艘旧船被拖走以便拆散当废铁卖了。

Divorce breaks up a lot of families. (breaks families up / breaks them up)

离婚拆散了许多家庭。

break up (intr) (用于学校的学期、会议、聚会等) 散会,放假: The school broke up on 30 July and all the boys went home for the holi- days.

学校在7月30日放假了,男孩子们都回家度假去了。

The meeting broke up in confusion.

会议在一片混乱中散了。

bring

bring someone round(tr; 宾语常位于 round 之前)

(a) 说服某人接受以前所反对的建议: After a lot of argument I brought him round to my point of view.

在争辩了很久之后, 我说服他转念同意了我的看法。

(b) 使恢复知觉: She fainted with the pain but a little brandy soon brought her round.

她痛得昏厥了,但是一小点白兰地很快使她恢复了知觉。

bring a person or thing round(tr; 宾语常位于 round 之前)把人或物带到某人的住所去: I have finished that book that you lent me; I'll bring it round(to your house)tonight. 你借给我的书我已经看完了,我今晚上把它带(到你家里)来。

bring up (tr)

(a) 教育培养儿童: She brought up her children to be truthful. (brought her children up / brought them up)

她教导她的孩子们要真诚无欺。

(b) 提起,谈到: At the last committee meeting, the treasurer brought up the question of raising the annual subscription. (brought the question up / brought it up)

委员会上一次开会时, 财务主管提出了提高会员年费的问题。

burn

burn down (tr / intr) (完全) 焚毁 (指建筑物): The mob burnt down the embassy. (burnt the embassy down / burnt it down)

乱民把大使馆焚毁了。

The hotel burnt down before help came.

旅馆在援助到来以前就烧毁了。

call

1 call 走访, 拜访

call at。走访一个地方: I called at the bank and arranged to transfer some money.

我到银行去了一下,安排了款项过户的事宜。

call for 到一个地方去取物或接人: I am going to a pop concert with Tom. He is calling for me at eightso I must be ready then.

我要和汤姆去听流行歌曲音乐会。他8点钟来接我,因此我必须届时准备好。

Let's leave our suitcases in the left luggage office and call for themlater on when we have the car.

咱们可以把行李存放在行李暂存处,等以后有车用时再来取。

call in (intr) 同 look in 和口语化的 drop in 意思一样,是来访,来坐坐的意思: Call in / Look in on your way home and tell me how the interviewwent.

你回家的路上来看我一下,告诉我面谈进行得如何。

call on 拜访某人: He called on all the housewives in the area and asked them to sign thepetition.

他走访了这一地区的所有主妇,要求他们在请愿书上签名。

2 call for / in / on 的其他意思

call for (tr) 要求,需要(这里的主语常是一个不用来指人的单词或短语,如 the situation 形势 / this sort of work 这种工作/this 此事等,宾语则常是一个表示某种性质的词,如 courage 勇气 / patience 耐心 / a steady hand 稳当不抖的手): The situation calls for tact. 对付这一形势要有策略。

You' ve got the job! This calls for a celebration.

你得到这份工作了!这需要庆祝一下。

但这里也可以用一个用来指人的主语: The workers are calling for strike action.

工人们正要求采取罢工行动。

The relations of the dead men are calling for an inquiry.

死者们的亲属要求调查真相。

call in a person / call a person in 派人去找某人来 / 请某人来家服务(send for 比 call in 更显得主语权势大,因此 callin 是更有礼貌的说法): It was too late to call in an electrician.(call an electrician in / call him in)

找电工来已太晚了。

There is some mystery about his death; the police have been calledin.

他的死有点儿蹊跷;已经去找警察来了。

call on somebody (常带动词不定式) 要某人做某事 / 要某人给予帮助 (较为正式的提出要求的方式, 主要用于正式场合或演讲中, 意味着提出要求的人认为所号召的事是另一人的责任): The president called upon his people to make sacrifices for the good oftheir country.

总统号召人民为祖国的利益做出牺牲。

The chairman called on the secretary to read the minutes of the lastmeeting.

主席要求秘书朗读上次会议的记录。

3 call 的其他词组

call off(tr)取消尚未开始的事,放弃已在进行中的事: They had to call off the match as the ground was too wet to play on.

(call the match off / call it off)

因为场地太湿无法比赛,人们不得不取消这次比赛。

When the fog got thicker the search was called off.

雾愈来愈浓了,只得放弃了搜索。

call out (tr) 召唤某人出来处理外面的事(常用于指部队被召集走出营房对付民众骚乱):

The police couldn't control the mob so troops were called out.

警察无法控制乱民, 因此出动了军队。

The Fire Brigade was called out several times on the night of 5 November to put out fires started by fireworks.

11月5日晚上,消防队多次奉召出动,以扑灭因燃放焰火而引起的火灾。

Doctors don't much like being called out at night.

医生们不太喜欢夜间出诊。

call up (tr)

(a) 征去服兵役: In countries where there is conscription men are called up at the age of eighteen. (call up men / call men up / call them up)

在实行征兵制的国家里,18岁的男子要应征服役。

(b)给······打电话: I called Tom up and told him the news. (calld up Tom / called him up) 我给汤姆打电话,把消息告诉他了。

care

not to care about (tr)对……淡漠,不关心……: The professor said that he was interested only in research; he didn't really care about students.

教授说他只对研究感兴趣;他并不真的关心学生。

care for (tr)

(a) 喜欢 (很少用于肯定句): He doen't care for films about war.

他不喜欢战争影片。

(b) 照看 (除被动态外,较少使用): The house looked well cared for (=had been well looked after/was ingood condition).

房子看起来照管得很好。

carry

carry on (intr) 继续(常指工作或职责): I can't carry on alone any longer; I'll have to get help.

我无法再一个人继续下去了; 我得找人帮忙。

carry on with(tr)与上用法相似: The doctor told her to carry on with the treatment. 医生告诉她应该继续这种疗法。

carry out(tr)履行(职责),服从(命令),执行(指令),(把威胁要做的事)付诸行动: You are not meant to think for yourself; you are here to carry out my or-ders.

你们的职责不是自己思考; 叫你们来这里是要你们执行我的命令。

The Water Board carried out their threat to cut off our water supply.

自来水公司董事会把他们的威胁付诸行动,停止供应我们水了。(他们威胁要这样做,也真的这样做了。)

He read the instructions but he didn't carry them out.

他看了指示, 但没有遵照执行。

catch

catch up with (tr), catch up (tr / intr) 赶上但没超过: I started last in the race but I soon caught up with the others. (caught them up / cautht up)

我在赛跑中最后一个起跑, 但不久就赶上了其他人。

You' ve missed a whole term; you' ll have to work hard to catch up withthe rest of the class. (catch them up / catch up)

你缺了整整一学期的课,得努力学习以便赶上同班的其他人。

clean

clean out(tr) a room / cupboard / drawer etc. 彻底清理打扫(房间 / 碗柜 / 抽屉等): I must clean out the spare room. (clean the spare room out/clean it out)

我得把那间备用房(客房)彻底清扫一下。

clean up(tr) a mess, eg. anything spilt 清扫(脏物,如撒出的东西): Clean up any spilt paint. (clean the spilt paint up / clean it up)

如果有溅出来的油漆,把它收拾干净。

clean up(intr)同上用法相同: These painters always clean up when they've finished. 这几位油漆工完工之后总要把场地打扫干净。

clear

clear away (tr) 把物件拿开以便腾出地方: Could you clear away these papers? (clear these papers away / clear them away)

你能不能把这些文件清除开?

clear away(intr)散开: The clouds soon cleared away and it became quite warm. 云很快就散开了,天气变得相当暖和。

clear off(intr)走开(指室外) clear out(intr)走开(指室内)二者都是口语用法;作为命令时这样说是相当不礼貌的: 'You clear off,' said the farmer angrily. 'You' ve no right to put your caravans in my field without even asking my permission.'

"你们给我走开,"农民愤怒地说,"你们没有权利连我的许可都没征得就把住人的大篷车停在我的地里。"

Clear out! If I find you in this building again, I'll report you to the po-lice.

走开! 你要再到这幢建筑里来,我就将你报警了。

clear out (tr) 把(房间/碗柜/抽屉等) 腾空以便放别的东西: I'll clear out this drawer

and you can put your things in it. (clear this drawer out / clear it out)

我会把这个抽屉腾空,这样你就能把你的东西放在里面了。

clear up(intr)有云或雨后天晴了: The sky looks a bit cloudy now but I think it will clear up.

现在天看来有点阴, 但我想天会晴的。

clear up (tr / intr) 收拾整齐干净: When you are cooking it's best to clear up as you go, instead of leaving everything to the end and having a terrible pile of things to deal with.

烹调时,最好是边干边收拾,而不要把活留到最后而剩下一大堆东西要打扫收拾。

Clear up this mess. (clear this mess up / clear it up)

把这堆乱糟糟的东西收拾干净。

clear up (tr)

(a) 完成(某种尚待完成的工作): I have some letters which I must clear up before I leave tonight.

有几封信我今天晚上走以前必须写完。

(b) 侦破(不可思议的怪事、案件等): In a great many detective stories when the police are baffled an amateur detective comes along and clears up the mystery. (clears it up) 在许多侦探小说中,当警察束手无策时,来了个业余侦探,把案子给破了。

close

close down(tr/intr)永远关闭,停业(指商店或买卖等): Trade was so bad that many small shops closed down and big shops closedsome of their branches down. (closed down some branches/closed themdown)

市面很差,许多小店停业了,大商店也关了一些分店。

close in(intr)逼近,从四面凑近(常用于雾、夜色、敌人等): As the mist was closing in we decided to stay where we were.

由于雾越来越逼近,我们决定留在原地不动。

close up (intr) 缩小间距 (指一行人): If you children closed up a bit there'd be room for another one on thisseat.

你们几个孩子要是挤一挤,这座位上还能加一个人。

come

come across / upon (tr) 碰巧发现,碰巧找到: When I was looking for my passport I came across these old photographs.

我在找护照时碰巧找到了这些旧相片。

come along/on (intr) 和我一起来,陪伴我去 (常用来敦促犹豫不决的人或拖拖拉拉的人): Come on,or we'll be late.

快点, 否则我们要迟到了。

come away (intr) (和我一起) 走 / 离开: Come away now, It's time to go home. 快走吧。该回家了。

come away / off(intr)自行脱落: When I pickd up the teapot the handle came away in my hand.

我拿起茶壶时,茶壶掉了而只剩茶壶柄在我手里。

come in (intr),come into (tr) 进入: Someone knocked at my door and I said,'Come in.'

有人敲我的门,我说:"进来。"

Come into the garden and I'll show you my roses.

到花园里来, 我给你看我的玫瑰花。

come off (intr)

(a)(计划或阴谋)成功(用于否定句): I'm afraid that scheme of yours won't come off. It needs more capitalthan you have available.

恐怕你那个计划不会成功。它需要的投资不是你能拿得出来的。

- (b) 发生,按预先安排的那样发生: —When is the wedding coming off?
- —Next June.
- 一婚礼什么时候举行?
- **一6**月份。

如果我们说 The duchess was to have opened the bazaar(公爵夫人本来是要为义卖主持开幕仪式的),我们的意思是说计划是那样订的,但没有实现(她本安排好要去为它揭幕,但后来不得不取消这一安排)。

(c)(话剧、展览等)结束一轮演出或展出: 'Lady windermere's Fan'is coming off next week. You'd better hurryif you want to see it.

《少奶奶的扇子》下周要结束演出了。你要想看的话得抓紧点。

come out (intr)

(a) 被揭露或发觉(这里的主语常是 the truth 真相/the facts 事实/the whol story 全部内情等;并且一般指有关人士想竭力掩盖的事实即丑闻等): They deceived everybody till they quarrelled among themselves; then onepublicly denounced the others and the whole truth came out.

他们把大家都骗了,直到后来内讧起来,其中一个人公开揭发了别人,这才真相大白。

- (b) (书籍) 发行: Her new novel will be coming out in time for the Christmas sales. 她的新小说将赶在圣诞节购物潮时发行。
- (c)(污渍)消除,洗掉: Tomato stains don't usually come out. 西红柿污渍一般洗不净。

come round (intr)

(a) 终于接受以前所反对的建议: Her father at first refused to let her study abroad but he came round(to it)in the end.

她父亲起初反对她去外国念书,但终于回心转意了。(他说可以让她去。)

(b) 到某人的家里来: I'll come round after dinner and tell you the plan. 我晚饭后来转一下,把计划说给你听。

come round/to(intr; to 重读) 恢复知觉: When we found him he was unconscious but he came round/to in half anhour and explained that he had been attacked and robbed. 我们发现他时他已失去知觉,但是半小时后他恢复了知觉,说他遭到殴打抢劫。

come up (intr)

(a) 升到水面,生长出来: A diver with an aqualung doesn't have to keep coming up for air; he canstay underwater for quite a long time.

备有潜水供氧器的潜水员无需不断升出水面呼吸;他可以在水下停留相当长的时间。

Weeds are coming up everywhere.

杂草到处蔓生。

(b) 被提到: The question of the caretaker's wages came up at the last meeting. 在上次会议中提到了看楼人的工资问题。

come up (intr), come up to (tr) 走近,来到能说话的近处: A policeman was standing a few yards away. He came up to me and said, 'You can't park here.'

几码外站着一位警察。他走过来并对我说:"你不能把车子停放在这里。"

crop

crop up (intr) 出现,意外地或偶然地出现(主语常是一个抽象名词如 difficulties 困难/the subject 题目或是一个代词): At first all sorts of difficulties cropped up and delayed us. Later we learnthow to anticipate these.

起初冒出来了各式各样的困难,耽搁了我们。后来我们学会了如何为这些困难预作准备。 cut

cut down a tree 砍倒树木: If you cut down all the trees you will ruin the land. (cut the trees down/ cut them down)

你要是砍倒所有的树木,就会把土地给毁了。

cut down(tr) 减少数量: We must cut down expenses or we'll be getting into debt. 我们得减少支出,否则就要负债了。

'This article is too long,' said the editor. 'Could you cut it down to2, 000 words?' "这篇文章太长了,"编辑说,"你能不能把它缩到两千字?"

cut in(intr)在车距极近的不安全情况下并行抢道并插到另一辆车前面: Accidents are often caused by drivers cutting in.

车祸常由司机抢道插到别的车前面而引起。

cut off(tr)切断、停止供应(宾语可以是水、电、煤气,也可以是被停供的人): The Company has cut off our electricity supply because we haven't paidour bill. (cut our supply off/cut it off)

因为我们没有付电费,公司断了我们的电。

They' ve cut off the water/our water supply temporarily because they are repairing one of the main pipes.

他们暂时断了我们的水源,因为在修其中的一条主要的水管。

We were cut off in the middle of our (telephone) conversation.

我们(电)话还没完,就被掐断了。(这可能是偶然的事,也可能是电话接线员故意的行为。) cut someone off 阻挡某人使其不能逃到安全地带(常用于指潮水围困,特别是用被动态时): We were cut off by the tide and had to be rescued by boat.

我们被潮水困住了,只好由小船搭救出来。

be cut off (intr) 被隔绝在不方便的地方 (主语常是某一地方或住在某一地方的人): You will be completely cut off if you go to live in that village becausethere is a bus only once a week.

你要是去住在那个村里,就会与世隔绝了,因为那里每周只有一班公共汽车。

cut out (tr)

(a) 从布、纸等上弄下所需形状: When I am making a dress I mark the cloth with chalk and then cut itout. (cut out the dress/cut the dress out)

我缝衣服时先用白粉在布上画出样子, 然后再剪下。

Young people often cut out photographs of their favourite pop stars and tick them to the walls.

年轻人常把最喜欢的流行歌手的相片剪下来贴在墙上。

(b) 略去,排除,不再继续: If you want to get thin you must cut out sugar. (cut it out) 你要是想瘦点,就得不吃糖。

be cut out for (tr) 特别适合于…… (用于指人,又常用于否定句中): His father got him a job in a bank but it soon became clear that he wasnot cut out for that kind of work.

他爸爸给他在银行里找了一个工作,但是不久就可以清楚地看出来,他不适合干那种工作。cut up(tr) 切、割、剪成碎片: They cut down the tree and cut it up for firewood.(cut the tree up/cut up the tree)

他们把树砍倒并劈碎当柴火了。

die

die away (intr) (声音)逐渐微弱直到听不到: They waited till the sound of the guard's footsteps died away.

他们一直等到警卫的脚步声消逝了。

die down (intr) 逐渐平静下来,直至平息 (常指骚乱、火、心情的一阵波动等): When the excitement had died down the shopkeepers took down their shutters and reopened their shops.

波动平息后, 店主们取下了窗板, 重新开店营业。

die out(intr)绝灭,成为过去(常指风俗、种族、动物品种等)。 Elephants would die out if men could shoot as many as they wished.

如果人们爱猎杀多少大象就可以猎杀多少,大象就会灭种了。

do

do away with (tr) 废除: The government should do away with the regulations restricting drinkinghours.

政府应该废除限制卖酒的时间的规章。

do up(tr)重新装饰: When I do this room up I'll paint the walls cream. (do up this room/doit up)

我重新装修房间时,要把墙漆成奶油色。

do without (tr) 不要……而凑合过,免去……也可以: We had to do without petrol during the fuel crisis.

在燃料危机期间,我们不得不过没有汽油的日子。

有时宾语可以意会,不说出来: If there isn't any milk we'll have to do without (it). 如果没有牛奶,我们只好将就了。

draw

draw back(intr)撤退,(因惊惧而)向后闪: It's too late to draw back now; the plans are all made.

现在再后退也太晚了; 计划都订好了。

draw up(tr)草拟,写出(计划或协议书): My solicitor drew up the lease and we both signed it. (drew it up)

我的律师拟好了租约, 我们两个人都签了名。

draw up(intr)停下(指车辆等): The car drew up at the kerb and the driver got out. 车在马路边停下,开车人下了车。

drop

drop in (intr) 未经通知而造访并停留较短的时间: He dropped in for a few minutes to ask if he could borrow your powerdrill.

他不告而来,坐了几分钟,问是否能借用你的电钻。(比 call in 更口语化些。)

drop out(intr)退出(某计划或行动): We planned to hire a coach for the excursion but now so many peoplehave dropped out that it will not be needed.

我们原计划租一辆大客车去郊游,但是现在已有这么多人退出,车就不需要了。 enter enter for (tr) 报名参加(竞赛、考试等): Twelve thousand competitors have entered for the next LondonMarathon.

已有12,000人报名参加下一次伦敦马拉松比赛。

fade

fade away (intr) 消失,逐渐减弱 (常指声音): The band moved on and the music faded away.

乐队继续行进,乐声逐渐听不见了。

fall

fall back(intr)后退,撤退(指有意识的行动,与 fall behind 不同,后者是不由自主的): As the enemy advanced we fell back.

敌人向前推进,我们就后退了。

fall back on(tr) 退而求其次地使用某物: We had to fall back on dried milk as fresh milk wasn't available.

因为找不到鲜奶,我们不得已使用了奶粉。

He fell back on the old argument that if you educate women they won' the such good wives and mothers.

他重弹老调,说如果给妇女受教育的机会,她们就不会是这样的贤妻良母了。

fall behind (intr) (因不能赶上别人而)落后,不能按协议的时间分期支付: At the beginning the whole party kept together but by the end of the daythose who were less fit had fallen behind.

起初全体人员都在一起,但到了晚间身体不够强壮的人就落后了。

He fell behind with his rent and the landlord began to become impatient.

他不能按期交房租,房东不耐烦了。

fall in with someone's plans 接受别人的计划并同意与之合作: We'd better fall in with his suggestion for the sake of peace.

为了息事宁人,我们还是接受他的建议为好。

fall in (intr) of troops etc. 列队,整队(指军队等)

fall off (intr) (数目、观众等) 减少,下降: Orders have been falling off lately; we need a new advertising campaign.

近来订货量下降了;我们需要再搞一次广告宣传运动。

If the price of seats goes up much more theatre attendances will begin tofall off.

如果票价大幅度上扬, 观众人数就会下降了。

fall on(tr) 凶猛地袭击,扑上来(受害者没有自卫的机会,因为袭击者太有力;有时也用于描述饥饿的人急于吃食物):The mob fell on the killers and clubbed them to death. 乱民凶猛地攻击杀人者,把他们乱棍打死了。

The starving men fell on the food.

饥饿的人们狼吞虎咽地吃了起来。

fall out (intr) 争吵: When thieves fall out honest men get their own.

窃贼争吵,好人受益。(格言:意指失主能得回他们的财产)

fall out (intr) of troops etc. 解散 (队伍): The troops fell in and were inspected. After the parade they fell out and went back to their barracks.

队伍列队并接受了检阅。游行完毕后他们解散回营房了。

fall through (intr) (计划) 未能实现,化为泡影: My plans to go to Greece fell through because the journey turned out to bemuch more expensive than I had expected.

我上希腊去的计划未能实现,因为我发现旅行远比我预期的要昂贵。

feed

be fed up (intr), be fed up with (tr) 完全厌倦,十分腻烦(俚语): I'm fed up with this wet weather.

我对这潮呼呼的天气腻烦极了。

I' m fed up with waiting; I' m going home.

我等得不耐烦了;我要回家了。

feel

feel up to (tr) 感到有体力(能做某事): I don't feel up to tidying the kitchen now. I'll do it in the morning.

我现在没劲儿打扫厨房。我早上干吧。

I don't feel up to it.

我觉得没有力气做这件事。

fill

fill in/up 爁 orms etc. 填写表格: I had to fill in three forms to get my new passport. (fill three forms in/fill them in)

为了领新护照,我不得不填写三张表格。

find

find out (tr) 通过有意识的努力而弄清或发现: In the end I found out what was wrong with my hi—fi.

我终于搞清楚我的高保真音响出了什么毛病。

The dog found out the way to open the door. (found it out)

那狗搞清楚怎么开门了。

find someone out 发现某人在干坏事(这常是一种意外的发现,因为某人一直是受信任的): After robbing the till for months the cashier was found out.

那出纳员从钱柜里偷钱偷了好几个月后才被发现。

fix

fix up(tr)安排: The club has already fixed up several matches for next season. (fixed sev-eral matches up/fixed them up)

俱乐部已经为下一个赛季安排了几场比赛。

get

get about (intr) 流转,运动或行动: The news got about that he had won the first prize in the state lottery and every body began asking him for money.

他买国家奖券得了头奖的消息不胫而走,大家都开始向他要钱。

He is a semi-invalid now and can't get about as well as he used to.

他现在是个半残废了,不能像过去那样自在地行动。

get away (intr) 逃掉,脱身: Don't ask him how he is because if he starts talking about his healthyou'll never get away from him.

不要去问他身体好不好,因为他要是一谈起他的身体状况,你就会脱身乏术的。

I had a lot to do in the office and didn't get away till eight.

我在办公室里事很多,到8点钟才得以脱身。

get away with (tr) 做非法或错误的事后逃脱了惩罚,不被人抓住或发觉: He began forging cheques and at first he got away with it but in the endhe was caught and sent to prison. 他开始干伪造支票的事,起初他蒙混过去了,但最终被抓住并送进了监狱。

get back(tr) 收回: If you lend him a book he'll lend it to someone else and you'll never getit back. (get back your book/get your book back)

如果你借给他一本书,他就会转借给别人,你就再也收不回来了。

get back (intr) 回到家里: We spent the whole day in the hills and didn't get back till dark.

我们在山里呆了一整天,直到天黑才回到家。

get off(intr)被认为无罪而释放或未受到惩处(试与 getaway with it 比较,后者意指犯罪者根本没有被抓到): He was tried for theft but got off because there wasn't sufficient evidenceagainst him.

他因某宗盗窃案而受审,但因证据不足而被无罪释放了。

The boy had to appear before a magistrate but he got off as it was his firstoffence.

那男孩不得不出庭受审,但因为是初犯而未受惩罚。

get on (intr), get on with (tr)有下面两种意义: (a) 取得进展,得到成功: How is he getting on at school?

他在学校学习如何?

He is getting on very well with his English.

他英文学得很好。

(b) 友好地同别人一起生活、工作等: He is a pleasant friendly man who gets on well with nearly everybody.

他是一个愉悦、友善、几乎跟任何人都能相处得很好的人。

How are you and Mr Pitt getting on?

你和皮特先生相处得好吗? get out(intr) 脱身离开(一个封闭的地方): Don't worry about the snake. It's in a box. It can't get out.

别担心这条蛇。它在盒子里,跑不出来。

News of the Budget got out before it was officially announced.

有关预算的消息,在正式宣布以前就走漏了。

I'm so busy that I don't very often get out.

我太忙了,不大出门。

注意: 命令句 Get out 是滚出去的意思,是很无礼的。只有在作下车的意思讲时才不是这样。get out of (tr) 使自己摆脱某种义务或习惯: I said that I'd help him. Now I don't want to but I can't get out of it.

我说过我要帮助他。现在我不想帮助他了,可是无法脱手。(不顾及这一允诺)

He says that he smokes too much but he can't get out of the habit.

他说他烟吸得太多了,但是他去不掉这习惯。

Some people live abroad to get out of paying heavy taxes.

有些人居住在国外,为的是摆脱沉重的捐税负担。

get over(tr) 恢复(原来生病、忧郁或精神上害怕等): He is just getting over a bad heart attack.

他曾心脏病大发, 正在康复。

I can't get over her leaving her husband like that.

她那样离开她的丈夫,我真想不通。(我还没有从惊讶中缓过劲来;我感到震惊不已。)

He used to be afraid of heights but he has got over that now. 他过去有恐高症,现在已经没了。

get it over(常以 it 为宾语,一般指某种不愉快的事)处理完某事并不再为它多忙: If you have

to go to the dentist why not go at once and get it over?

你要是必须去看牙医,为什么不马上就去,一了百了呢?

(注意勿将其与 get over it 混淆。二者意思完全不同。)

get round a person 好言哄劝某人以使他让你做你要想做的事: Girls can usually get round their fathers.

女孩子们总能哄得爸爸们答应她们的要求。

get round a difficulty/regulation 找到解决困难或回避规章的方法: If we charge people for admission we will have to pay entertainment taxon our receipts; but we can get round this regulation by saying that weare charging not for admission but for refreshments. Money paid for re—freshments is not taxed.

我们如果向人们收门票钱,就得为进款交纳娱乐税;但我们可以避开这条规定,就是把收门票钱说成是收饮料点心钱。饮料点心钱是不收税的。

get through(tr/intr) 干完一项工作,胜利地完成一件事: He got through his exam all right.

他成功地通过了考试。

get through (intr) 打通 (电话): I am trying to call London but I can't get through; I think all the linesare engaged.

我正在往伦敦打电话,可是打不通;我想所有的电话线路都占线了。

get up(tr) 组织,安排(常指一项业余文娱活动或慈善事业): They got up a concert in aid of cancer research.(got it up)

他们组织了一次为抗癌研究筹款的音乐会。

get up(intr) 起床,站起身来,登上: I get up at seven o'clock every morning. 我每天早上 **7** 点钟起床。

(关于 get 用于指上/下交通工具,参见第 93 节 D。)

give

give something away 把东西给人(不一定要说出是谁): I'll give this old coat away. (give away this old coat away/give it away)

我要把这件旧外衣给人。

give someone away (宾语位于 away 之前) 出卖或暴露某人: He said that he was not an American but his accent gave him away.

他说他不是美国人, 可是他的口音让人听出他是美国人了。

give back (tr) (将某物) 归还给原主: I must call at the library to give back this book. (to give this book back/to give it back)

我得去图书馆把这本书还了。

give in (intr) 屈服,退让,不再拒绝听从: At first he wouldn't let her drive the car but she was so persuasive that eventually he gave in.

起初他不肯让她开车,可是她这么能说,最终他还是答应了。

give out (tr)

(a) 口头宣称: They gave out the names of the winners. (gave the names out/gave themout)

他们宣布了获胜者的名字。

(b) 分发,分给: The teacher gave out the books. (gave one/some to each pupil) 教师分发了书。

give out (intr) 耗竭,用光(指供应品等): The champagne gave out long before the end

of the reception.

在招待会结束前很久, 香槟酒就都喝完了。

His patience gave out and he slapped the child hard.

他再也忍耐不下去了,用力打了那孩子一巴掌。

give up(tr/intr) 放弃努力,停止做某事的试图: I tried to climb the wall but after I had failed three times I gave up.(gaveup the attempt/gave the attempt up/gave it up) 我试图爬上那堵墙,但失败三次之后我放弃了。

A really determined person never gives up/never gives up trying. 一个真正有决心的人绝不会放弃试一次的机会。

give up(tr) 放弃某种习惯、运动、学习、职业等: Have you given up drinking whisky before breakfast?

你已经不在早餐之前喝威士忌了?

He gave up cigarettes. (gave them up)

他不吸烟了。

He tried to learn Greek but soon got tired of it and gave it up.

他曾想学希腊语, 但不久就感到厌倦而放弃了。

give oneself up(宾语在 up 之前) 投降,自首,不再抗拒: He gave himself up to despair. 他完全沉湎于绝望中。

He was cold and hungry after a week on the run so he gave himself up to the police.

他上路潜逃一个星期后饥寒交迫,只得向警方自首了。

go

go ahead (intr) (继续) 工作、前进,先走: While she was away he went ahead with the work and got a lot done.

她不在的时候,他继续干活,干了不少工作。

You go ahead and I'll follow; I'm not quite ready.

你先走一步,我随后就来;我还没完全准备好。

go away(intr) 离开,走开,别在这儿: —Are you going away for your holiday?

- —No, I'm staying at home.
- 一你假期出去吗?
- 一不,我呆在家里。

Please go away; I can't work unless I am alone.

请你走开:有人在旁边我无法工作。

go back (intr) 回去,后退,撤退: I' m never going back to that hotel. It is most uncomfortable.

我再也不回那家旅馆了。那儿太不舒服了。

go back on (tr) 收回或不履行 (诺言): He went back on his promise to tell nobody about this.

他答应这件事对谁也不讲,可是他食言了。

go down (intr)

(a) 得到赞同并被接受(常指一个主意、想法): I suggested that she should look for a job but this suggestion did not godown at all well.

我建议她去找个工作,可是这个主意她根本听不进。

(b) 减少,减弱 (指风、浪、重量、价格等): During her illness her weight went down from 50 kilos to 40.

在病中她体重由50公斤下降到40公斤。

The wind went down and the sea became guite calm.

风力减弱,海浪平息了。

go for(tr) 进攻,袭击: The cat went for the dog and chased him out of the hall. 那猫向狗发起进攻,把它赶出了门厅。

go in for (tr) 对······特别感兴趣,练习做某事或使用某物,参加(某项比赛等): This restaurant goes in for vegetarian dishes.

这家饭馆供应素菜。

She plays a lot of golf and goes in for all the competitions.

她常打高尔夫球,参加所有的赛事。

go into(tr) 深入调查,研究,侦查: 'We shall have to go into this very carefully,' said the detective.

"我们得非常仔细地对此进行侦查,"侦探说。

go off (intr)

(a) 爆炸(指军火或焰火),开火(指枪炮,尤指偶然走火)。 As he was cleaning his gun it went off and killed him.

他擦枪时,枪走火了,把他打死了。

(b) 获得成功(指一项社会或社交活动): The party went off very well.

晚会开得很成功。(人人都玩得很高兴。)

(c) 开始一次旅行,上路,离开: He went off in a great hurry.

他非常匆忙地走了。

go on (intr) 继续赶路: Go on till you come to the orossroads.

一直走到十字路口的地方。

go on (intr), go on with (tr), go on+动名词继续做某事: Please go on playing; I like it. 请继续演奏下去;我喜欢这曲调。

Go on with the treatment. It is doing you good.

你要继续进行这种疗法。它对你是有效的。

go on+动词不定式 接着干(另一件事): He began by describing the route and went on to tell us what the tripwould probably cost.

他开始是描述这条路线,后来又告诉我们这次旅行可能要花多少钱。

go out (intr)

- (a) 出家门到外面去,外出: She is always indoors; she doesn't go out enough. 她老是窝在家里;她外出得不够。
- (b) 参加社会交活动,出去进行文娱活动等: She is very pretty and goes out a lot. 她长得很漂亮,常常到外头玩。
- (c) 消逝,不再流行(指时装服饰): Crinolines went out about the middle of the last century.

有衬架支撑的女裙在上世纪中叶已不流行了。

(d) 熄灭(指灯、火等): The light went out and we were left in the dark. 灯光灭了,剩下我们摸黑呆着。

go over(tr) 仔细地检查,研究学习,重新诵记: He went over the plans again and discovered two very serious mistakes.

他又把计划过了一遍,发现了两个非常严重的错误。

go round (intr)

- (a) 足够供(一定数目的人)用: Will there be enough wine to go round? 葡萄酒够大家喝的吗?
- (b) 到(某人)家去,过去: I said that I'd go round and see her during the weekend. 我说过我要在周末过去看看她。(到她家里去)
- go through(tr)仔细检查(常指多种东西;与 look through 意思相近,但具有更彻底的意思): There is a mistake somewhere; we'll have to go through the accounts andsee where it is.

不知哪儿有个错误:我们得再把帐目彻底过一下,看错在哪儿。

The police went through their files to see if they could find any finger—prints to match those that they had found on the handle of the weapon.

警方仔细检查了他们的档案,看是否能找到同在凶器柄上发现的指纹相符的指纹。

go through (tr) 承受,受苦,受罪: No one knows what I went through while I was waiting for the verdict.

没有人能知道我在静候判决时所承受的痛苦。

go through with(tr)完成,使进行至终结(尤指经历某种反对或困难): He went through with his plan although all his friends advised him toabandon it.

尽管他的朋友们都建议他放弃,他还是把计划进行到底。

go up (intr)

- (a) 上升(指物价): The price of strawberries went up towards the end of the season. 草莓将要下市时,价格上涨了。
- (b) 起火 (并被焚毁),爆炸 (指整个的建筑物、船只等): When the fire reached the cargo of chemicals the whole ship went up.

火焰延伸到运载的化学品时,全船都爆炸了。

Someone dropped a cigarette end into a can of petrol and the whole garagewent up in flames.

有人把烟头扔在一罐汽油里了,整个车库都陷于火海。

go without (tr) 不要某物而将就着过日子(但只指物; gowithout a person 只有字面的意义,即意指"不等某人来到就动身离去")

grow

grow out of (tr) 长大了一些后不再继续保持幼时的(坏) 习惯: He used to tell a lot of lies as a young boy but he grew out of that lateron.

他还是个小男孩时,常常说谎,可是后来大了就不那样了。

grow up(intr) 成为成年人,长大成人: I'm going to be a pop star when I grow up,'said the boy.

"我长大了要当流行歌星,"那男孩子说。

hand

hand down(tr)授予或传下去(指传统/信息/所有物等): This legend has been handed down from father to son.

这一传说代代相传。

hand in(tr)上交,交出(给什么人常不必提及,因为听话人已经知道了): I handed in my resignation.

我把辞职书交上去了。

Someone handed this parcel in yesterday. (handed it in)

昨天有人把这小包交来了。

hand out (tr) 分发: He was standing at the door of the theatre handing out leaflets. (handingleaflets out/handing them out)

他站在剧院门口,分发小册子。

hand over (tr/intr) 将权力或职责交给某人,移交: The outgoing Minister handed over his department to his successor. (handed his department over/handed it over)

即将离任的部长把他的部门移交给了后任。

hand round(tr)给在场的每一个人,给在场的大家轮流看: The hostess handed round coffee and cakes. (handed them round).

女主人给大家依次递来咖啡和点心。

hang

hang about/around (tr/intr)(在附近) 逗留不去: He hung about/around the entrance all day, hoping for a chance to speakto the director.

他整天等在入口,巴望着有机会同导演/主任谈一下。

hang back (intr) 不愿采取行动,退缩: Everyone approved of the scheme but when we asked for volunteers theyall hung back.

人人都赞同这个计划,但是我们征求志愿者时,他们都退缩了。

hang on to (tr) 抓住不放,不肯交出,不放手(俗语化的用法)。I' d hang on to that old coat if I were you. It might be useful.

如果我是你,我就不放手那件旧外衣。它可能还用得着。

hold

hold off (intr) 保持在一段距离之外,不来到 (指雨): The rain fortunately held off till after the school sports day.

幸亏雨直到学校运动会开过了才下。

hold on (intr) 等待 (特指打电话时): Yes, Mr Pitt is in. If you hold on for a moment I'll get him for you.

对,皮特先生在。请您等一会儿,我给您找他听电话。

hold on/out(intr)(不顾艰苦或危险而)坚持,坚持忍受下去: The survivors on the rock signalled that they were short of water butcould hold out for another day.

岩石上的幸存者发信号说他们缺水了,但还能坚持一天。

The strikers held out for six weeks before agreeing to arbitration.

罢工工人坚持了六周, 才同意接受仲裁。

hold up (tr)

(a) 以威胁或暴力使人停止向前走(时常由于想抢劫)。 The terrorists held up the train and kept the passengers as hostages.

恐怖分子强行制止火车前进,并把乘客劫为人质。

Masked men held up the cashier and robbed the bank. (held him up)

有几个蒙面人用武器迫使出纳员就范,把银行给抢了。

(b) 使停止,使延迟(常用于被动语态): The bus was held up because a tree had fallen across the road.

因为有一棵大树横倒在路上,公共汽车停下了。

ioin

join up (intr) 参军,应征从军: When war was declared he joined up at once.

一宣战,他马上参军。

jump

jump at (tr) 热情地接受(一种建议或一次机遇): He was offered a place in the Himalayan expedition and jumped at thechance.

人家向他提议让他参加喜马拉雅山考察队,他求之不得地接受了。

keep

keep somebody back (宾语在 back 前面) 阻挡, 拦阻,制止其前进: Frequent illnesses kept him back.

经常生病使他进展迟缓。

keep down (tr) 压抑, 控制: What is the best way to keep down rats? (keep them down) 控制鼠患的最佳方法是什么?

Try to remember to turn off the light when you leave the room. I am try—ing to keep down expenses. (keep expenses down)

你离开时,要记得熄灯。我在努力控制支出。

keep off(tr/intr)避免在……上践踏,避免来到近旁: 'Keep off the grass.'

"禁止践踏草地!"(公园里的布告)

keep on 继续,不停歇: I wanted to explain but he kept on talking and didn't give me a chance tosay anything.

我本想解释一下,可是他不住嘴地说,不给我说话的机会。

keep out(tr)阻止进入, 挡住: My shoes are very old and don't keep out the water. (keep the water out/ keep it out)

我的鞋很旧,漏水进去了。

keep out (intr) 不许进来,留在外面: 'Private. Keep out.'

"私人产业。不许进入。"(门上的告白)

keep up (tr) 继续保持 (努力): He began walking at four miles an hour but he couldn't keep up that speed and soon began to walk more slowly. (couldn't keep it up)

他开始以每小时四英里的速度走路,但是无法维持那个速度,不久之后就放慢了脚步。

It is difficult to keep up a conversation with someone who only says 'Yes' and 'No'. 与光说"对"和"不对"的人很难把谈话继续下去。

keep up (intr), keep up with (tr) 与某人齐头并进, 和某人同速前进: A runner can't keep up with a cyclist.

跑步的跟不上骑车的。

The work that the class is doing is too difficult for me. I won't be able tokeep up (with them).

班上学的东西对我讲是太难了。我跟不上(他们)。

It is impossible to keep up with the news unless you read the newspapers.

你要是不读报,就跟不上时事。

knock

knock off (tr/intr)(一天的活干完之后)歇了, 收工,下班(俗语): English workmen usually knock off at 5.30 or6.00 p. m.

英国工人一般在下午5点半或6点下班。

We knock off work in time for tea.

我们收工后,正好能赶上喝下午茶。

knock out(tr)重击使之晕倒在地: In the finals of the boxing championship he knocked out his opponent, who was carried out of the ring. (knocked his opponent out/knocked himout)

在拳击锦标赛决赛中,他把对手击昏在地,后者被人抬出了拳击台。

lay

lay in(tr)为自己准备足够的货品等以使其维持一段时间,储备(食物): She expected a shortage of dried fruit so she laid in a large supply.

她预期果脯会有短缺, 所以囤积了一大批。

lay out(tr)为花园、建筑等安排平面设计: Le Notre laid out the gardens at Versailles. (laid the gardens out/laidthem out)

凡尔赛宫的园林是勒•诺特尔设计的。

lay up(tr)小心地存储以备将来用(指船只等)。 Before he went to Brazil for a year,he laid up his car,as he didn't wantto sell it.(laid it up)

他要到巴西去一年,在此以前他把车子储存起来了,因为他不想把车卖掉。

be laid up(of a person)因病卧床不起: She was laid up for weeks with a slipped disk. 她因腰椎间盘突出,卧床数周之久。

lead

lead up to (tr) 为……做好准备,引出 (比喻的用法): He wanted to borrow my binoculars, but he didn't say so at once. He ledup to it by talking about birdwatching.

他想借我的望远镜,可又不直接说。他借着谈起观察鸟类的话题引出这件事。

leave

leave off (常为 intr) 停止 (做某件事): He was playing his trumpet but I told him to leave off because the neigh—bours were complaining about the noise.

他在吹喇叭,可是我告诉他别吹了,因为邻居们都在抱怨太闹了。

leave out(tr)省略,删去: We'll sing our school song leaving out the last ten verses. 我们唱校歌要省略最后十节。

They gave each competitor a number; but they left out No. 13 as no onewanted to have it. (left No. 13 out/left it out)

他们给每个参赛者一个号码;可是他们把13号隔过去了,因为没有人要这个号码。

let

let down(tr)放下来: When she lets her hair down it reaches her waist.(lets down her hair/lets it down)

她把头发放下来时,头发长抵腰际。

You can let a coat down (lengthen it) by using the hem.

你可以利用下摆把一件外衣放长。

let someone down(宾语在 down 之前)行动不像某人所期待的,未能执行某一协议,辜负某人: I promised him that you would do the work. Why did you let me downby doing so little?

我答应他说你会做这工作的。你为什么干得这么少而让我失望呢?

He said he'd come to help me; but he let me down. He never turned up. 他本来说过要来帮我;可是他把我涮了。他根本就没有来。

let in(tr)允许进入, 放进来: They let in the ticket-holders. (let the ticket—holders in/let them in)

他们把持票人放进去了。

If you mention my name to the door-keeper he will let you in.

你要是对看门人提我的名字,他会放你进去的。

let someone off(宾语在 off 之前)不予惩罚: I thought that the magistrate was going to

fine me but he let me off.

我本以为法官会罚我,可是他放了我一马。

let out (tr)

(a) 放宽(指衣服): That boy is getting fatter. You'll have to let out his clothes. (let his clothes out/let them out)

那男孩子长胖了。你得把他的衣服放宽一些。

(b) 允许走开, 放出: He opened the door and let out the dog. (let the dog out/let it out) 他开门把狗放出去了。

live

live down a bad reputation 小心做人以使人忘记自己的不良声誉: He has never quite been able to live down a reputation for drinking toomuch which he got when he was a young man. (live it down)

他年轻时有酗酒的恶名,至今未能完全挽回声誉。

live in (intr) 住在工作的地方 (主要用于仆人): Advertisement: Cook wanted. €140 a week. Live in.

广告:招聘厨师。周薪 140 镑。供住宿。

live on (tr) 以……为主食: It is said that for a certain period of his life Byron lived on vinegar andpotatoes in order to keep thin.

据说拜仑曾有一段时期为了不发胖靠吃马铃薯和酸醋过日子。

live up tp(tr)维持某种道德、经济或行为标准: He had high ideals and tried to live up to them.

他有崇高的理想,并力求身体力行。(他试图按照自己的理想而行动。)

lock

lock up a house (tr/intr; 常为 intr) 把房子所有的门都锁上: People usually lock up before they go to bed at night.

人们夜晚就寝前一般都锁好门窗。

lock up a person or thing 锁在……之内: She locked up the papers in her desk. (locked the papers up/locked themup)

她把文件锁在书桌抽屉里了。

look

look after (tr) 照料: Will you look after my parrot when I am away?

我不在的时候,你能否替我照看一下我的鹦鹉?

look ahead (intr) 考虑未来以便为之做准备: It's time you looked ahead and made plans for your retirement.

是你为以后想一想并对退休后的生活做出安排的时候了。

look at (tr) 看, 望: He looked at the clock and said, 'It is midnight.'

他看了看钟,说:"午夜了。"

look back (intr), look back on (tr) 回顾: Looking back, I don't suppose we are any worse now than people were ahundred years ago.

看一看过去,我不认为我们比 100 年前的人更坏。

Perhaps some day it will be pleasant to look back on these things.

可能将来有一天我们回顾这些事时会感到愉快的。

look back/round(intr)向背后看(字面意义): Don't look round now but the woman behind us is wearing the most ex—traordinary clothes.

现在别回头看,虽然我们后面那个妇女穿的衣服特别怪。

look down on (tr) 轻视,看不起: Small boys often look down on little girls and refuse to play with them.

小男孩常常看不起小女孩并拒绝同她们一起玩。

She thinks her neighbours look down on her a bit because she's neverbeen abroad. 她认为她的邻居们因她从来没有出过国而有点瞧不起她。

look for(tr)搜寻,探索,找: I have lost my watch will you help me to look for it? 我把表丢了。你能不能帮我找一下?

look forward to (tr) 盼望,期待 (常带一个动名词): I am looking forward to her arrival/to seeing her.

我在期待着她的到来/看到她。

look in (intr) 短暂地拜访某人(常不预先告诉对方, 相当于 call in): I'll look in this evening to see how she is.

我今晚去探望她一下,看她身体如何。

look into (tr) 调查: There is a mystery about his death and the police are looking into it. 他死得有点蹊跷,警方正在进行调查。

look on····as (tr) 考虑为,认为,看成: Most people look on a television set as an essential piece of furniture.

多数人都把电视机看成是必不可少的家具。

These children seem to look on their teachers as their enemies.

这些孩子好像把老师视为敌人。

look on(intr)旁观: Two men were fighting. The rest were looking on.

两个男人在打架。其余的人在袖手旁观。

look on (tr), look out on (tr) (用于指房屋或窗户) 面向,朝着**……**方向: His house looks (out) on to the sea.

他的房子面临大海。

look out(intr)保持警惕,提防:'Look out! There's a lorry coming!'

(对要过马路的人)"留神!有辆卡车开过来了!"

look out for(tr)警惕地看着以等待某物出现(常是相当明显的事物): I am going to the party too, so look out for me.

我也要去参加聚会, 你留意着我好了。

look over(tr)以批评的眼光看,重新阅读,迅速核对改正(同 go over 相似,但不如后者彻底):look over what you've written before handing it to the examiner.

先把你写的看一遍,再交给考官。

I'm going to look over a house that I'm thinking of buying.

我打算去看一下我想买的一幢房子。

look through(tr)察看若干东西,常为了挑选其中几个,翻阅报纸或书籍以寻找自己需要的内容: Look through your old clothes and see if you have anything to give away. 把你的旧衣服翻一下,看有没有可以送掉的。

I'd like you to look through these photographs and try to pick out theman you saw. 我希望你把这些相片翻看一下,试着从中找出你看见的那个人。

He looked through the books and decided that he wouldn't like them.

他把书翻阅了一下, 认定他不会喜欢它们的。

look through someone 对某人看而又仿佛看不见的样子 (作为一种故意的无礼表示): She

has to be polite to me in the office but when we meet outside she al—ways looks through me.

她在办公室里不得不对我有礼貌,可是在外面遇到我的时候总是对我视而不见。

look up an address/a name/word/train/telehone number etc.

在地址本/词典/时间表/电话簿等中查找: If you don't know the meaning of the word look it up. (look up the word/look the word up)

你要是不知道这个词的意思,就查一下。

I must look up the time of your train.

我得查一下你坐的火车的时刻。

look somebody up 拜访(被访者常是住得较远、不常见到的,

因此与 look in 不同,后者暗示被访者住得很近): Any time you come to London do look me up.

你无论什么时候到伦敦来,一定要来看我。

I haven't seen Tom for ages. I must find out where he lives and look himup. (look Tome up/look up Tom)

我很久没见到汤姆了。我得探问一下他住在哪里,去看他一下。

look up(intr) 有进步,变得更好(主语常是 things 情况/business 市面/world affairs 世界局势/the weather 天气等一种不太确指的事): Business has been very bad lately but things are beginning to look upnow.

近期市面有一阵子很不兴旺,可是情况在开始好转。

look someone up and down 轻蔑地将某人从头打量到脚: The policeman looked the drunk man up and down very deliberately be—fore replying to his question.

警察非常有意地从头到脚打量了那醉汉,这才回答他的问题。

look up to (tr) 尊敬,敬仰: School boys usually look up to great athletes.

男学生常很崇拜了不起的体育明星。

make

make for(tr)向……走去: The escaped prisoner was making for the coast. 越狱犯正向海岸逃去。

make off(intr) 逃跑(指贼等): The boys made off when they saw the policemen. 男孩子们一看见警察,就拔腿跑了。

make out (tr)

(a) 弄清意义,清楚地理解、看见、听见等: I can't make out the dress,he has written it so badly. (make the ad-dress out/make it out)

我看不清地址,他写得太潦草了。

Can you hear what the man with the loud-hailer is saying? I can't makeit out at all. 你听得出那个拿着电喇叭的人在说什么吗?我一点也听不清楚。

I can't make out why he isn't here yet.

我搞不明白他为什么还没有到这儿来。

(b) 说(可能是瞎说, 也可能是夸大其辞): He made out that he was a student looking for a job. We later learnt thatthis wasn't true at all.

他说他是个在找工作的大学生。后来我们获悉这根本不是事实。

The English climate isn't so bad as some people like to make out.

英国的天气不像某些人喜欢说的那么糟。

(c) 开支票: Customer: Who shall I make it out to?

顾客:我支票抬头怎么写?

Shopkeeper: Make it out to Jones and Company.

店主: 就写付给琼斯公司好了。

make up one's mind 下定决心,做出决定,做出决断: In the end he made up his mind to go by train.

最后他决定坐火车去。

make up a quarrel/make it up 终止争吵,言归于好: Isn't it time you and Ann made up your quarrel? (made it up)

不是到了你和安该言归于好的时候了吗?

make up a story/excuse/explanation 捏造,编出一个故事/借口/解释: I don't believe your story at all. I think you are just making it up.

我根本不信你说的事。我认为你不过是在编造。

make up (tr/intr) 化妆, 化装: Most women make up/make up their faces. (make their faces up/makethem up)

妇女大多数都化妆。

Actors have to be made up before they appear on stage.

演员们在出场前必需有人给他们化装。

make up(tr) 调制,配药,制造,由……组成: Take this prescription to the chemist'

s. They will make it up for youthere. (make up the prescription/make the prescription up)

把这药方拿到药房。他们会给你配药的。

Notice (in tailor's window): Customers' own materials made up.

(裁缝店橱窗内的)告示: 为顾客来料加工。

The audience was made up of very young children.

观众都是很小的孩子们。

make up for (tr) 为……补偿 (常以 it 为宾语): You'll have to work very hard today to make up for the time you wastedyesterday/to make up for being late yesterday.

为了补偿昨天你们浪费的时间/为了补偿昨天你们迟到一事,今天你们得非常努力地干活。

We aren't allowed to drink when we are in training but we intend tomake up for it after the race is over.

我们在训练期间不许喝酒,但是我们准备一旦比赛结束就将其补上。

(到那时要多喝些)

miss

miss out(tr) 省略(参见 leave out; 它虽与 leave out 同义,但不如后者常用)mix

mix up(tr) 混淆,弄乱: He mixed up the addresses so that no one got the right letters. (mixed them up)

他把地址都弄乱了, 收信人收到的信件都错了。

be/get mixed up with 涉入,与……有牵连(常指同某不光彩的人或事有牵连): I don't want to get mixed up with any illegal organization.

我不想同什么不合法的组织牵连在一起。

move

move in(intr) 搬家到……,搬进,迁入

move on/up (intr) 升迁,升级: Normally in schools pupils move up every year.

在学校里学生正常情况下每年都升级。

move out(intr) 搬出,迁出: I have found a new flat. The present tenant is moving out this weekendand I am moving in on Wednesday.

我找到新的套房了。目前的住户本周末搬出去,我下星期三搬进去。

order

order somebody about (宾语位于 about 前面)给某人下许多命令(而不管其是否方便或愿意),支使: He is a retired admiral and still has the habit of ordering people about. 他是个退休了的海军将军,还留着随意支使人的习惯。

pay

pay back (tr), pay someone back (tr/intr) 还给,付还: I must pay back the money that I borrowed. (pay the money back/pay itback)

我必须还清借的钱。

I must pay back Mr Pitt. (pay Mr Pitt back/pay him back)

我必须还皮特先生的钱。

I must pay Mr Pitt back the money he lent me. (pay him back the mon-ey/pay it back to him)

我必须还皮特先生借给我的钱。

pay someone back/out 算账,复仇,报复: I'll pay you back for this.

这件事我要跟你算账。(报复你给我造成的损失。)

pay up(intr)付清所欠的钱(常暗示付款者并不乐意)。 Unless you pay up I shall tell my solicitor to write to you.

除非你付清欠款,否则我要叫我的律师给你写信。

pick

pick out(tr) 选择,将……同其他的区别开来: Here are six rings. Pick out the one you like best.(pick it out)这里有六枚戒指。选出你最喜欢的一枚。

In an identity parade the witness has to try to pick out the criminal from a group of about eight men. (pick the criminal out/pick him out)

在(警察局)辨认罪犯时,证人得试着从约八个人的一组中挑出罪犯来。

I know that you are in this photograph but I can't pick you out.

我知道这张照片里有你,可是我认不出是哪一个。

pick up (tr)

(a) 扶起,抢起某人或物(常是从地上或从椅上或桌上): He picked up the child and carried him into the house.(picked the childup)

他抱起孩子并把他抱进了屋里了。

She scatters toys all over the floor and I have to pick them up.

她把玩具抛撒得到处都是, 我得给拾起来。

(b) (乘车) 来接: I won't have time to come to your house but I could pick you up at theend of your road.

我会没有时间到你家来,但是我可以到你家马路尽头接你。

The coach stops at the principal hotels to pick up tourists, but only if they arrange this in advance. (pick tourists up/pick them up)

大客车到各主要的旅馆来接观光者,但条件是必须事先安排好。

The crew of the wrecked yacht were picked up by helicopter.

失事的游艇上的船员们被直升机救起了。

(c) 接收到无线电讯号: Their SOS was picked up by another ship, which informed the lifeboatheadquarters.

他们的呼救讯号被另一条船收到了,后者通知了救生艇总部。

(d) 以廉价购得,不费力地学会: Sometimes you pick up wonderful bargains in these markets.

在这些市场上你有时能买到很好的便宜货。

Children usually pick up foreign languages very quickly.

儿童通常能很快地学会外语。

point

point out (tr) 指示, 指给……看: As we drove through the city the guide pointed out the most important buildings. (pointed the buildings out/pointed them out)

我们乘车通过市区时,导游把最重要的建筑物指给我们看。

pull

pull down (tr) 拆毁 (指建筑物): Everywhere elegant old buildings are being pulled down and mediocremodern erections are being put up. (pull down houses/pull them down) 到处都在拆毁美好的旧建筑,修建平庸的新建筑。

pull off(tr) 搞成功(宾语常用 it): Much to our surprise he pulled off the deal. (pulled it off)

使我们很惊讶的是, 他居然把这笔交易搞成功了。

pull through (tr/intr) 病愈,使人病愈: We thought she was going to die but her own will-power pulled herthrough. (tr)

我们本以为她要死了,但是她自己的意志力帮助她活了过来。(及物动词)

He is very ill but he' ll pull through if we look after him carefully. (intr)

他病得很厉害,但是如果我们仔细照料他,他会病愈的。(不及物动词)

pull up (intr) (车辆) 停下: A lay-by is a space at the side of a main road, where drivers can pull up ifthey want a rest.

路边停车处是干道沿线供想休息的司机停车的地方。

put

put aside/by(tr) 保留以供将来使用(常指钱,而且前者常指为了某种目的而把钱存起来): He puts aside \$ 50 a month to pay for his summer holiday. (puts itaside)

他每个月省下50镑存着,以备暑假用。

Don't spend all your salary. Try to put something by each month.

别把薪水都花了。尽量每个月存下一点。

put away(tr) 整齐地收好(如放在抽屉或柜橱里): Put your toys away,children; it's bedtime.(put away the toys/putthem away)

孩子们,把玩具放好;该去睡了。

put something back 放回原处,放到该放的地方: When you've finished with the book put it back on the shelf.

你看完这本书后, 把它放回书架上。

put back a clock/watch 把时针往回拨(有时是一种比喻,指恢复过去的习俗): Mother: Your father and I will arrange a marriage for youwhen the time comes.

母亲: 到了时候, 你爸爸和我会给你安排婚事的。

Daughter: You' re trying to put the clock back, mother. Parents don' tarrange marriages these days! (put back the clock/put it back)

女儿:妈妈,你是想恢复过去的那一套。眼下当父母的不再为儿女安排婚事了!put down(tr)

(a)放下(pick up 的反义词): He picked up the saucepan and put it down at once because the handlewas almost red-hot. (put the saucepan down/put it down)

他拿起了锅,马上又把它放下了,因为锅柄差不多都烧红了。

(b) 镇压起义,平息一次运动: Troops were used to put down the rebellion. (put the rebellion down/putit down)

动用了军队镇压起义。

(c)写下来: Put down his phone number before you forget it. (put the number down/put it down)

把他的电话号码写下来,别等忘了。

Customer(to shop assistant): I'll take that one. Please put it down to me/to my account. 顾客 (对店员): 我买那一个。请记在我的账上。

put something down to(tr) 认为是由于……: The children wouldn't answer him,but he wasn't annoyed as he put itdown to shyness.

孩子们不肯回答,但是他不恼,因为他认为这是因为孩子们害羞。

She hasn't been well since she came to this country: I put it down to theclimate.

自从来到这个国家以后她一直身体不好。我认为是由于气候的缘故。

put forward a suggestion/proposal etc. 提出建议等: The older members of the committee are inclined to veto any suggestions put forward by the younger ones. (put a suggestion forward/put it for-ward)

委员会的老成员们趋向于否决年轻成员们提出的任何建议。

put forward/on clocks and watches 把钟表往前拨 (put for-ward 是 put back 的反义词): In March people in England put their clocks forwad/on an hour. Whensummer time ends they put them back an hour.

英国人在3月份把时针向前拨一小时。夏时制结束时他们又把时针拨回一小时。

put in a claim 提出权利要求: He put in a claim for compensation because he had lost his luggage in the train crash.

因为他在火车撞车事故中丢失了行李,他提出了赔偿损失的要求。

他们在征聘一位地理讲师。你为什么不去求职?

put off an action 推迟某种行动: Some people put off making their wills till it is too late. 有些人推迟立遗嘱的事,后来就来不及了。

I'll put off my visit to Scotland till the weather is warmer.(put my visitoff/put it off)我要把到苏格兰去访问的事推迟到天气转暖以后。

put a person off

(a) 告诉某人推迟来访: I had invited some guests to dinner but I had to put them off because apower cut prevented me from cooking anything.

我本来邀请一些客人来吃饭,但是不得不告诉他们先别来了,因为停电使我无法做菜。

(b) 拒绝或推阻某人: I wanted to see the exhibition but the queue put me off. 我本想去看展览会,但是排队的人太多,使我不想看了。

Many people who want to come to England are put off by the stories theyhear about English weather.

许多想游览英国的人因为听说英国天气不好就不来了。

put on a light/gas or electric fire/radio 打开 (电灯/煤气灶或电气灶/收音机): Put on the light. (put the light on/put it on)

打开灯。

put on a play 上演一出戏: The students usually put on a play at the end of the year. 学生们一般都在年终上演一出戏。

put on an expression 做出某种表情: He put on an air of indifference,which didn't deceive anybody for a mo-ment.

他装出漠不关心的样子,这一点也骗不了任何人。

他穿了一件黑外套, 为了让自己不显眼。

She put on her glasses and took the letter from my hand.

她戴上了眼镜,拿过我手里的信。

put out any kind of light or fire 熄灭 (灯或火): Put out that light. (put the light out/put it out)

把那灯关了。

put someone out 使某人不便: He is very selfish. He wouldn't put himself out for anyone. 他很自私。他绝不会为任何人出点力。

be put out 感到不快: She was very put out when I said that her new summer dress didn't suither.

我告诉她那件新的夏装不适合她时,她非常不高兴。

put up (tr)

(a) 建起 (房屋、纪念物、雕像等): He put up a shed in the garden. (put a shed up/put it up)

他在花园里盖了一个棚子。

(b) 提价: When the importation of foreign tomatoes was forbidden,home growersput up their prices. (put their prices up/put them up)

禁止进口外国的西红柿以后,国内种西红柿的人就提高价钱了。

put someone up(宾语常位于 up 之前) 暂时留某人住下: If you come to Paris I will put you up. You needn't look for a hotel.

如果你到巴黎来,可以住在我那儿。你不必去找旅馆了。

put someone up to something(常指某种诡计)怂恿某人去做某事,告诉某人如何做某事: He couldn't have thought of that trick by himself. Someone must haveput him up to it. 他自己是想不出那个计谋的。一定是有人教他这么做的。

put up with (tr) 容忍: We had to put up with a lot of noise when the children were at home.

我们不得不忍受孩子们在家时的吵闹。

ring

ring off(intr) 挂断电话: He rang off before I could ask his name.

没等我问他的名字,他就把电话挂断了。

ring up(tr/intr) 打电话给某人: I rang up the theatre to book seats for tonight. (rang the theatre up/rangthem up)

我给剧院打了电话,预购今晚的票。

If you can't come ring up and let me know.

你要是来不了,请打电话让我知道一声。

round

round up(tr)(把人或动物)撵到一起: The sheepdog rounded up the sheep and drove them through the gate.

牧羊犬把羊撵到了一起, 把它们赶过栅门。

On the day after the riots the police rounded up all suspects/rounded them up.

暴乱后的那一天,警方把嫌疑者都抓起来了。

rub

rub out(tr) 用擦子或橡皮把字迹擦掉: The child wrote down the wrong word and then rubbed it out. (rubbed the word out/rubbed out the word)

孩子写错了一个字,又把它擦掉了。

rub up(tr) 复习,温习某项知识: I am going to France; I must rub up my French.(rub it up)

我要去法国了。我得把法语温习一下。

run

run after (to) 追逐(参见下面的例句)

run away (intr) 逃跑,出走 (离开家庭、学校等): The thief ran away and the policeman ran after him.

小偷逃跑了,警察追了去。

He ran away from home and got a job in a garage.

他离家出走,在一家汽车修理站里找了个工作。

run away with (tr) (感情) 变得不可控制,(马匹) 奔逸: Don't let your emotions run away with you.

不要听任感情失控。

His horse ran away with him and he had a bad fall.

他骑的马狂奔起来,他摔得不轻。

run away with the idea 过分匆促地接受某种想法: Don't run away with the idea that I am unsociable; I just haven't timeto go out much.

不要轻信我不爱同人交往的说法;我只不过是没有时间经常外出而已。

run down (tr) 诋毁,说……的坏话: He is always running down his neighbours. (running his neighbours down/running them down)

他总是在说邻居的坏话。

run down (intr) 发条松了,电池没有电: This torch is useless; the battery has run down. 这电筒没有用;电池没有电了。

be run down(intr)(由于生病或工作过度而)身体坏了: He is still run down after his illness and unfit for work.

他病后仍然体力不佳,不适合工作。

run into (tr) 撞上 (车辆等): The car skidded and ran into a lamp-post.

汽车打滑,撞上了电线竿。

run into/across someone 偶然遇见(某人): I ran into my cousin in Harrods recently. 我最近在哈洛德百货商店遇见了我表弟。

run out of (tr) 用光,吃喝无余: I have run out of milk. Put some lemon in your tea instead.

我没有牛奶了。你在茶里放点柠檬吧。

run over (tr) (车辆) 轧过: The drunk man stepped into the road right in front of the oncoming car.

The driver couldn't stop in time and ran over him.

醉汉走到马路上,正好到了开过来的汽车前面。司机来不及停车,从他身上轧过去了。

run over (tr/intr) 溢出: He turned on both taps full and left the bathroom. When he came backhe found that the water was running over/running over the edge of thebath.

他把两个水龙头开到头,就走出了浴室。回来时他发现水已经溢出来了/溢出浴盆边沿了。

run over/through(tr) 迅速地复习,检查,重读一下: We've got a few minutes before the train goes,so I'll just run throughyour instructions again.

火车开车以前还剩几分钟,所以我要再重复一下给你们的指示。

run through(tr) 极度浪费(指供应品或钱): He inherited a fortune and ran through it in a year.

他继承了一大笔财产,一年之内就挥霍光了。

run up bills 由于不断赊购而积累起许多帐单: Her husband said that she must pay for things at once and not run upbills.

她丈夫说她得用现款购物,不该积起厚厚一叠帐单。

run up against difficulties/opposition 遭遇困难/反对: If he tries to change the rules of the club he will run up against a lot ofopposition.

如果他想改变俱乐部的章程,就会遇到很多反对意见。

see

see about(tr) 过问并安排: I must see abut getting a room ready for him.

我得去给他设法准备好一个房间。

see somebody off 送人离去(上车、船、飞机等): The station was crowded with boys going back to school and parents whowere seeing them off.

车站里挤满了要回学校上学的男孩子们和送他们的家长们。

see somebody out 送(某人)出门: When guests leave the host usually sees them out. 客人走时,主人通常送出门。

Don't bother to come to the door with me. I can see myself out.

不用费力送我出去。我可以自己出去。

see over a house/a building 看房(常是为买房或租房准备): I'm definitely interested in the house. I'd like to see over it.

我肯定对这所房子感兴趣。我想去看一下这房子。

see through(tr) 看透(发现想骗人的那人心中的想法): She pretended that she loved him but he saw through her,and realizedthat she was only after his money.

她假装爱他,可是他把她看透了,明白她只是看上了他的钱。(他没有被他/她的假装骗了。 参见 take in。)

see to (tr) 安排,修好,纠正: If you can provide the wine I'll see to the food.

你要是能提供葡萄酒, 我来负责食品。

That electric fire isn't safe. You should have it seen to.

那个电炉不安全。你得找人修一下。

Please see to it that the door is locked.

请留意一下把门锁好。

sell

sell off(tr) 廉价抛售以卖尽存货: Assistant: This line is being discontinued so we are selling off the remainder of our stock; that's why they are so cheap. (selling the rest off/selling it off)

店员:这条生产线已停止了,所以我们在廉价出售存货;因此价格很便宜。

sell out (intr) 出清,售完: When all the seats for a certain performance have been booked,theatresput a notice saying 'Sold out' outside the booking office.

某场演出票已订光时,剧院常在票房外面贴个通知:"票已售完"。

send

be sent down(intr) 由于行为不端被大学开除: He behaved so badly in college that he was sent down and never got hisdegree.

他在大学里行为极为恶劣,以致被开除了,从未拿到学位。

send for(tr) 派人找来: One of our water pipes has burst. We must send for the plumber. 我们有个自来水管漏水了,得找水管工来。

The director sent for me and asked for an explanation.

院长把我找去了,要求我做出解释。

send in(tr) 寄送到某人处(此人不必说出,因为听话的人早已知道): You must send in your application before Friday. (send your applicationin/send it in)

你必需在星期五以前把申请书送上去。

send on (tr) 转交, 转递, 转寄: If any letters come for you after you have gone I will send them on. (sendon your letters/send your letters on)

如果你走了以后有你的信,我会转寄给你的。

set

set in(intr) 开始(常指一段令人不愉快的时期)**.** Winter has set in early this year. 今年的冬季开始得早。

set off(tr) 开始(一系列事件),引发:That strike set off a series of strikes throughout the country.(set themoff)

那一次罢工引发了全国一系列的罢工。

set off/out(intr) 动身,上路: They set out/off at six and hoped to arrive before dark. 他们在 6 点钟动身,希望在天黑以前到。

如果提到了目的地,则要用介词 for 引导: They set out/off for Rome.

他们动身上罗马去了。

set out+不定式 开始,以……为目的(常带 show 指给看/prove 证明/explain 解释或其他类似动词的不定式)。 In this book the author sets out to prove that the inhabitants of the islandscame from South America.

在本书中作者意图证明这些岛的居民来自南美洲。

set up (tr) 创立 (纪录): He set up a ner record for the 1,000 metres. (set a new record up/set itup)

他创下了千米赛跑的新纪录。

set up (intr) 开办 (新商号): When he married he left his father's shop and set up on his own.

他结婚后离开了他父亲的商店, 自己开一家店。

settle

settle down(intr) 安居下来,安顿下来,安于新的地方/职业等: He soon settled down in his new school.

他在新的学校里很快就习惯了。

settle up(intr) 付清欠款: Tell me what I owe you and I'll settle up.

告诉我我欠你多少钱, 我会付清的。

shout

shout down(tr) 高声喊叫,不让演讲人说话,哄台: Tom tried to make a speech defending himself but the crowd wouldn't listen to his explanation and shouted him down.

汤姆想讲话为自己辩护, 可是人群不肯听他的解释, 把他哄下去了。

The moderate speakers were shout down.

那些主张克制的演讲者们被哄下去了。

show

show off(tr/intr) 炫耀,引人注目: Although Jules speaks English perfectly,my cousin spoke French to himall the time just to show off.

虽说儒尔英语说得很好,我表妹一直跟他说法语以便炫耀一番。

He is always picking up very heavy things just to show off his strength. (show it off) 他常拿起很重的东西以显示自己的力气。

shut

shut down (tr/intr) 关闭(参见 close down)

sit

sit back (intr) 放松,不动手,不干活: I have worked hard all my life and now I'm going to sit back and watchother people working.

我这辈子一直努力干,现在要轻松轻松,看着别人干了。

sit up(intr) 坐着熬夜,过了点而不去睡(常指因阅读、工作或等人): I was very worried when he didn't come in and I sat up till 3 a. m. wait-ing for him.

他没回家,我很担心,一直不去睡而等到凌晨3点钟。

She sat up all night with the sick child.

她整夜陪着生病的孩子没有睡。

stand

stand by someone(tr) 继续支持并帮助某人,为某人撑腰: No matter what happens I'll stand by you,so don't be afraid.

不管发生什么事我都支持你,别怕。

stand for (tr) 代表: The symbol 'x' usually stands for the unknown quantity in mathematics.

在数学中,"x"这个符号常代表未知数。

stand for Parliament 竞选议员: Mr Pitt stood for Parliament five years ago but he wasn't elected.

皮特先生五年前曾竞选议员职位,可是没有当选。

stand out(intr) 易于看到,显眼: She stood out from the crowd because of her height and her flaming red hair.

由于她个子高,又长了一头火红的头发,她站在人群里很显眼。

stand up for(tr) 为……辩护: His father blamed him,but his mother stood up for him and said that hehad acted sensibly.

他爸爸责怪他,可是他妈妈为他辩护,说他做得有道理。

Why don't you stand up for yourself?

你为什么不为自己辩护?

tand up to(tr) 抗拒,不屈服: This type of building stands up to the gales very well. 这种建筑很能抗拒大风。

Your boss is a bully. If you don't stand up to him he'll lead you a dog'slife.

你的老板是个仗势欺人之辈。你要是向他屈服,他会把你欺负死。

stay

stay up (intr) 过时不睡 (通常为了娱乐): Children never want to go to bed at the proper time; they always want tostay up late.

孩子们总是不想按时上床睡觉; 他们老是想晚点睡。

step

step up (tr) 增速,加快(常指工业生产等): This new machine will step up production. (step it up)

这台新机器将使生产加快。

take

be taken aback (intr) 感到惊讶失措: I was taken aback when I saw the bill.

我看到帐单时大吃一惊。

take after(tr)长得像(父母、祖父母等): He takes after his grandmother; she had red hair too.

他长得像他的祖母。他祖母也是红头发。

My father was forgetful and I take after him; I forget everything.

我爸爸爱忘事儿,而我就像他。我什么都忘。

take back(tr) 收回(所说的话、指责等): I blamed him bitterly at first but later,when I heard the whole story,Irealized that he had been right and I went to him and took back my re-marks.(took them back)

起初我痛切地指责他,但是后来当我知道了事情的全部情况时,就明白他是对的,所以我去找他收回我说的话。

take down(tr) 写下来(常指听写): He read out the names and his secretary took them down.(took down thenames/took the names down)

他把人名念出来,他的秘书则把那些名字记下来。

take for (tr) 错认: I took him for his brother. They are extremely alike.

我把他错认成他的兄弟了。他俩长得像极了。

Do you take me for a fool?

你难道把我当成傻子不成?

take in (tr)

(a) 欺骗,骗而使信:

At first he took us in by his stories and we tried to help him; but later welearnt that his stories were all lies.

起初他编的那些故事使我们相信他了,我们还想帮助他;可后来我们听说那全是谎话。

(b) 接待,收留住下: When our car broke down I knocked on the door of the nearest house.

The owner very kindly took us in and gave us a bed for the night.

我们的汽车坏了时,我敲最近的一家人家的门。房主很好心地收留了我们,给我们一张床过夜。

People who live by the sea often take in paying guests during the sum-mer. (take paying guests in/take them in)

住在海滨的人常在夏天留游客住宿,挣一些房钱。

(c) 理解,(思想上) 接受: I was thinking of something else while she was speaking and I didn't re-ally take in what she was saying.

她说话时我在想别的事,并没有真正理解她说的话。

I couldn't take in the lecture at all. It was too difficult for me.(couldn'ttake it in) 讲座我完全听不懂。它对我来说太难了。

(d)改窄,改瘦(指衣服): I'm getting much thinner; I'll have to take in my clothes. (take my clothes in/take them in)

我瘦多了,得把衣服改瘦。

take off (tr) 取下,脱下,褪去 (指衣服时为 put on 的反义词): He took off his coat when he entered the house and put it on again whenhe went out. (took his coat off/took it off) 他进屋时脱下了外衣,出屋时又把它穿上了。

take off (intr) (飞机等)起飞, 离地升空: There is often a spectators balcony at airports where people can watchthe planes taking off and landing.

机场常设有看台, 供人们观看飞机起飞降落。

take on

(a) 承担工作: She wants someone to look after her children. I shouldn't care to take onthe job. They are very spoilt. (take the job on/take it on)

她想找人给她照料孩子。我可不想承担这份工作。她的孩子们都被宠坏了。

(b) 雇用,招工: They're taking on fifty new workers at the factory.

这家工厂要招收50名新工人。

(c) 接受某人为对手,应战: I'll take you on at table tennis.

我跟你打一局乒乓球试试。

I took on Mr Pitt at draughts. (took Mr Pitt on/took him on)

我接受皮特先生的应战, 跟他下国际象棋。

take out (tr) 除去, 清除: Petrol will take out that stain. (take the stain out/take it out) 汽油能除去那块污渍。

The dentist took out two of her teeth.

牙科医生给她拔去两颗牙。

take somebody out 请人到外面去吃饭娱乐: Her small boy is at boarding school quite near here. I take him out everymonth.

她的小男孩在离这儿很近的地方上寄宿学校。我每个月带他出来吃顿饭。

take over(tr/intr) 接受,接手,接管: We stop work at ten o' clock and the night shift takes over until the fol-lowing morning.

我们 10 点钟停止工作, 夜班接班一直工作到第二天早上。

Miss Smith is leaving to get married and Miss Jones will be taking overthe class/Miss Jones will be taking over from Miss Smith.

史密斯小姐要离职去结婚了,琼斯小姐将接手管理她的班级。(参见 hand over。)

take to (tr)

(a) 开始养成习惯。它常给人一种印象,即说话人认为这种习惯是坏习惯或是有点愚蠢的习惯,但也并非一定如此。后面常带动名词: He took to drink.

他开始喝酒上瘾了。

He took to borrowing money from the petty cash.

他开始有了从小额现款中"借"用零用现金的习惯。

(b) 对某人有好感,被(某物)所吸引(特别是首次见到时): I was introduced to the new headmistress yesterday. I can't say I took toher.

昨天我被介绍给新来的女校长。我很难说我对她有好感。

He went to sea and took to the life like a duck to water.

他当海员去了,就像鸭子爱水一样爱上了这种生活。

(c) 进入……似求逃命: When they saw that the ship was sinking the crew took to the boats.

船员们看到船要下沉了,就上了救生船以求逃命。

After the failure of the coup many of the rebels took to the hills and be-came guerillas. 政变失败后,许多反叛的人上山打游击去了。

take up (tr)

(a) 开始一种业余爱好、运动或学习(这里没有批评的意思): He took up golf and became very keen on it.(took it up)

他玩起了高尔夫球, 并且变得很热衷于其中。

(b) 占有(时间或空间): He has a very small room and most of the space is taken up by a grandpiano.

他住一个很小的房间,房间里一多半地方被一台大三角钢琴占去了。

A lot of an MP's time is taken up with answering letters from his con-stituents.

国会议员要花不少时间给他的选民写回信。

talk

talk over (tr) 讨论: Talk it over with your wife and give me your answer tomorrow. $(talkover\ my\ suggestion/talk\ my\ suggestion\ over)$

你和你夫人把这件事好好谈一下,明天给我个回音。

think

think over (tr) 考虑: I can't decide straight away but I'll think over your idea and let youknow what I decide. (think your idea over/think it over)

我眼下没法决定,可是我会把你的想法好好想一下,再让你知道我的决定。

throw

throw away/out(tr) 扔掉,抛弃(废物等): Throw away those old shoes. Nobody could wear them now.(throw theshoes away/throw them away)

把那些旧鞋都扔掉。现在谁也不会穿它们。

throw up(tr) 突然放弃(某种工作或计划):He suddenly got tired of the job and threw it up.(he threw up the job/threw the job up)

他忽然厌倦了这个工作,就不干了。

tie

tie someone up 捆住某人手脚使不能动弹: The thieves tied up the night watchman before opening the safe. (tied the man up/tied him up)

盗匪在开保险柜之前将值夜班的警卫捆了起来。

try

try on(tr) 试穿(衣物):Customer in dress shop:I like this dress.Could I try it on?(try thisdress on/try on this dress)

服装店中的顾客:我喜欢这件衣服。能试穿一下吗?

try out(tr) 试验: We won't know how the plan works till we have tried it out. 我们要到试验过这个计划以后才能知道它的效果如何。

They are trying out new ways of preventing noise in hospitals. (tryingthem out)

人们在试验使用新的方法阻止医院里的噪音。

turn

turn away(tr) 拒之门外,阻挡在门外: The man at the door turned away anybody who hadn't an invitation card.(turned them away)

站在门口的这个人把没有请帖的人都拒之门外。

turn down(tr) 拒绝,不批谁,拒不接受建议、申请、申请的人等: I applied for the job but they turned me down/turned down my applica-tion because I didn't know German. 我申请这个职务,但是他们拒绝了我/我的申请,因为我不懂德语。

He was offered \pounds 500 for the picture but he turned it down. (turneddown the offer/turned the offer down)

人家提出要以500镑买他那幅画,但他拒绝了。

turn in (intr) 上床睡觉(主要为海员、露营者等所用): The captain turned in, not realizing that the icebergs were so close.

船长上床睡觉了,没有意识到冰山已靠得这么近了。

turn into (tr) 转换为,变为: I am going to turn my garage into a playroom for the children.

我要把车库改建为孩子们的游戏室。

She turned the silver candlestick into a reading lamp.

她把这个银烛台改成了一盏阅读灯。

turn on (tr)(重音在 turn 上)突然袭击(袭击者常是朋友或

一头过去表示友好的野兽): The tigress turned on the trainer and struck him to the ground.

雌虎突然袭击驯虎人,把他打倒在地。

turn on/off(tr) 开/关(电灯、煤气、炉灶、收音机、水龙头等)turn out(tr)

- (a) 生产,产出: The creamery turns out two hundred tons of butter a week. (turns it out) 这家奶制品厂每周生产 200 吨黄油。
- (b) 逐出,翻出,腾空: 1 turn a person out 将人逐出家屋/套房/居室: At one time, if tenants didn't pay their rent the landlord could turn themout.

从前,如果房客付不起房租,房东可以把他们赶出去。

2 turn out one's pockets/handbags/drawers etc.

将衣袋/手提包/抽屉等翻空,常是为了寻找某物: 'Turn out your pockets,' said the detective.

侦探说:"把你口袋里的东西都翻出来。"

3 turn out a room 彻底打扫,先将家具搬出去: I try to turn out one room every month if I have time.

我尽量在有工夫的时候每个月彻底打扫一个房间。

turn out (intr)

(a)集合,上街(常是为了欢迎某人): The whole town turned out to welcome the winning football team whenthey came back with the Cup.

得胜的足球队捧着奖杯凯旋而归时,城里人万人空巷地欢迎他们。

(b) 发展,变化,结果: I' ve never made Yorkshire pudding before so I am not quite sure how it isgoing to turn out.

我以前从来没有做过约克郡布丁,因此我不知道这一次做出来的会结果如何。

Marriages arranged by marriage bureaux frequently turn out well. 由婚姻介绍所安排的婚姻结果常常美满。

(c) 原来是……(注意有两种结构: it turned out that…和 he turned out to be…): He told her that he was a bachelor but it turned out that he was marriedwith six children.

他告诉她说他是单身汉,可事实证明他原来已经结婚了,有六个孩子。

Our car broke down half way through the journey but the hiker we hadpicked up turned out to be an expert mechanic and was able to put thingsright.

我们的汽车走到半路坏了,可是路上搭我们便车的那人敢情是个熟练的修车工,把车给修好了。

注意 turn out 与 come out 不同。用 turn out 时,后来所发现的事总是要说出来的,而且也并不暗示这事是坏事。用 come out 时,只告诉人说某些事实已经被揭露了(这些事实常是名声不好的),但不说明这些事实的内容。

turn over (tr) 翻过来: He turned over the stone. (turned the stone over/turned it over) 他把石头翻了过来。

The initials 'PTO' at the bottom of a page mean 'Please turn over'.

在一页下端的首字母缩写"PTO"意思是"请看背面"。

'Turn over a new leaf.'

"翻开新的一页。"(再次开始,痛改前非。)

turn over (intr)

(a) 翻转(指车、船等交通工具): The car struck the wall and turned over.

汽车撞到墙上,翻了个个儿。

The canoe turned over, throwing the boys into the water.

独木舟翻了, 把男孩子们抛入水中。

(b) 翻身(指人): It is difficult to turn over in a hammock.

睡吊床时翻身很困难。

When his alarm went off he just turned over and went to sleep again.

他的闹钟响时, 他只是翻了个身, 又睡着了。

turn up/down(tr) 开大/关小,增加/减小压力、力量、容量、音量等(指煤气、石油、灯火、炉灶、或收音机等): Turn up the gas; it is much too low.

把煤气灶开大一些,火太小了。

I wish the people in the next flat would turn down their radio. You canhear every word. (turn the sound down/turn it down)

我真希望隔壁套房里的人家能把收音机音量调小些。你都能听到每个字。

turn up(intr) 出现,到来(通常是从等待或搜寻的人的角度来讲)。 We arranged to meet at the station but she didn't turn up.

我们商量好在车站见面,可是她没有露面。

Don't bother to look for my umbrella; it will turn up some day.

别费心找我的伞了;它迟早会自己出来的。

wait

wait on(tr) 伺候, 上饭菜(在家里或在饭馆里): He expected his wife to wait on him hand and foot.

他指望他妻子跑前跑后地伺候他。

The man who was waiting on us seemed very inexperienced; he got allour orders mixed up.

那个给我们服务的人好像很缺乏经验,把我们叫的菜全搞混了。

walk

walk out (intr) 大步走出去,退场(因为愤怒、不满或讨厌等): Some people were so disgusted with the play that they walked out in themiddle of the first act.

有些人对这剧感到非常厌恶,以致在第一幕演到一半时就退场了。

wash

wash up (tr/intr) (在饭后) 洗碗碟餐具: When we have dinner very late we don't wash up till the next morning.

(wash up the dishes/wash them up)

我们晚饭要是吃得很晚,就把碗碟放到第二天早上再洗。

watch

watch out(intr) 当心,留神,注意

watch out for(tr) 留意,小心提防,注意寻找(参见 look outfor)

wear

wear away(intr) 逐渐磨损或磨平,磨蚀出凹痕(常指木、石等,而且主语常为风雨等自然力或踏踩、拭抚此的人等)

It is almost impossible to read the inscription on the monument as most ofthe letters have been worn away.

由于多数的字母久经风雨,纪念碑上的铭文已经无法卒读了。

wear off (intr) 逐渐消失(可以按字面意义使用,但主要用来指体力或精神上的感觉):

These glasses may seem uncomfortable at first but that feeling will soonwear off.

这副眼镜可能起初戴着不舒服,但是那种感觉逐渐就会没有了。

When her first feeling of shyness had worn off she started to enjoy her-self.

她开头的羞涩感逐渐消失时,她便开始玩得高兴起来。

He began to try to sit up,which showed us that the effects of the drugwere wearing off. 他开始试图坐起身来,这向我们表明药力正在消退。

wear out (tr/intr)

(a)(tr)用到无法再用为止;(intr)由于经常使用而破损,不能再用(常用于衣物): Children wear out their shoes very quickly. (wear their shoes out/wear them out) 孩子穿鞋时破得很快。

Cheap clothes wear out quickly.

便宜的衣服破得快。

(b) (tr) 使疲惫, 耗竭 (指人; 常用被动态): He worked all night and wanted to go on working the next day, but wesaw that he was completely worn out and persuaded him to stop.

他干了个通宵,还想第二天接着干,可是我们看到他已经筋疲力尽,就劝他停止工作。

wind

wind up (tr/intr) (使) 结束 (常指演讲或业务过程): The headmaster wound up (the meeting) by thanking the parents.

(wound the meeting up/wound it up)

校长以向家长们表示感谢结束了这次会议。

wipe

wipe out(tr) 消灭,彻底毁坏: The epidemic wiped out whole families.(wiped whole families out/wiped them out)

这次瘟疫使许多人家绝户了。

work

work out(tr) 通过运算或研究取得某问题的解决或处理方法,研究并决定某一计划的细节: He used his calculator to work out the cost.(work the cost out) 他用计算器算出了需支付多少钱。

Tell me where you want to go and I'll work out a route.

你告诉我你想上哪儿,我就会给你安排出一条路线来。

This is the outline of the plan. We want the committee to work out the details. (work them out)

这就是计划的提纲。我们想让委员会商议出细节来。

第三十九章 不规则动词表

364 不规则动词

下表中用斜体印出的动词,在现代英语中不常使用,但在文学作品中可能见到。如果一个动词有两种可能使用的形式时,而其中一个形式比另一个形式更常用,则不常用的那个形式也用斜体印出。

由不规则动词构成的复合动词用跟原不规则动词同样的方法构成其过去式及过去分词:

come camecome

overcome overcame ?overcome

set :set set

upset :upset upset

现在式及动词原形/过去式/过去分词

这些过去分词形式并不可以任意使用,而是具有不同的含义。学生使用时须在可靠的词典里查清其确切意义及用法。

联合;紧凑。作"编织衣服"讲时是规则动词。: 只用于现在时态。